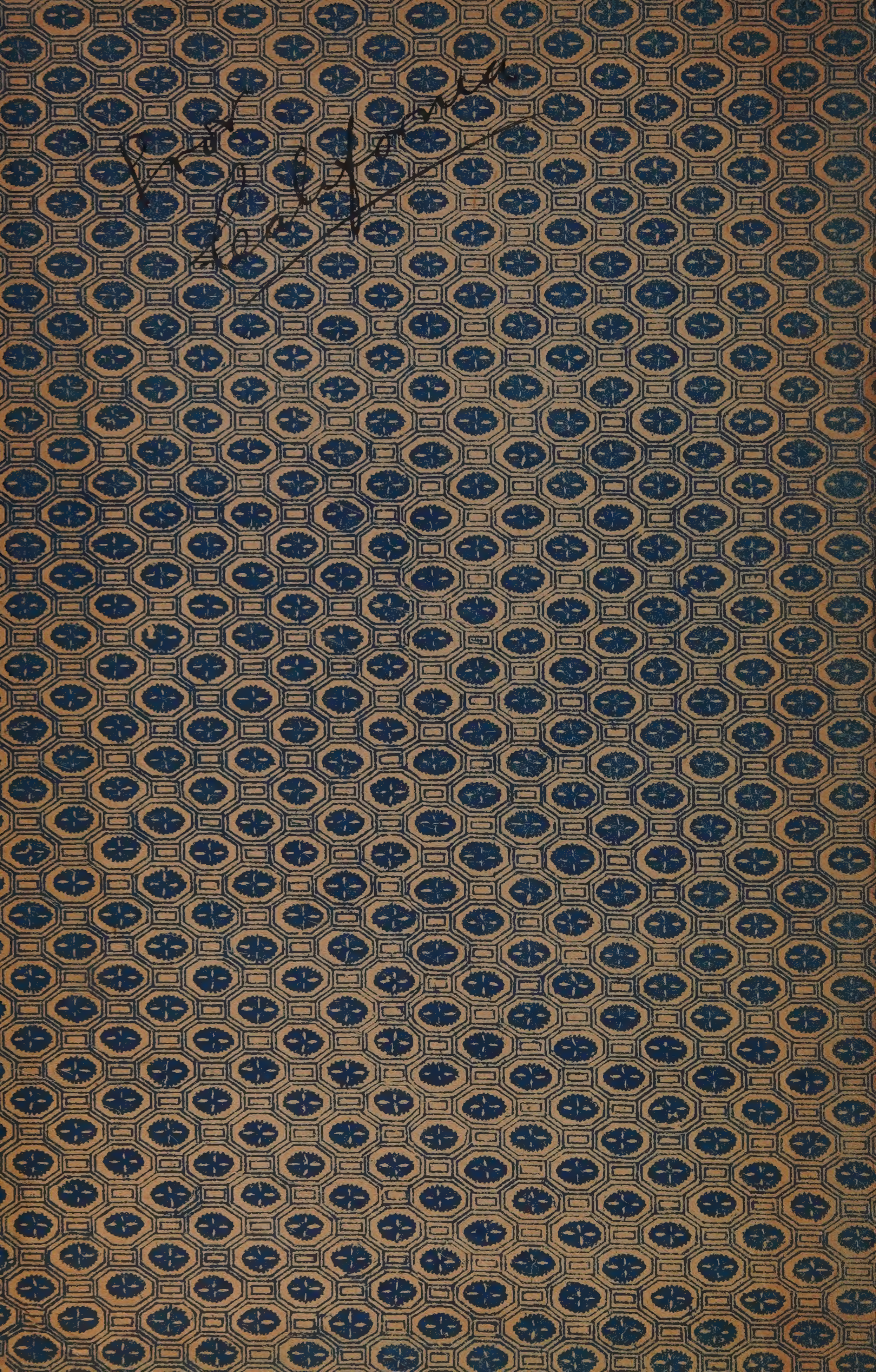

Prof
California

Prov Calif

# A
# MANDARIN
# PRIMER

# 英華合璧

BY

## F. W. BALLER

FOURTEENTH EDITION

*Revised and Enlarged with Supplement*

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PREPARED FOR THE CHINA INLAND MISSION

LONDON, PHILADELPHIA, TORONTO, MELBOURNE, SHANGHAI

MORGAN & SCOTT, LTD., 12 PATERNOSTER BUILDINGS, LONDON, E. C.

SHANGHAI:
CHINA INLAND MISSION AND ALL BOOKSELLERS
1929

ALMA COLLEGE
495.18
LIBRARY
B414
Alma, California

12071

# TWELFTH EDITION

## FOREWORD.

The demand for a new edition has made possible some additions and corrections. Many of these are the outcome of experience in teaching, and others are the suggestions of students of the book.

The book has been partly interleaved, and the Chinese text of the Miscellaneous Examples added. The Chinese teacher will thus be able to correct both the reading and pronunication of his pupil.

In the supplement will be found additional examples of the use of such words and idioms as are given in the Lessons, together with translations of passages in the Reading Lessons which contain idiomatic phrases and uses of words that may present difficulties to the beginner. An analysis of the use of 就 is also given from the conviction that the meaning and force of this and similar words can be better learned from connected discourse than from the definition given in a dictionary.

A Monograph on Phonetics has been kindly contributed by Mr. W. B. Pettus of the Y. M. C. A. and is hereby gratefuly acknowledged. It should be of great value to those who desire to study the sounds of the language from a scientific standpoint.

Those who intend to learn to write Chinese are referred to the Author's A. B. C. of Chinese Writing published by the American Presbyterian Press.

A small book intended to serve as an introduction to this Primer has been prepared by the Author. It is entitled An Idiom a Lesson, and is intended to give the student such a hold on the common idioms of the language as will enable him to continue his studies with a more intelligent interest.

It is not necessary to memorize all the examples at first Those which are most commonly used and the Miscellaneous Examples may be committed to memory with advantage. The child's method of repeating all it hears may be adopted, but it needs to be supplemented. A child usually takes seven or eight years to acquire and make much use of its Vocabulary, and when it does prattle, its range is naturally very limited. An adult should not only memorize but also exercise his power to reason and to compare. In this way the advantages of the child's method are conserved, and reinforced by the added knowledge and experience of riper years: the prattle of the child gives place to the talk of the man.

SHANGHAI, November, 1921.

# CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION:

Plan and Scope ... ... ... v
Aspirates ... ... ... ... viii
Table of Aspirated and Unaspirated Sounds ... ... ... ix
Tones ... ... ... ... ix
Exercises on the Tones ... ... xi
The Romanized System... .. xiii
Initials and Finals ... ... xiv
Notes on the Table of Initials and Finals ... ... ... xv
Combinations of Initials and Finals ... ... ... ... xvii
Table of Radicals ... ... ... xx
Chinese Characters ... ... xxiv
Writing, with Orders of Strokes. xxvi
Phonetics ... ... ... ... xxxii

LESSONS I to XXX ... ... ... ... ... ...1–273
Additional Words for Exercise in Composition ... 274–280
A List of Numerary Adjuncts ... ... ... 281–282

A Selection of Moral and Religious Terms:—
I. Moral... .. ... ... ... ... ... 285
II. Theological ... ... ... ... ... ... 290
Form of Prayer ... ... ... ... ... ... 298
The Books of the Old Testament ... ... ... ... 299
" " " " New " ... ... ... ... 300
Buddhism ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 301
Taoism ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 303
Dialogue with an Enquirer ... ... ... ... ... 305
Education ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 319
Some Expressions Used in Chinese Composition ... ... 324
Government ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 336
Commerce ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 340
The Study ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 346
The Kitchen ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 349
Bedroom and Nursery ... ... ... ... ... 355
Reception Room ... ... ... ... ... ... 357
Household Expressions ... ... ... ... ... 359
Houses and Building ... ... ... ... ... ... 361
Clothing and Colours... ... ... ... ... ... 363
Travelling .. ... ... ... ... ... ... 365

Rank and Relationships ... ... ... ... ... 369
Some Expressions Used in Legal and Official Documents ... 371
The Person ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 376
Materia Medica ... ... ... ... ... ... 379
Geographical Notes ... ... ... ... ... ... 382
Chief Cities of China ... ... ... ... ... ... 384
Chief Rivers of China... ... ... ... ... ... 389
The Grand Canal ... ... ... ... ... ... 391
The Lakes of China ... ... ... ... ... ... 392
Names of Some of the Principal Places in China and the East. 393
Syllabic Index to Characters and Phrases ... ... ... 403
Index to Translation of English Sentences ... ... ... 431

# INTRODUCTION.

## PLAN AND SCOPE.

The book is divided into four Parts., viz., Elementary, Advanced, Supplementary and Miscellaneous. In Part I. simple idioms are explained and illustrated, in Part II. more difficult ones are dealt with, in Part III. these are supplemented by the addition of words and phrases, and in Part IV. vocabularies relating to various subjects are given.

In Part I., at the end of each Lesson, the words "See Lesson—" are added. The Lesson thus referred to contains further illustrations of many words and phrases already given. By this arrangement the beginner is not bewildered in the early stages of his studies with matter of which he can make no use, but is put in possession of much useful material at a time when he is in a position to profit by it.

Reading Lessons follow every Exercise and Vocabulary. These are intended to help to a good style in speaking and to make the study of the language more interesting. Idiom needs to be *absorbed by reading*. The subjects treated of in these Reading Lessons cover a wide range, and in many cases have been treated in a light vein in order to create and sustain interest. Some expressions used in them are not in the nature of the case everywhere current; the book could not be written that would meet local requirements in whole Mandarin-speaking area. But it should not be difficult for any teacher of average intelligence to give the local equivalent of any given expression. Foot notes have been added to elucidate difficult idioms, and words that occur later in the book have been inserted to make the sense complete, or to secure a better sentence. Such words are followed by 'L.' or 'V.,' which refer to the Lesson or Vocabulary in which they occur. As it is impossible to tell a story without words new ones have been introduced and defined where necessary. A large vocabulary of useful words has thus been secured, and a wider range of subjects made possible. By the aid of these Lessons—which form a Reader—students should not only acquire a good idiom, but be also helped to judge the *force* of words and to see how sentences are connected. They should be read and re-read, and in part committed to memory, till a faulty sentence grates on the ear like a discord in the midst of harmony. The Chinese titles have been added for the benefit of the teacher, but the student should leave them severely alone till he has finished Part III.

A Review Exercise is added at the end of every five Lessons. No translation of the Examples is given, as the student, with the aid of his teacher, should be able to judge of the accuracy of his work.

A Writing Exercise is appended to each Lesson: to many it will be a great benefit to be able to write Chinese as well as to read it. Such are referred to the Author's A. B. C. of Chinese Writing. Characters that are Radicals are indicated by 'R' followed by their number.

The Tones in this edition are marked as in the Author's Analytical Chinese-English Dictionary (Shanghai: Mission Book Company). Where a word is in the fifth tone or 入聲, it is indicated by a final '*h*' in the spelling, and the Peking tone is placed by the side of the character also. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, stand for 上平, 下平, 上聲, and 去聲, respectively.

Following the usage of the New Literature, names of persons have been marked with a single line at the side, names of places with a double one.

The Exercises for Translation, and Key to them, are intended to furnish material for translation from English into Chinese and *vice versa*. Translate the English to the teacher in Chinese and let him correct it by the Key; then reverse the process, and by means of the Key, test the accuracy of the translation into English. This will give facility in translation, and develop the power to use words and idioms aright.

An imaginary Dialogue with a visitor on Christianity is also introduced, from which it is hoped the student may cull a few useful colloquial phrases. In this and in all other parts of the book the Editor *alone* is responsible for all doctrinal statements.

The small figures following the words in the Vocabularies refer to the numbers of the corresponding Numerary Adjuncts, of which those more commonly in use are printed on pages 281, 282, and also for greater convenience separately on a card. This arrangement enables the student to see the meaning of any given Numerary Adjunct at a glance, and precludes the possibility of mistaking it for the word to which it belongs. Where two sets of figures occur opposite the same word, either of the Numerary Adjuncts referred to may be used with it.

On page 346, under the Head of 'The Study,' will be found a selection of words and sentences which are intended to enable the student to communicate with his teacher at once. Such sentences as are most commonly needed, should be committed to memory—this will enable teacher and pupil to begin to understand each other.

The whole work, in its enlarged form, is afresh commended to the blessing of Almighty God, that He may graciously use it as a means of helping His servants to preach the Gospel of our Lord and only Saviour Jesus Christ.

SHANGHAI, November, 1921.

# ASPIRATES.

Two peculiarities at once impress the student as he begins to study Chinese, viz., Aspirates and Tones. They differ entirely from the same things in Western languages, where they may be local peculiarities, or may merely express surprise, horror, or any other emotion, but have no special meaning and do not form an essential part of the language. In Chinese, an Aspirate is a sort of explosive sound, such as may be heard in the case of a person who stutters when he tries to say "pudding, please." Or it may be such a sound as should be given to '*ch*' in the word '*loch*.' But it must be heard to be understood and acquired.

The presence or absence of an Aspirate makes as much difference to the meaning of a word, as a difference of spelling in words of similar sound in English, as for instance, '*team*' and '*teem*'; or the omission of an '*h*' in say '*hair*,' '*air*.' The Chinese, strange to say, have no name for it; the words used by foreign students to express it (To send forth breath 出氣) being coined to supply the deficiency. There is nothing in the formation of a Chinese character to denote whether it is aspirated or not, but in expressing its sound in Roman letters an inverted comma usually indicates it. This rule is followed throughout, thus:—*t‘ao*, *p‘ing*, *t‘i*, *ch‘i*, etc.

Since Chinese teachers have not had to teach pupils who were ignorant of aspirates, they are naturally a little at sea when they come to teach foreigners. Hence the student should keep his ears open, reproduce all the aspirates he hears, faithfully imitating his teacher. When a teacher shakes his head and repeats a word, it is clear that his pupil has failed to reproduce the sound of the word with perfect accuracy, and it will be found in most cases that the aspirate has been omitted. In order to educate the ear, the following table has been drawn up. It should be gone over again and again, till the ear can readily distinguish between a word that is aspirated and one that is not.

## Table of Aspirated and Unaspirated Sounds.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 比$^{3}$ | *pi* | 課$^{4}$ | *kʻo* | 得$^{4}$ | *teh* | 樞$^{1}$ | *chʻu* | 當$^{1}$ | *tang* |
| 圮$^{3}$ | *pʻi* | 剪$^{3}$ | *chien* | 特$^{4}$ | *tʻeh* | 兵$^{1}$ | *ping* | 湯$^{1}$ | *tʻang* |
| 丁$^{1}$ | *ting* | 淺$^{3}$ | *chʻien* | 古$^{3}$ | *ku* | 娉$^{1}$ | *pʻing* | 豆$^{4}$ | *teo* |
| 聽$^{1}$ | *tʻing* | 告$^{4}$ | *kao* | 苦$^{3}$ | *kʻu* | 津$^{1}$ | *chin* | 頭$^{2}$ | *tʻeo* |
| 張$^{1}$ | *chang* | 靠$^{4}$ | *kʻao* | 底$^{3}$ | *ti* | 親$^{1}$ | *chʻin* | 栽$^{1}$ | *tsai* |
| 昌$^{1}$ | *chʻang* | 丹$^{1}$ | *tan* | 體$^{3}$ | *tʻi* | 抱$^{4}$ | *pao* | 裁$^{2}$ | *tsʻai* |
| 招$^{1}$ | *chao* | 灘$^{1}$ | *tʻan* | 擔$^{1}$ | *tan* | 泡$^{4}$ | *pʻao* | 髒$^{1}$ | *tsang* |
| 超$^{1}$ | *chʻao* | 吊$^{1}$ | *tiao* | 貪$^{1}$ | *tʻan* | 代$^{4}$ | *tai* | 倉$^{1}$ | *tsʻang* |
| 子$^{3}$ | *tsï* | 挑$^{1}$ | *tʻiao* | 早$^{3}$ | *tsao* | 太$^{4}$ | *tʻai* | 焦$^{1}$ | *chiao* |
| 此$^{3}$ | *tsʻï* | 幹$^{4}$ | *kan* | 草$^{3}$ | *tsʻao* | 見$^{4}$ | *chien* | 俏$^{4}$ | *chʻiao* |
| 狗$^{3}$ | *keo* | 看$^{4}$ | *kʻan* | 征$^{1}$ | *cheng* | 欠$^{4}$ | *chʻien* | 短$^{3}$ | *tuan* |
| 口$^{3}$ | *kʻeo* | 罷$^{4}$ | *pa* | 稱$^{1}$ | *chʻeng* | 白$^{4}$ | *peh* | 團$^{2}$ | *tʻuan* |
| 揪$^{1}$ | *chiu* | 帕$^{4}$ | *pʻa* | 多$^{1}$ | *to* | 迫$^{4}$ | *pʻeh* | 贊$^{4}$ | *tsan* |
| 秋$^{1}$ | *chʻiu* | 鼓$^{3}$ | *ku* | 拖$^{1}$ | *tʻo* | 居$^{1}$ | *chü* | 殘$^{2}$ | *tsʻan* |
| 道$^{4}$ | *tao* | 苦$^{3}$ | *kʻu* | 果$^{3}$ | *ko* | 去$^{4}$ | *chʻü* | 呆$^{1}$ | *tai* |
| 套$^{4}$ | *tʻao* | 精$^{1}$ | *ching* | 可$^{3}$ | *kʻo* | 單$^{1}$ | *tan* | 台$^{2}$ | *tʻai* |
| 宗$^{1}$ | *tsong* | 清$^{1}$ | *chʻing* | 官$^{1}$ | *kuan* | 炭$^{4}$ | *tʻan* | 則$^{2}$ | *tseh* |
| 聰$^{1}$ | *tsʻong* | 忠$^{1}$ | *chong* | 寬$^{1}$ | *kʻuan* | 等$^{3}$ | *teng* | 策$^{4}$ | *tsʻeh* |
| 個$^{4}$ | *ko* | 冲$^{1}$ | *chʻong* | 朱$^{1}$ | *chu* | 疼$^{2}$ | *tʻeng* | | |

## TONES.

The second peculiarity of the Chinese language is the Tones. These form a sort of rythmical chime which is not unpleasing to the ear, and which may be acquired by closely following the pronunciation of the teacher.

They are an integral part of the language and should be learnt as such; no sentence should be committed to memory without them. To know them and use them aright is of great value. They give *character* to speech and sharply differentiate a speaker who uses them from one who neglects them. A foreigner who ignores them does not speak like a Chinese who naturally employs them all the time. A preacher who has no Tones is apt to be an offence or an infliction to his audience, who at once relegate him to the rank of a poor speaker. Thoroughly to know them is also of great value in the event of having to change one's dialect. For example, the first tone as heard in Nanking, is quite different from the same tone as heard in Hankow. But if the student has learnt the tones as part of the words, he will have little difficulty, for he will rightly conclude that if one word is sounded in a certain way, all the other words in that tone will be sounded in the same way. Any time therefore given to acquiring a thorough knowledge of them will be amply repaid later on.

The following Tables should be read over till the ear can distinguish one tone from another and recognize it when heard alone.

The Tables are of two kinds, one of which may be called meaningless, since it is simply a repetition of the same sound in different tones; the other, which may be called significant, is made up of intelligible sentences. These latter should be committed to memory, as it will then be easy to recall them and the tones at the same time. And the fact that they are not without significance will make their study less monotonous than droning over a Table of Sounds devoid of meaning. When the tones can be reproduced accurately, the Sound Table should be left and the study of the Lessons begun; the various Reading Lessons are intended to furnish exercises on the tones as well as on the study of Idiom.

There are five tones in Southern, four in Northern, and theoretically the same number in Western Mandarin. These are as follows:—

1. Upper even tone, or 上平聲 *shang-p'ing sheng.*
2. Lower even tone, or 下平聲 *hsia-p'ing sheng.*
3. Ascending tone, or 上聲 *shang sheng.*
4. Departing tone, or 去聲 *ch'ü sheng.*
5. Entering tone, or 入聲 *ruh sheng.*

Chinese teachers mark them by small circles at the corner of the characters, but they are marked in this book by figures placed at the top right hand corner of the character, *e.g.*, 書$^1$. 紙$^3$, etc.

In reading with the teacher raise the voice slightly above conversational pitch and avoid excessive emphasis. Too much emphasis makes jerky Chinese, and if misplaced is apt to alter the meaning of a sentence. Try and catch the cadence produced by the succession of tones and by clear enunciation reproduce it distinctly. Discard all muttering and follow the intonation, imitating the teacher in all respects. As progress is made, and fluency acquired, it will be easy to reproduce phrases and sentences with a greater degree of naturalness.

## Exercises on the Tones.

### TABLE I.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 夫 | 1 | *fu* |
| 扶 | 2 | *fu* |
| 府 | 3 | *fu* |
| 付 | 4 | *fu* |
| 福 | 5 | *fu* |
| 梯 | 1 | *t‘i* |
| 題 | 2 | *t‘i* |
| 體 | 3 | *t‘i* |
| 替 | 4 | *t‘i* |
| 剔 | 5 | *t‘ih* |
| 耶 | 1 | *ie* |
| 爺 | 2 | *ie* |
| 野 | 3 | *ie* |
| 夜 | 4 | *ie* |
| 頁 | 5 | *ieh* |
| 衣 | 1 | *i* |
| 移 | 2 | *i* |
| 倚 | 3 | *i* |
| 義 | 4 | *i* |
| 益 | 5 | *ih* |
| 烏 | 1 | *u* |
| 無 | 2 | *u* |
| 五 | 3 | *u* |
| 務 | 4 | *u* |
| 屋 | 5 | *uh* |
| 些 | 1 | *hsie* |
| 邪 | 2 | *hsie* |
| 寫 | 3 | *hsie* |
| 謝 | 4 | *hsie* |
| 洩 | 5 | *hsieh* |
| 低 | 1 | *ti* |
| 提 | 2 | *t‘i* |
| 底 | 3 | *ti* |
| 弟 | 4 | *ti* |
| 的 | 5 | *tih* |
| 摸 | 1 | *mo* |
| 魔 | 2 | *mo* |
| 麼 | 3 | *mo* |
| 磨 | 4 | *mo* |
| 末 | 5 | *moh* |
| 呼 | 1 | *hu* |
| 湖 | 2 | *hu* |
| 虎 | 3 | *hu* |
| 戶 | 4 | *hu* |
| 忽 | 5 | *huh* |
| 批 | 1 | *p‘i* |
| 皮 | 2 | *p‘i* |
| 痞 | 3 | *p‘i* |
| 屁 | 4 | *p‘i* |
| 劈 | 5 | *p‘ih* |
| 嗎 | 1 | *ma* |
| 麻 | 2 | *ma* |
| 馬 | 3 | *ma* |
| 罵 | 4 | *ma* |
| 抹 | 5 | *mah* |
| 詩 | 1 | *shï* |
| 時 | 2 | *shï* |
| 始 | 3 | *shï* |
| 市 | 4 | *shï* |
| 拾 | 5 | *shïh* |
| 鋪 | 1 | *p‘u* |
| 菩 | 2 | *p‘u* |
| 普 | 3 | *p‘u* |
| 舖 | 4 | *p‘u* |
| 僕 | 5 | *p‘uh* |
| 欺 | 1 | *ch‘i* |
| 其 | 2 | *ch‘i* |
| 起 | 3 | *ch‘i* |
| 契 | 4 | *ch‘i* |
| 乞 | 5 | *ch‘ih* |

### TABLE II.

### SENTENCES OF FIVE CHARACTERS.

The cart runs in the appointed track 車行有定轍.
To have the heart at rest is a great blessing 心平有大福.
The signboard may be varnished 招牌可上漆.
He travelled about in five large countries 周流五大國.
They have cheated Lao Cheng-luh 欺瞞老正祿.
He complacently thought of going to the feast 安然想赴席
Alas! the water has burst the water-gate 哎呀水破閘.
The regulations were drawn up with a purpose 章程有意立
In fine weather rain is scarce 天晴雨就缺.
It is daylight, betake yourself early to study 天明早上學.

## SENTENCES OF FOUR CHARACTERS.

There is an inn to the south of the hill 山 前 有 店.
He greatly disliked to purchase goods 憎 嫌 買 貨.
Shut the door and take a seat 關 門 請 坐.
The surface of large and small rivers 江 河 水 面.
Transplant the willow tree 栽 挪 柳 樹.
Yamen runners make trouble 差 人 惹 事.
He shewed great partiality for Lao-rï 偏 疼 老 二.
First chat about filial piety 先 談 孝 道.
Listen to them making a noise 聽 人 吵 鬧.
Where people are of the same mind it is easy to act 心 同 好 辦

# THE ROMANIZED SYSTEM.

It is of great value to be able to express Chinese sounds uniformly in Roman letters, but it is by no means an easy task to form a system which shall be at once accurate and consistent. Up till now no one system has satisfied all requirements, partly owing to the fact that the same character is pronounced with varying shades of difference in different parts of the Mandarin-speaking area, and partly because vowel sounds are pronounced differently, not only by people of different nationality, but by people who reside in different parts of the same country. And there are certain sounds that perhaps cannot be expressed perfectly by any combination of English letters. As Mateer well says: "No combinations of English letters can completely represent all the minor distinctions of even one dialect, much less those of a number of dialects. A certain margin or suppleness must be given to the spelling of each syllable, especially for the many minor modifications made by change of tone. In every dialect also there are occasional stray sounds which may be regarded as accidental variations, and need not be provided for in a syllabary of the dialect."

A few years ago the Chinese government appointed a commission to evolve order out of chaos in the spelling of the names of Chinese cities. This it did with a measure of success, but if it had gone a step further, and constructed a scientific system for expressing Chinese sounds, it would have earned the gratitude of students of Chinese, and have brought to an end the Babel of existing systems.

Beginners using this book are recommended to acquire the system of romanized used in it, *as it stands.* Later on they may improve on it, but meanwhile it will be of great advantage to them if they can write down the Chinese sounds they learn according to a uniform system. Failing this, they will write the same sound in several different ways, owing to the fact that their ears are not trained to distinguish between sounds that are nearly, but not quite, alike: they should also bear in mind the fact that *letters are not sounds*, but only symbols representing sounds.

The system adopted in this and other China Inland Mission handbooks is that of the late Rev. J. H. Taylor, founder of the

Mission. It is an adaptation of a Chinese method of expressing sounds, called *fan ch‘ieh* 反切, and is analogous to the system adopted in teaching young children by many eminent teachers in the West. It consists in dividing words into Initials and Finals and combining them to produce the full sound of the word. For example, a child may be taught to spell ‘*cat*’ by separate letters—‘*c*,’ ‘*a*,’ ‘*t*,’ or by making ‘*c*’ the initial and ‘*at*’ the final sound—‘*c*,’ ‘*at*’=cat. The latter method it is believed is the one best adapted to Chinese sounds, and is accordingly adopted in books published by the China Inland Mission.

In the following Tables the Initials and Finals are first given alone, then combined, the combination giving the sounds of the characters following them. These should be read over with the teacher and the value of the letters acquired. This will be of great value in obtaining a fuller knowledge both of aspirates and tones, as well as of sounds.

The best way to acquire the power to express accurately any given sound is mentally to divide it into initial and final, thus:—

*ch-a*=*cha*
*h-ao*=*hao*
*hs-iao*=*hsiao*
*l-eng*=*leng*
*p-ien*=*pien*
*k-uen*=*kuen*
*ts-uan*=*tsuan*, and so on with other sounds.

## INITIALS AND FINALS.

### INITIALS.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *ch* | 摺$^2$ | *hs* | 吸$^1$ | *m* | 麥$^4$ | *r* | 熱$^4$ | *t‘* | 特$^4$ |
| *ch‘* | 撤$^4$ | *k* | 格$^2$ | *n* | 肭$^4$ | *s* | 色$^4$ | *ts* | 則$^2$ |
| *f* | 法$^4$ | *k‘* | 客$^4$ | *p* | 白$^2$ | *sh* | 舌$^2$ | *ts‘* | 側$^4$ |
| *h* | 黑$^1$ | *l* | 勒$^4$ | *p‘* | 珀$^4$ | *t* | 得$^4$ | | |

## FINALS.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *a* | 呵$^1$ | *ai* | 愛$^4$ | *uei* | 爲$^2$ | *o* | 我$^3$ | *ueh* | 或$^4$ |
| *ia* | 亞$^4$ | *iai* | 挨$^2$ | *ie* | 也$^3$ | *ong* | 甕$^4$ | *ieh* | 葉$^4$ |
| *ua* | 瓦$^3$ | *uai* | 外$^4$ | *üe* | 靴$^1$ | *iong* | 用$^4$ | *üeh* | 月$^4$ |
| *an* | 安$^1$ | *œ* | 遮$^1$ | *ien* | 言$^2$ | *u* | 五$^3$ | *ïh* | 直$^2$ |
| *uan* | 完$^2$ | *en* | 恩$^1$ | *üen* | 遠$^3$ | *iu* | 憂$^1$ | *ih* | 一$^1$ |
| *ang* | 昂$^2$ | *uen* | 文$^2$ | *ï* | 之$^1$ | *ü* | 魚$^2$ | *oh* | 惡$^4$ |
| *iang* | 央$^1$ | *eng* | 硬$^4$ | *i* | 衣$^1$ | *ah* | 啊$^4$ | *ioh* | 約$^1$ |
| *uang* | 望$^4$ | *eo* | 偶$^3$ | *in* | 印$^4$ | *iah* | 押$^1$ | *uh* | 兀$^4$ |
| *ao* | 奧$^4$ | *ui* | 追$^1$ | *üin* | 允$^3$ | *uah* | 襪$^4$ | *iuh* | 鬱$^4$ |
| *iao* | 要$^4$ | *ei* | 貝$^4$ | *ing* | 影$^3$ | *eh* | 額$^2$ | *üh* | 余$^2$ |

## Notes on the Table of Initials and Finals.

### INITIALS.

*Ch* is pronounced as *ch* in church, not as *j* in jerk; *k* as in kirk, not as *g* in game; *p* as in park, not as *b* in bark; *t* as in tongue, not as *d* in done; *ts* as in tsar.

*H* has two sounds: one like the ordinary sound given to it in English, as in 'how;' the other a rougher sound which occurs before *e* and *a* and should be acquired from a teacher. When *h* occurs before a final beginning with *u*, it is sounded something like *wh* in 'which,' or 'whirl.' *H* is used in this system at the end of a word as a mark of the fifth tone or *Ruh sheng*.

*Sh* is pronounced with the teeth closed, and does not occur before the finals *i* or *ü*; *hs* on the contrary is pronounced with the teeth apart and only occurs before *i* or *ü*.

The value that should be attached to *r* is a debatable point; some holding that it has a *j* sound, others a combination of both *j* and *r*.

## FINALS.

*A* is pronounced as in 'far,' 'tar;' *œ* something like *œ* in 'vertebræ' with a slightly broader sound; *e* as in 'her,' 'perch;' *ai* as in 'aisle;' *ao* as *ou* in 'loud;' *o* as in 'go,' 'so;' *ei* as in 'weight;' *u* as in 'rule' or *oo* in 'goose;' *ü* as the French *ü*; *i* as in 'machine'—when followed by *n* or *ng* it is shortened as *i* in 'chin' or 'pin.' *Uei*, which stands alone, is similar in sound to *ui*, which is used in combination only.

The sound represented by the letter *ï* cannot be pronounced alone. It follows *ch*, *ch'*, *s*, *sh*, *ts*, *ts'*, and is intended to represent the partly hissing, partly grinding sound that is heard in the first syllable of 'scissors,' 'ship' or the *ss* in 'hiss.' When joined to *r* it is intended to represent a sound that is produced by turning the tongue back upon itself and pronouncing *er*: it must however be acquired from the living voice.

One sound not provided for in this system is that usually represented by *ng* initial. It occurs before vowels.

The letters *y* and *w* are not employed, since their values are given in the coalescence of the vowels *i* and *a*, *u* and *a*; thus *i*, *a*=*ya*; *u*, *a*=*wa*, etc. Moreover the omission of these two letters avoids the inconsistency of writing *yao* alone and *chiao* in combination, or *yen*, *pien*, and so on.

A few characters are printed in hollow type. This is done to indicate that the combination of letters before them does not represent their full sound. No characters in the language do represent the sound needed to form the final syllable of certain words; a part of the sound of some characters is therefore taken; but it will be found that if this be joined to an initial, the combination will give the full sound of suitable characters. For example, *œ* joined to *ch* equals *chœ*, the sound of the character 遮; *ui* joined to *t* equals *tui*, the sound of the character 兌; and so on with any of the others.

# COMBINATIONS OF INITIALS AND FINALS.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *cha* | 渣$^1$ | *ch‘ïh* | 尺$^3$ | *ch‘ong* | 寵$^3$ | *fang* | 方$^1$ | *huen* | 昏$^1$ |
| *chah* | 閘$^2$ | *chia* | 加$^1$ | *chu* | 註$^4$ | *fei* | 非$^1$ | *hsi* | 希$^1$ |
| *ch‘a* | 茶$^2$ | *chiah* | 甲$^3$ | *chuh* | 竹$^2$ | *fen* | 分$^1$ | *hsih* | 吸$^1$ |
| *ch‘ah* | 插$^1$ | *ch‘ia* | 卡$^3$ | *ch‘u* | 除$^2$ | *feng* | 風$^1$ | *hsia* | 下$^4$ |
| *chœ* | 這$^4$ | *ch‘iah* | 恰$^4$ | *ch‘uh* | 出$^1$ | *feo* | 否$^3$ | *hsiah* | 瞎$^1$ |
| *ch‘œ* | 扯$^3$ | *chiang* | 江$^1$ | *chua* | 抓$^1$ | *fu* | 夫$^1$ | *hsiai* | 鞋$^2$ |
| *chai* | 齋$^1$ | *chiang* | 匠$^4$ | *chuai* | 拽$^3$ | *fuh* | 福$^2$ | *hsiang* | 香$^1$ |
| *ch‘ai* | 柴$^2$ | *ch‘iang* | 强$^2$ | *ch‘uai* | 揣$^3$ | *ha* | 哈$^1$ | *hsiao* | 孝$^4$ |
| *chan* | 暫$^4$ | *chiao* | 轎$^4$ | *chuan* | 專$^1$ | *hai* | 海$^3$ | *hsie* | 謝$^4$ |
| *ch‘an* | 產$^3$ | *ch‘iao* | 橋$^2$ | *ch‘uan* | 川$^1$ | *hai* | 孩$^2$ | *hsieh* | 歇$^1$ |
| *chang* | 張$^1$ | *chie* | 姐$^3$ | *chuang* | 莊$^1$ | *han* | 汗$^4$ | *hsien* | 先$^1$ |
| *ch‘ang* | 唱$^4$ | *chieh* | 節$^2$ | *ch‘uang* | 牀$^2$ | *hang* | 杭$^2$ | *hsin* | 心$^1$ |
| *chao* | 招$^1$ | *ch‘ie* | 且$^3$ | *chueh* | 拙$^1$ | *hao* | 好$^3$ | *hsing* | 興$^1$ |
| *ch‘ao* | 潮$^2$ | *ch‘ieh* | 切$^4$ | *chuen* | 准$^3$ | *heh* | 黑$^1$ | *hsioh* | 學$^2$ |
| *cheh* | 折$^2$ | *chien* | 件$^4$ | *ch‘uen* | 春$^1$ | *hen* | 恨$^4$ | *hsiong* | 凶$^1$ |
| *ch‘eh* | 屮$^4$ | *ch‘ien* | 千$^1$ | *chui* | 追$^1$ | *heng* | 恒$^2$ | *hsiu* | 休$^1$ |
| *chen* | 眞$^1$ | *chin* | 近$^4$ | *ch‘ui* | 吹$^1$ | *heo* | 侯$^2$ | *hsiuh* | 蓄$^4$ |
| *ch‘en* | 臣$^2$ | *ch‘in* | 親$^1$ | *chü* | 聚$^4$ | *ho* | 火$^3$ | *hsü* | 虛$^1$ |
| *cheng* | 正$^4$ | *ching* | 經$^1$ | *chüh* | 局$^2$ | *hoh* | 合$^2$ | *hsüh* | 戌$^1$ |
| *ch‘eng* | 成$^2$ | *ch‘ing* | 輕$^1$ | *ch‘ü* | 去$^4$ | *hong* | 烘$^1$ | *hsüe* | 靴$^1$ |
| *cheo* | 周$^1$ | *chioh* | 脚$^3$ | *ch‘üh* | 曲$^1$ | *hu* | 呼$^1$ | *hsüeh* | 血$^3$ |
| *ch‘eo* | 丑$^3$ | *ch‘ioh* | 却$^4$ | *chüeh* | 絕$^2$ | *huh* | 忽$^1$ | *hsüen* | 選$^3$ |
| *chi* | 計$^4$ | *chiong* | 迥$^3$ | *ch‘üeh* | 缺$^1$ | *hua* | 化$^4$ | *hsüin* | 巡$^2$ |
| *chih* | 極$^2$ | *ch‘iong* | 窮$^2$ | *chüen* | 倦$^4$ | *huah* | 滑$^2$ | *kai* | 該$^1$ |
| *ch‘i* | 其$^2$ | *chiu* | 揪$^1$ | *ch‘üen* | 拳$^2$ | *huai* | 懷$^2$ | *k‘ai* | 開$^1$ |
| *ch‘ih* | 七$^1$ | *ch‘iu* | 囚$^2$ | *chüin* | 郡$^4$ | *huan* | 渙$^4$ | *kan* | 甘$^1$ |
| *chï* | 紙$^3$ | *choh* | 捉$^1$ | *ch‘üin* | 群$^2$ | *huang* | 皇$^2$ | *k‘an* | 看$^4$ |
| *chïh* | 直$^2$ | *ch‘oh* | 戳$^1$ | *fah* | 罰$^2$ | *hueh* | 或$^4$ | *kang* | 杠$^1$ |
| *ch‘ï* | 痴$^1$ | *chong* | 中$^1$ | *fan* | 凡$^2$ | *huei* | 灰$^1$ | *k‘ang* | 康$^1$ |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *kao* | 羔$^{1}$ | *k'ueh* | 闊$^{4}$ | *lü* | 呂$^{3}$ | *ni* | 你$^{3}$ | *pei* | 貝$^{4}$ |
| *k'ao* | 靠$^{4}$ | *kuei* | 跪$^{4}$ | *lüh* | 律$^{4}$ | *nih* | 匿$^{4}$ | *p'ei* | 配$^{4}$ |
| *keh* | 格$^{2}$ | *k'uei* | 葵$^{2}$ | *ma* | 麻$^{2}$ | *niang* | 娘$^{2}$ | *pen* | 本$^{3}$ |
| *k'eh* | 客$^{4}$ | *kuen* | 棍$^{4}$ | *mah* | 抹$^{3}$ | *niao* | 鳥$^{3}$ | *p'en* | 盆$^{2}$ |
| *ken* | 根$^{1}$ | *k'uen* | 困$^{4}$ | *mai* | 買$^{3}$ | *nieh* | 捏$^{1}$ | *peng* | 崩$^{1}$ |
| *k'en* | 肯$^{3}$ | *la* | 拉$^{1}$ | *man* | 慢$^{4}$ | *nien* | 年$^{2}$ | *p'eng* | 朋$^{2}$ |
| *keng* | 梗$^{3}$ | *lah* | 辣$^{4}$ | *mang* | 忙$^{2}$ | *nin* | 您$^{3}$ | *peo* | 掊$^{1}$ |
| *k'eng* | 鏗$^{1}$ | *lai* | 來$^{2}$ | *mao* | 毛$^{2}$ | *ning* | 佞$^{4}$ | *p'eo* | 裒$^{1}$ |
| *keo* | 狗$^{3}$ | *lan* | 濫$^{4}$ | *meh* | 麥$^{4}$ | *nioh* | 虐$^{4}$ | *pi* | 避$^{4}$ |
| *k'eo* | 口$^{3}$ | *lang* | 浪$^{4}$ | *mei* | 美$^{3}$ | *niu* | 牛$^{2}$ | *pih* | 筆$^{3}$ |
| *kiai* | 界$^{4}$ | *lao* | 勞$^{2}$ | *men* | 門$^{2}$ | *no* | 懦$^{4}$ | *p'i* | 皮$^{2}$ |
| *k'iai* | 楷$^{3}$ | *leh* | 勒$^{4}$ | *meng* | 蒙$^{2}$ | *nong* | 農$^{2}$ | *p'ih* | 匹$^{3}$ |
| *ko* | 戈$^{1}$ | *leng* | 冷$^{3}$ | *meo* | 謀$^{2}$ | *nu* | 奴$^{2}$ | *piao* | 標$^{1}$ |
| *koh* | 割$^{1}$ | *leo* | 樓$^{2}$ | *mi* | 迷$^{2}$ | *nuan* | 暖$^{3}$ | *p'iao* | 瓢$^{2}$ |
| *k'o* | 科$^{1}$ | *li* | 利$^{4}$ | *mih* | 蜜$^{4}$ | *nuen* | 嫩$^{4}$ | *pieh* | 別$^{2}$ |
| *k'oh* | 渴$^{3}$ | *lih* | 力$^{4}$ | *miao* | 苗$^{2}$ | *nui* | 內$^{4}$ | *p'ieh* | 撇$^{1}$ |
| *kong* | 共$^{4}$ | *liang* | 凉$^{2}$ | *mieh* | 滅$^{4}$ | *nü* | 女$^{3}$ | *pien* | 邊$^{1}$ |
| *k'ong* | 孔$^{3}$ | *liao* | 了$^{3}$ | *mien* | 眠$^{2}$ | *o* | 臥$^{4}$ | *p'ien* | 篇$^{1}$ |
| *ku* | 姑$^{1}$ | *lieh* | 列$^{4}$ | *min* | 民$^{2}$ | *oh* | 惡$^{4}$ | *pin* | 殯$^{4}$ |
| *kuh* | 骨$^{2}$ | *lien* | 連$^{2}$ | *ming* | 明$^{2}$ | *pa* | 巴$^{1}$ | *p'in* | 貧$^{2}$ |
| *k'u* | 枯$^{1}$ | *lin* | 臨$^{2}$ | *miu* | 謬$^{4}$ | *pah* | 拔$^{2}$ | *ping* | 兵$^{1}$ |
| *k'uh* | 哭$^{1}$ | *ling* | 靈$^{2}$ | *mo* | 模$^{2}$ | *p'a* | 怕$^{4}$ | *p'ing* | 平$^{2}$ |
| *kua* | 瓜$^{1}$ | *lioh* | 略$^{4}$ | *moh* | 末$^{4}$ | *pai* | 拜$^{4}$ | *po* | 波$^{1}$ |
| *kuah* | 颳$^{1}$ | *liu* | 溜$^{4}$ | *mu* | 母$^{3}$ | *p'ai* | 排$^{2}$ | *poh* | 撥$^{1}$ |
| *k'ua* | 跨$^{4}$ | *lo* | 羅$^{2}$ | *muh* | 目$^{4}$ | *pan* | 半$^{4}$ | *p'o* | 婆$^{2}$ |
| *kuai* | 怪$^{4}$ | *loh* | 落$^{4}$ | *na* | 那$^{3}$ | *p'an* | 盤$^{2}$ | *p'oh* | 潑$^{1}$ |
| *k'uai* | 快$^{4}$ | *long* | 弄$^{4}$ | *nah* | 納$^{4}$ | *pang* | 幫$^{1}$ | *pu* | 步$^{4}$ |
| *kuan* | 關$^{1}$ | *lu* | 盧$^{2}$ | *nai* | 乃$^{3}$ | *p'ang* | 旁$^{2}$ | *puh* | 不$^{1}$ |
| *k'uan* | 寬$^{1}$ | *luh* | 鹿$^{4}$ | *nan* | 難$^{2}$ | *pao* | 報$^{4}$ | *p'u* | 普$^{3}$ |
| *kuang* | 光$^{1}$ | *luan* | 亂$^{4}$ | *nang* | 囊$^{2}$ | *p'ao* | 跑$^{2}$ | *p'uh* | 僕$^{2}$ |
| *k'uang* | 狂$^{2}$ | *luen* | 輪$^{2}$ | *nao* | 鬧$^{1}$ | *peh* | 白$^{2}$ | *ræ* | 惹$^{3}$ |
| *kueh* | 國$^{2}$ | *lui* | 雷$^{2}$ | *neng* | 能$^{2}$ | *p'eh* | 珀$^{4}$ | *ran* | 染$^{3}$ |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *rang* | 讓$^{4}$ | *su* | 蘇$^{1}$ | *tah* | 達$^{2}$ | *t‘ing* | 聽$^{1}$ | *tseh* | 則$^{4}$ |
| *rao* | 饒$^{2}$ | *suh* | 速$^{2}$ | *t‘a* | 他$^{1}$ | *tiu* | 丟$^{1}$ | *ts‘eh* | 側$^{1}$ |
| *reh* | 熱$^{4}$ | *suan* | 算$^{4}$ | *t‘ah* | 塔$^{3}$ | *to* | 惰$^{4}$ | *tsen* | 怎$^{3}$ |
| *ren* | 人$^{2}$ | *suen* | 孫$^{1}$ | *tai* | 歹$^{3}$ | *toh* | 奪$^{2}$ | *ts‘en* | 參$^{1}$ |
| *reng* | 仍$^{2}$ | *sui* | 隨$^{2}$ | *t‘ai* | 臺$^{2}$ | *t‘o* | 陀$^{2}$ | *tseng* | 爭$^{1}$ |
| *reo* | 柔$^{2}$ | *sha* | 沙$^{1}$ | *tan* | 單$^{1}$ | *t‘oh* | 脫$^{4}$ | *ts‘eng* | 層$^{2}$ |
| *rï* | 兒$^{2}$ | *shah* | 殺$^{1}$ | *t‘an* | 談$^{2}$ | *tong* | 洞$^{1}$ | *tseo* | 走$^{3}$ |
| *rïh* | 日$^{4}$ | *shæ* | 舍$^{3}$ | *tang* | 當$^{1}$ | *t‘ong* | 同$^{2}$ | *ts‘eo* | 愁$^{2}$ |
| *roh* | 若$^{4}$ | *shai* | 篩$^{1}$ | *t‘ang* | 堂$^{2}$ | *tu* | 都$^{1}$ | *tsï* | 子$^{3}$ |
| *rong* | 戎$^{2}$ | *shan* | 山$^{1}$ | *tao* | 道$^{4}$ | *tuh* | 獨$^{2}$ | *ts‘ï* | 慈$^{2}$ |
| *ru* | 如$^{2}$ | *shang* | 上$^{4}$ | *t‘ao* | 桃$^{2}$ | *t‘u* | 屠$^{2}$ | *tso* | 座$^{4}$ |
| *ruh* | 肉$^{4}$ | *shao* | 燒$^{1}$ | *teh* | 得$^{2}$ | *t‘uh* | 禿$^{1}$ | *tsoh* | 鑿$^{4}$ |
| *ruan* | 軟$^{3}$ | *sheh* | 舌$^{2}$ | *t‘eh* | 特$^{4}$ | *tuan* | 短$^{3}$ | *ts‘o* | 錯$^{4}$ |
| *ruen* | 閏$^{4}$ | *shen* | 身$^{1}$ | *teng* | 等$^{3}$ | *t‘uan* | 團$^{2}$ | *ts‘oh* | 撮$^{1}$ |
| *rui* | 蕊$^{3}$ | *sheng* | 聖$^{4}$ | *t‘eng* | 騰$^{2}$ | *tuen* | 遁$^{4}$ | *tsong* | 宗$^{1}$ |
| *sa* | 洒$^{3}$ | *sheo* | 收$^{1}$ | *teo* | 豆$^{4}$ | *t‘uen* | 吞$^{1}$ | *ts‘ong* | 從$^{2}$ |
| *sah* | 撒$^{3}$ | *shï* | 詩$^{1}$ | *t‘eo* | 頭$^{2}$ | *tui* | 兌$^{4}$ | *tsu* | 助$^{4}$ |
| *sai* | 腮$^{1}$ | *shïh* | 失$^{1}$ | *ti* | 地$^{4}$ | *t‘ui* | 推$^{1}$ | *tsuh* | 卒$^{2}$ |
| *san* | 傘$^{3}$ | *shoh* | 說$^{1}$ | *tih* | 的$^{1}$ | *tsa* | 咱$^{3}$ | *ts‘u* | 鋤$^{2}$ |
| *sang* | 喪$^{1}$ | *shu* | 暑$^{3}$ | *t‘i* | 題$^{2}$ | *tsah* | 雜$^{2}$ | *ts‘uh* | 促$^{1}$ |
| *sao* | 騷$^{1}$ | *shuh* | 叔$^{2}$ | *t‘ih* | 踢$^{1}$ | *ts‘ah* | 擦$^{1}$ | *tsuan* | 揝$^{3}$ |
| *seh* | 色$^{4}$ | *shua* | 耍$^{3}$ | *tiao* | 掉$^{4}$ | *tsai* | 在$^{4}$ | *ts‘uan* | 篡$^{4}$ |
| *sen* | 森$^{1}$ | *shuah* | 刷$^{1}$ | *t‘iao* | 挑$^{1}$ | *ts‘ai* | 菜$^{4}$ | *tsuen* | 尊$^{1}$ |
| *seng* | 生$^{1}$ | *shuai* | 帥$^{4}$ | *tie* | 爹$^{1}$ | *tsan* | 讚$^{1}$ | *ts‘uen* | 存$^{2}$ |
| *seo* | 叟$^{3}$ | *shuan* | 拴$^{1}$ | *tieh* | 疊$^{4}$ | *ts‘an* | 殘$^{2}$ | *tsui* | 罪$^{4}$ |
| *sï* | 四$^{4}$ | *shuang* | 爽$^{3}$ | *t‘ieh* | 帖$^{1}$ | *tsang* | 葬$^{4}$ | *ts‘ui* | 催$^{1}$ |
| *so* | 所$^{3}$ | *shuen* | 瞬$^{3}$ | *tien* | 電$^{4}$ | *ts‘ang* | 倉$^{1}$ | | |
| *soh* | 索$^{3}$ | *shui* | 水$^{3}$ | *t‘ien* | 田$^{2}$ | *tsao* | 早$^{3}$ | | |
| *song* | 送$^{4}$ | *ta* | 大$^{4}$ | *ting* | 丁$^{1}$ | *ts‘ao* | 曹$^{2}$ | | |

# TABLE OF RADICALS.

A ‘radical’ is the key by means of which characters are found in Chinese dictionaries. It forms a part of every character, hence a knowledge of radicals means a knowledge of the principal part of all the characters we may learn. The number of them is 214. They are numbered consecutively, and are divided into groups according to the number of the strokes they contain. Some are used much more frequently than others; these are indicated in this table by the definition of their meaning being printed in a larger type. Those that are rarely used are indicated by brackets. Their sound, tone, meaning and number should be learnt, beginning with those most frequently used. For the convenience of students who may find it easier to learn them from larger characters, they have been printed in larger type and published in pamphlet form.*

## 1 Stroke.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 一 | 1 | *ih*$^{1}$ | one. |
| 丨 | 2 | *kuen*$^{3}$ | a down stroke. |
| 丶 | 3 | *chu*$^{3}$ | a point. |
| 丿 | 4 | *p‘ieh*$^{1}$ | a stroke to the left. |
| 乙 | 5 | *ih*$^{4}$ | one; a hook. |
| 亅 | 6 | *keo*$^{1}$ | a barb. |

## 2 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 二 | 7 | *rï*$^{2}$ | two. |
| 亠 | 8 | *t‘eo*$^{2}$ | above. |
| 人 亻 | 9 | *REN*$^{2}$ | MAN. |
| 儿 | 10 | *ren*$^{2}$ | man. |
| 入 | 11 | *ruh*$^{4}$ | to enter. |
| 八 | 12 | *pah*$^{1}$ | eight. |
| 冂 | 13 | *ch‘* / *k* } *iong*$^{3}$ | a limit. |
| 冖 | 14 | *mih*$^{4}$ | to cover. |
| 冫 | 15 | *ping*$^{1}$ | icicle. |
| 几 | 16 | *ch* / *k* } *i*$^{1}$ | a bench. |
| 凵 | 17 | [*k‘an*$^{3}$ | a receptacle.] |
| 刀 刂 | 18 | *TAO*$^{1}$ | KNIFE; SWORD. |
| 力 | 19 | *lih*$^{4}$ | strength. |
| 勹 | 20 | *pao*$^{1}$ | to wrap. |
| 匕 | 21 | *pi*$^{3}$ | a spoon; ladle. |
| 匚 | 22 | *fang*· | a box. |
| 匸 | 23 | *hsi*$^{3}$ | to conceal. |
| 十 | 24 | *shïh*$^{2}$ | ten. |
| 卜 | 25 | *puh*$^{3}$ | to divine. |
| 卩 㔾 | 26 | *ch* / *ts* } *ieh*$^{2}$ | a joint; a signet. |
| 厂 | 27 | *han*$^{4}$ | a cliff. |
| 厶 | 28 | *sï*$^{1}$ | selfish. |
| 又 | 29 | *iu*$^{4}$ | the right hand; also. |

---

* THE CHINESE RADICALS. Price 12 cents. Shanghai: MISSION BOOK COMPANY and CHINA INLAND MISSION.

### 3 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 口 | 30 | *K‘EO*$^3$ | MOUTH. |
| 囗 | 31 | *huei*$^2$ | inclosure. |
| 土 | 32 | *T‘U*$^3$ | EARTH. |
| 士 | 33 | *sï*$^4$ | a scholar. |
| 夂 | 34 | [*chï*$^3$ | to follow.] |
| 夊 | 35 | [*sui*$^1$ | moving slowly.] |
| 夕 | 36 | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\s\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ih*$^2$ | evening. |
| 大 | 37 | *ta*$^4$ | great. |
| 女 | 38 | *NÜ*$^3$ | WOMAN. |
| 子 | 39 | *tsï*$^3$ | son. |
| 宀 | 40 | *MIEN*$^2$ | A ROOF. |
| 寸 | 41 | *ts‘uen*$^4$ | an inch. |
| 小 | 42 | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\s\end{matrix}\right\}$ *iao*$^3$ | small. |
| 尤尢 | 43 | *uang*$^1$ | lame. |
| 尸 | 44 | *shï*$^1$ | a corpse. |
| 屮 | 45 | [*ch‘eh*$^4$ | a sprout.] |
| 山 | 46 | *SHAN*$^1$ | A MOUNTAIN. |
| 巛川巜 | 47 | *ch‘uan*$^1$ | streams. |
| 工 | 48 | *kong*$^1$ | a labourer; skill. |
| 己 | 49 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *i*$^3$ | self. |
| 巾 | 50 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in*$^1$ | a napkin; cap. |
| 干 | 51 | *kan*$^1$ | a shield; to oppose. |
| 幺 | 52 | *iao*$^1$ | immature. |
| 广 | 53 | *ien*$^3$ | a covering. |
| 廴 | 54 | *in*$^3$ | to move on. |
| 廾 | 55 | *kong*$^3$ | hands joined. |
| 弋 | 56 | [*ih*$^4$ | a dart.] |
| 弓 | 57 | *kong*$^1$ | a bow. |
| 彐彑 | 58 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *i*$^4$ | pig’s head. |
| 彡 | 59 | *san*$^1$ | plumage. |
| 彳 | 60 | *ch‘ih*$^4$ | a step. |

### 4 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 心忄⺗ | 61 | $\left.\begin{matrix}HS\\S\end{matrix}\right\}$ *IN*$^1$ | HEART. |
| 戈 | 62 | *ko*$^1$ | a spear. |
| 戶 | 63 | *hu*$^4$ | a door; window. |
| 手扌 | 64 | *SHEO*$^3$ | A HAND. |
| 支 | 65 | [*chï*$^1$ | a branch.] |
| 攴攵 | 66 | *puh*$^1$ | to strike. |
| 文 | 67 | *uen*$^2$ | literature; elegant. |
| 斗 | 68 | *teo*$^3$ | a bushel. |
| 斤 | 69 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in*$^1$ | an axe; a weight of 1$\frac{1}{3}$℔. |
| 方 | 70 | *fang*$^1$ | square. |
| 旡无 | 71 | [*u*$^2$ | without.] |
| 日 | 72 | *RÏH*$^4$ | SUN; DAY. |
| 曰 | 73 | *üeh*$^1$ | to speak. |
| 月 | 74 | *üeh*$^4$ | the moon; a month. |
| 木 | 75 | *MUH*$^4$ | WOOD. |
| 欠 | 76 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch‘\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ien*$^4$ | to owe. |
| 止 | 77 | *chï*$^3$ | to stop. |
| 歹歺 | 78 | *tai*$^3$ | vicious. |
| 殳 | 79 | *shu*$^1$ | to kill. |
| 毋 | 80 | *u*$^2$ | to deny. |
| 比 | 81 | *pi*$^3$ | to compare. |
| 毛 | 82 | *mao*$^2$ | hair. |
| 氏 | 83 | *shï*$^4$ | surname. |
| 气 | 84 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch‘\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *i*$^4$ | breath. |
| 水氵 | 85 | *SHUI*$^3$ | WATER. |
| 火灬 | 86 | *HO*$^3$ | FIRE. |
| 爪爫 | 87 | *chao*$^1$ | claws. |
| 父 | 88 | *fu*$^4$ | father. |
| 爻 | 89 | [*hsiao*$^2$ | crosswise.] |
| 爿 | 90 | *ch‘uang*$^2$ | a couch. |
| 片 | 91 | *p‘ien*$^4$ | a splinter; a slice. |
| 牙 | 92 | *ia*$^2$ | a tooth. |
| 牛牜 | 93 | *niu*$^2$ | an ox; cattle. |
| 犬犭 | 94 | $\left.\begin{matrix}CH‘\\K\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ÜEN*$^3$ | A DOG. |

## 5 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 玄 | 95 | [*hsüen*$^{2}$ | sombre.] |
| 玉王王 | 96 | *Ü*$^{4}$ | A GEM. |
| 瓜 | 97 | *kua*$^{1}$ | melon; cucumber. |
| 瓦 | 98 | *ua*$^{3}$ | a tile. |
| 甘 | 99 | *kan*$^{1}$ | sweet. |
| 生 | 100 | *seng*$^{1}$ | to produce; born, life. |
| 用 | 101 | *iong*$^{4}$ | to use. |
| 田 | 102 | *t'ien*$^{2}$ | a field. |
| 疋 | 103 | *p'ih*$^{3}$ | a roll of cloth. |
| 疒 | 104 | *NIH*$^{1}$ | DISEASE. |
| 癶 | 105 | [*poh*$^{1}$ | back to back.] |
| 白 | 106 | *peh*$^{2}$ | white; in vain. |
| 皮 | 107 | *p'i*$^{2}$ | skin; bark. |
| 皿 | 108 | *ming*$^{3}$ | a dish. |
| 目罒 | 109 | *MUH*$^{4}$ | THE EYE. |
| 矛 | 110 | *meo*$^{2}$ | a lance. |
| 矢 | 111 | *shï*$^{3}$ | a dart. |
| 石 | 112 | *shïh*$^{2}$ | stone. |
| 示礻 | 113 | *SHÏ*$^{4}$ | TO REVEAL. |
| 禸 | 114 | *reo*$^{3}$ | a footprint. |
| 禾 | 115 | *HO*$^{2}$ | GRAIN. |
| 穴 | 116 | *hsüeh*$^{2}$ | a cave. |
| 立 | 117 | *lih*$^{4}$ | to set up. |

## 6 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 竹⺮ | 118 | *CHUH*$^{2}$ | BAMBOO. |
| 米 | 119 | *mi*$^{3}$ | rice. |
| 糸糸 | 120 | *SÏ*$^{1}$ | SILK. |
| 缶 | 121 | *feo*$^{3}$ | pottery. |
| 网罒冗 | 122 | *uang*$^{3}$ | a net. |
| 羊 | 123 | *iang*$^{2}$ | sheep; goats. |
| 羽 | 124 | *ü*$^{3}$ | feathers. |
| 老 | 125 | *lao*$^{3}$ | old; venerable. |
| 而 | 126 | *rï*$^{2}$ | and; and yet. |
| 耒 | 127 | *l*$\left\{\begin{matrix}ui^{3}\\ ei\end{matrix}\right.$ | a plough. |
| 耳 | 128 | *rï*$^{3}$ | the ear. |
| 聿 | 129 | *iuh*$^{4}$ | a pencil. |
| 肉月 | 130 | *RUH*$^{4}$ | FLESH. |
| 臣 | 131 | *ch'en*$^{2}$ | a statesman. |
| 自 | 132 | *tsï*$^{4}$ | from; self. |
| 至 | 133 | *chï*$^{4}$ | to arrive. |
| 臼 | 134 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\ k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *iu*$^{4}$ | a mortar. |
| 舌 | 135 | *sheh*$^{2}$ | the tongue. |
| 舛 | 136 | [*ch'uan*$^{3}$ | opposing.] |
| 舟 | 137 | *cheo*$^{1}$ | a boat. |
| 艮 | 138 | *ken*$^{4}$ | perverse; obstinate. |
| 色 | 139 | *seh*$^{4}$ | colour; vice. |
| 艸艹 | 140 | *TS'AO*$^{3}$ | GRASS: HERBS. |
| 虍 | 141 | *hu*$^{3}$ | a tiger. |
| 虫 | 142 | *CH'ONG*$^{2}$ | INSECTS. |
| 血 | 143 | *hsüeh*$^{4}$ | blood. |
| 行 | 144 | *hsing*$^{2}$ | to do; to walk. |
| 衣衤 | 145 | *I*$^{1}$ | CLOTHES. |
| 襾 | 146 | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\ s\end{matrix}\right\}$ *i*$^{1}$ | west. |

## 7 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 見 | 147 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\ k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ien*$^{4}$ | to see; perceive. |
| 角 | 148 | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\ k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ioh*$^{3}$ | a horn; a corner. |
| 言 | 149 | *IEN*$^{2}$ | WORDS; TO SPEAK. |
| 谷 | 150 | *kuh*$^{1}$ | a valley. |
| 豆 | 151 | *teo*$^{4}$ | beans. |
| 豕 | 152 | *shï*$^{3}$ | a pig. |
| 豸 | 153 | *chai*$^{4}$ | reptiles. |
| 貝 | 154 | *pei*$^{4}$ | precious; wealth. |
| 赤 | 155 | *ch'ïh*$^{3}$ | naked; flesh coloured. |
| 走 | 156 | *tseo*$^{3}$ | to walk. |
| 足 | 157 | *tsuh*$^{2}$ | the foot; enough. |
| 身 | 158 | *shen*$^{1}$ | the body. |
| 車 | 159 | *CH'AE*$^{1}$ | CART; BARROW. |
| 辛 | 160 | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\ s\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in*$^{1}$ | bitter. |
| 辰 | 161 | *ch'en*$^{2}$ | time. |
| 辵辶 | 162 | *CHOH*$^{4}$ | WALKING. |
| 邑阝 | 163 | *ih*$^{4}$ | a city. |
| 酉 | 164 | *iu*$^{3}$ | new wine. |
| 釆 | 165 | *pien*$^{4}$ | to separate. |
| 里 | 166 | *li*$^{3}$ | a Chinese mile. |

### 8 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 金 | 167 | *CH*<br>*K* } *IN*$^1$ | GOLD; METAL. |
| 長镸 | 168 | *ch‘ang*$^2$ | long. |
| 門 | 169 | *men*$^2$ | a door. |
| 阜阝 | 170 | *FEO*$^4$ | A MOUND. |
| 隶 | 171 | [*tai*$^4$ | to reach to.] |
| 隹 | 172 | *chui*$^1$ | short-tailed birds. |
| 雨⻗ | 173 | *ü*$^3$ | rain. |
| 青 | 174 | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *ing*$^2$ | green. |
| 非 | 175 | *fei*$^1$ | wrong; not. |

### 9 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 面 | 176 | *mien*$^4$ | the face. |
| 革 | 177 | *k* { *oh*$^2$<br>*eh* | raw hide. |
| 韋 | 178 | *uei*$^2$ | leather. |
| 韭 | 179 | [*ch*<br>*k* } *iu*$^3$ | leeks.] |
| 音 | 180 | *in*$^1$ | a sound. |
| 頁 | 181 | *ieh*$^4$ | leaf of a book. |
| 風 | 182 | *feng*$^1$ | wind. |
| 飛 | 183 | *fei*$^1$ | to fly. |
| 食 | 184 | *SHÏH*$^2$ | TO EAT. |
| 首 | 185 | *sheo*$^3$ | the head. |
| 香 | 186 | *hsiang*$^1$ | incense; fragrant. |

### 10 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 馬 | 187 | *MA*$^3$ | A HORSE. |
| 骨 | 188 | *kuh*$^3$ | a bone. |
| 高 | 189 | *kao*$^1$ | high. |
| 髟 | 190 | *piao*$^1$ | the hair. |
| 鬥 | 191 | *teo*$^4$ | to quarrel. |
| 鬯 | 192 | [*ch‘ang*$^4$ | fragrant herbs.] |
| 鬲 | 193 | [*lih*$^4$ | a vase.] |
| 鬼 | 194 | *kuei*$^3$ | a spirit; demon. |

### 11 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 魚 | 195 | *Ü*$^2$ | FISH. |
| 鳥 | 196 | *NIAO*$^3$ | BIRDS. |
| 鹵 | 197 | [*lu*$^3$ | salt land.] |
| 鹿 | 198 | *luh*$^4$ | a deer. |
| 麥 | 199 | *meh*$^4$ | wheat. |
| 麻 | 200 | *ma*$^2$ | hemp. |

### 12 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 黃 | 201 | *huang*$^2$ | yellow. |
| 黍 | 202 | [*shu*$^3$ | millet.] |
| 黑 | 203 | *heh*$^4$ | black. |
| 黹 | 204 | [*chï*$^4$ | embroidery.] |

### 13 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 黽 | 205 | [*min*$^3$ | a frog.] |
| 鼎 | 206 | [*ting*$^3$ | a tripod.] |
| 鼓 | 207 | [*ku*$^3$ | a drum.] |
| 鼠 | 208 | [*sh*<br>*ch‘* } *u*$^3$ | a rat.] |

### 14 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 鼻 | 209 | [*pi*$^2$ | the nose.] |
| 齊 | 210 | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *i*$^2$ | even; equal. |

### 15 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 齒 | 211 | *ch‘ï*$^3$ | front teeth. |

### 16 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 龍 | 212 | *long*$^2$ | dragon. |
| 龜 | 213 | [*kuei*$^1$ | a tortoise.] |

### 17 Strokes.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 龠 | 214 | [*ioh*$^4$ | a flute.] |

# CHINESE CHARACTERS.

## THEIR STRUCTURE, HOW TO FIND THEIR RADICALS, AND HOW TO FIND THEM IN A DICTIONARY.

1. A Chinese character, which is not itself a Radical, consists of two parts: the Radical and the Phonetic, or when it does not give the sound of the character, the Primitive. The Radical is one from the list of 214 Radicals, the Phonetic is the other half of the character, and, strange to say, the Chinese language contains no name for it. It is sometimes itself another Radical, as in 近 記 理 罵, but more frequently a compound character formed of another Radical and Phonetic, as in 語 造 羅.

Speaking very generally, for the rule is frequently broken, it would seem as if Chinese characters were constructed on the following principle:—The Radical should give a clue to the meaning of a character, the Phonetic a clue to its sound. Thus 油 *iu*, oil, comes from 由 *iu* as phonetic, and the *water* radical indicating a liquid; 神 *shen*, god or spirit, from 申 *shen*, as phonetic, and the *omen* radical; 駕 *chia*, to ride, from 加 *chia*, as phonetic, and the *horse* radical · 議 *i*, to discuss, from 義 *i*, as phonetic, and the *words* radical.

The beginner will often find a new character to be an old radical with a new phonetic, or sometimes merely a new combination of a familiar radical with a familiar phonetic.

2. A good deal of difficulty will be found at first, in knowing under what radical to look for any particular character, and unfortunately some of the commonest characters are the hardest to find. However, no one need be discouraged, for a few months' steady practice will work wonders in removing the difficulties.

The radical may occupy any part of the character. It may be at the top, as 竹 in 管; or at the bottom, as 皿 in 監; on the left, as 糸 in 給; on the right, as 阝 in 都; surrounding it, as 囗 in 固; or in the middle of it, as 口 in 周; partially surrounding it, as 疒 in 痕, or 辵 in 退, or 門 in 間; or the radical may be split in two, enclosing the phonetic, as 行 in 衙, or 衣 in 裏, or 二 in 五. Sometimes it is mixed up in a general sort of way with the phonetic, as 冂 in 再, or 大 in 泰, or 禾 in 穀, or 口 in 嘗.

3. *a.* Consider whether the character is a radical itself. Thus 音 香 高 辛 至 面 行 黑 麻 走 玉 色 are themselves radicals.

*b*. If the character is not a radical, the first step is to break it into two parts. In two cases out of three there will be one part on the right hand and another on the left; in which case it is easy to break the character up. Thus:—初就物創的沒樣暗郤認叫他作. Or the division may be horizontal, one half being above, the other beneath, and in this case the division is not quite so simple; as, 界意告督覆答萬負罪要靈琴. Or one half may enclose the other on two or more sides, as 有道同在造反底間因. There are in addition other forms which are harder to divide.

*c*. If one of the two parts is a radical and the other is not, obviously we must look for it under that part which *is* a radical; as for instance, 的釘福雖忽花, which come from 白金示隹心艹 respectively, the other halves not being radicals.

*d*. But where both halves of a character are radicals, the following rules must be applied:—

1. Where the character consists of a right hand and a left hand half, THE LEFT HAND HALF is the radical; as, for instance, 信加料塊如律性拉明根. Each of these examples consists of two radicals; but the one on the LEFT HAND is that under which one must look for it.

*Exceptions*:—The radicals 刀力攴斤殳彡欠阝 (163) [阝 170 is regular] 隹鳥, are generally found on the right side of the character, but in these cases the left side is seldom a radical.

The rule that the LEFT HAND portion of the character is the radical also holds in cases where the radical extends to two or more sides of the character. For instance:—庫尼建房虎赴連間因.

2. Where the character consists of an upper and lower half, both being radicals, the LOWER HALF is the radical. As, for instance: 思昏書果泉上兄冬分古告妾.

*Exceptions*:—The following radicals are placed at the top of the character:—艹 ⺮ [two very large groups] 亠 宀 穴 罒 雨 爫.

These rules will dispose of nineteen-twentieths of the characters in Chinese; though, alas! many exceptions will be found to them, such as 相 from 目 instead of 木; 妝 from 女 instead of 爿; 取 from 又 instead of 耳; 和 from 口 instead of 禾; but it will often be found that the meaning gives a reason why the rule was broken.

A balance remains of eccentric characters for which no rules can be made. For example 賸 from 貝; 歸 from 止; 與 from 臼; 聚 from 耳; 望 from 月; 直 from 目; and many others, for which see Lists of Difficult Characters in dictionaries.

## WRITING, WITH ORDER OF THE STROKES.

There are six forms of Chinese handwriting, four of which roughly correspond to Old English, German text, and other styles of fancy letters. The remaining two forms are somewhat akin to round hand and running hand; the latter, known as the 'grass character' 草字, varying in legibility, as in English, according to the penmanship of the writer. A beginner who looks upon this for the first time is apt to be discouraged, but he may draw consolation from the fact that the same characters printed, or written in ordinary script by his teacher, are much more easily recognised. The best cure for such discouragement is to learn to write. Naturally the printed form of the character is learnt first, but this done, it is a good thing to learn to write the characters so learnt. Chinese school boys trace a copy set them by the teacher. This doubtless is the best way, but as to whether every student of Chinese who comes to this country over twenty or thirty years of age should do likewise, is a moot point. A good deal depends on the student himself—his capacity, his power to use a pen or pencil, his future work, and so on. A shorter cut is to write with a soft pencil and give more attention to accuracy than to style in penmanship.

With a view to aid the beginner, a writing Exercise has been appended to each Lesson in the first three Parts of this book. These exercises are composed generally of such characters as have already occurred, and which are most commonly met with during the first few years of study. They should be written out from copies set by the teacher rather than from the printed forms, since they are freer in form and are more easily recognised in other connections. In writing, it is a good thing to notice the points of similarity and difference of form, and to differentiate between the Phonetic or Primitive and the Radical.* When a sufficient number of characters has been learnt to make it possible to write sentences, write them and get the teacher to correct them. By this means the power to write idiomatically will be acquired, and not merely the power to form letters and words. Later on, wider flights will be possible, when it will be a helpful exercise to compose descriptions of places, things, etc., and from these gradually pass on to subjects of a more abstract character.

The best way to learn where to begin in writing a character is to watch a teacher. It will be noticed that he begins and goes on in a regular order, usually starting from the top or left hand side. A few characters are appended, from which the general order may be learned. The full character is first printed at the side; the order of the strokes is indicated by the figures at the head of the Table. Let the teacher write these characters, and while he is writing compare the order he observes with the order here given

---

* See the Author's New Testament Vocabulary and A. B. C. of Chinese Writing. Shanghai: MISSION BOOK COMPANY and CHINA INLAND MISSION.

## 筆法之次序

|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 口 | 丨 | ㇕ | 一 |  |  |
| 日 | 丨 | ㇕ | 二 |  |  |
| 月 | 丿 | ㇆ | 二 |  |  |
| 內 | 丨 | ㇕ | 丿 | 乀 |  |
| 四 | 丨 | ㇕ | 儿 | 一 |  |
| 白 | 丿 | 丨 | ㇕ | 二 |  |
| 田 | 丨 | ㇕ | 一 | 丄 |  |
| 土 | 一 | 丨 | 一 |  |  |
| 王 | 二 | 丨 | 一 |  |  |
| 主 | 亠 | 丨 | 一 |  |  |
| 由 | 丨 | ㇕ | 一 | 丨 | 一 |
| 正 | 一 | 卜 | 丄 |  |  |
| 心 | 丶 | 乚 | 丶 |  |  |
| 可 | 一 | 口 | 亅 |  |  |
| 包 | 勹 | コ | 乚 |  |  |

|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 血 | 冂 | 〃 | 一 |  |  |
| 也 | 𠃌 | 丨 | 乚 |  |  |
| 女 | 𡿨 | 丿 | 一 |  |  |
| 糸 | 𠃋 | 厶 | 丨 | 八 |  |
| 民 | コ | 丄 | 一 | 乀 |  |
| 作 | 亻 | 𠂉 | 丨 | 二 |  |
| 弟 | 丷 | コ | ㇉ | 丿 |  |
| 走 | 土 | 卜 | 乀 |  |  |
| 衣 | 亠 | 亻 | 乀 |  |  |
| 見 | 目 | 丿 | 乚 |  |  |
| 兒 | F | 彐 | 丿 | 乚 |  |
| 勿 | 勹 | 𠂊 |  |  |  |
| 金 | 人 | 干 | 丷 | 一 |  |
| 花 | 一 | 〃 | 亻 | 匕 |  |
| 近 | 厂 | 丅 | 辶 |  |  |

# PHONETICS.

## DEFINITIONS.

Phonetics is the science of speech sounds. We may study how the sounds are produced by the actions of the vocal organs, how they differ in the effect they produce on the ear, and how they should be recorded. In most of the study that has been devoted to the languages of the Far East attention has been concentrated on the second and third of these three divisions. In this article the chief stress will be laid on the first division in order to supplement and correct what has been done on the others.

## USES OF PHONETICS.

The principal uses of phonetics may be briefly summarized. A knowledge of the science serves to correct one's own pronunciation. It also aids in the correct acquisition of a new language by enabling the student to differentiate between sounds somewhat similar to each other or to those used in the mother tongue. It further enables us to form and use entirely new sounds; and is of great value in teaching elocution, singing and shorthand. In teaching the deaf and dumb it is indispensable.

## THE VOCAL ORGANS.

These include not merely the vocal cords and tongue, but the lips, teeth, hard and soft palate, nose, lungs, and diaphragm. It is well to read carefully the descriptions of the vocal organs in the text books on the subject and to examine the pictures showing the various parts. A mirror is indispensable in the study of phonetics. A hand mirror is sufficient for the study of one's own vocal apparatus, but a mirror large enough to reflect the faces of student and teacher is better when one is attempting to learn a new language.

## THE CHARTS.

In the charts accompanying this article I have made use of the International Phonetic Script. The value of the symbols used is given in the following paragraphs. The letters to the right where they occur in pairs, are those which represent sounds in which the vocal cords are vibrated and are called voiced, sonant, or vocalized sounds, in contrast with the voiceless, surd, or non-vocalized sounds which are to the left. The perpendicular columns divide the sounds according to the place where they are formed, whether on the lips, on the tongue, etc. The horizontal columns divide them according to the kind of formation, whether a stop, a narrow or broad opening, and whether there is or is not an accompanying opening of the nasal passages.

## VOICED AND VOICELESS.

It is most important that the student get clearly in mind the distinction between the voiced and voiceless sounds. Most of the sounds are found in pairs which are alike in the place and shape of their formation, but which differ in the fact that one is accompanied by the vibration of the vocal cords and the other lacks this. The latter is usually accompanied by a stronger expulsion of the breath; this is called aspiration. The difference between the voiced and the voiceless sounds is brought out clearly with *s* and *z*. Care must be taken to give the sounds only and not the names of these letters. Pronounce the words *sink* and *zink*, then drop the sounds *ink* from each word leaving only the initial sound. If the fingers are placed on the "adam's apple" it will be found that there is a strong vibration with the *z* sound and none with the *s* sound. This vibration can also be felt on the top of the head and on the ribs when the vocal cords are vibrated. The amount of aspiration or breath can be measured by holding a strip of paper in front of the mouth while giving the sound and seeing how much force is exerted on the paper by the breath. Or it can be guaged by simply holding the hand before the mouth.

## ENGLISH CONSONANTS.

*p* and *b* are lip stop consonants. "Lip stop" means they are formed with the lips, which entirely stop the breath stream. *p* is aspirated and not voiced and *b* is voiced and not aspirated.

*t* and *d* are formed by stopping the flow of breath with the tip of tongue on the gums. *t* is aspirated and not voiced and *d* is voiced and not aspirated.

*k* and *g* are formed with the back of the tongue against the back of the palate where it is soft. *k* is aspirated and not voiced and *g* is voiced and not aspirated.

*m* is formed in the same place as *p* and *b*, but is accompanied by nasalization. Nasalization is produced by slightly lowering the velum or soft palate so as to allow the flow of breath through the nose. This can be proven by sounding the *m* for a few seconds and then grasping the nose, when the sound will cease. *m* is a voiced sound and may be defined as a nasalized *b*.

*n* is formed in the same position as the *t* and *d* and like the *m* is nasalized.

*ŋ* is the sound usually written *ng*. It is formed in the same place as *k* and *g*, and like *m* and *n* is nasalized. By the use of the mirror one can see that in *n* and *ŋ* the tongue occupies very different positions. In *n* the tip of the tongue is up, while in *ŋ* it is down and the back is raised. *ŋ* is just as simple a sound as *n*

*I* is made with the tongue slightly more removed from the palate, and if the finger is placed under the chin *an inch from the tip* it will be found that the muscles are much less tense than in *i*. This sound is heard in the word *it*. It is called the short sound of *i*, but differs in quality as well as in quantity.

*e* is formed with the tongue still more removed from the palate, and the lips are less broad. Most English speakers do not give this sound in its pure or simple form, but glide from *e* to *i*. It is the vowel sound of '*bate*,' or '*ate*'.

*E* is the looser or more open sound resembling *e*. It is heard in '*net*'.

*æ* is still more open and loose than *e* and is heard in "*bat*."

*a* is the most open sound we have in English, both as to the tongue and the lip position. It is the first vowel in '*bottle*'.

*ɔ* is made with the tongue further back in the mouth than with *a*, and the lips form a large round opening. It is the vowel in '*bought*'.

*o* is formed by raising the back of the tongue and rounding the lips in a smaller opening than in *ɔ*. This sound is seldom given in its simple or pure form, but glides into the *u* sound.

*U* is the sound heard in the American pronunciation of '*book*' or '*put*'. It is not common in England. The back of the tongue is higher than in *o* but not so high as in *u*, but the lip rounding is relaxed.

*u* is formed by placing the back of the tongue very near the soft palate and rounding the lips.

*ə* is the most common vowel sound in English. It is formed by raising the middle of the tongue slightly above the *a* position and is given with the vocal organs in a very relaxed state. A large percentage of the accented vowels are pronounced in this way, no matter what the spelling may be. It is the second vowel in *finger*, *rigor*, *stirrup*.

## THE NORMAL POSE OR ORGANIC BASIS IN ENGLISH.

In addition to knowing the exact formation of each sound,—and the above description is of course all too brief, and should be supplemented by a careful study of the books on English phonetics,—it is also important that one should know the generalizations regarding the formation of English sounds, and the use of the vocal organs. I state them in terms which show their contrast with the similar generalizations in Pekingese which broadly speaking, may be allowed to represent "Mandarin".

1. In English the lower jaw is frequently thrust forward as well as opened downward.

2. The tongue is held further back than in Chinese. The one exception to this is in the θ and ð sounds.

3. Aspirated consonants are less strongly aspirated and voiced consonants are more strongly voiced in English than in Chinese.

4. The vocal organs are less tense in English than in Chinese. When a speaker of English hesitates for a word, he frequently gives the sound ə This is called the colorless, or natural, vowel in English.

### 1. ENGLISH SOUNDS

| | *Lip* | *Point and Blade* | *Front of Palate* | *Back of Palate* | *Glottis* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stop | b p | t d | | k‘ g | |
| Nasal | m | n | | ŋ | |
| Narrow | ʍ w f v | θ ð sz ʃ ʒ | j | | h |
| Liquid | | l<br>r | | | |
| Open | | | i u<br>I U<br>e ə o<br>E<br>æ ɔ<br>a | | |

### 2. PEKINGESE SOUNDS

| | *Lip* | *Point and Blade* | *Front of Palate* | *Back of Palate* | *Glottis* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stop | 排 白<br>p‘ p | 拕 多<br>t‘ t | | 枯 姑<br>k‘ k | |
| Nasal | 媽<br>m | 那 安<br>n | | 骯<br>ŋ | |
| Narrow | 窊 伐<br>w f | 撒 司 喫 知 是<br>sz ʃʒ | | 河<br>X | |
| Liquid | | 拉<br>l<br>日 兒<br>r | | | |
| Open | | | 迷 於 由 土<br>i y ɯ u<br>民<br>I<br>灰 門 家 河 玻<br>e 眞 ə ə V o<br>E 劵<br>æ 拿<br>a | | |

## PEKINGESE CONSONANTS.

Having given a resumé of the phonetic value of English sounds, we now give the value of sounds found in Pekingese. It will be noticed that what applies to Pekingese applies to Mandarin sounds generally. Pekingese is chosen because it is the language of the metropolis, and the dialect in which a large number of books is written.

排 白 *p*‘ and *p* are made with closed lips and on opening them there is considerably more breath in *p*‘ than the English *p*. The Chinese *p* is followed by no explosion of breath, it may be regarded as a breathness *p* or a voiceless *b*. It is accompanied by no vibration of the vocal cords and during this formation the glottis is closed. The unaspirated Chinese *p, t, k,* are like the French *p, t, k,* which are also unaspirated.

拕 多 *t*‘ and *t* are not formed in the same place as the English *t* and *d*. The tip of the tongue is more forward being placed on the teeth sometimes as far down as in the case of the English *th*. As with the Peking *p*‘ and *p* the *t*‘ is strongly aspirated and the *t* is unaspirated and unvoiced.

枯 姑 *k*‘ and *k* are formed by raising the back of the tongue until it touches the soft palate at a place slightly nearer the front than that of the English *k* or *g*. *k*‘ is accompanied by a strong flow of breath and *k* has no flow of breath and no vibration of the vocal chords.

媽 *m* is formed like the English *m* by closing the lips. It is voiced and the sound comes out through the nose. The vibration of the vocal chords during this sound does not last as long as in English.

那 安 *n* is formed like the *t*‘ and *t* on the teeth, otherwise it is like the English *n* except that the vibration does not last as long as in English.

骯 *ŋ* is formed in the same place as *k*‘ and *k* and differs from the English *ŋ* in being voiced during less time.

窊 *w* the position of the lips in this sound is almost the same in Pekingese as in English. In many of the Chinese dialects the *w* is entirely lacking, a *u* being given instead. The rounded opening between the lips is larger in the case of *u* than in that of *w*.

伐 *f* is formed like the English *f* but it is more strongly aspirated.

撒 司 咨 *s* and *z* are formed a little further forward in Chinese than in English. *s* is more strongly aspirated than in English. *z* does not occur except in combination with *t*, and following *s* in such words as the Pekingese for ‘*four*’. *Ts* without the aspirate consists really of *t* and *z*, but the *z* has very slight voicing. It is also used in *ts'u* 粗 and *tzu* 詛. In the former case the word contains three sounds:—*t*, *s*, and *z*. There is no vowel. In changing from *s* to *z* the tongue is not moved. The only difference is that the vocal cords are vibrated in *z*. In *tzu* there are two sounds:—*t* and *z*. The *z* is prolonged. These syllables are cases of words in which no vowel is found. There are three other examples of this in Pekingese which are noted below. In the Shanghai and related dialects, *m* and *ŋ* are also used as complete words without any vowel. In English contrary to the so-called law that every syllable must contain a vowel there are syllables consisting of the sounds *m*, *n* or *l* in which no vowel sound is given.

是 喫 知 ʃ and ʒ. ʒ occurs only in combination and not as a simple consonant. In Wade the combination is written *ch'* or *ch* as in English, *ch* is a double sound consisting of *t* and ʃ both being strongly aspirated. *Ch'ih* consists of *t'*, ʃ, and ʒ. There is no vowel in the word. *Chih* consists of *t* and ʒ the latter sound is voiced, but the tongue is not moved from the ʒ position to any vowel position. In Wade's romanization the combination *hs* is used before *i* and *u*, but I cannot discover that it differs from the sound *sh*. It is really an ʃ so far as the position of the tongue is concerned. In central and eastern Shantung a real difference exists between *sh* and *hs*. The latter is made in the middle of the mouth in the same place where *y* (phonetic script *j*) is formed. It is a voiceless *y* and is the same as the consonant in the German *ich*. The German sound is used as a final while in Shantung it is an initial. ʃ and ʒ are formed somewhat nearer the front than the corresponding sounds in English. ʃ is more strongly aspirated than in English.

河 灰 X is the sound which is commonly represented by *h* but unlike the English *h* is formed not in the glottis but by bringing the back of the tongue nearer the soft palate and fluttering the uvula against the tongue making a sound similar to the consonant in the German *ach*. In German this sound is used as a final but in Chinese it is used only as an initial.

人 日 *r* is formed in about the same place as the initial *r* in English but accompanied by a *z* like *buzz* which is formed by pressing the rolled up tip of the tongue nearer to the hard palate than in English. In final *r* which occurs in *er* 而 兒 the tip of the tongue is turned very far back, even further than in the final American *r*. The word written *jih* in Wade is really an *r* sound prolonged. It contains no vowel.

拉 *l* is formed by pressing the tip of the tongue on the teeth rather than on the gums as in English and allowing the voiced stream of breath to flow out between both sides of the tongue and the back teeth.

## PEKINGESE VOWELS.

The following vowels are found in Pekingese and differ very little from the corresponding vowels in English except that the highest point of the tongue in forming each of them is slightly nearer the front than in the corresponding vowels in English.

迷 *i* as in beat.
民 *I* „ „ bit.
灰 *e* „ „ bate, but without the English glide.
僧 眞 *E* „ „ bet.
劵 *æ* „ „ bat.
拿 *a* „ „ bottle.
玻 *o* „ „ boat, but without the glide in the end of the vowel.
土 東 *u* „ „ boot.

門 蒙 *ə* occurs before final *n* and *ng*. Before final *n* it is more forward in the mouth than the corresponding sound in English. Before a final *ŋ* it is further back than the corresponding sound in English.

The three following vowels which occur frequently in Pekingese are not found in English.

於 *y* which is in the Wade system of romanization written *ü* is formed by placing the front of the tongue in the position for saying *i* and the lips in the position for saying *u*.

河 *ɤ* is used to represent the sound of the vowel in the word for river commonly written *ho* or *he*. In forming this vowel the back of the tongue is raised half way, that is to the regular o position but the lips are broad.

由 *ɯ* this sound is written in phonetic script to represent the vowel produced when the back of the tongue is raised to the u position but the lips are broad and not rounded. Some, but not all, Pekingese use this sound in giving words of the first and second tones which are romanized *iu*.

托 騾 唆 Sounds which are romanized *o* as in *to*, *t'o*, *so*, really should be written as diphthongs, as the *o* is pronounced as *oɔ* or sometimes *oa*, or *oɤ*.

In what most authorities recognize as pure Pekingese such words as *an*, *ai*, *ao*, are given without any consonant preceding the vowel. This occurs in the words for *peace* and *love* but one does not have to go very far from Peking to discover the use of a variety of consonants put on before the vowel in these words. In Tientsin an *n* is used, in other regions a *j*, in other regions there is a consonant given which corresponds very closely to the German guttural *r*. This is formed by raising the back of the tongue near the soft palate and forcing the voiced stream of breath through the narrowing in such a way as to produce a fluttering of the uvula. In other words this is the voiced sound which corresponds to the non-voiced *x* described above.

The sound of *i* occurs without a consonant before it in many words in Pekingese but people from other places often give the *y* phonetic script *j*) sound like the two first sounds in the English word *yield.*

### THE NORMAL POSE OR ORGANIC BASIS IN PEKINGESE.

1. The lower jaw is held back.

2. The tongue position is more to the front than in English.

3. Aspirated consonants are more strongly aspirated than in English.

4. The unaspirated consonants have absolutely no breath and also no voice. They consist of a double stop; the vocal cords are held together while the stop is being made by the lips in *p* or by the tongue in *t* and *k*. Both stops are opened at the same time and the vibration of the vocal cords for the vowel begins immediately.

5. The vocal organs are very tense.

6. To stress any word in a sentence the word is not given with more force but all the elements of its "tone" are brought out most fully.

7. When a Pekingese hesitates for a word he cannot recall he does not say *ə* as English-speaking people do but draws out the last syllable, says *a*, or repeats some common phrase such as *che ko* 這個 or *na ko* 那個. The common use of *ə* in English is due to the general laxness of the vocal organs in speaking that language. In Chinese the vocal organs are not lax, so this sound seldom occurs.

### SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES EXPERIENCED BY AN ENGLISH-SPEAKING PERSON IN LEARNING TO PRONOUNCE CHINESE CORRECTLY.

The rhythm is of course very difficult to acquire, and cannot be acquired without constant careful repetition after a Chinese teacher. The same is true of the pronounciation of the individual sounds and the acquiring of the Chinese normal pose but a knowledge of the differences between English and Pekingese will make this imitation of the teacher more intelligent. It enables one to call in the assistance of the sense of sight in watching the teacher, and the sense of touch in the mouth in doing the imitating to supplement the hearing with the ears.

1. Learn to aspirate the aspirated consonants more than the aspirated consonants in English.

2. Learn to give the unaspirated *p*, *t* and *k* without allowing any breath to flow out of the mouth.

3. Learn to form *n*, *t‘*, *t* and *l* with the tip of the tongue on the teeth and not on the gums.

4. **Practise giving the vowels *y*, Ɐ, *w*, as directed above.**

5. Learn to form all the consonants and the vowels a little nearer the front of the mouth than in English.

6. Learn to speak with the organs tense and the lower jaw held back. The lower front teeth should never get as far forward as the upper front teeth.

7. Do not conclude that because you have not heard some of the differences which may have been mentioned that they are not real. The ear is often deaf to distinctions in sound which the tongue has not learned to make. Do not conclude that your vocal organs are so shaped that they cannot make some of the Chinese sounds. The differences in the sounds of the two languages are due not to differences in the formation of the organs of the two peoples, but to difference in habit. You can form new habits.

8. The sounds usually written *ch'ih* 喫, *jih* 日, *tzu* 資, often cause difficulty because the student follows the romanization, which in this case is apt to be misleading. There is no vowel in these words.

9. Do not test the accuracy of the statements in this paper by your memory of sounds you have heard but by careful and repeated observation of Chinese and foreigners. Time spent in listening to addresses you do not understand or do not enjoy can profitably be devoted to this.

## HOW TO STUDY PEKINGESE AND ENGLISH PHONETICS.

1. Master what has been written on the subject. Noel-Armfield "General Phonetics," and Daniel Jones "The Pronunciation of English," are two of the most helpful books on this subject. The former was written especially for those who have to study oriental languages. Unfortunately for Americans, the books on phonetics describe the sounds heard in southern England, and since the sounds differ in America, this sometimes leads to confusion.

2. Study the formation of individual sounds and normal pose of Chinese and of British and American when each is speaking his native language.

3. Watch foreigners who are speaking Chinese. Those things which sound peculiar and foreign are usually English sounds which can be observed more easily in the midst of familiar sounds. The same is true of watching a Chinese speak English. What is known as a foreign accent is not merely due to accenting or stressing the syllables incorrectly. It consists in substituting the various sounds of one's mother tongue for the similar, yet slightly different, sounds in the language one is attempting to speak.

# 英華合璧卷壹

## 初階

# MANDARIN PRIMER

## PART I

## ELEMENTARY

# MANDARIN PRIMER.

## LESSON I. 課一第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 字$^{4}$ | tsï$^{1}$ | A character; a word. |
| 我$^{5}$ | o<br>uo<br>ngo | I; me. |
| 你$^{3}$ | ni | Thou; thee. |
| 他$^{1}$ | t'a | He; she; her; him; it. |
| 們$^{2}$ | men | Sign of plural—used in speaking of persons only. |
| 的$^{1}$ | tih | Adjectival particle. |
| 筆$^{3}$ | pih$^{6,40}$ | Pencil; pen. N. A. |
| 紙$^{3}$ | chï$^{5}$ | Paper. |
| 書$^{1}$ | shu$^{3}$ | Book; writings. |
| 這$^{4}$ | chæ | This. |
| 那$^{4}$ | na | That. |
| 是$^{4}$ | shï | The verb to be; Yes. Right. |
| 錢$^{2}$ | ch' / ts } ien$^{1}$ | Money; cash; wealth; $\frac{1}{16}$ of Chinese ounce. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 外$^{4}$ | uai | Outside; foreign. Extra. |
| 生$^{1}$ | s / sh } eng | Raw; inexperienced.<br>To beget; born. |
| 要$^{4}$ | iao | To want; to wish. |
| 做$^{4}$ | ts } o / u | To do; to make. To act as. |
| 念$^{4}$ | nien | To read; to chant. |
| 不$^{1}$ | puh | Not; a negative. |
| 些$^{1}$ | hs / s } ie | A little; some. Sign of Comparative. |
| 誰$^{2}$ | shui | Who? |
| 懂$^{3}$ | tong | To understand; to comprehend. |
| 甚$^{4}$ 麼$^{3}$ | shen-mo | What? |
| 東$^{1}$ 西$^{1}$ | tong-hsi$^{1,4}$ | Things; articles. |
| 先$^{1}$ 生$^{1}$ | hs / s } ien-seng$^{1,7}$ | Sir; Mr., teacher. |
| 那$^{3}$ 一$^{1}$ 個$^{1}$ | na-ih-ko | Who? which? |

### Personal Pronouns.

1. One of the principal distinctions between European and Chinese words, is the absence in the latter of such changes as take place in English to indicate the differences between the singular and plural numbers: or the differences in moods and tenses. Chinese characters undergo no change to express these differences. All that inflexion or conjugation helps to make clear in Western languages, is indicated in Chinese either by auxiliary words, or by the position of the word in the sentence. This is illustrated in the following Table of Pronouns:—

---

百 事 頭 難 *In all things the beginning is difficult.*

| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I; me; | *o* | 我 | We; us; | *o-men* | 我們 |
| Thou; thee; | *ni* | 你 | You; | *ni-men* | 你們 |
| He; she; her; him; it; | *t‘a* | 他 | They; them; | *t‘a-men* | 他們 |
| My; mine; | *o-tih* | 我的 | Our; ours; | *o-men-tih* | 我們的 |
| Thy; thine; | *ni-tih* | 你的 | Your; yours; | *ni-men-tih* | 你們的 |
| His; hers; its; | *t‘a-tih* | 他的 | Their; theirs; | *t‘a-men-tih* | 他們的 |

### ***Tih*** 的 as a Possessive and Descriptive Particle.

2. The order of words is often the same in English and in Chinese, and it will help the student to note carefully the points of agreement and difference: this is often a great aid to memory.

The adjective, as in English, precedes the noun: the word 的 *tih*, having a *descriptive* or *defining* force, is in constant use in adjectival constructions, *e.g.*,

My things, *o-tih tong-hsi* 我的東西; Their money, *t‘a-men-tih ch‘ien* 他們的錢 and so on with other nouns and pronouns.

### ***Hsie*** 些 as Sign of Plural.

3. The context in which words are found often decides the question of singular or plural: this is specially so in the case of 是 *shï*; *e.g.*, the following sentences could be either singular or plural:

These are my pencils; *chœ shï o-tih pih* 這是我的筆.

Those are his books; *na shï t‘a-tih shu* 那是他的書.

Both 這 *chœ* and 那 *na* are made plural by the addition of 些 *hsie*; as,

These, 這些 *chœ-hsie*; Those, *na-hsie* 那些 in which case they immediately precede the noun and not 是 *shï* as above; *e.g.*,

These books are his; *chœ-hsie shu shï t‘a-tih* 這些書是他的.

Those things are ours; *na-hsie tong-hsi shï o-men-tih* 那些東西是我們的.

### ***Shen-mo*** 甚麽, ***mo*** 麽, and ***puh*** 不, as Interrogatives.

4. There are many ways of asking questions in Chinese, the simplest of which is by the insertion of 不 *puh* between verbs or adjectives, or by the use of 甚麽 *shen-mo*; *e.g.*,

Yes or no? right or wrong? *shï puh shï* 是不是.

Will he do it or not? Yes, he will; *t‘a tso puh tso*; *t‘a tso* 他做不做, 他做.

What does he want? *t‘a iao shen-mo* 他要甚麽.

What is this? *chœ shï shen-mo* 這是甚麽.

Who is that? *na shï shen-mo ren* 那是甚麽人 or, *na shï shui*; or, *na ih ko* 那是誰 or 那一個.

Questions like the above are answered in the affirmative by the repetition of the verb: and in the negative by the negative and the

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第一課雜句

他要甚麽, 他不要甚麽
這是甚麽字
這是書字
這是誰的(那一個的)東西
這是不是他的
不是, 是我的, 不是他的
他做甚麽
你要念不要念
我要念
這是甚麽錢
書是你的, 錢是我的
我不要做
這是他的麽

## NOTES.

**verb**: 不 *puh* negatives the meaning of the word to which it is prefixed. After some affirmative statements 不是 *puh shï* is added to form a negative interrogative; *e.g.*,

This is his; *chœ shï tʻa-tih* 這是他的.

Is not this his? *chœ shï tʻa-tih puh shï* 這是他的不是 or, *chœ puh shï tʻa-tih mo* 這不是他的麽.

Note that in these sentences a statement, either positive or negative, is first made; *puh shï* 不是 or *mo* 麽 is added to make them interrogative: this is a very common construction. *Puh iao* 不要 before a verb=do not.

*Shui* 誰 is Northern, and 那一個 *na-ih-ko* Southern and Western; similarly 誰的 *shui-tih* is used in the North, and 那一個的 *na-ih-ko-tih* in the South for 'Whose?'

### *Men* 們 as Sign of Plural.

5. In English 'them,' and 'they,' are applied indiscriminately to both persons and things. In Chinese there is no 3rd personal pronoun, neuter; 'them' as applied to things is either included in the verb, or the name of the articles in question must be given. The sign of the plural, *men* 們 given above, is used in speaking of persons, and may be added to either pronouns or proper nouns; *e.g.*, Teachers, *hsien-seng men* 先生們.

Titles follow the names of persons, and do not, as in English, precede them; *e.g.*, Mr. *Chʻien*; *Chʻien hsien-seng* 錢先生.

In an enumeration of things or people, 'and' is used sparingly; in conversation a slight pause does duty for it.

---

NOTES.—*a*. *Hsien-seng* 先生 from 先 *hsien* 'First,' and 生 *seng*, 'To beget,' is the equivalent of 'gentleman,' and is used as a title of respect.

*b*. *Puh shï* 不是 also means 'fault,' 'error,' as in Reading Lesson p. 4, last column.

*c*. In many places *sha* or *sha-tsï* is used as the equivalent of *shen-mo* 甚麽: there appears to be no character to express it.

[*See Lesson XXI.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

What does he want? Nothing; *tʻa iao shen-mo? tʻa puh iao shen-mo.*
What character is this? *chœ shī shen-mo tsï?*
This is the character 'book;' *chœ shī shu tsï.*
Whose things are these? *chœ shī shui-tih (na-ko-tih) tong-hsi?*
Is this his or not? *chœ shī puh shī tʻa-tih?*
No, it is mine, it is not his; *puh shī; shī o-tih, puh shī iʻa-tih.*
What is he doing? *tʻa tso shen-mo?*
Do you want to read? *ni iao nien puh iao nien?*
I want to read; *o iao nien.*
What money is this? *chœ shī shen-mo chʻien?*
The book is yours, the money is mine; *shu shī ni-tih; chʻien shī o-tih.*
I do not want to do it; *o puh iao tso.*
Is this his? *chœ shī tʻa-tih mo.*

*Translate*:—The books, paper and pencils belong to Mr. *Chʻien*. the money belongs to those gentlemen. These things are his, are they not? No, those things belong to Mr. *Chʻien*. Do you understand Mr. *Chʻien?* I understand. That is not his paper, it is mine Does he want money? No, he wants Mr. *Chʻien's* pencil and your paper. Does he want those things? Yes. They do not understand; I do. I do not want to read these books; what books do you want to read? What things do they want? They want money do they not? Are these yours? No. He is right (不錯$^4$ *puh-tsʻo*), I am wrong (錯$^4$ *tsʻo* p. 51). Does he want to read? Does he not understand?

N.B.—This, and all other translation work should be done first unassisted, and then with the teacher. Do not consult the Key at the end of the book till you have done your best independently of it.

### Writing Exercise.

Before beginning this it will be as well to read the section on "Writing with Order of the Strokes," in the Introduction. The letter R. and the figures following refer to the Radical and its number.

本 *pen*, A root; 枝 *chï*, A branch; 張 *chang*, To extend; 字; 不; 生 R. 100.

---

## READING LESSON I. 一第要輯

### Sundry Sentences.

### 一問一答

這是誰的、是你的麼、不是我的、不是你的、是誰的、我不知[1]道。這些東西你要不要、我不要、不是我的、是錢先生的。書是他的、筆不是他的、是先生的。你們要做甚麼、我們要念書、要念甚麼書、要念這些書。我的話[2]你懂不懂、我不懂。這是甚麼字、我不知道、這是甚[3]字、那是麼字。這是誰的不是、我不知道是誰的不是。這些

---

[1] *Chï-tao* 知$^1$ 道$^4$, To know. L. 4.

[2] *Hua* 話$^4$ Words. p. 13.

[3] Note the order—The 甚 character, not the character 麼.

書錢先生要不要、他說[1]不要、你要不要、我不要、他們不要麽。這不是我的筆、那些筆是先生們的。你們做甚麽、我們不做[2]甚麽。我的東西是我的、他的東西是他的。這些筆是不是他的、不是他的、是我的。誰要[3]這張紙、你要不要、我不要、他們要。誰念書、不是錢先生麽。他念誰的書、他念我的書。我不懂、你懂不懂。這是些字、那是麽字。這是那一個的錢、錢是我的、筆、書、紙、不是我的、是你的。這些錢他要、那些筆我要。先生念我就[4]不念、我念先生就不念。這些筆、紙、書、錢、是那一個的。這是那一個先生的、是錢先生的不是。這些東西誰要誰不要。我要做、他不要做。我念書你懂不懂、我不懂。那些錢是不是你的、不是我的、不是他的、是錢先生的。他做甚麽、他不做甚麽。他不要甚麽。我不要這些東西、[5]看他們要不要。他要念不要念、他不要念。他要做先生。我的東西誰要。這是筆字。

---

1. *Shoh* 說$^1$ To say; says. L. 3.
2. *Shen-mo* 甚麽 here means, 'anything.'
3. *Chœ-chang chï* 這張紙 This sheet of paper.
4. *Chiu* 就$^4$ Then; indicates sequence. L. 4.
5. *K'an* 看$^4$ To see; see whether . . . L. 4.

## Lesson II. 課二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 一$^{1}$ | *ih* | One; a; an. The whole. As soon as. |
| 二$^{4}$ | *ri* | Two. |
| 三$^{1}$ | *san* | Three. |
| 四$^{4}$ | *sï* | Four. |
| 五$^{3}$ | *u* | Five. |
| 六$^{4}$ | *l* { *iu*<br>*uh* | Six. |
| 七$^{1}$ | *ch’*<br>*ts* } *ih* | Seven. |
| 八$^{1}$ | *pah* | Eight. |
| 九$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *iu* | Nine. |
| 十$^{2}$ | *shïh* | Ten. |
| 幾$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *i* | How many? A few; some. |
| 兩$^{3}$ | *liang* | Two. An ounce. A “tael.” |
| 本$^{3}$ | *pen* | Root; source. |
| 認$^{4}$ | *ren* | To recognise. To acknowledge; to confess. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 買$^{3}$ | *mai* | To buy—for; to cost. |
| 識$^{4}$ | *shïh* | To be acquainted with. To distinguish. |
| 茶$^{2}$ | *ch‘a* | Tea; an infusion. |
| 寫$^{3}$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *ie* | To write. |
| 人$^{2}$ | *ren*$^{1}$ | Man; person; people. |
| 碗$^{3}$ | *uan*$^{1}$ | Basin; cup. |
| 有$^{3}$ | *iu* | Have; had; has. |
| 意$^{4}$ 思$^{1}$ | *i-sï*$^{1}$ | Meaning; thought; opinion. |
| 出$^{1}$ 氣$^{4*}$ | *ch‘uh-ch‘i* | To aspirate; aspirated. |
| 朋$^{2}$ 友$^{3}$ | *p‘eng-iu*$^{1}$ | Friend. |
| 認$^{4}$ 識$^{4}$ | *ren-shïh* | To recognise; as characters, or people. |
| 一$^{1}$ 件$^{4}$ 衣$^{1}$ 裳$^{2}$ | *ih-chien i-shang* | A garment. |
| 一$^{1}$ 把$^{3}$ 椅$^{3}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ih-pa i-tsï* | A chair. |
| 一$^{1}$ 張$^{1}$ 棹$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ih-chang choh-tsï* | A table. |

### Numerary Adjuncts.

1. Before some nouns in English, idiom demands the use of a special word, as, a *piece* of music; a *plot* of ground, &c. But *the exception in this matter in English, is the rule in Chinese,* inasmuch as *every* noun takes some word corresponding to *piece* and *plot* in the above examples. And *such words are always joined to numbers* in both English and Chinese. If, for instance, we say, A piece of music; we mean *one* piece; if, This plot of ground; or, That plot of ground; we leave the word *one* to be understood—this (one) plot of ground. This is made clear if we try to speak of any number greater than one, for we cannot say ‘Two music;’ we must say, ‘Two *pieces* of music.’ So in questions we say, How many *pieces*

讀 好 書 說 好 話 *Read good books, speak good words.*

of music? not, How many music? or, Which *pieces* of music? and not, Which music? We see therefore that such words are used with *numbers*; and with *this*, and *that*; with *how many?* and *which?* They are called in this book Numerary Adjuncts (referred to hereafter as N. A.) because they are joined to numbers and added to nouns. They are of two kinds, one of which we might call meaningless, because they do not need to be translated; and the other significant, because they do. There are about fifty in common use; all of which are printed at the end of these Lessons and numbered. The numbers opposite the sounds of the characters in the Vocabularies correspond to these numbers; e.g.; Less. I, *shu*$^3$. The commonest N. A. is 個 *ko*, which is often made to do duty for others, and is also frequently used with numerals as, Three, 三 個 *san-ko*. It is better and more accurate to use the N. A. which belongs to any given noun, as a correct N. A. is a great help to a poor speaker and also to a bad listener. *Ko* 個 is constantly used with *chœ* 這 and *na* 那 for the general 'this one'; 'that one'; when some other N. A. would be more correct.

Following the order given above, let us notice that Numerary Adjuncts are used

*a.* With *definite numbers*; *e.g.*,

Ten cash; *shïh-ko ch‘ien* 十 個 錢.

*b.* With *this*, and *that*; *e.g.*,

This money is mine; *chœ-ko ch‘ien shï o-tih* 這 個 錢 是 我 的.

That garment is his; *na-chien i-shang shï t‘a-tih* 那 件 衣 裳 是 他 的.

*c.* With *which*? and *how many*? when the latter is represented by *chi* 幾; *e.g.*,

How many words? *chi-ko tsï* 幾 個 字.

Which three sheets of paper? *na san-chang chï* 那 三 張 紙.

They are not used

*a.* Before indefinite numbers; *e.g.*,

These are my things; *chœ shï o-tih tong-hsi* 這 是 我 的 東 西 (see Lesson I, 3.)

*b.* In speaking of weight, dimension and distance; as 'pounds'; 'ounces'; 'feet;' 'inches'; 'miles'; etc., *e.g.*,

Buy three ounces; *mai san liang* 買 三 兩.

*c.* When something fills, or partly fills, or covers, or partly covers something else; in such a case the first noun becomes the N. A., *e.g.*,

A table covered with books; *ih choh-tsï shu* 一 棹 子 書.

A cup of tea; *ih uan ch‘a* 一 碗 茶.

The noun which accompanies a N. A. is often understood. This is specially the case in answer to questions where it has been already expressed. In replying in English to the question, How many chairs have you? we should say 'Eight,' but in Chinese we should not say 'eight' only, but add the N. A. *pa* 把 and say 八 把 *pah pa*; *e.g.*,

How many tables has he? five; *t'a iu chi-chang choh-tsi*; *u-chang*. 他有幾張棹子, 五張.

How many pencils does he want? he wants three, *t'a iao chi-chī pih*; *t'a iao san-chï*. 他要幾枝筆, 他要三枝.

In asking, Which person? Which thing? we leave the word 'one,' to be understood—Which (one) person? Which (one) thing? but we insert all numbers above 'one'; as, Which four books? The corresponding Chinese idiom requires 'one,' as well as all other numbers to be stated in full, and to be followed by the N. A. belonging to the person or thing asked about; *e.g.*,

Which two copies do you want? *ni iao na liang-pen* 你要那兩本.

## Numeration.

**2.** Chinese and European numeration agree in some respects and differ in others. They agree in the numbers 'one' to 'ten,' and in having a separate word for 'hundred,' and for 'thousand.' But Chinese differs in the way in which it combines units. In English we arrange all numbers between eleven and twenty, (with the exception of 'eleven') by putting the lower number first and then adding 'ten;' as 'twelve' which=two and ten; 'thirteen' which=three and ten; etc. Chinese reverses this order, putting the 'ten' first and adding the unit; *e.g.*,

Eleven; *shïh-ih* 十一.
Twelve; *shïh-rï* 十二; etc., up to nineteen.

In forming multiples of ten, both systems of numeration agree. Thus 'twenty,' in English=two times ten; 'thirty'=three times ten; etc. So in Chinese, twenty, is *rï-shïh* 二十; thirty, *san-shïh*; 三十; etc. All numbers between these multiples of ten are added in the same way; *e.g.*, Twenty-one,=twenty+one; and so in Chinese; *rï-shïh-ih* 二十一. But frequently in Chinese *ih* 一 is prefixed before 'ten,' *shïh* 十, 'eleven,' being 'one ten one' *ih-shïh-ih* 一十一. This may be omitted in all numbers up to nineteen; but it is well for the beginner to use it throughout, as it minimises the risk of being misunderstood.

Eighteen; *ih-shïh-pah* 一十八.

Alternative numbers do not need 'or' as in English; *e.g.*,

Three or four; *san sï* 三四.
Thirteen or fourteen; *shïh san sï* 十三四.
Forty or fifty; *sï u shïh* 四五十.

Note that while the 'ten' is stated first in, say, 'thirteen or fourteen' *shïh san sï* 十三四, it is necessarily stated last in, say, 'sixty or seventy;' *luh ch'ih shïh* 六七十; as *luh shïh ch'ih* 六十七 means 'sixty-seven.'

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二課雜句

這兩個字出氣不出氣
那是誰的碗
這個錢是那一個的
他要買幾兩
這是甚麼意思
茶字出氣, 筆字不出氣
你有幾個錢, 三四個錢
他有幾件衣裳, 有三件
你要我寫那一個字, 寫懂字
這兩個碗不是我的
我不懂你的意思
這個字有幾個意思
你識字不識字

## NOTES.

Indefinite numbers may be spoken of as, A few, Ten odd, or, Between ten and twenty, etc. This is done in Chinese by either repeating the whole numbers, or by adding 幾 *chi* to a whole number as, *e.g.*, between ten and twenty; 十幾 *shïh chi* or 一二十 *ih rï shïh.*

Something under a hundred; *chi shïh ko* 幾十個.

Between sixty and seventy cash; *luh shïh chi ko ch‘ien* 六十幾個錢.

In mere numeration 二 *rï*, is commonly used; but 兩 *liang* refers to things, almost always stands alone, and takes a N. A., *e.g.*,

Forty-two; *sï shïh rï* 四十二.

Two tables; *liang-chang choh-tsï* 兩張棹子.

## Prepositional Verbs.

Verbs in Chinese often contain the preposition; this is indicated in the Vocabularies by a dash between the verb and the preposition: 買 *mai* includes the preposition ‘for,’ *e.g.*,

What did you give for that pencil *mai na chï pih chi-ko ch‘ien* 買那枝筆幾個錢.

---

NOTE.—When ‘this’; or ‘that’ follows a possessive pronoun, it usually omits *tih* 的; as,

These things of mine; *o chœ-ko-tong-hsi* 我這個東西.

That child of his; *t‘a na-ko hai-tsï* 他那個孩子.

[*See Lesson XXII.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

Are these two characters aspirated? *chœ liang-ko tsï ch‘uh-ch‘i puh ch‘uh-ch‘i?*
Whose basin is that? *na shï shui-tih uan?*
Whose money is this? *chœ-ko ch‘ien shï na-ih-ko-tih?*
How many ounces does he want to buy? *t‘a iao mai chi liang?*
What does this mean? *chœ shï shen-mo i-sï?*
‘Tea’ is aspirated, ‘pencil’ is not; *ch‘a tsï ch‘uh-ch‘i, pih tsï puh ch‘uh-ch‘i.*
How much money have you? three or four cash; *ni iu chi-ko ch‘ien? san sï ko ch‘ien.*
How many garments has he? three; *t‘a iu chi-chien i-shang? iu san-chien.*
Which character do you want me to write? the character ‘tong’; *ni iao o hsie na-ih-ko tsï? hsie tong tsï.*
These two basins are not mine; *chœ liang-ko uan puh shï o-tih.*
I do not understand your meaning; *o puh tong ni-tih i-sï.*
How many meanings has this character? *chœ-ko tsï iu chi-ko i-sï?*
Can you read? no; *ni shïh tsï puh shïh tsï? puh shïh tsï.*

*Translate*:—Do you know Mr. Chang? No, I know Mr. Ch‘ien. Whose is that chair? Is it yours? It is not mine. These two garments and that table are not theirs. Is this character ‘chi’ aspirated? No. I want to write: which character do you want to write? This man has seventy odd cash; I have seventeen or eighteen. They bought two cups and two cups of tea. I know the character ‘*mai*,’ (but) I do not know the two characters ‘*shen-mo*.’ Those twenty-four pencils are mine; these cash are yours. He has seventy-eight or seventy-nine sheets of paper; how many sheets do you want to buy? I want to buy nine. Will you buy or not? No. A cup of tea costs six or seven cash. Which three pencils are yours? These three are mine.

Writing Exercise :—一 四 兩 茶 有 買 人 R. 9.

## READING LESSON II. 輯要第二

### Odds and Ends.

天花亂墜

張、把、碗、[1]三個字我不認識、你認識麼。出氣兩個字的意思你懂不懂。那八九件衣裳是你們的麼、不是、六件是我們的。他買那些書幾個錢一本、九十五個錢一本。你要我寫甚麼字、我要你寫誰字、念字、把字。他買幾張棹子、他買三四張。這把椅子不是你的麼。你有錢麼、我有七八十個錢。這個碗不是你買的麼、不是。我不認識要字、我認識做字。他有幾張紙、他有十幾張。這個思字有幾個意思、有三四個意思。他懂你的意思麼、他不懂。他寫字、我念書、錢先生做甚麼。他要一兩二錢、我要四兩一錢。那個人不是做衣裳麼、是、他做九件十件。這一棹子東西是誰的、是你的麼。張先生有兩三碗茶。不要出氣、這個字不出氣、茶字

---

[1] Note difference between this and English idiom—'張, 把, 碗, the three characters,' not, the three characters 張, 把, 碗. The same order obtains in enumeration of names; not, the three gentlemen, Brown, Jones and Robinson, but Brown, Jones and Robinson the three gentlemen.

出氣、懂字不出氣。我的意思你懂不懂。那些先生你不認識麽。買兩個茶碗、三枝筆、八張紙這些字、你認識那一個、我認識書字。這些衣裳你要那一件、我要這一件、那六件我不要。他要買甚麽、他不要買甚麽。那一個要買這個碗、是你要買麽、不是。張先生有兩個朋友、一個是我認識的、一個是我不認識的、我知道這一個有錢、不知道那一個有錢沒有錢、這一個說我要買兩本書、一把椅子、十幾個碗、那一個說買這些東西做甚麽。那個人寫字、他寫甚麽字、我不知道、我不識幾個字、我的朋友一個字不認識。你看他寫甚麽字、我看他先寫氣、裳、椅、本、懂、五個字、他寫這五個字做甚麽、我不知道、我不懂他的意思。他是錢先生的朋友、錢先生認識他。買這個碗要幾個錢、他說要二十六七個錢、我就說、買一個碗要二三十個錢、買三碗茶、要幾個錢、他說、這不要幾個錢。八十幾個、八九十個、是一個意思。說一個碗、是說一樣[1]東西、說一碗茶、是說兩樣東西。念不字、不要出氣、出氣、人就不懂你說甚麽。外、誰、東、朋、幾、裳、六個字你認識不認識、外裳兩個字我認識、那四個字我不認識。

---

[1] *Iang* 樣 A kind. L. 10.

# LESSON III. 課 三 第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 中$^1$ | *chong* | The middle. Among; in. |
| 百$^3$ | *p* {*eh* / *ai* / *o*} | 100. All. |
| 千$^1$ | {*ch'* / *ts*} *ien* | 1,000. |
| 萬$^4$ | *uan* | 10,000. An emphatic particle. |
| 零$^2$ | *ling* | A fragment; a fraction. |
| 有$^3$ | *iu* | There–is–are–was—were. |
| 回$^2$ | *huei* | To return to or from. A time. Mohamedan. |
| 刀$^1$ | *tao*$^8$ | A knife; a sword. |
| 請$^3$ | {*ch'* / *ts*} *ing* | To invite; to request. To engage. |
| 來$^2$ | *lai* | To come. |
| 問$^4$ | *uen* | To ask for—after; to enquire. |
| 坐$^4$ | *tso* | To sit—in—on. To travel by. |
| 去$^4$ | {*ch'* / *k*} *ü* | To go. |
| 了$^3$ | *liao* | Sign of past or perfect Tense. |
| 對$^4$ | *t* {*ui* / *ei*} | Opposite. Agreeing with; correct. In address=‘to.’ |
| 國$^2$ | *ku* {*eh* / *oh*} | A kingdom; a country; a nation. |
| 聲$^1$ 音$^1$ | *sheng-in*$^1$ | Tone; voice; sound. |
| 說$^1$ 話$^{4*}$ | *shoh-hua* | To speak. |
| 吃$^1$ 飯$^{4*}$ | *chïh-fan* | To eat rice; to take food. |
| 外$^4$ 國$^2$ | *uai-kueh* | Abroad; foreign countries. |
| 中$^1$ 國$^2$ | *chong-kueh* | China; Chinese. |
| 兒$^2$ 子$^3$ | *rï-tsï*$^1$ | A son. |
| 曉$^3$ 得$^2$ | *hsiao-teh* | To know. |
| 沒$^4$ 有$^3$ | {*muh* / *mei*} *iu* | There is—are—was—were not. |
| 一$^1$ 句$^4$ 話$^4$ | *ih-chü-hua.* | A sentence; an expression. |
| 在$^4$ 這$^4$ 裏$^3$ | *tsai-chœ-li* | Here. |
| 在$^4$ 那$^4$ 裏$^3$ | *tsai-na-li* | There. |
| | *tsai-na*$^3$*-li* | Where? |
| 爲$^4$ 甚$^4$ 麼$^8$ | *uei-shen-mo* | Why? |

## Numeration. (Continued.)

**1.** Numbers ending with a cipher over 100, 1,000 and 10,000 stated absolutely, i.e., with no noun or N. A. following, leave the next lowest denomination to be understood; *e.g.*,

120; *ih-peh rï* 一 百 二.
1,600; *ih-ch'ien luh* 一 千 六.
13,000; *ih-uan san* 一 萬 三.
Over 100; *ih-peh chi* 一 百 幾.
More than 1,000; *ih-ch'ien chi* 一 千 幾.
Between 10,000 and 20,000; *ih-uan chi* 一 萬 幾.

The last three examples could also be expressed by 一 二 百 *ih rï peh*; and so on. See Lesson II, 2.

---

由 淺 入 深 *From things shallow to things profound.*

All numbers that do not end with a cipher, or that are followed by a noun need to be stated in full; *e.g.*,

125; *ih-peh rï-shïh u* 一百二十五.
1,637; *ih-chʻien luh-peh san-shïh chʻih* 一千六百三十七.
15,474; *ih-uan u chʻien sï-peh chʻih-shïh sï* 一萬五千四百七十四.
125 men; *ih-peh rï-shïh-u-ko ren* 一百二十五個人.

Numbers between 110 and 120 take ‘one’ 一 *ih*; *e.g.*,

118; *ih-peh ih-shïh pah* 一百一十八.

The units of multiplication for all numbers over 1,000 and 10,000 are 千 *chʻien* and 萬 *uan* respectively. It is incorrect to say, as in English, eleven hundred; or twenty-one thousand; *e.g.*

1,100; *ih-chʻien ih* 一千一.
21,000; *rï-uan ih* 二萬一.
90,000; *chiu-uan* 九萬.
1,000,000; *ih-peh-uan* 一百萬.

Such sums as, One million and a quarter; or, A half, or Three quarters of a million, are not stated as a vulgar fraction, as 1¼ million; etc., but as a decimal, 1.25 million; etc., as below. Large whole numbers often dispense with the N. A.; *e.g.*,

Two million and a quarter; *rï-peh rï-shïh-u uan* 二百二十五萬.
Three million and a half; *san-peh u-shïh uan* 三百五十萬.
Four million and three quarters; *sï-peh chʻih-shïh-u uan* 四百七十五萬.
Six thousand people; *luh-chʻien ren* 六千人.

Indefinite numbers under 1,000 and 10,000 follow the same rule as similar numbers under 100; see Lesson II, 2; *e.g.*,

Something under 1,000; *chi peh* 幾百.
A few thousands; *chi chʻien* 幾千.
Less than 100,000; *chi uan* 幾萬.

The omission of one or more ciphers in the midst of numbers is indicated in Chinese by 零 *ling*; *e.g.*,

105; *ih-peh ling u* 一百零五.
1,006; *ih-chʻien ling luh* 一千零六.
10,009; *ih-uan ling chiu* 一萬零九.
10,503; *ih-uan ling u-peh ling san* 一萬零五百零三.

In cases where tens and hundreds follow the omission of the digit, they must be expressed in full; *e.g.*,

86,040; *pah-uan luh chʻien ling sï-shïh* 八萬六千零四十.
60,500; *luh-uan ling u peh* 六萬零五百.

### Infinitive Mood formed by Verb and Noun.

**2.** The word To speak, 說話 *shoh-hua*, is composed of 說$^{1}$ *shoh*, ‘To speak’, and 話$^{4}$ *hua*, ‘Words,’ a verb and a noun: the latter being the Object of 說 *shoh.* But it is not uncommon to find such combinations used as the equivalent of the Infinitive Mood; *e.g.*, 寫 字 *hsie-tsï* ‘To write’; 念 書 *nien-shu* ‘To read’; 吃 飯 ‘To eat’ (吃$^{1}$ *ch‘ih*, To eat; to drink; 飯$^{4}$ *fan*, ‘Food’; cooked rice’). In such cases the noun is a defining word, and all qualifying words precede it; *e.g.*,

He writes Chinese; *t‘a hsie Chong-kueh tsï* 他 寫 中 國 字.

He eats foreign food; *t‘a ch‘ih uai-kueh fan* 他 吃 外 國 飯.

Such combinations are indicated in the Vocabularies by an asterisk.

### Potential Mood indicated by 得.

**3.** The word ‘To know,’ 曉 得 *hsiao-teh*—which is used more in the South than in the North—is composed of 曉 *hsiao*, ‘Clear; to understand;’ and 得 *teh*, ‘To obtain.’ This latter is also an auxiliary verb, and is largely used in forming the Potential Mood. When permission or prohibition (‘may’; ‘may not’) is indicated, it stands alone after the verb or the negative: when ability or inability (‘can’; ‘cannot’) is spoken of, it is followed by some word suitable to the connection and sanctioned by usage; *e.g.*,

May it be done? Yes; ***tso teh tso puh teh? tso teh*** 做 得 做 不 得, 做 得.

May he go? No; ***t‘a ch‘ü teh ch‘ü puh teh? ch‘ü puh teh*** 他 去 得 去 不 得, 去 不 得.

Can you do it? Yes; ***ni tso teh lai tso puh lai? tso teh lai*** 你 做 得 來 做 不 來, 做 得 來.

Can he write this word? No; *chœ-ko tsï t‘a hsie teh-lai hsie puh-lai? hsie puh-lai* 這 個 字 他 寫 得 來 寫 不 來, 寫 不 來.

Can they drink Chinese tea? Yes; *Chong-kueh ch‘a t‘a-men ch‘ih teh lai ch‘ih puh-lai? ch‘ih teh lai* 中 國 茶 他 們 吃 得 來 吃 不 來, 吃 得 來.

Where the Object is stated as in the last two sentences it comes first in the sentence.

Note that the interrogative is formed by adding the negative form to the positive statement as in Lesson I, 4 · and in the following Section.

### *Iu* 有 in Interrogative Statements.

**4.** Many questions relating to possession are asked by 有 *iu*, followed by 沒 有 *muh-iu* or 麽 *mo*; *e.g.*,

Has he any money? No; ***t‘a iu ch‘ien muh iu? muh iu*** 他 有 錢 沒 有, 沒 有.

Is there anybody there? No; ***iu ren tsai-na-li muh iu? muh iu*** 有 人 在 那 裏 沒 有, 沒 有.

Have you any pencils? Yes; ***ni iu pih mo? iu*** 你 有 筆 麽, 有.

## *Shï* 是: where omitted.

**5.** The verb 是 *shï* is used much more sparingly in Chinese than in English. It is not used often between a noun or a pronoun and a verb; nor before prepositions and adverbs of place; *e.g.*,

He is writing, *t'a hsie tsï* 他 寫 字.

Where are my things? *o-tih tong-hsi tsai-na-li* 我 的 東 西 在 那 裏.

They are here, *tsai-chœ-li* 在 這 裏.

Note in the last example that no word is used for 'they.' In such sentences 'they' is either understood, or is included in the verb, or the names of the things in question must be repeated; *e.g.*,

Whose are these things? they are mine; *chœ shï shui-tih tong-hsi*; *shï o-tih* 這 是 誰 的 東 西, 是 我 的.

## *Tsï* 子 and 兒 *rï* added to Nouns.

**6.** In Lesson II 子 *tsï* was added to both 桌 *choh* and 椅 *i*. It is very commonly added to nouns, especially in the South: in the North 兒 *rï* is largely used as its equivalent. When 兒 *rï* is preceded by a word ending in '*n*' the '*n*' is almost merged in the 兒 *rï* as in 錢 兒 *ch'ien-rï*, which is colloquially pronounced *ch'ier*. 'Here' and 'there' are often altered to 在 這 兒 *tsai-chœ-rï*, 在 那 兒 *tsai-na-rï*.

## Adverbs, position of.

**7.** Adverbs denoting *point of time*, or *time when*, as, I will go to-morrow, come *before* the verb: those denoting *duration of time* or *time how long*, as, I stayed there two days, come *after* the verb. See Lesson VI, Section 6, for further illustrations.

I will not go this time, *chœ huei o puh ch'ü* 這 回 我 不 去.

That time he sat here, *na huei t'a tso tsai-chœ-li* 那 回 他 坐 在 這 裏.

## *Liao* 了 as sign of Past Tense.

砵

**8.** The past tense is much more loosely defined in Chinese than in English. If, in the nature of the case, the act must have been in the past, the tense sign is often omitted; the context making the meaning obvious. On the other hand there are certain forms and connections which demand 了 *liao*; these must be learned by practice. In colloquial, 了 *liao* is frequently abbreviated to *la* or *loh* at the end of a sentence; *e.g.*,

Have you finished writing? Yes; *hsie-liao muh iu? hsie-liao* 寫 了 沒 有, 寫 了.

Have you bought the basin? Yes; *mai-liao uan mo? mai la* 買 了 碗 麼, 買 了.

NOTES.—*a.* In the North 沒 *muh* is constantly used alone before verbs, instead of 沒 有 *muh-iu.*

*b.* In some connections 在 *tsai* is omitted from 在 那 裏 *tsai-na-li*; *e.g.*, 他 是 那 裏 人 *ta shi na-li ren?* Where is he a native of?

*c.* In colloquial, 來 *lai* is pronounced *la* in the North when it is used as a substitute for 幾 *chi.* Unlike 幾 *chi*, it must be joined to some other number or denomination, it cannot be used alone; *e.g.*,

More than twenty men; *ri-shïh la ko ren* 二 十 來 個 人.

*d.* *Tao* 刀 alone is often used for 'a sword;' *tao-tsï* 刀 子 for 'a knife.'

*e.* In the North, *teh loh* 得 了 and *chong-loh* 中 了 are used as the equivalent of "That will do"; "All right," etc.

*f.* *Ch‘ĭh* 吃 is also written 喫: 回 is also written 囘.

[*See Lesson XXIII.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Do you understand this sentence? *chœ-chü hua ni tong puh tong?*
He is drinking tea; *t‘a ch‘ĭh ch‘a.*
What did he say to you? *t‘a tui ni shoh shen-mo?*
What is he saying? *t‘a shoh shen-mo hua?*
There are several hundred men there; *iu chi peh ko ren tsai-na-li.*
Ask him for twenty cash; *uen t‘a iao rï-shïh-ko ch‘ien.*
Please take a seat; *ch‘ing tso.*
Why does he not come? *t‘a uei-shen-mo puh lai?*
He cannot come; *t‘a lai puh liao.*
Has he arrived? No; *t‘a lai liao muh iu? muh-iu lai;*
There are two basins here; *iu liang-ko uan tsai-chœ-li.*
Have you taken your food? yes; *ch‘ĭh liao fan muh-iu? ch‘ĭh la.*

*Translate*:—450 or 460. 423 or 424. 45,000. 80,890. 89,600. 4,900. 40,360. 96,050. 60,890. 45,061. 7,004. ½ million. 1,600. 2,800. 608,704. 35,020. 1,012. 4¾ million. 350,065. 760,819. Four or five thousand. Between 1,300 and 1,400. 9,000,000. 10,000,000. 8,400,000. Between one and two million. Can you speak Chinese? I cannot, I can speak a foreign language. May this food be eaten? It may not. Can you write these three characters? No. He writes Chinese; I write foreign characters. Why will he not speak that sentence? I do not know. What tone is this? I do not know; ask *Mr Ch‘ien.* How many sons has he here? He has three here and two there. Have you any sons? No. *Mr. Chang* has four. There are five Chinese garments here, and three foreign garments there. Foreigners eat foreign food, Chinese eat Chinese food. Can you eat Chinese food? Yes. He has drunk three cups of tea. What is he drinking? He is drinking a cup of Chinese tea.

Writing Exercise:—沒 了 千 百 來 去.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第三課雜句

這句話你懂不懂

他吃茶

他對你說甚麼

他說甚麼話

有幾百個人在那裏

問他要二十個錢

請坐

他爲甚麼不來

他來不了

他來了沒有, 沒有來

有兩個碗在這裏

吃了飯沒有, 吃了

## NOTES.

## READING LESSON III. 輯要第三

Desultory Talk.

### 兩友相談

張先生來我對他說、請坐、他就坐椅子、我問他幾句話、說、先生有幾個兒子、他說三個、我說在這裏麼、他就說、不在這裏、在外國、他們在那裏念外國書、寫外國字、說外國話、有外國人在那裏請他們寫中國字給[1]他們看說幾句中國話給他們聽、我問他、你不要去看他們麼、他說我不要去、我在這裏有中國朋友、在外國沒有甚麼朋友、中國飯我吃得來、外國飯我吃不來。那中國先生對外國先生說、念中國書不要外國聲音、要中國聲音、寫中國字要中國筆、不要外國筆、是不是。茶碗他買得來買不來、買不來、紙、筆、他買得來、他那個兒子吃三碗飯、我兩碗吃不了。那幾句中國話我說不來、你說得來麼。那個人去了沒有、沒去、他爲甚麼不去、我不曉得、我去問他。去[3]問他要兩張外國紙、這把椅子坐得坐不得、坐不得。中國人有四萬萬、有甚麼人在那裏、有四個外國人、八個中國人、你認識不認識、不認識。這個氣字我寫不來、裳字我寫得

---

[1] *Chih* 給$^4$ For. L. 5.

[2] *T'ing* 聽$^1$ To hear; to listen. L. 4.

[3] *Uen t'a iao* 問他要 Ask him for...

來。[1]請問先生、這外國字的意思你懂不懂。外國衣裳、在這裏做得來做不來。我那句話對不對。那個東西不是他的麼、不是他的、是我的。他的兒子來不了。這個人有十來個錢。他那句話說不得。在這裏有兩本外國書、十來本中國書。他有一萬零六百個錢。一百三十八萬零七。他爲甚麼沒有買那四把刀子、他說買不來、這是甚麼話、張先生的兒子買了三把、他爲甚麼買不來呢[2]、我不知道、我去問他。你有兩枝外國筆沒有、沒有、我有四枝中國筆、七張紙。錢先生有我的外國茶碗沒有、我不曉得我去問他。問他要一百零九個錢、他說沒有那些錢、光[3]有九十幾個錢。在中國這裏有四萬萬人、在外國那裏有九萬萬人。他們十幾個人來我就去、他們說、你去麼。他們這話不是對我說的、是對先生的兒子說的。一萬幾、一二萬、是一個意思、一千幾、一二千[4]也是一個意思、一百幾、一二百也是一個意思。有外國人說、一個碗茶、中國人說、一碗茶、說個字就說錯了、十個件衣裳說不得、說十件衣裳、就不錯。

---

1. *Ch'ing uen* 請問 May I ask... ; will you kindly tell me?
2. *Ni* 呢 Interrogative particle. L. 10.
3. *Kuang* 光¹ Only. L. 10.
4. *Ie* 也 Also; and. L. 7.

# Lesson IV. 第四課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 牀$^{2}$ | *chʻuang*$^{6}$ | A bed; a couch. |
| 見$^{4}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ien* | To see; to perceive. To interview. Sign of the passive. |
| 門$^{2}$ | *men*$^{1,24}$ | A door; a gate. Profession; sect. |
| 第$^{4}$ | *ti* | An order; series. |
| 章$^{1}$ | *tsan*<br>*chang* } | A chapter. |
| 到$^{4}$ | *tao* | To arrive at; to reach. To—motion to. Until. |
| 紅$^{2}$ | *hong* | Red. |
| 好$^{3}$ | *hao* | Good; excellent; well; etc. Read *hao*$^{4}$ To be fond of. |
| 在$^{4}$ | *tsai* | At; in; on. |
| 上$^{4}$ | *shang* | On; in; above. To go or come up; to go to. |
| 大$^{4}$ | *ta* | Great; large. Eldest. |
| 小$^{3}$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *iao* | Small. Youngest. |
| 完$^{2}$ | *uan* | To finish; finished. |
| 送$^{4}$ | *song* | To escort. To give to. To take to or from. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 關$^{1}$ | *kuan* | To shut. A Custom-house. A suburb. |
| 事$^{4}$ | *sï*$^{1,4}$<br>*shih* } | Affairs; matters. |
| 穿$^{1}$ | *chʻuan* | To wear. To thread. |
| 就$^{4}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *iu* | At once; soon; then. Indicates sequence. |
| 聽$^{1}$ 見$^{4}$ | *tʻing-chien* | To hear; heard. |
| 知$^{1}$ 道$^{4}$ | *chï-tao* | To know. |
| 看$^{4}$ 見$^{4}$ | *kʻan-chien* | Saw; seen. |
| 拿$^{2}$ 來$^{2}$ | *na-lai* | To bring to. |
| 拿$^{2}$ 去$^{4}$ | *na-chʻü* | To take away. |
| 在$^{4}$ 下$^{4}$ 邊$^{1}$ | *tsai-hsia-pien* | Below. |
| 在$^{4}$ 上$^{4}$ 邊$^{1}$ | *tsai-shang-pien* | On the top; above. |
| 在$^{4}$ 裏$^{3}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *tsai-li-tʻeo* | Inside. |
| 在$^{4}$ 外$^{4}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *tsai-uai-tʻeo* | Outside. |
| 一$^{1}$ 口$^{3}$ 箱$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ih-kʻeo hsiang-tsï* | A box. |

## Adjectives: Position and Use.

**1.** Adjectives may either precede or follow the noun. When they precede, they may be said to be used distinctively, pointing out something that distinguishes the noun; when they follow the noun, they are used predicatively; this, it may be noticed, is as it is in English; *e.g.*,

A small basin; ***ih-ko hsiao uan*** 一個小碗.
That small basin is good; *na-ko hsiao uan hao* 那個小碗好.
He is a good man; *tʻa shï ko hao ren* 他是個好人.
This thing is red; *chæ-ko tong-hsi shï hong-tih* 這個東西是紅的.

---

一回生兩回熟 *Unacquainted with the first time, familiar with the second.*

From these examples it will be seen that 是 *shï* may or may not be used. No definite rule can be laid down about this, save that when the adjective follows 是 *shï* it almost invariably takes 的 *tih*, and rarely, if ever, when it follows the N. A. as in the third example.

Adjectives may have 的 *tih* joined to them, *tih* 的 in this connection having the force of 'one', or 'ones', according to the context; *e.g.*,

He has two good ones; *t'a iu liang-ko hao tih* 他有兩個好的.

I don't want small ones, I want large ones; *o puh iao hsiao tih, o iao ta tih* 我不要小的, 我要大的.

I want to buy good ones; *o iao mai hao tih* 我要買好的.

The large one is his, the small one is mine; *ta tih shï t'a-tih, hsiao tih shï o-tih* 大的是他的, 小的是我的.

He has two red boxes: one large, one small; *t'a iu liang-k'eo hong hsiang-tsï, ih-k'eo ta tih, ih-k'eo hsiao tih* 他有兩口紅箱子, 一口大的一口小的.

## Numeral Adjectives.

Numeral adjectives are changed from cardinal to ordinal by prefixing 第 *ti*; as, 'one'; 'first'; *e.g.*,

One chapter; *ih chang* 一 章.

First chapter; *ti-ih chang* 第 一 章.

Which chapter? *na-ih chang* 那 一 章.

Which chapter?—in order; *ti chi chang* 第 幾 章.

First, either in order or superiority; *ti-ih* 第 一.

Note that *chang* 章 takes no N. A.

## *Pa* 把: Position and Use.

2. The word 把 *pa*, in one of its most common uses, does not need to be translated, but simply introduces the Direct Object of the verb; *e.g.*,

Bring that thing here; *pa na-ko tong-hsi na-lai* 把那個東西拿來.

Take away this cup; *pa chœ-ko uan na-ch'ü* 把這個碗拿去.

In these examples the Object is in its simplest form—'thing', 'cup.' All enlargements may be added while keeping the same construction; *e.g.*,

Take away that large thing; *pa na-ko ta tong-hsi na-ch'ü* 把那個大東西拿去.

Bring my large foreign box here; *pa o-tih ta uai-kueh hsiang-tsï na-lai* 把我的大外國箱子拿來.

Bring two cups of Chinese tea; *pa liang uan Chong-kueh ch'a na-lai* 把兩碗中國茶拿來.

In translating, begin with the verb that follows 把 *pa*: all that lies between it and the verb is its simple or enlarged Object.

## Adverbs and Prepositions.

3. The same word may, in English or Chinese, be either an adverb or a preposition; *e.g.*,

He is outside; *t'a tsai-uai-t'eo* 他 在 外 頭.

He is outside the door; *t'a tsai men uai-t'eo* 他 在 門 外 頭.

In the first sentence no change is made in 在 外 頭 *tsai-uai-t'eo*; in the second it is split into two parts and the noun it governs is inserted between them. The same construction is followed when the noun or pronoun has qualifying words preceding it; *e.g.*,

He is outside the front door; *t'a tsai ta men uai* 他 在 大 門 外.

They are outside Mr. Chang's front door; *t'a-men tsai Chang hsien-seng-tih ta men uai-t'eo* 他 們 在 章 先 生 的 大 門 外 頭.

In the first sentence 頭 *t'eo* is omitted; this makes a better style in many connections, where it would be quite accurate to use the full form.

In speaking of places, 在 *tsai* alone is used; otherwise both 在 *tsai* and 上 *shang* are used; *e.g.*,

He has a son in China; *t'a iu ko rï-tsï tsai Chong-kueh* 他 有 個 兒 子 在 中 國.

The cup is on the table; *uan tsai choh-tsï shang* 碗 在 棹 子 上.

The word 'six' is not in the book; *luh tsï puh tsai shu shang* 六 字 不 在 書 上.

For the sake of euphony, 一 *ih* is omitted before 個 *ko* in the first sentence; this is very common; *e.g.*,

That is a good thing; *na shï ko hao tong-hsi* 那 是 個 好 東 西.

## *Lai* 來 and *Ch'ü* 去 as Principal and Auxiliary Verbs.

4. Both 來 *lai* and 去 *ch'ü* are used as principal and auxiliary verbs. As auxiliaries they may be used with a large number of verbs, conveying the idea of motion, and may either be joined to them, as 拿 來 *na-lai*. where 拿 *na*, meaning 'To take; to take hold of,' is the principal verb; or may be separated by the Object, with or without enlargements; *e.g.*,

Take this—to somebody; *pa chœ-ko song-ch'ü* 把 這 個 送 去.

Take this foreign garment to Mr. Ch'ien; *pa chœ-chien uai-kueh i-shang song tao Ch'ien hsien-seng na-li ch'ü* 把 這 件 外 國 衣 裳, 送 到 錢 先 生 那 裏 去.

In such a construction as that of the last sentence, 到 *tao*, indicating 'motion to'; 'direction,' takes the place of 在 *tsai*; the idiom being, 'take to Mr. Ch'ien there go.' The following will illustrate this use of 到 *tao*;

Has he arrived? Yes; *t'a tao-liao muh iu? tao-liao* 他 到 了 沒 有, 到 了.

Where are you going? Over there; *ni tao* (or 上 *shang*) *na-li ch'ü? tao na pien ch'ü* 你 到 那 裏 去, 到 那 邊 去.

### Potential Mood indicated by *teh* 得.

**5.** In Lesson III, Section 3, one use of 得 *teh* was explained: what was said there applies to both 看見 *k'an-chien* and 聽見 *t'ing-chien*, which are composed of 看 *k'an* 'To see,' and 聽 *t'ing* 'To hear,' joined to 見 *chien*; *e.g.*,

Can you see? No; *k'an teh chien, k'an puh chien? k'an puh chien* 看得見看不見, 看不見.

Can you hear? Yes; *t'ing teh chien, t'ing puh chien? t'ing teh chien* 聽得見聽不見, 聽得見.

May I look at this? No; *chœ-ko tong-hsi o k'an teh k'an puh teh? k'an puh teh* 這個東西我看得看不得, 看不得.

You mustn't listen to that expression; *na-chü-hua ni t'ing puh teh* 那句話你聽不得.

### *Hao-liao* 好了 and *Uan-liao* 完了 indicating Completion.

6. The completion of an action is indicated by 好了 *hao-liao*, or 完了 *uan-liao*, which come after the verb; *e.g.*,

He has finished writing; *t'a hsie uan-liao* 他寫完了.

Has he finished the chair? *na-pa i-tsï t'a tso hao-liao muh iu* 那把椅子他做好了沒有.

When an action is completed and is followed by another, 就 *chiu* indicates the sequence. It thus denotes the order of time, and may often be translated by 'when'; 'thereupon'; etc.; *e.g.*,

He left when he had finished his food; *t'a ch'ih uan-liao fan chiu ch'ü* 他吃完了飯就去.

When he had finished speaking he went outside the door; *t'a shoh uan-liao hua, chiu tao men uai ch'ü* 他說完了話就到門外去.

He read Chinese books as soon as he arrived; *t'a ih lai chiu nien Chong-kueh shu* 他一來就念中國書.

### *Shang* 上 and *Tao* 到 as Auxiliaries.

**7.** In the North, 上 *shang* is used as an Auxiliary after many verbs: in the West 到 *tao* is frequently used instead; *e.g.*,

Shut the door; *pa men kuan-shang* 把門關上 (or 到 *tao*).

He has put on that garment; *na-chien i-shang t'a ch'uan-shang liao* 那件衣裳他穿上了.

---

NOTE.—In such words as 在外頭 *tsai-uai-t'eo* Southern and Central dialects prefer *t'eo* 頭; while in the North 邊 *pien* commonly replaces it.

[*See Lesson XXIII.*]

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第四課雜句

我到了中國就請先生
你的東西在我這裏
他就來
你的書不在這裏在外頭
那句話不好聽
我做好了就去
這個門我關不上
我的箱子在那裏, 你知道不知道, 不知道
我聽見說
他的大兒子在外國
我的箱子你看見沒有, 沒有
說不上
這是大的, 我要小的

## NOTES.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

When I came to China I engaged a teacher; *o tao-liao Chong-kueh chiu ch'ing hsien-seng.*
Your things are here with me; *ni-tih tong-hsi tsai o chœ-li.*
He will be here directly; *t'a chiu lai.*
Your book is not here, it is outside; *ni-tih shu puh tsai-chœ-li, tsai-uai-t'eo.*
That sentence does not sound well; *na-chü-hua puh hao t'ing.*
I will go when I have finished; *o tso hao-liao chiu ch'ü.*
I cannot shut this door; *chœ-ko men o kuan puh shang.*
Do you know where my box is? No; *o-tih hsiang-tsi tsai-na-li, ni chī-tao puh chī-tao? puh chī-tao.*
I heard it said; They say; *o t'ing-chien shoh.*
His eldest son is abroad; *t'a-tih ta rī-tsī tsai uai-kueh.*
Have you seen my box? No; *o-tih hsiang-tsī ni-k'an-chien muh iu? muh iu.*
Cannot tell; unable to say; *shoh puh shang.*
This is a large one, I want a small one; *chœ shī ta tih, o iao hsiao tih.*

*Translate*:—I heard that younger son of his speak Chinese; where did you hear him? I heard him outside the door. This garment is small, I cannot wear it: can you? No. Take these two foreign cups away. Bring that book here; which one? the large one. What did he take away? I did not see. He accompanied me outside the door. That thing is above; it is not below. The small one is in the large box; you go and see. I cannot hear what you say; can you hear what I say? Yes. I will read the first chapter; kindly listen. Which chapter do you want to read? He brought that article when he had bought it. Take this thing outside; I do not want it. I will not accompany you. Who is below? Mr. Chang's eldest son.

**Writing Exercise**:— 我 你 他 的 們 大 R. 37; 小 R. 42.

---

## READING LESSON IV. 四 第 要 輯

### Speech in the Making.

### 言詞初編

章先生的大兒子上關上去看朋友、他到了那裏、沒有看見朋友、他就問錢先生的小兒子看見來沒有、他說沒有看見、有一個人坐在那裏說、有兩個人在外頭不知道是不是、一個穿中國衣裳、一個穿外國衣裳、大的送了一口小箱子來、[1]放在大門裏頭、就回到外頭去、對那小的

---

[1] *Fang* 放$^{4}$; To place, to put. V. 1.

說了幾句外國話、不知道說的甚麼話、說完了兩個人就去、把三個小紅茶碗拿來、送我一個、把那兩個放在棹子上、大的對小的說、你要那一個、小的說、我要這個好的、大的就說、[1]好、[2]你要就拿去、我[2a]可以把我這個碗拿到我朋友那裏去送他、看他要不要。章先生的兒子聽見這話、就到外頭去、看看他們在不在那裏、[3]一到關上的大門外、就看見他們兩個人坐在對門口說話、[4]但聽不見他們說甚麼、他們一看見他就說、在裏頭有張牀你可以來[5]坐坐、把你的東西送到這裏來、這幾句話說好了、他就到他們那裏去、[6]手裏拿[7]着一本書、是[8]他的一個朋友送他的、他們看見書就說、這個書好、買幾個錢、他說不是買的、是人送我的、你們沒有念[9]過麼、他們說沒有、[10]也沒有看見過、他就說、在我的大箱子裏[11]還有兩本大的、我可以囘去拿來、送你們一個人一本、他們說、好、你可以去、他就去、到了就關上門、[12]開了箱子、

---

1. *Hao* 好 is constantly used as an expression of approval, and may be translated by 'very good;' 'all right,' etc.

2. *Ni iao* 你要 'If you want it': supposition is often contained in the construction of the sentence and needs no special word.

2a. *K'o-i* 可$^3$ 以$^3$; May as well; will. L. 5.

3. *Ih tao* 一到 As soon as he arrived at.

4. *Tan* 但 But. L. 8.

5. *Tso tso* 坐坐; verbs are often repeated, sometimes for emphasis, sometimes for the sake of euphony.

6. *Sheo* 手$^3$ The hand. V. 1.

7. *Choh* 着$^2$ an auxiliary verb; *na-choh* 拿着 'carrying.' L. 11.

8. *T'a tih ih ko p'eng-iu* 他的一個朋友; one of his friends.

9. *Ko* 過$^4$ Sign of perfect tense. 沒有念過麼 have you not read it? L. 5.

10. *Ie* 也$^3$ Also. 也沒有看見過 neither have we seen it. L. 7.

11. *Huan* 還$^2$ More; still. L. 7.

12. *K'ai* 開$^1$ To open. L. 6.

把兩本好書拿出來[1]放在棹子上、吃一碗茶囘去、把書送朋友、大的說、看第一章說甚麼話、小的說、好、你看第一章、我看第三四兩章、看好了就到關上去、好不好、三個人就坐在那裏、他們看完了說甚麼話、第四章裏頭是甚麼意思、我不知道、我光聽見小的說、這個字念甚麼聲音、大的說、這個字你不認識麼、這是牀字、念下平聲、他還說了甚麼話我不知道、我有事[2]就囘去了。

---

1. *Ch‘uh-lai* 出來 To come out: used as auxiliary to 拿$^2$ L. 7.
2. *Iu si* 有事 To have an engagement; to be engaged.

## LESSON V. 第五課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 晚$^3$ | *uan* | Evening; late. A junior. |
| 前$^2$ | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *ien* | Formerly; before; in front of. |
| 快$^4$ | *k‘uai* | Sharp. Quick; soon; about to. |
| 年$^2$ | *nien* | A year. Age. |
| 早$^3$ | *tsao* | Early. Previous. Ago. |
| 挑$^1$ | *t‘iao* | To carry on the shoulder with a pole. To choose. |
| 月$^4$ | *üeh* | The moon; a month. |
| 下$^4$ | *h* { *sia*<br>*a* | Below. To descend. An auxiliary verb. |
| 天$^1$ | *t‘ien* | Sky; heaven; weather. A day. |
| 節$^2$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *ieh* | A verse; a joint. Holiday festival. |
| 初$^1$ | *ts‘*<br>*ch* } *u* | The beginning; at the first. |
| 給$^4$ | *ch* } *ih*<br>*k* } *ei* | To give to. To let; to allow. For, to. |
| 叫$^4$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *iao* | To call; to call out. To tell. |
| 半$^4$ | *pan* | Half. |
| 過$^4$ | *k* { *o*<br>*uo* | To cross over; to pass by. Sign of perfect and past tenses. Transgression; fault. |
| 要$^1$ 緊$^3$ | *iao-chin* | Important. |
| 可$^3$ 以$^3$ | *k‘o-i* | May; can. |
| 早$^3$ 晨$^2$ | *tsao-ch‘en* | Morning. |
| 晚$^3$ 上$^4$ | *uan-shang* | Evening: night. |
| 前$^2$ 天$^1$ | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *ien-t‘ien* | Day before yesterday. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 昨$^2$ 天$^1$ | *tsoh-t‘ien* | Yesterday. |
| 現$^4$ 在$^4$ | *hsien-tsai* | Now; at present. |
| 時$^2$ 候$^4$ | *shï-heo* | Time. |
| 今$^1$ 天$^1$ | *chin-t‘ien* | To-day |
| 明$^2$ 天$^1$ | *ming-t‘ien* | To-morrow. |
| 今$^1$ 年$^2$ | *chin-nien* | This year |
| 明$^2$ 年$^2$ | *ming-nien* | Next year. |
| 從$^2$ 前$^2$ | *ts‘ong-ch‘ien* | Formerly |
| 去$^4$ 年$^2$ | *ch‘ü-nien* | Last year. |
| 前$^2$ 年$^2$ | *ch‘ien-nien* | Year before last. |

## Time.

**1.** Time generally, without reference to any definite period, is spoken of as 時候 *shï-heo; e.g.,*

What time? When? *shen-mo shï-heo* 甚麽時候.
At that time; *na shï-heo* 那時候.
At this time; *chœ shï-heo* 這時候.

The indefinite past is indicated by 從前 ***ts‘ong-ts‘ien***, or 早 *tsao*; 早 tsao corresponding to ‘ago,’; *e.g.,*

He formerly had a box; *t‘a ts‘ong-ch‘ien iu hsiang-tsï* 他從前有箱子.

He came some time ago; *t‘a tsao lai-liao* 他早來了.

The present time is denoted by 現在 *hsien-tsai*, which answers to, ‘At this time; at present,’ etc.; *e.g.,*

He is eating just now; *t‘a hsien-tsai ch‘ih fan* 他現在吃飯.
He will not go at present; *t‘a hsien-tsai puh ch‘ü* 他現在不去.

The future, without reference to any specified time, is usually denoted by 要 *iao*, or 快 *k‘uai*, or at times by the two together: they more generally indicate a proximate future rather than a distant one. Often the mention of some definite future time dispenses with the need of any special word; *e.g.,*

He will be here soon; *t‘a k‘uai iao lai* 他快要來.
He says he will go; *t‘a shoh iao ch‘ü* 他說要去.
He will go to-morrow; *t‘a ming-t‘ien ch‘ü* 他明天去.

## Order of Time.

**2.** English idiom, in speaking of the order of time, usually begins with the lowest denomination; as hours, days, weeks, etc. Chinese idiom on the contrary begins with the highest; as years, months, days.

Years take no N. A. unless they are preceded by an adjective.

When a lower denomination follows a higher 零 *ling* is used.

He had no money during those years; *na-hsie nien t‘a muh iu ch‘ien* 那些年他沒有錢.

---

㓜不學老何爲 *If one does not learn in youth, what will one do when old?*

Five or six years; *u luh nien* 五六年.

Two years and six months; *rï nien, ling luh-ko üeh* 二年零六個月.

Four years ago; *tsao sï nien* 早四年.

Months take the N. A. 個 *ko* when spoken of by number, as 'One month'; 'Two months'; etc.; but omit both it and 第 *ti* when spoken of in order; *e.g.,*

He has been here two months; *t'a lai-liao liang-ko üeh*; 他來了兩個月.

He says he will come in the third month; *t'a shoh san üeh lai* 他說三月來.

Three months and a half; *san-ko pan üeh* 三個半月.

Days, like years, take no N. A. In speaking of them from the 1st to the 10th of the month inclusive 初 *ts'u* must be prefixed both in positive and interrogative forms; *e.g.,*

Three or four days; *san u t'ien* 三五天.

Ten odd days; *shïh chi t'ien* 十幾天.

He went on the 8th of this month; *t'a chœ üeh ts'u pah ch'ü* 他這月初八去.

The 9th of the 3rd month last year; *ch'ü-nien san üeh ts'u chiu* 去年三月初九.

What is the day of the month?—from 1st to 10th; *chin-t'ien ts'u chi* 今天初幾.

What is the day of the month?—from 10th to 20th; *chin-t'ien shïh chi* 今天十幾.

What is the day of the month?—from 20th to 30th; *chin-t'ien rï-shih chi* 今天二十幾.

To-day is the 6th; *chin-t'ien ts'u luh* 今天初六.

## Time—Past and Future.

**3.** A definite period of time regarded as having passed, is denoted by 早 *tsao*, 'early'; as yet to come, by 過 *ko*, 'to pass'; *e.g.,*

Two months ago; *tsao liang-ko üeh* 早兩個月.

He was here a few days ago; *t'a tsao chi t'ien tsai-chœ-li* 他早幾天在這裏.

Go in a month from now; *ko ih-ko üeh ch'ü* 過一個月去

How many years ago? *tsao chi nien* 早幾年.

Periods of time are divided into 'last' or 'next' by the words 'upper' 上 *shang*; and 'lower' 下 *hsia*; they form part of the stream of time, the earlier being the upper reach, the later the lower; *e.g.,*

Forenoon; *shang* (or *t'eo*) *pan t'ien* 上 (*or* 頭) 半天.

Afternoon; *hsia pan t‘ien* 下 半 天.
First half of year; *shang* (or *t‘eo*) *pan nien* 上 (or 頭) 半 年.
Last half of year; *hsia pan nien* 下 半 年.
Last month; *shang üeh* 上 月.
Next month; *hsia üeh* 下 月.

The years of a monarch's reign do not take 第 *ti*; *e.g.*,

The 2nd year of *Hsüen-t‘ong*; *Hsüen-t‘ong rï nien* 宣 統 二 年

The 4th day of the 8th month of the 2nd year of *Hsüen-t‘ong*, *Hsüen-t‘ong rï nien pah üeh ts‘u sï* 宣 統 二 年 八 月 初 四

## ‘Each’, ‘every’ as applied to Time.

**4.** ‘Each,’ ‘every’, as applied to time is expressed by repeating the noun twice. ‘Morning’, ‘evening’ follow the name of the day to which they belong; *e.g.*,

He comes every day; *t‘a t‘ien t‘ien lai* 他 天 天 來.
He goes every month; *t‘a üeh üeh ch‘ü* 他 月 月 去.
He goes there every year; *t‘a nien nien tao na-li ch‘ü* 他 年 年 到 那 裏 去.
This evening; *chin-t‘ien uan-shang* 今 天 晚 上.
To-morrow morning; *ming-t‘ien tsao-ch‘en* 明 天 早 晨.
He reads every morning; *t‘a t‘ien t‘ien tsao-ch‘en nien-shu* 他 天 天 早 晨 念 書.

## The Imperative as modified by the Use of *K‘o-i* 可 以.

5. The abrupt use of an Imperative is often modified by the use of 可 以 *k‘o-i*. It is often the equivalent of, ‘That will do’; ‘Thank you’; etc.

You may go; *ni k‘o-i ch‘ü* 你 可 以 去.
You had better call him; *k‘o-i ch‘ü chiao t‘a* 可 以 去 呌 他.
Will it do? Yes; *k‘o-i puh k‘o-i? k‘o-i* 可 以 不 可 以, 可 以.

6. The idiomatic way of expressing ‘Less than’ is, ‘not to arrive at’, 不 到 *puh tao*; *e.g.*,

In less than a year; *puh tao ih nien* 不 到 一 年

---

NOTES.—*a*. *Tsao-shang* 早 上 is also used for ‘morning’.

*b*. It is advisable to avoid the excessive use of 你 *ni*, as it has a tendency to indicate disrespect.

*c*. *Ch‘ing* 請 answers to ‘Please’; ‘Will you kindly;’ etc. A discriminating use of it is of great value, especially in speaking to educated people.

*d*. *T‘iao* 挑 is used only of the action of carrying a load on a pole by one man in Chinese fashion.

*e*. *Chiao* 呌 is used of the cries of most animals, and the singing of birds.

[*See Lesson XXIV.*]

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第五課雜句

今天是外國四月初八
這個不要緊
你甚麼時候來的, 我去年來的
叫他明天來挑去
他去年在這裏
他說明天來看你
過不去
我從前沒見他, 今天見了他
我今天不去, 可以明天來
他要一半, 我要一半
我給他一大半
叫他來
叫他現在來
我聽他說要明年去

### NOTES.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

To-day is the 8th of April; *chin-t‘ien shī uai-kueh sï üeh ts‘u-pah.*
This is unimportant; *chæ-ko puh iao-chin.*
When did you come? Last year. *ni shen-mo shī-heo lai tih? o ch‘ü-nien lai tih.*
Tell him to come and carry it away to-morrow; *chiao t‘a ming-t‘ien lai t‘iao-ch‘ü.*
He was here last year; *t‘a ch‘ü-nien tsai-chæ-li.*
He says he will come and see you to-morrow; *t‘a shoh ming-t‘ien lai k‘an ni.*
You cannot cross; *ko puh ch‘ü.*
I had not seen him before; I saw him to-day; *o ts‘ong-ch‘ien muh chien t‘a; chin-t‘ien chien-liao t‘a.*
I will not go to-day; you had better come to-morrow; *o chin-t‘ien puh ch‘ü; k‘o-i ming-t‘ien lai.*
He wants a half; I want a half; *t‘a iao ih-pan, o iao ih-pan*
I gave him the larger half; *o chih t‘a ih ta pan.*
Call her; *chiao t‘a lai.*
Tell him to come now; *chiao t‘a hsien-tsai lai.*
I heard him say he would go next year; *o t‘ing t‘a shoh iao ming-nien ch‘ü.*

*Translate*:—Three years ago I was abroad; now I am in China; in a year's time I do not know where I shall go. He said yesterday that he would carry (挑 *t‘iao*) that large red box here to-day; he has not brought it; why is this? he is now outside the door; tell him to bring it along. At that time I gave him 506 cash; now I give him 20,000; will this do? Yes. It does not matter whether he goes or not; (if) he goes to-morrow morning it will do. He comes and sits with me here every evening; he is now below; you had better invite him to come up. Five years, four months and three days ago he gave me this excellent garment. You had better go and ask him for that large tea cup; he is not there now; how will it do to go to-morrow morning? In three years and a half I will go and see his eldest son; is he abroad now? No, he is in China.

Writing Exercise :—下 天 叫 快 給 是 月 R. 74.

## READING LESSON V. 五第要輯

### A Visit from a Friend.

有朋自遠方來

今年七月初九早晨、我在這裏念書寫字、有一位章先生來說他有一件小事要對我說、我就問他有甚麽事、他說、從前我有個朋友在外國、光[2]緒三十年八月二十幾、他寫信[3]來給我、請我到他那裏去、第一要緊要我快

---

1. *Uei* 位⁴ A throne. N. A. indicating respect.
2. *Kuang-hsü* 光¹ 緒⁴ Title of Emperor who reigned from 1875 to 1909.
3. *Hsin* 信⁴ A letter. L. 10.

去、他說、一個月要給我幾十兩[1]銀子、可以吃他的飯、過三四年就可以回到中國來、我九月初四得到他的[2]信、那時我有事去不了、到了十月十幾、我就上[3]船、到他那裏去、我在那裏有三年零四個月、[4]事情[5]很好、吃穿也[5a]都不錯、我的朋友有兩個兒子、天天上半天[6]跟我念中國書、寫中國字、[7]學中國話、念完了書、寫好了字、就[8]放學、到了晚上、他們[9]領我到外頭去、這裏[10]走走、那裏看看、天天這樣、[11]過年過節、兩個人都送些錢給我、去年過[12]八月節、我聽說[13]家中有事、就[14]趕快上家走、到了家、曉得是大兒子九月初一[15]不在了、過了幾個月、我聽人說、你先生要請人寫字、我聽見這話、過了半個月、就來看看、有這事沒有、先生要我來、我就可以來、我說、現在不請人、現在我有了先生、過兩三個月、先生可以來看看、也不要緊、這句話說完、我就叫人送上兩碗茶來、請他吃茶、我們兩個人吃了茶、我就問他、明年還[16]有意到外國

---

1. *In-tsi* 銀$^2$ 子 Silver. L. 9.
2. *Hsin* 信$^4$ A letter. L. 10.
3. *Ch'uan* 船$^2$ A ship L. 12.
4. *Si-ch'ing* 事$^4$ 情$^2$ Circumstances; position.

*Hen* 很$^3$ Very. L. 8.

*Tu* 都$^1$ All. L. 10.

6. *Ken* 跟$^1$ To follow; to study under a teacher. L. 17.
7. *Hsioh* 學$^2$ To study; to learn. L. 16.
8. *Fang-hsioh* 放學 To let loose from study; to finish lessons.
9. *Ling* 領$^3$ To lead; to 'take'—as to see something.
10. *Tseo-tseo* 走$^3$ 走$^3$ To walk about; to go from one place to another.
11. *Ko nien, ko chieh* 過年 過節 At New Year and holidays. L. 23, 24.
12. *Pah üeh chieh* 八月節 The Chinese have three national holidays—the New Year, and a holiday in the 5th and 8th months.
13. *Chia* 家$^1$ Home. L. 8.
14. *Kan-k'uai* 趕$^3$ 快$^4$ Without delay. L. 24.
15. *Puh tsai liao* 不在了 'Not in'—dead.
16. *Iu-i* 有意 To purpose. L. 26.

去麽、他說、我沒有那個意思、我去年囘來、今年在這裏、我們說到這裏、我小兒子就來說、下邊有人挑了兩口紅箱子來、放在大門外頭、說是錢先生叫他挑來的、問我放在那裏、我就問、箱子裏頭有甚麽東西、他說、大的是一箱子衣裳、小的有先生的東西、有幾十本大書、有一百零幾張外國紙、還有十枝筆、幾百錢、我說、那個人還在那裏麽、他說、不知道、我可以去看看、看了囘來說、還在那裏、他說、可以給他一百幾十個錢麽、我說、可以、叫他先把東西挑到裏頭來、放在那張大棹子那裏、放好了可以拿錢給他、話說完了、我就問章先生有幾個兒子、他說、還有兩個都在家念書、上半天念書、下半天寫字、到了晚上沒有事、就吃飯、大的碗半飯吃得了、小的一碗也吃不上、我就拿出[1]兩件外國東西來、說、請先生把這兩件拿去送你的兒子、大的給大兒子、小的給小兒子、過幾天叫他們上我這裏來、看看我的外國東西、對我說幾句中國話、好不好、他說、這是先生的好[2]意、過兩天我可以把他們、[3]帶來看看先生、聽先生說幾句外國話、[3a]就是過節過年、他們也要來、過五六年、我還請先生帶他們到外國去、我現在有事、要囘去、我說、不送、他就去了。

---

[1] *Na ch'uh...lai* 拿出來 *Ch'uh-lai* is here an auxiliary verb joined to 拿.

[1a] It is a common idiom to place the Object of the principal verb between the parts of the auxiliary, as here 兩件外國東西 being the Object of 拿.

[2] *Hao-i* 好意 A kind thought.

[3] *Tai* 帶⁴ To bring with.

[3a] *Chiu-shï* 就是 Even; and also. Lesson 9.

## WORDS FOR EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION.

The Vocabulary given below is intended to furnish the student with material for composing sentences of his own. Taking any of the words, or any of the thoughts suggested by them, let him compose sentences by the aid of the facts and principles laid down in the foregoing lessons and go over them with his teacher. The sentences already given will furnish models, according to which he may construct others. In this way he will acquire a power of speaking that can be obtained in no other way; and will at the same time have material with which to interest his teacher and make him talk. His own thoughts will thus shape themselves according to the forms and idioms peculiar to the language—the true secret of speaking it well.

## VOCABULARY I. 字彙第一

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 記 | *ch*$^{4}$<br>*k* } *i* | To record. A sign. |
| 緊 | *ch*$^{3}$<br>*k* } *in* | Tight; strict. |
| 慢$^{4}$ | *man* | Slow; slowly. |
| 長$^{2}$ | *ch'ang* | Long. Read *chang*$^{3}$. To grow. An elder. |
| 店$^{4}$ | *tien*$^{1}$ | A shop; an inn. |
| 臉$^{3}$ | *lien*$^{1}$ | Face; character. |
| 頭$^{2}$ | *t'eo*$^{1}$ | A head; chief; first. An end. N. A. |
| 壺$^{2}$ | *hu*$^{8}$ | A pot; a jug. |
| 水$^{3}$ | *shui* | Water; fluid. |
| 脚$^{3}$ | *ch* } *ioh*$^{9}$<br>*k* } *iao* | A foot; a base. |
| 口$^{3}$ | *k'eo*$^{1}$ | An opening; a mouth. N. A. |
| 輕$^{1}$ | *ch'*<br>*k* } *ing* | Light; trifling. Young. |
| 乾$^{1}$ | *kan* | Dry. |
| 重$^{4}$ | *chong* | Heavy; weighty. |
| 冷$^{3}$ | *leng* | Cold. |
| 熱$^{1}$ | *reh* | Hot. To heat. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 深$^{1}$ | *shen* | Deep; profound. |
| 濕$^{1}$ | *shïh* | Wet. |
| 高$^{1}$ | *kao* | High; lofty. |
| 帶$^{4}$ | *tai*$^{2}$ | To bring; as a person or letter. A girdle. |
| 寬$^{1}$ | *k'uan* | Broad; wide. |
| 窄$^{3}$ | *tseh*<br>*chai* } | Narrow, confined. |
| 走$^{3}$ | *tseo* | To walk; to travel; to go. |
| 放$^{4}$ | *fang* | To place; to put. To loose. |
| 講$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *iang* | To talk; to preach. |
| 作$^{4}$ | *tsoh* | To do; to make. |
| 救$^{4}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *iu* | To save; to deliver. |
| 舖$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *p'u-tsï*$^{1}$ | Shop. |
| 哥$^{1}$ 哥$^{1}$ | *ko-ko*$^{1}$ | Elder brother. |
| 兄$^{1}$ 弟$^{4}$ | *hsiong-ti*$^{1}$ | Younger brother. |
| 一$^{1}$ 隻$^{1}$ 手$^{3}$ | *ih-chï sheo* | The hand; a "hand." |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 打$^{3}$ | *ta* | To strike. To buy. |
| 洗$^{3}$ | *hs* / *s* } *i* | To wash ; to cleanse. |
| 忘 記$^{4}$ | *uang-chi* | To forget. |
| 記$^{1}$ 得$^{2}$ | *chi-teh* | To remember. |
| 眼$^{3}$ 睛$^{1}$ | *ien-ching*$^{9}$ | Eyes. |
| 一$^{1}$ 條$^{2}$ 街$^{1}$ | *ih-t'iao kiai* | A street. |
| 一$^{1}$ 雙$^{1}$ 鞋$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ih-shuang* *hai* / *hsiai* / *hsieh* } *tsï* | A pair of shoes. |

NOTES.—*a. Lien* 臉 includes the idea of reputation, any one who does not want face—不 要 臉 *puh iao lien*, is regarded as indifferent to his character.

*b.* In the North 子 *tsï* is usually omitted after 鞋 *hsiai.*

*c. Chï* 隻 is not used alone; but only when one of a pair is spoken of.

*d. P'u-tsï* 舖 子 is used more extensively in the North than in the South; 店 *tien* being applied to an inn in the North.

*e.* Great difference of opinion exists among teachers as to the use of 作 *tsoh* and 做 *tso*; Northern teachers prefer 作 *tsoh.*

[*See Lesson XXV.*]

## REVIEW: LESSONS I-V. 一 第 課 考

1. Give different forms for Who? Whose?

State two ways of asking questions, and give two examples.

What is the function of 不? give two examples.

How are N. A's. used? give three examples.

When are they omitted? give two examples.

What is the difference in the use of 二 and 兩? give an example.

How is 零 used? give two examples.

Give two meanings and two examples of the use of 得.

How does 來 when read *la* differ in use from 幾? give an example.

What is the difference in the use of an adjective when it precedes and when it follows a noun? give two examples.

Illustrate the use of 把 in two sentences.

Give two examples of adverbs used as prepositions.

Shew the use of 來 and 去 as principal and as auxiliary verbs.

How is 就 used? give two examples.

How is the completion of an action expressed? give two examples.

Give two different uses of 上.

Shew the use of 的 in two sentences.

In speaking of time, when is the N. A. omitted?

Give two examples of the use of 初.

How is 'each,' 'every' indicated in reference to time?
Translate Reading Lesson 5.

2. Write in Chinese character:—My tea. 4,000 characters. He will not go. He bought two ounces. He comes every day. Will they go? No. The small one and the large one are his. Tell him to go quickly. He has no tea. Give him four copies. Has he bought it? No. My 300 sheets (of paper).

3. Correct the following, where necessary, and state reasons for correction:—

4. Give sound, tone and meaning of the following characters:- -

$^{3}$這些五枝筆。四個碗茶。五口箱子錢。一年一個月三天。他說來明天。這是張我的紙。他買三個兩。他早五個天來。他念第三個節。他在裏頭門。那個東西把拿來。拿去那紅件衣裳。一百十二個人。十五百個錢。二十千筆。他有大的不有。他有十把椅子你有來把。他說甚麼句話。他說話外國。他有中國吃飯。一千三十。一張棹子錢。在這裏有十碗拿他們來。一個壺小熱的水。

$^{4}$寫懂些外對曉零穿紅送棹緊晚挑寬高壺深放臉鞋乾慢脚輕濕帶講。

---

## LESSON VI. 課六第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 禮$^{3}$ | *li* | Good manners; politeness; ceremony; worship. A present. |
| 殺 | $^{1}$*shah* | To kill; to destroy; to murder. To add up. Very. |
| 正$^{4}$ | *cheng* | Upright; just. Read *cheng*$^{1}$: The 1st moon. |
| 春$^{1}$ | *ch'uen* | Spring. |
| 夏$^{4}$ | *hsia* | Summer. |
| 秋$^{1}$ | *ch'* / *ts* } *iu* | Autumn. |
| 冬$^{1}$ | *tong* | Winter. The 11th month. |
| 季$^{4}$ | *ch* / *k* } *i* | A season. |
| 臘$^{4}$ | *lah* | The 12th month. |
| 夜$^{4}$ | *ie* | Night. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 抬$^{2}$ | *t‘ai* | To carry between two or more—people. |
| 開$^{1}$ | *k‘ai* | To open; to begin; to start. Boiling. |
| 少$^{3}$ | *shao* | Few; less; less than. Read *shao*$^{4}$. Young. |
| 鐘$^{1}$ | *chong*$^{18}$ | A clock. |
| 點$^{3}$ | *tien* | A point. To punctuate. A little. To light, as a lamp. To count; to check. |
| 動$^{4}$ | *tong* | To move; to begin; to start. |
| 日$^{4}$ | *rïh* | A day. |
| 刻$^{1.4}$ | *k‘eh* | A quarter of an hour. To engrave. |
| 分$^{1}$ | *fen* | A minute. $\frac{1}{10}$. To divide. Read *fen*$^{4}$: Duty. Share. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 表$^{3}$ | *piao*$^{1.39}$ | A watch. |
| 間$^{1}$ | *ch* / *k* } *ien* | A space; an interval. A division of a house. |
| 多$^{1}$ 偺$^{3}$ | *to-tsan* | When? |
| 後$^{4}$ 來$^{2}$ | *heo-lai* | Afterwards; by-and-by. |
| 地$^{4}$ 方$^{1}$ | *ti-fang*$^{1}$ | A place. |
| 禮$^{3}$ 拜$^{4}$ | *li-pai* | To worship. |
| 晌$^{3}$ 午$^{3}$ | *shang-u.* | Noon. |
| 早$^{3}$ 已$^{3}$ | *tsao-i* | Long ago. |
| 古$^{3}$ 時$^{2}$ 候$^{4}$ | *ku shï-heo* | In ancient times. |
| 一$^{1}$ 座$^{4}$ 城$^{2}$ | *ih-tso ch‘eng.* | A city. |
| 一$^{1}$ 封$^{1}$ 信$^{4}$ | *ih-feng hsin* | A letter. |

## The Four Seasons.

1. The Four Seasons are spoken of as 四 季 *si chi*; when they are simply enumerated, as Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter, they stand alone, 春 *ch‘uen* 夏 *hsia* 秋 *ch‘iu* 冬 *tong*. When spoken of as distinct periods they are usually followed by 天 *t‘ien*, which roughly corresponds to ‘time’ in ‘Summer-time’; *e.g.*,

In the winter of last year; *ch‘ü-nien tong-t‘ien* 去 年 冬 天.
In the summer of this year; *chin-nien hsia-t‘ien* 今 年 夏 天.
Next spring; *ming-nien ch‘uen-t‘ien* 明 年 春 天.

## *Chien* 間 as applied to Time.

2. References to the length which time continues, as expressed in English by ‘during’, is spoken of as ‘a space’; ‘an interval;’ 間 *chien*, affixed to the noun in question. This is principally confined to months and years; *e.g.*,

During the reign of *Kuang-hsü*; *Kuang-hsü nien chien* 光 緒 年 間.
During the 8th month; *pah üeh chien* 八 月 間.
He came during the night; *t‘a ie chien* (or *li*) *lai* 他 夜 間 (or 裏) 來.

---

不 怕 慢 只 怕 站 *Do not be afraid of going slowly, but of standing still.*

### Names of Months.

**3.** As mentioned in Lesson V, Section 2, the months of the year are known as 'second,' 二 月 *rï üeh*; 'third' 三 月 *san üeh*, etc. The 1st and 12th months form an exception, both having special names; the 11th month also sometimes takes a special name, though it more commonly follows the above rule; *e.g.*,

First month; *cheng üeh* 正 月.
Eleventh month; *tong* (or *shïh-ih*) *üeh* 冬 (or 十 一) 月
Twelfth month; *lah üeh* 臘 月.

### Days of the Week.

4. Intercourse with foreigners has given rise to a term for 'weeks,' based on the fact that the first day of the period is devoted to worship. This is 禮 拜 *li-pai*, and so many weeks are spoken of as so many 禮 拜 *li-pai*. 'How many weeks?' is, How many 禮 拜 *li-pai*. The days of the week are reckoned from this as follows:—

Sunday; *li-pai* 禮 拜 or *li-pai rïh* or *t'ien* 禮 拜 日 (or 天.)
Monday; *li-pai-ih* 禮 拜 一.
Tuesday; *li-pai-rï* 禮 拜 二; and so on.
A week; *ih-ko li-pai* 一 個 禮 拜.
Two weeks; *liang-ko li-pai* 兩 個 禮 拜; and so on.
This week; *chœ-ko li-pai* 這 個 禮 拜.
Last week; *shang li-pai* 上 禮 拜.
Next week; *hsia li-pai* 下 禮 拜.
This Monday; *i.e.*, the Monday of this week; and so on with other days; *chœ-ko li-pai-ih* 這 個 禮 拜 一.
Last Monday; *i.e.*, the Monday of last week, and so on; *shang li-pai-ih* 上 禮 拜 一.
Next Monday; *hsia li-pai-ih* 下 禮 拜 一; and so on.
A few weeks ago; *tsao chi-ko li pai* 早 幾 個 禮 拜.
What is the day of the week? *chin-t'ien li-pai chi?* 今天禮拜幾.
In less than a week; *puh-tao ih-ko li-pai* 不 到 一 個 禮 拜.
In a few weeks' time; *ko chi-ko li-pai* 過 幾 個 禮 拜.

'Forenoon,' and 'afternoon' follow the same rule as 'morning' and 'evening,' Lesson V, 4.; *e.g.*,

Tuesday afternoon; *li-pai-rï hsia-pan-t'ien* 禮 拜 二 下 半 天
Last Wednesday morning; *shang li-pai-san tsao-shang* 上 禮 拜 三 早 上.

### Time, as indicated by Watches and Clocks.

5. *Tien* 點, 'A point,' stands for an hour by the clock; so many hours being so many points of the clock. Half hours are 'half the points,' quarter hours are the eighth of a Chinese hour, which equals two English hours, and minutes are so many 'parts.' Time past or before the hour is so much time less than, or past; *e.g.*,

What's o'clock? *chi tien chong* 幾點鐘.

One o'clock; or, One hour; *ih-tien chong* 一點鐘; and so on with the other hours.

Half past one; *ih-tien-pan chong* 一點半鐘; and so on.

Five minutes past one; *ih-tien chong ko u fen* 一點鐘過五分; and so on.

Quarter past one; *ih-tien chong ko ih-k‘eh* 一點鐘過一刻; and so on.

Twenty minutes to one; *ih-tien chong shao ri-shïh fen* 一點鐘少二十分; and so on.

## *Tih* 的 forming Defining Clauses.

**6.** In Lesson I, Section 2, 的 *tih* was said to have 'a descriptive or defining force.' This applies to its use at the end of clauses, whether they are adjectival or adverbial; *e.g.*,

The things that he bought; *t‘a mai-tih tong-hsi* 他買的東西, *i.e.*, the-he-bought things, 的 *tih* making all that goes before the noun descriptive of it; compare in English, 'the never-to-be-forgotten day.'

This is what he said; *chœ shï t‘a shoh tih hua* 這是他說的話.

These are the men from abroad; *chœ shï uai-kueh lai tih ren* 這是外國來的人.

They came one at a time; *t‘a-men ih-ko ih-ko tih lai* 他們一個一個的來.

He will come to-morrow; *t‘a ming-t‘ien lai* 他明天來.

I stayed there two years; *o tsai-na-li ko-liao liang nien* 我在那裏過了兩年.

When he came; *t‘a lai tih shï-heo* 他來的時候.

When he was in China, *t‘a tsai Chong-kueh tih shï-heo* 他在中國的時候.

The money that is in the box; *hsiang-tsï li tih ch‘ien* 箱子裏的錢.

The two men that are outside the door, *men uai tih liang-ko ren* 門外的兩個人.

---

NOTES.—*a.* In speaking of things that are difficult to move, 不動 *puh-tong*, and 得動 *teh-tong* are more suitable than 不來 *puh lai*, or 得來 *teh-lai*.

*b.* *Tih* 的 is often omitted when a pronoun is used in the possessive, and more especially in the case of a double possessive; *e.g.*, My elder brother's child; *o ko-ko-tih hai-tsï* 我哥哥的孩子; instead of *o-tih ko-ko-tih hai-tsï* 我的哥哥的孩子.

*c.* *Chi* 季 and *k‘eh* 刻 take no N. A.

*d.* *Tsï* 子 is sometimes added to 日 *rïh*, especially when preceded by an adjective.

Chinese houses are divided into so many divisions, or 間 *chien*; this is taken as the unit of measurement in speaking of their size.

*f.* In speaking of time, *hsia* 下 and *chü* 句 often take the place of *tien* 點; *e.g.*, Six o'clock; *luh hsia chong* 六 下 鐘.

*g.* There is considerable variety in the expressions used for 'When'?. The long form *shen-mo shï-heo* 甚 麼 時 候 is probably in use everywhere, but local forms take its place in many parts. In Szechwan for example *sha* (or *sha-tsï*) *shï-heo* is in constant use; while on the lower Yangtze and in the North *to-huei-ri* 多 會 兒 and *mo huei-ri* 麽 會 兒 are current.

[*See Lesson XXV.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

When did he arrive? Two hours ago; *t'a to-tsan tao? tsao liang tien chong.*
He went some time ago; *t'a tsao-i ch'ü.*
It is cold in the winter; hot in the summer; *tong-t'ien leng, hsia-t'ien reh.*
All in good time; *man-man-tih lai.*
Bring a pot of hot water at 9 o'clock; *chiu tien chong na ih-hu reh shui lai.*
He will be here by and by; *t'a heo-lai iao lai.*
Where is the clock that he bought yesterday? *t'a tsoh-tien mai tih chong tsai na-li?*
Tell him to open the door; *chiao t'a k'ai men.*
He brought his son with him; *t'a pa t'a-tih ri-tsi tai lai.*
I cannot get this shoe on; *chæ-chi hsiai o ch'uan puh shang.*
I will come and see you next Wednesday afternoon; *o hsia li-pai-san hsia-pan-t'ien iao lai k'an ni.*
He went during the 12th month; *t'a lah üeh chien ch'ü.*

*Translate*:—Do you remember the Chinese sentence that I spoke to you yesterday? No. There is a long street outside the city; take this foreign letter there, and afterwards call two men to come and carry (抬 *t'ai*) away this large box. Two men cannot carry it; how will it do (if) I call four men? Very well. This is the money that he gave me; the pair of shoes that his youngest son brought I put on the table. That place is wet, you must not sit there; this place is dry, you had better sit here. Bring a jug of hot water this evening at a quarter to nine; I want to wash my feet. Who is the man that struck him? is it not the man that came last Monday? The ancients had neither watches nor clocks; now we have both This water is deep, you mustn't cross; that is shallow, you may cross. Is this the character that he engraved last week? What is the time now? Five and twenty minutes to four. He does not travel during the night. It is past noon; it will soon be 2 o'clock.

Writing Exercise:—五 這 那 個 要 東 西 R. 146; 日 R. 72.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第六課雜句

他多偺到, 早兩點鐘
他早已去
冬天冷, 夏天熱
慢慢的來
九點鐘拿一壺熱水來
他後來要來
他昨天買的鐘在那裏
叫他開門
他把他的兒子帶來
這隻鞋我穿不上
我下禮拜三, 下半天, 要來看你
他臘月間去

## NOTES.

## READING LESSON VI. 輯要第六

### Small Talk.

### 談古論今

二人對坐閒談[1]、說、古時候的人沒有鐘表、外國人沒有、中國人也沒有、城裏城外沒有鐘表鋪、問人幾點鐘他就不曉得你說甚麽、道光[2]年間纔[3]有人把鐘表帶到中國來、但[4]買的人少、有錢的人買得起[5]、沒有錢的人買不起、那時候人也不知道一個禮拜是甚麽意思、光知道從[6]正月到臘月、一年有十二個月、一年有四季、就是春、夏、秋、冬、夏天熱、冬天冷、若[7]對人說、今天是禮拜幾、他就不懂你的意思、現在人會[8]作鐘表、知道幾點鐘、也知道那一天是禮拜四、上禮拜四是初幾、下禮拜三是十幾、出來走走也帶着表、早晨七點鐘少一刻起來[8a]、晌午一點鐘過二十分喫中飯[9]、八點半少五分喫早飯[10]、晚上六七點鐘喫晚飯[11]。我上禮拜六

---

1. *Hsien-t'an* 閒$^2$ 談$^2$ To chat; to gossip. L. 19, 21.
2. *Tao Kuang* 道$^4$ 光$^1$ Style of reign 1821-1851.
3. *Ts'ai* 纔$^2$ Before 纔有人帶 before there were people (who) brought. L. 28.
4. *Tan* 但$^4$ But. L. 8.
5. *Mai teh ch'i* 買 得 起 Could afford to buy.
6. *Ts'ong*$^2$...*tao* 從...到 From...till... L. 12.
7. *Roh* 若$^4$ If; supposing. L. 18.
8. *Huei* 會$^4$ Can; are able to. L. 8.

8a. *Ch'i-lai* 起$^3$ 來$^2$ To rise, p. 65.

9. *Chong-fan* 中 飯 Midday meal.
10. *Tsao-fan* 早 飯 Breakfast.
11. *Uan-fan* 晚 飯 Evening meal.

早晨九點鐘在城外走、看見一個人這隻手裏拿一座大外國鐘、那隻手裏拿一個小表、他是長臉大口麼、是、你認識不認識、早已認識他、前年九月間他在大街上開了鐘表鋪、去年臘月二十七八就[1]關了門。他沒有錢麼、不是沒有錢、他有他哥哥兄弟給他的錢、聽說、他是鋪子小、在城外不在城裏、城裏的鋪子好、城外不好、春秋兩季可以開、一到夏天冬天就開不得、我問他手裏拿的鐘表是誰的、他說鐘是高先生的、表是方先生的、現在要送到他們兩個人那裏去。還有一件事、[2]就是初到中國來的外國人、從前沒看見過大城、小城、[2]和城門、他們[3]那邊沒有城、古時候有、現在沒有。前年有一個外國人來、[4]進了城看這條街窄、那條街寬、這條街的鋪子大、那條街的鋪子小、城裏的人[5]多、城外的人少、那條大街兩頭有大門、看見這些就說、從前沒有看見過。到了城中、就看見三個人是在家認識的、就問他們、多偺到的、他們說、去年正月初九日、就是禮拜三到的、還要等到三月十幾回家去。[6a]又問他們

---

1. *Kuan liao men* 關了門 Shut up the door—failed in business.
2. *Chiu-shi* 就是 That is that... ; namely.
2a. *Ho* 和² And; with.
3. *Na-pien* 那⁴邊¹ That side; 他們那邊 their part of the world; where hey come from. L. 10.
4. *Chin-liao* 進⁴了³ Entered. L. 14.
5. *To* 多¹ Many; numerous. L. 7.
6. *Teng* 等³ To wait; 等到 to wait until... L. 7.
6a. *Iu* 又⁴ Further. L. 14.

買甚麼東西、他們說買的東西不少、又說、請和我們到店裏去看看、他就和他們去、慢慢的走過兩條長街就到了店、一進店門、就看見四口箱子、三口大的、一口小的、他朋友說、這一口是城裏買的、那三口是城外買的、把箱子一開、就看見一把水壺、有四五兩重、一隻小鞋放在上邊、還有三根[1]帶子、是昨天買的、還有一封外國信放在那裏、是他兒子寫的、也有他兄弟買的幾件東西、有方先生送的兩件衣裳、有十來個紅茶碗、有他哥哥作的兩件小東西。看完了就說、這四口箱子不輕、兩個人抬得動抬不動、他說、抬不動、要叫六個人來抬。後來他對朋友們說、不早了、過了晌午、我要囘去。坐小箱的那個朋友說、你去、我和[2]你同[3]去、我要上城中刻字鋪去、叫他刻兩個字、把你送到家囘來也不晚、四五點鐘就可以囘來吃晚飯。話說好了、他就把衣裳穿上、兩個人就出店門、慢[4]慢的走去了。後來他們到三月間囘去不囘去、我記不得、我也忘記刻字鋪刻的是甚麼字。

---

1. *Ken*, 根¹ A root; N. A. of belts; V. 2.
2. *Ho* 和² With. L. 11.
3. *T'ong* 同² Together with 和你同去; I will go with you. L. 11.
4. *Man-man-tih* 慢⁴ 慢⁴ 的⁴ Slowly; leisurely.

# LESSON VII. 課七第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 再$^4$ | tsai | Again; more. |
| 歲$^4$ | s { ui<br>ei | Year; years. |
| 數$^4$ | su | A number. Read su$^3$. To count; to calculate. |
| 等$^3$ | teng | To wait. A class; a sort. |
| 粗$^1$ | ts‘<br>ch } u | Coarse; rough; vulgar; common. |
| 細$^4$ | hs<br>s } i | Fine; minute. |
| 聖$^4$ | sheng | Holy; sacred. |
| 造$^4$ | ts<br>ts‘ } ao | To create; to make. |
| 還$^2$ | han<br>hai | Also; yet; still; more. Read huan$^2$. To give back. |
| 貴$^4$ | kuei | Honourable. Costly; dear. |
| 姓$^4$ | hs<br>s } ing | Surname. A clan. |
| 黃$^2$ | huang | Yellow. |
| 黑$^1$ | h { eh<br>ei | Black; dark. |
| 也$^3$ | ie | Also; even; and. |
| 白$^2$ | p { ai<br>eh | White. In vain. |
| 老$^3$ | lao | Venerable; old. Very; extremely. |
| 主$^3$ | ch { u<br>ü | Lord; master; owner. |
| 出$^1$ | ch‘uh | To go out. To expend; to produce. |
| 敝$^4$ | pi | Unworthy; mean. |
| 男$^2$ | nan | Male. |
| 女$^3$ | nü | Female. |
| 多$^1$ | to | Much; many; more; more than. |
| 多$^1$ 少$^3$ | to-shao | How much? how many? a great deal. |
| 年$^2$ 紀$^3$ | nien-chi | Age. |
| 打$^3$ 發$^1$ | ta-fah | To send. |
| 手$^3$ 巾$^1$ | sheo-chin$^{14}$ | A towel; a handkerchief. |
| 一$^1$ 塊$^4$ 地$^4$ | ih k‘uai ti | A piece of land. |
| 一$^1$ 位$^4$ 上$^4$ 帝$^4$ | ih-uei Shang-ti | One God |

## *Chih* 給 as Sign of Indirect Object.

**1.** In Lesson IV, Section 2 把 *pa* was defined as the sign of the Direct Object. *Chih* 給 in like manner may be regarded as a sign of the Indirect Object, thus partly corresponding to the words 'to,' and 'for' in such sentences as, 'Write two characters for me;' or, 'Take the book to him.' Preceding the verb it may be translated by 'for,' following it by 'to': it stands immediately before the Object; *e.g.*,

Buy two towels for me; *chih o mai liang-t‘iao sheo-chin* 給我買兩條手巾.

---

事業要好只在志氣 *If your affairs are to prosper, it is simply a matter of purpose.*

Give him the black one; *pa heh tih chih t'a* 把黑的給他.

Take this book to him; *pa chœ-pen-shu tai chih t'a* 把這本書帶給他.

Write two characters for me; *chih o hsie liang-ko tsï* 給我寫兩個字.

I will first tell you, and then you may tell me; *o hsien chiang chih ni t'ing, ni heo-lai k'o-i chiang chih o t'ing* 我先講給你聽, 你後來可以講給我聽.

### *Hai* 還 *ie* 也 and *tsai* 再 marking something Additional.

**2.** Sentences which speak of something extra, usually take 還 *hai* or 也 *ie* or *tsai* 再. Both *hai* 還 and *tsai* 再 have idiomatic uses, generally intensifying the meaning; in many cases they cannot be translated. As a rule in this construction, they, with 多 *to* and *shao* 少 precede the verb; *e.g.*,

Is there any more? Yes; *hai iu muh iu? hai iu* 還有沒有, 還有.

Have they any more paper? No; *t'a-men hai iu chï muh iu? muh iu* 他們還有紙沒有, 沒有.

How many pencils has he besides? *t'a hai iu to-shao pih?* 他還有多少筆.

I still want to ask him a question; *o hai iao uen t'a ih-chü-hua* 我還要問他一句話.

Do you want any more? *hai iao puh iao* 還要不要.

More than a hundred; *ih-peh to* 一百多.

More than a thousand persons; *ih-ch'ien to ren* 一千多人.

His things are many; *t'a-tih tong-hsi to* 他的東西多.

Read a chapter less; *shao nien ih-chang* 少念一章.

I do not want anything more; *o tsai puh iao shen-mo* 我再不要甚麼.

He also wants two; *t'a ie iao liang-ko* 他也要兩個.

### *To-shao* 多少 contrasted with *Chi* 幾.

**3.** When small numbers are spoken of 幾 *chi* with N. A. is commonly used, Lesson II, Section 1. When larger numbers are in question, 多少 *to-shao* takes the place of 幾 *chi*, but takes no N. A. when followed by a noun in interrogative sentences, save when the noun is understood or is already expressed. In such cases the N. A. stands for the noun. In Central and Western China 幾多 *chi-to* is commonly used for 多少 *to-shao*; *e.g.*,

How many men are there? *tsai na-li iu to-shao ren?* 在那裏有多少人.

How many shoes has he? *t'a iu to-shao hsiai-tsï?* 他有多少鞋子.

How many foreign garments are there? *uai-kueh i-shang iu to-shao chien su?* 外國衣裳有多少件數.

Not many; *muh iu to-shao* (or *chi-to*) 沒有多少 (or 幾多).

### Passive Forms indicated by 是 *shï*.

**4.** The idiomatic use of words in Chinese often takes the place of many definite grammatical forms in Western languages. The Passive Voice for instance, is indicated by position as well as by the use of certain Tense auxiliaries. For example, 是 *shï* used with 的 *tih* as a correlative may be translated in an active or passive form according to the connection; *e.g.*,

This money was supplied by him; *chœ-ko ch'ien shï t'a ch'uh tih* 這個錢是他出的.

This was done by his son; *chœ shï t'a rï-tsï tso tih* 這是他兒子做的.

Did you do this? No; *chœ shï ni tso tih mo? puh shï* 這是你做的麼, 不是.

Was the coarse one bought by him? *ts'u tih shï t'a mai tih mo?* 粗的是他買的麼.

### Name, and Age.

**5.** To ask a person's name and age is an essential of good manners: 你 *ni* and 我 *o* are usually omitted in both question and answer, 貴 *kuei* and 敝 *pi* taking their place. In some districts where manners are not cultivated, both are omitted; but it is better for a foreigner to use them.

In referring to a person who is not present, he is spoken of as 姓 '*hsing* 姓 so and so', and the 貴 *kuei* is dropped.

In asking the age of children 幾 *chi*, not 多少 *to-shao*, is used.

The following are the most commonly used forms:—

Your honourable name? *kuei hsing?* 貴姓.

My unworthy name is Chang; *pi hsing Chang* 敝姓張.

What is the name of that person? *na ih-uei hsing shen-mo* 那一位姓甚麼.

That person is named Pien; *na-ko ren hsing Pien* 那個人姓邊.

What is the name of this gentleman?—when asking in the presence of the one referred to; *chœ ih-uei kuei hsing?* 這一位貴姓.

That person named Fang is over there; *na-ko hsing Fang tih tsai-na-pien* 那個姓方的在那邊

How old are you?—used in asking the age of a child; *chi sui* 幾歲.

How old are you? *chin-nien to ta nien-chi?* 今年多大年紀; (or, *to ta sui-su* 多大歲數.)

I am ten years old; *shïh sui* 十歲.

I am forty years old this year; *chin-nien sï-shïh* 今年四十.

He is more than fifty years old; *t'a u shïh to sui* 他五十多歲.

### Repetition of Verbs.

**6.** *Teng* 等 and some other verbs are often repeated with '*ih*' between, as, 等一等 *teng ih teng*; 洗一洗 *hsi ih hsi*, etc., *e.g.*,

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第七課雜句

給我做一口箱子
那個少年人姓甚麼
他年紀老了
等一等我就來
他打發那個姓邊的去
在這裏有男女老少
少給他十個錢
這本聖書是我買的
數數看有多少
我還要說幾句話
黃的是他的, 黑的是我的
主可以救人
天地是上帝造的

## NOTES.

Tell him to wait a while; *chiao t'a teng ih teng* 叫 他 等 一 等.
Give this a wash; *pa chœ-ko hsi ih hsi* 把 這 個 洗 一 洗.
He has waited a long time; *t'a teng liao pan t'ien* 他 等 了 半 天.

---

NOTES.—*a.* In speaking of the time of day, 多 *to* often replaces 過 *ko*, as, Ten minutes past 4 o'clock; *sï tien chong to shïh fen* 四 點 鐘 多 十 分.

*b.* *Ie* 也 is joined to 可 以 *k'o-i* at the end of sentences to indicate satisfaction or acquiescence.

*c.* In the West 還 is commonly read *huan*.

[*See Lesson XXVI.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Make a box for me; *chih o tso ih-k'eo hsiang-tsï.*
What is the name of that young man? *na-ko shao nien ren hsing shen-mo?*
He is old; *t'a nien-chi lao-liao.*
Wait awhile, I'll soon be there; *teng-ih-teng o chiu lai.*
He sent the man named Pien; *t'a ta-fah na-ko hsing Pien tih ch'ü.*
Old and young, male and female are here; *tsai-chœ-li iu nan, nü, lao, shao.*
Give him 10 cash less; *shao chih t'a shïh-ko ch'ien.*
This Bible was bought by me; *chœ-pen Sheng-shu shï o mai tih.*
Count and see how many there are; *su su k'an iu to-shao.*
I still have something else to say; *o hai iao shoh chi-chü hua.*
The yellow one is his, the black one is mine; *huang tih shï t'a-tih; heh tih shï o-tih.*
The Lord can save men; *Chu k'o-i chiu ren.*
The heavens and the earth were created by God; *t'ien ti shï Shang-ti tsao tih.*

*Translate*:—Who sent that man Chang here? did not Mr. Pien's eldest brother? Those basins which I bought for him were not dear; the coarse one cost forty cash, the fine ones eighty cash each: I also bought a white teapot for him and a black box. That person named Fang is more than forty years old: I asked him, Will you give me that long towel? He said, Which one? I said, The one that was bought by your younger brother two days ago. I have two black ones, I still want three white ones, have you them? Please tell me the meaning of this character '*fang*'; when you have finished, I will tell you: how will this do? The female was under thirty years old, the male was between forty and fifty, the girl was twelve years old. He washed more than 100 garments for me; how many are there here now? Not many; these four or five, were they not washed by him? He was here more than three weeks, one day less than four weeks; he says he will come again on the 1st of the 1st month next year. This is Mr. Chang's handwriting; (his characters) was not this Chinese letter written by him? I asked him to write it for me; when he was writing it I said, When you have finished writing it I will give you 400 cash. When was this? On the 10th of last month.

Writing Exercise:—出 多 少 也 男 老 R. 125; 白 R. 106; 女 R. 38.

## READING LESSON VII. 輯要第七

### A Confidence Trick.

### 落了圈套

有一個人姓黃、生在關[1]東他父[1a]親有五十多歲纔添[2]了他、早生的孩子是四個女的、一個男的、那男的就是他的哥哥、他生的那一天、父親很歡[3]喜、一家的人也都高[4]興、朋友送的東西也不少、粗人送些粗東西、意思也不錯、[5]因爲禮[6]輕人意重、父親給[7]他起名叫萬[8]全、過了一個月就給他剃[9]頭、還沒剃頭是黃臉黑頭、但頭一剃就成[10]了白頭黃臉了。這孩子慢慢的長大了、就天天上學堂[10a]跟先生念書、寫字、他早晨七點鐘去、九點多鐘回來吃早飯、晚上六七點鐘再來家吃晚飯。到了十六七歲就不再上學了、等在家裏給父親作甚麽要緊的事、父親也常[11]打發他進城去買東西。有一天他在城裏的大街上、在雜[12]貨鋪裏給哥哥買了兩條白手巾、一個粗飯碗、一

---

1. *Kuan$^{1}$-tong$^{1}$* 關東 Manchuria. 1a. *Fu-ch'in* 父$^{4}$ 親$^{1}$ Father.
2. *T'ien$^{1}$* 添 To add 纔添了他 before he added him—to the family.
3. *Huan$^{1}$-hsi$^{3}$* 歡喜 Pleased; gratified. L. 18.
4. *Kao$^{1}$-hsing$^{4}$* 高興 Elated.
5. *In$^{1}$-uei$^{4}$* 因爲 Because. L. 18.
6. 禮輕人意重 The present was trifling, but the intention was good.
7. *Chih t'a ch'i ming* 給他起名 Gave him a name.
8. *Uan$^{4}$-ch'üen$^{2}$* Ten thousand perfections; from 全 *ch'üen* Perfect. L. 20.
9. *T'i$^{4}$* 剃 To shave. L. 23.
10. *Ch'eng$^{2}$-liao$^{3}$* 成了 Resulted in...L. 19. 10a. *T'ang* 堂$^{2}$ A hall. L. 14.
11. *Chang$^{2}$* 常 Continually. L. 14.
12. *Tsah$^{2}$ ho$^{4}$ p'u$^{4}$* 雜貨舖 A general store; a chandler's shop. L. 25.

把外國刀子、幾張信紙、把錢拿出來數數給舖裏的老板[1]、纔[2]數完、有一個人進來、是穿一[3]身的好衣裳、問萬全貴姓、說敝姓黃、又問、今年多大歲數、說很小、二十歲、那人說、我也姓黃、名呌白得、是來找[4]一個朋友、找了四五天沒有找到、又說、他朋友有一塊地在城外、還說了多少話、後來就送萬全走過幾條街、到了城門他纔回去。再過幾天、萬全又進城要給父親買東西、還要上錢舖去拿銀子、到了城就有三點多鐘了、一進城門、就看見早幾天碰[5]見的那人、還有一個四十幾歲的人和他在那裏閒談、那姓黃的一見、就過來說、這就是我的朋友、姓高、呌高好手又問他說、上那裏去、萬全說是上錢店去、他們兩個人說、我們和你同去、等[6]不多時、三個人到了錢店、老板認識萬全、就請他們到裏頭去、一[7]同吃茶、又去拿幾十兩銀子來給萬全、呌他好[8]好的帶到家去、又說、我還有一點粗禮、請你帶去給你的父親、就拿出一座大外國鐘、放在棹

---

1. *Lao$^3$-pan$^3$* 老板 The proprietor V. 2.
2. *Ts'ai* 纔 Just. L. 10.
3. *Ih shen tih* 一身的 From top to toe.
4. *Chao$^3$* 找 To look for. L. 9.
5. *P'eng$^4$ chien$^4$* 碰見 To meet; to knock against. L. 16.
6. *Teng puh to shi* 等不多時 In a very short time.
7. *Ih-t'ong* 一同 Together. L. 23.
8. *Hao-hao-tih* 好好的 Carefully.

子上、好手說、我有一條長手巾可以用[1]這個包[1a]一包、就一[2]面說一面包起[3]來了、白得說用我的手巾包銀子、就拿出一條手巾來、萬全就把銀子包起、好手說鐘不輕、我給你拿到城門口、再囘來也不晚。錢店是在城中、三個人快到城門、天晚了、街上走的人不多、到了雙好的鞋鋪、好手說、我要買鞋、就進去把鐘放在櫃[4]台上、萬全和白得也跟他進去、萬全把銀子放在[4a]鐘旁邊、老板拿茶來給他吃、吃的時候、好手拿一雙鞋給萬全看、說你看這雙好不好、萬全把鞋拿在手裏看、他看的時候、白得又拿出一個包來、也是手巾包的、就把那包銀子換[5]下了、換這個包的時候、做的很快、萬全和好手說話、就沒有看見、後來買好了鞋、白得說、我有一件小事不能[5a]送到城門、後來可以[6]再會、話說好了就走。好手送出城來、也就走了。萬全慢慢的到了家、把包一開、光見一塊磚[7]、銀子都沒有了。年紀輕的人念這一課[7a]、要記得再去買東西、不要和生人多說話。

---

1. *Iong* 用$^4$ To use; with. 1a. *Pao*$^1$ 包 To wrap up. L. 23.

2. *Ih mien . . . ih mien* 一面 . . . 一面 Talking and wrapping it up at the same time.

3. *Ch'i*$^3$*-lai*$^2$ 起來 To rise up. Used here as auxiliary to *pao* 包. So of *ch'i* 起 below.

4. *Kuei*$^4$*-t'ai*$^2$ 櫃台 The counter. 4a. *Tsai p'ang pien* 在$^4$旁$^2$邊$^1$ By the side of.

5. *Huan*$^4$ 換 To change; to exchange for. *Hsia* 下 here is an auxiliary to *huan* 換. L. 9.

6. *Tsai*$^4$*-huei*$^4$*huan* 換. L. 9. 5a. *Puh neng* 不能 Cannot. L. 12.

7. *Chuan*$^1$ 磚 A brick. 7a. *K'o* 課$^4$ A lesson. L. 21.

## LESSON VIII. 課八第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 眞$^{1}$ | *chen* | True; truly; real. |
| 頂$^{3}$ | *ting* | The top. A button worn on the hat. Topmost; very. |
| 賣$^{4}$ | *mai* | To sell—for. |
| 太$^{4}$ | *t‘ai* | Too; much. |
| 家$^{1}$ | *ch* / *k* } *ia* / *a* | Home; family. |
| 錯$^{4}$ | *ts‘o* | Wrong; mistaken. |
| 很$^{3}$ | *hen* | Sign of Superlative; very. |
| 皮$^{2}$ | *p‘i*$^{5}$ | Skin; leather; bark; fur; outer covering. Tare—of goods. |
| 用$^{4}$ | *iong* | To use. With; by. |
| 更$^{4}$ | *keng* | Much. Read *keng*$^{1}$. To change. A night watch. |
| 神$^{2}$ | *shen* | A spirit; a god. |
| 肯$^{3}$ | *k‘en* | Willing. To assent. |
| 假$^{3}$ | *ch* / *k* } *ia* | False; unreal. |
| 會$^{4}$ | *huei* | Able. To meet. A procession. |
| 使$^{3}$ | *shï* | To employ. To cause. |
| 强$^{2}$ | *ch‘* / *k* } *iang* | Strong. Better. Read *ch‘iang*$^{3}$. To compel. |
| 盆$^{2}$ | *p‘en*$^{1}$ | A tub; a bowl. |
| 救$^{4}$ 主$^{3}$ | *Ch* / *K* } *iu-chu*$^{1,7}$ | The Saviour. |
| 工$^{1}$ 夫$^{1}$ | *kong-fu* | Time, labour; skill. Leisure. |
| 餅$^{3}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ping-tsï*$^{1}$ | Cakes; biscuits. |
| 盒$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *hoh-tsï*$^{1}$ | Small box with cover; a casket. |
| 孩$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *h* / *hsi* } *ai-tsï*$^{1}$ | A child; a boy. |
| 回$^{2}$ 來$^{2}$ | *huei-lai* | To come back. |
| 回$^{2}$ 去$^{4}$ | *huei-ch‘ü* | To go back. |
| 盤$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *p‘an-tsï* | A plate; a tray. |
| 板$^{3}$ 橙$^{4}$ | *pan-teng*$^{14}$ | A stool; a form. |
| 但$^{4}$ 是$^{4}$ | *tan-shï* | But; only. |
| 一$^{1}$ 盞$^{3}$ 燈$^{1}$ | *ih-chan teng* | A lamp. |
| 一$^{1}$ 塊$^{4}$ 石$^{2}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *ih-k‘uai shïh-t‘eo* | A piece of stone |
| 一$^{1}$ 頂$^{3}$ 帽$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ih-ting mao-tsï* | A hat. |

### Comparison of Adjectives.

**1.** Adjectives are compared by prefixing or adding certain words to the Positive. The following precede the adjective:—更 *keng*; 很 *hen*; 頂 *ting*; while 些 *hsie*; 一 點 *ih tien* or 一 點 兒 *ih tien-rï* and 得 很 *teh-hen* follow it; *e.g.*,

That piece of stone is much heavier; *na-k‘uai shïh-t‘eo keng chong* 那塊石頭更重.

This thing is the best; *chœ-ko tong-hsi hen* (or *ting*) *hao* 這個東西很 (or 頂) 好.

---

耕讀爲本 *Husbandry and letters are the two chief professions.*

This is good, that is better; *chœ-ko hao, na-ko hao-hsie* 這個好，那個好些.

This plate is rather larger; *chœ-ko p‘an-tsï ta ih-tien* 這個盤子大一點.

That form is very long; *na-t‘iao pan-teng ch‘ang teh-hen* 那條板櫈長得很.

When more than one thing is in question, but only one is expressed, the sign of the Comparative is rarely used; *e.g.*,

This is the better; *hai shï chœ-ko hao* 還是這個好.

That is the better hat; *na-ting mao-tsï ch‘iang* 那頂帽子强.

*Ch‘iang* 强 is more commonly used in the North, and may be variously translated according to the connection. *Hao-hsie* 好些 means both ‘Better,’ and ‘A good few,’ but the context makes clear which meaning is intended. *Hao-chi* 好幾, joined to a suitable N. A., may be translated literally ‘A good few;’ *e.g.*,

There are a good few people here; *iu hao-chi ko ren tsai-chœ-li* 有好幾個人在這裏.

A good many people have come; *iu hao-hsie ren lai-liao* 有好些人來了.

## *T‘ai* 太 as indicating Excess.

*T‘ai* 太 goes a step beyond the Superlative degree and conveys the idea of ‘excessive’: it precedes a positive statement, and in certain connections may also precede a negative one · *e.g.*,

That thing is too long; *na-ko tong-hsi t‘ai ch‘ang* 那個東西太長.

That person is too bad; *na-ko ren t‘ai puh-hao-liao* 那個人太不好了.

## *Teh* 得 joined to Verbs to form the Passive Participle.

**2.** *Teh* 得 is joined to the verb to form the Passive Participle, and may be followed by an adjective, or a negative and an adjective. In the North 的 *tih* is used interchangeably with 得 *teh* in this construction; *e.g.*

This character is well written; *chœ-ko tsï hsie-teh hao* 這個字寫得好.

That letter is badly written; *na-feng hsin hsie-teh puh hao* 那封信寫得不好.

That was a good bargain; *na-ko tong-hsi mai-teh hao* 那個東西買得好.

He speaks good Chinese; *t‘a-tih Chong-kueh-hua shoh-teh hao* 他的中國話說得好.

That chair is very badly made; *na-pa i-tsï tso-tih hen puh hao* 那把椅子作的很不好.

### *Ts‘o-liao* 錯了 added to Verbs.

3. When 錯 *ts‘o* is joined to a verb it usually takes 了 *liao,* and may be translated by ‘wrong;’ ‘mistaken,’ etc., according to the context; *e.g.,*

Right or wrong ? Right; *ts‘o puh-ts‘o ? puh-ts‘o* 錯不錯, 不錯.

They took the wrong box; *t‘a-men t‘ai ts‘o-liao hsiang-tsï* 他們抬錯了箱子.

He mistook his man; *t‘a k‘an ts‘o-liao ren* 他看錯了人.

You heard wrongly; *ni t‘ing ts‘o-liao* 你聽錯了.

He has made a mistake in that sentence; *na-chü-hua t‘a shoh ts‘o-liao* 那句話他說錯了.

### *Iong* 用: uses of.

4. Apart from its primary meaning ‘To use’, 用 *iong* has two other important meanings which can be best illustrated by examples. The first is ‘To need’ in the sense of ‘To require,’ ‘To take up,’ as time or material. The second is to indicate the instrument with which something is done; as, ‘He cut it, using (with) a knife,’ where 用 *iong* corresponds to ‘with’ and immediately precedes the name of the instrument used. In the North 使 *shï* is largely used in place of 用 *iong* in this last sense; while *na* has 拿 the same usage in both North and South; *e.g.,*

It is needless to go; *puh iong ch‘ü* 不用去.

Unsuitable for use; *puh hao iong* (or *shï*) 不好用 (or 使.)

Do not use this thing; *puh iao iong chœ-ko tong-hsi* 不要用這個東西.

It will not take many days to make a table; *tso ih-chang choh-tsï iong puh liao chi t‘ien* 作一張棹子用不了幾天.

It will not take three days; *puh iong san t‘ien* 不用三天.

God created the heaven and the earth in six days; *Shang-ti iong luh t‘ien tsao t‘ien ti* 上帝用六天造天地

### Potential Mood formed by 會 *huei.*

5. In Lesson III, Section 3, the Potential Mood was indicated by 得 *teh.* When, however, it is wished to convey the idea of proficiency and to shew that the ability to do anything is acquired, 會 *huei* is generally used. Observation and practice will teach which is the best form to use in any given connection; *e.g.,*

He is able to buy (well); *t‘a huei mai* 他會買.

He can wash clothes; *t‘a huei hsi i-shang* 他會洗衣裳.

### *Huei-lai* 回來 and *huei-ch‘ü* 回去 as Auxiliary Verbs.

6. *Huei-lai* 回來 and *huei-ch‘ü* 回去 are used as auxiliary as well as principal verbs; *e.g.,*

Tell him to come back; *chiao t'a huei-lai* 叫他回來.
Take it back; *na huei-ch'ü* 拿回去.
He cannot go back; *t'a puh teh huei-ch'ü* 他不得回去.
Bring back that large hat; *pa na-ting ta mao-tsi na huei-lai* 把那頂大帽子拿回來.

---

NOTES.—*a. Kong-fu* 工夫 when applied to work usually denotes some thing outside of manual labour, for which 工 *kong* by itself is used.

*b. Tan* 但 is often used alone for the sake of euphony.

[*See Lesson XXVII.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

What you say is quite correct; *ni shoh tih hua ih-tien puh-ts'o.*
I am willing to go, but he is not; *o k'en ch'ü, tan-shï t'a puh k'en ch'ü.*
I have no time now; *o hsien-tsai muh iu kong-fu.*
Has he leisure? Yes; *t'a iu kong-fu muh iu? iu kong-fu.*
Do not speak too quickly; *puh iao shoh hua t'ai k'uai.*
He is not at home; *t'a puh tsai chia.*
That man is false; *na-ko ren shï chia tih.*
I cannot use this thing; *chæ-ko tong-hsi o iong puh liao.*
All used up; *iong uan liao.*
He employed the wrong man; *t'a ts'o iong liao ren.*
There is a Saviour; *iu ih-uei Chiu-chu.*
There is a true God in heaven; *tsai t'ien shang iu ih-uei Chen-shen.*

*Translate:*—Tell him to come back to-morrow morning at a quarter to ten o'clock. I have no time to go now; I will go next Wednesday afternoon. The pencil he bought two days ago is good, the pencil I bought yesterday is better, but the pencil Mr. Chang uses is the best. This lamp is small, the lamp that man Pien uses is much smaller. This is your mistake. He wrote several characters wrong. The black box those four men have brought is well made, but this box of mine is made much better. He does things too slowly; he went two days ago to see Mr Fang, and he is not back yet. Has he finished making that casket? Not yet; he says that he will bring it when he has finished it. It will not need much money to buy that small hat. This is the better garment; that large one is too dear Can that woman make clothes? No. Chinese use hot water to wash their faces, foreigners use cold water. You should use a piece of good paper in writing to a teacher. It is better to give him two cash less. He cannot walk back. The false are numerous, the true few When the girl had finished eating the cake, she returned home. This plate is too small; have you not a larger one?

Writing Exercise.—錯 賣 家 回 但 會 肯 用 R. 101.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第八課雜句

你說的話一點不錯

我肯去,但是他不肯去

我現在沒有工夫

他有工夫沒有,有工夫

不要說話太快

他不在家

那個人是假的

這個東西我用不了

用完了

他錯用了人

有一位救主

在天上有一位眞神

## NOTES.

## READING LESSON VIII. 輯要第八

### A Visit to the City.

### 幼童逛景

中國是個很大的國、有二十幾省[1]、有一省叫山東省[2]、就是在北邊[3]地方大、人也多、一省有一百一十七座城、省城[4]叫濟南府[5]、在城東有一個人姓邊、叫邊得意、有四十幾歲、住[6]在鄉下[7]、離城[8]有幾十里路[9]、有一百多畝[10]地、有四個兒子、大的叫雙喜、是個頂好的孩子、肯聽父母[10a]的話、書也念得好、人人[11]都歡喜他、都說他好、到他十三歲的時候、父親[12]對他說、我明天要進城、你和我一同去好不好、你若[12a]願意[13]我就帶你去看看、雙喜聽見這話眞是高興、爲甚麼呢[14]、因他從前沒有到過省城、光聽人說是個大地方、人多、鋪子多、又好看[15]、他也知道明天是初三、就是趕集的日子[16]、這趕集兩

---

1. *Seng*$^{3}$ 省 A province. L. 14.
2. The province of Shantung.
3. *Peh*$^{3}$ *pien*$^{1}$ 北邊 Lit. North side—the North. L. 12.
4. *Seng-ch'eng* The provincial capital. V. 3.
5. *Chi*$^{4}$*-nan*$^{2}$ *Fu*$^{3}$ The capital of Shantung.
6. *Chu*$^{4}$ 住 To dwell; to live in a place. L. 11.
7. *Tsai*$^{4}$ *hsiang*$^{1}$ *hsia*$^{4}$ 在鄉下 In the country. L. 16.
8. *Li*$^{2}$ *ch'eng*$^{2}$ 離城 Distant from the city. L. 12.
9. *Li*$^{3}$*-lu*$^{4}$ 里路 Miles (of) road. L. 12.
10. *Meo*$^{3}$ 畝 About ⅙ of English acre. 10*a*. *Fu-mu* 父$^{4}$ 母$^{3}$ Parents.
11. *Ren-ren* 人人 Man-man, i.e., everybody. L. 10. See below *üeh üeh* 月月
12. *Fu*$^{4}$*-ch'in*$^{1}$ 父親 Father. V. 2. 12*a*. *Roh* 若$^{4}$ If.
13. *Yen*$^{4}$*-i*$^{4}$ 願意 Willing. L. 24.
14. *Ni*$^{2}$ 呢 An interrogative particle. L. 10.
15. *Hao k'an* 好看 Good to see; 'fine'; beautiful.
16. *Kan*$^{3}$*-chih*$^{2}$*-tih rih-tsi* 趕集的日子 Market days. These are usually held every five days in North China; the term is not used in the South.

個字是甚麽意思、這是北邊的話、說月月到了初三、十三、二十三、這三天人把各[1]樣的東西挑到街上去賣、要買的人知道那天有那些東西、就從四[1a]方來買東西、多人也多、很熱[2]鬧、雙喜就謝[3]謝父親、滿[4]口說去、第二天兩個人天[5]一亮就起來、穿上衣裳、洗了臉、吃了飯、雙喜穿[6]的是一雙新[7]鞋、戴[8]的是一頂新帽子、父親拿上錢、又叫一個人和他們一同去、要叫他把在城裏買的東西挑回來。走了三四點鐘的工夫、慢慢的就到了城、先下[9]店吃飯、吃好了纔上街去買東西。在那裏有賣[10]皮的、得意先看了幾張就說、還是這張好、那些太小了、就買了一張大的、雙喜說、我要給小兄弟買一頂帽子、但我不會買、父親可以給我買上、我要帶回去送他、父親就給他買一頂小帽子、又買一個小紅盒子、外頭好看、但東西不很好、也買貴[11]了。他又買兩盞小燈、六個大盤子、又帶雙喜到了大街、

---

[1] *Koh* 各$^4$ Each; every. [1a] *Sï$^4$-fang$^1$* 四方 Four sides—all quarters.

[2] *Reh$^4$-nao$^4$* 熱鬧 Busy; bustling. L. 25.

[3] *Hsie$^4$ hsie$^4$* 謝謝 Thanks; to thank. L. 11.

[4] *Man$^3$ k'eo$^3$* 滿口 A full mouth—gladly.

[5] *T'ien$^1$ ih$^1$ liang$^4$* 天一亮 As soon as it was light. V. 4.

[6] *Ch'uan tih shï* 穿的是; *tai tih shï* 戴的是 What he wore was......; he wore......L. 21.

[7] *Hsin$^1$* 新 New; recent. L. 14.

[8] *Tai$^4$* 戴 To wear on the head. V. 2.

[9] *Hsia* 下 here=to go to.

[10] *Mai-p'i-tih* 賣皮的 A seller of skins. L. 10.

[11] *Mai kuei liao* 買貴了 Paid a high price for it.

叫他在舖子外頭等一等、[1]自己就進了舖子買一盒子餅子、用手巾包起來、放在板櫈上、後來[2]開了錢、就出來、雙喜把盒子拿在手裏、一到街頭就碰見一個朋友、姓章、叫章好眼、他也買了些東西、也買得不錯、就問他要多偺囘去、他說、今天囘不去、太晚了、我還有些事情、還要到城外去、沒有工夫閒談、到晚上可以在店裏再見[3]罷、話說完就走。雙喜就跟他父親去看熱鬧、看舖面、雙喜看見就說、這裏好得很、鄉下好、這裏更好。到了晚上他們三個人囘了店、叫老板拿一盆熱水來、洗了脚、用手巾[4]擦乾、後來又叫他拿洗臉盆來洗臉、洗完了、叫他拿兩盤子[4a]菜、三碗[5]麵來、就都坐板櫈吃晚飯。那時候天黑了、老板點起燈來、他們就坐下說話、到了八點鐘少一刻、街上碰見的那個姓章的進來、和他們同坐、說了好些話、他的話也說得好、叫人[6]愛聽、他說、我今天聽了一件事、不知道你們要聽不要聽、他們說、要聽、請說罷、不曉得他說了甚麽話、話裏頭有甚麽意思、看[7]下課就知道了。

1. *Tsï$^{4}$ chi$^{3}$* 自 己 Self; himself. L. 18.
2. *K'ai liao ch'ien* 開 了 錢 Paid the money.
3. *Pa$^{4}$* 罷 A final particle. L. 16.
4. *Ts'ah$^{1}$* 擦 To rub; to wipe; to scour. 4a *Ts'ai* 菜$^{4}$ Vegetables. L. 10.
5. *Mien$^{4}$* 麵 Vermicelli. V. 4.
6. *Ai$^{4}$* 愛 To love; to be fond of. L. 10.
7. *Hsia k'o$^{4}$* 下 課 The next lesson. L. 21.

# LESSON IX. 第九課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 賬$^{4}$ | *chang*$^{43}$ | An account; a bill. |
| 找$^{3}$ | *chao* | To seek; to find. To owe or pay a balance. |
| 算$^{4}$ | *suan* | To calculate; to reckon. |
| 借$^{4}$ | *ch* / *ts* } *ie* | To borrow. To lend. |
| 銅$^{2}$ | *t‘ong*$^{2}$ | Brass; copper. |
| 角$^{2}$ | *k* { *oh*<br>*ioh*<br>*chiao*$^{3}$ | A corner; a horn.<br>$\frac{1}{10}$ of a dollar.<br>N.A. |
| 換$^{4}$ | *huan* | To exchange; to change. |
| 補$^{3}$ | *pu* | To repair; to patch; to mend. |
| 洋$^{2}$ | *iang* | The ocean. Foreign. |
| 毛$^{2}$ | *mao* | The hair of an animal; down. |
| 票$^{4}$ | *p‘iao*$^{5}$ | A ticket; a bank note. |
| 行$^{2}$ 市$^{4}$ | *hang-shï* | The market price. |
| 底$^{3}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ti-tsï*$^{1}$ | A rough draft. The bottom. |
| 錢$^{2}$ 店$^{4}$ | *ch‘* / *ts* } *ien-tien* | A money shop. |
| 字$^{4}$ 號$^{4}$ | *tsi-hao* | A shop sign. |
| 足$^{2}$ 錢$^{2}$ | ***tsuh-ch‘ien*** | **Full cash.** |
| 錠$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ting-tsï* | An ingot of silver. |
| 算$^{4}$ 盤$^{2}$ | *suan-p‘an* | A reckoning instrument; an abacus |
| 法$^{3}$ 碼$^{3}$ | *fah-ma* | Standard weights. |
| 現$^{4}$ 錢$^{2}$ | *hsien-ch‘ien* | Ready money. |
| 價$^{4}$ 錢$^{2}$ | *chia-ch‘ien* | Price. |
| 元$^{2}$ 寶$^{3}$ | *üen-pao*$^{1.6}$ | A shoe of silver weighing about 50 ounces. |
| 洋$^{2}$ 錢$^{2}$ | *iang-ch‘ien*$^{2}$ | Dollars; foreign money. |
| 銀$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *in-tsï*$^{2.4}$ | Silver; wealth. |
| 金$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | ***chin-tsï***$^{2}$ | Gold. |
| 就$^{4}$ 是$^{4}$ | *chiu-shï* | That is; is; namely. |
| 一$^{1}$ 吊$^{4}$ 錢$^{2}$ | *ih-tiao ch‘ien.* | A string of cash. |
| 一$^{1}$ 副$^{4}$ 天$^{1}$ 平$^{2}$ | *ih-fu t‘ien-p‘ing* | A pair of scales. |

## The Monetary System.

1. The monetary system of China is extremely complicated. At the present time the adoption of a silver coinage and the minting of new copper coins go side by side with the use of lump silver (known as ‘sycee’) and ‘cash’. In the larger centres banks are being started after the foreign order; there is a Bank of China, *Chong-kueh in-hang* 中國銀行, in addition to many private ones. Meanwhile the older banks continue on the old lines. The decimal system is used universally, and calculations are made in ordinary transactions to two places of decimals, i.e., to tenths and hundredths.

---

以義爲利 *Regard righteousness as gain.*

## Silver Currency.

Silver currency may be classed as uncoined and coined; the former consisting of ‘shoes’ and ‘ingots’, and spoken of as so many ounces, or ‘taels’, and hundredths: the latter consisting of dollars and cents divided into tenths and hundredths. There is no coin at present to represent the tenth of a tael, but five cent, ten cent and twenty cent dollar pieces are in circulation. These are called 小洋錢 *hsiao iang ch‘ien*, or ‘Small foreign money’, and the same name is given to the amount as to the coin that represents it; 五分洋錢 *u fen iang-ch‘ien*, 一角 *ih-kioh* and 二角 *rï kioh* (or 一毛 *ih-mao*, 二毛 *rï-mao*) standing for 5 cents, 10 cents, 20 cents, or for coins of these values. The following examples illustrate some terms used in connection with silver currency:

A ‘shoe’ of silver; *ih-ko üen-pao* 一個元寶.

An ‘ingot’ of silver; *ih-ting in-tsi* 一錠銀子.

One ounce of silver; a ‘tael *ih liang in-tsï* 一兩銀子.

Fifty tael cents; *u-ch‘ien in-tsi* 五錢銀子.

Fifty-five tael cents; *u-ch‘ien u-fen in-tsï* 五錢五分銀子.

One tael and eight cents; *ih liang ling pah fen in-tsï* 一兩零八分銀子.

One dollar; *ih-k‘uai iang-ch‘ien* 一塊洋錢.

Half a dollar; *u-kioh* 五角; or, *pan k‘uai iang-ch‘ien* 半塊洋錢.

Twenty cents; *rï-kioh iang ch‘ien* 二角洋錢.

Twenty-five cents; *rï-kioh u fen iang-ch‘ien* 二角五分洋錢.

One dollar and five cents; *ih-k‘uai ling u fen iang-ch‘ien* 一塊零五分洋錢.

In all these examples it will be seen that, as in English, the denomination in which the amount is expressed, dollars or taels, comes last. In the case of dollars, 洋錢 *iang-ch‘ien* is frequently omitted; the N.A. 塊 *k‘uai* indicating that dollars are in question. *Liang* 兩, too, is usually omitted in speaking of large round numbers, as,

Thirty thousand taels; *san uan in-tsï* 三萬銀子.

The sign $ stands for dollars; while Tls., cts., are the usual abbreviations for taels and cents.

*In-tsï* 銀子 and *iang-ch‘ien* 洋錢 are used as the equivalent of ‘The tael’; ‘The dollar;’ *e.g.*,

What does the tael change at? *in-tsï huan to-shao ch‘ien?* 銀子換多少錢.

What does the dollar change at? *iang-ch‘ien huan to-shao ch‘ien* 洋錢換多少錢.

## Copper Currency.

**2.** Until a few years ago ‘cash’ was the only copper coin used throughout the Empire. This is strung on strings usually made of twisted straw. The amount on each string varies; some districts having 100 cash (frequently two or three less) on separate strings; while other districts use a number of these amounts strung together and called a 吊 *tiao*. The value of a 吊 *tiao* varies according to the number of strings that compose it, but it forms the unit of calculation in the exchange of cash, *i.e.*, if the dollar changes for 1,260 cash it is said to change for 一 吊 二 百 六 *ih tiao rï peh luh*; the word 千 *ch‘ien* not being used in this connection. The new copper coinage has different names in different places, being variously called 銅 角 子 *t‘ong koh-tsï*, 銅 字 兒 *t‘ong tsï-rï*, 銅 圓 *t‘ong-üen*, and 銅 板 *t‘ong pan*; it too is reckoned by the 吊 *tiao*.

It follows that when articles are paid for in full in small amounts, a loss is incurred owing to the 吊 *tiao* being short count; hence a larger or smaller discount must be allowed in reckoning accounts. This discount is called 底 子 *ti-tsï* or 底 子 錢 *ti-tsï ch‘ien*, and the word 補 *pu* is employed to indicate that the loss may be ‘repaired’. Where money is paid in full, *i.e.*, 99+1=100, it is said to be 足 錢 *tsuh ch‘ien*, ‘Full cash’; *e.g.*,

I want full cash; *o iao tsuh-ch‘ien* 我 要 足 錢.

How much money needs to be made up? *iao pu chi-ko ch‘ien tih ti-tsï?* 要 補 幾 個 錢 的 底 子.

The amount to be made up is 36 cash; *iao pu san-shïh-luh-ko ch‘ien tih ti-tsï* 要 補 三 十 六 個 錢 的 底 子.

## Paper Currency.

**3.** *P‘iao* 票 is used both for cheques and cash notes, 錢 *ch‘ien* or 銀 *in* being prefixed to shew the difference. At present they are largely confined to local use, the 票 *p‘iao* of one place not being negotiable elsewhere:—

A cheque for silver; *ih-chang in p‘iao* 一 張 銀 票.

Cash notes; *ch‘ien p‘iao* 錢 票.

Change notes for ‘cash’; *na p‘iao-tsï huan ch‘ien* 拿 票 子 換 錢.

Go and change ‘cash’ for notes; *na ch‘ien ch‘ü huan p‘iao-tsï* 拿 錢 去 換 票 子.

The abacus or reckoning instrument is universally used. To reckon on it is expressed by 打 *ta*, not 算 *suan*, which is used for accounts. To 打 算 盤 *ta suan-p‘an* is also used in a general sense, ‘To calculate’.

He cannot use the abacus; *t‘a puh huei ta suan-p‘an* 他 不 會 打 算 盤.

Come and reckon accounts; *lai suan-chang* 來 算 賬.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第九課雜句

現在銀子甚麼行市
我找不到
我找到了
這個賣甚麼價錢
我去找他
買餅子要現錢
兩吊錢買不到
去換衣裳
多給他兩塊錢,我要給他兩塊多錢
他用筆算賬
這個算不得甚麼
大發錢店關了門
有一位眞神

## NOTES.

## *Chie* 借 and its Uses.

**4.** The word 借 *chie*, meaning both '**to borrow**' and '**to** lend,' causes beginners some difficulty; and the same applies to 找 *chao* when used of paying a balance, or receiving one that is due. Practice is the great thing, but a study of the following examples may be helpful :—

He wants to borrow $3 ; *t'a iao chie san-k'uai ch'ien* 他要借三塊錢.

He cannot borrow money ; ***t'a chie puh tao ch'ien*** 他借不到錢.

Will you lend me a dollar ; *ch'ing chie ih-k'uai ch'ien chih o* 請借一塊錢給我.

I lent him 300 cash ; ***o chie san peh ch'ien chih t'a*** 我借三百錢給他.

He has gone to borrow money ; ***t'a ch'ü chie ch'ien*** 他去借錢.

He still has a balance due to me of $4 ; *t'a hai chao chih o sï-k'uai ch'ien* 他還找給我四塊錢.

I will give you the balance of 400 cash ; *o chao sï peh ch'ien chih ni* 我找四百錢給你.

You give me the balance of $1.00 ; *ni chao ih-k'uai ch'ien chih o* 你找一塊錢給我.

## Defining Power of *chiu-shï* 就是.

**5.** In Lesson I, 是 *shï* was defined as meaning '**is**' ; '**are**' ; etc. *chiu-shï* 就是, while also having the same meaning, is used in a slightly different manner, usually defining or explaining something that has gone before ; *e.g.*,

The two characters '*nien-chi*' mean the same as '*sui-su*', *nien-chi liang-ko tsï chiu-shï sui-su tih i-sï* 年紀兩個字就是歲數的意思.

---

NOTES.—*a*. *Puh-hao* 不好 before a verb, in many districts indicates anything inadvisable, or difficult in the nature of things.

*b*. *chiu-shï* 就是 or 就是了 *chiu-shï-liao* are also added to sentences to indicate satisfaction or assent, as, Very well, give him forty cash ; *chih t'a sï-shih ko ch'ien chiu shï liao* 給他四十個錢就是了.

*c*. In the West, dollars are called *in-uen* 銀圓$^{2}$.

[*See Lesson XXVII.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

What is the price of silver at present? *hsien-tsai in-tsï shen-mo hang-shi?*
I cannot find it ; *o chao puh tao.*
I have found it ; *o chao tao-liao.*
What is the selling price of this? *chæ-ko mai shen-mo chia-ch'ien?*
I will go and look for him ; *o ch'ü chao t'a.*
Cakes are bought with ready money ; *mai ping-tsï iao hsien-ch'ien.*

It cannot be bought for 2,000 cash; *liang tiao ch'ien mai puh tao.*
Go and change your clothes; *ch'ü huan i-shang.*
Give him $2 more; I will give him more than $2; *to chih t'a liang-k'uai ch'ien, o iao chih t'a liang-k'uai to ch'ien.*
He reckons accounts with a pencil; *t'a iong pih suan chang.*
This is of no account; *chæ-ko suan puh teh shen-mo.*
The '*Ta-fah*' money shop has closed its doors; *Ta-fah ch'ien-tien kuan liao men.*
There is one God; *iu ih-uei Chen-shen.*

*Translate*:—$102. $30.26. $706.08. $.10. $.15 $.84. $1,060.07. $20,406.09. $200 or $300. $1 or $2. ¼ of a dollar. ¾ of a dollar. $2¾ Tls. 86. Tls. 65. Tls. 104.06. Tls. .10. Tls. .29. Tls. .40. Tls. 100.01. Tls. 1½ million. ¾ of a tael. ¼ of a tael. Tls. 1¼. Tls. 2¾. Why does he not repay that Tls. 206.24? Last month he asked me to lend him $3.00. I said, When will you repay me? He said, On the 3rd of next month, I thereupon lent him $3.00. To-day the dollar changes for 1,260 cash; three days ago the tael changed for 1,800 cash. I still have a balance due to him of 20 tael cents. When the account was reckoned, he went to the street to buy things. Why has he come to look for me? Who knows! Who are you looking for? I have come to look for a man named Uan to borrow a few hundred cash of him. I said, You look for him in vain. A thousand cash more or less does not matter. The money shop on the main street opened its doors to-day. Have you any cash notes? Yes, I have two.

Writing Exercise:—換 算 洋 錢 就 現 在 金 R. 167.

---

## READING LESSON IX. 九 第 要 輯

### More Money than Sense.

### 有錢無智

韋好眼就說、我是昨天從家來的、因我的事情多兩天纔得辦[1]完昨天我在城東[2]頭、太平街上、在雙順[3]字號外頭、看見有十幾個人在那裏說話、我上去一看、就看見一個少年人在那裏、有二十幾歲、又[4]哭又罵、我慢慢的問人就知道他姓方、叫方過快、住在西[5]

---

1. *Pan* 辦$^{4}$ To transact; to manage. L. 10.
2. *Tong* 東$^{1}$ The east. L. 12.
3. *Shuen* 順$^{4}$ Favourable. L. 12.
4. *Iu k'uh iu ma* 又$^{4}$ 哭$^{1}$ 又$^{4}$ 罵$^{4}$ Both crying and swearing.
5. *Hsi-hsiang* 西 鄉 The country to the west of the city

鄉、家裏有錢有地、[1]在他那裏有一個四十幾歲的人、姓萬、叫萬作假、那個人眞眞不好、說話[2]好聽、[3]口甜心苦、早幾個月就是八月間、作假和過快閒談說過幾天他要進城去換錢、若過快有錢要換、他也可以給他[4]換囘來、過快[5]以他的話爲眞、囘到家中第二天要和人算賬、因沒有錢票、光有銀子、和洋錢、就[6]心裏想、明天作假要進城去、我可以請他給我換票子來、就拿出三個元寶、七錠銀子、一百零四塊洋錢、上作假那裏去、請他帶到城裏去換、作假說、[7]這算小事、你我是多年的好朋友、這[8]不費事、我明天去換就是了、過快謝謝就囘去了。等兩天作假不囘來、再等幾天還是不囘來到了二十九日晚上、有一個人把幾十張票子拿來、說是作假[9]托他把這些先帶來、又說、作假現在[10]囘不來、因他的一個朋友請他上慢囘城去、辦幾件要緊的事、但這事一辦完了、他[11]趕十月初幾要

---

1. *Tsai t'a na-li* 在他那裏 There, where he was living.
2. *Hao t'ing* 好聽 Good to listen to; specious. See 好看 Reading Lesson 8.
3. *K'eo*$^3$ *t'ien*$^2$ *hsin*$^1$ *k'u*$^3$ 口甜心苦 Mouth sweet, heart bitter—a fair-spoken villain.
4. *Huan huei-lai* 換回來 Change it and bring it back.
5. *I*$^3$ *t'a-tih hua uei chen*$^1$ 以他的話爲眞 Accepted his statement in good faith. L. 19.
6. *Hsin li hsiang*$^3$ 心裏想 Thought to himself.
7. *Chæ suan hsiao sï* 這算小事 This is a mere nothing.
8. *Puh fei sï* 不費事 Gives no trouble. L. 17.
9. *T'oh* 托$^1$ To entrust with; to commission. L. 22
10. *Huei puh lai* 回不來 Could not return.
11. *Kan*$^3$ 趕 By. L. 11.

囘來、把那些票子[1]如數交淸、過快得了這幾十張票子、又聽作假十月間要囘來、就[2]放了心。再過幾天就進城買東西、把票子帶着上錢鋪去換、這一換、纔知道都是假的、[3]一張也不能用他、一聽見都是假的、就哭起來、後來[4]罵天罵地又罵作假。但他這樣罵也[5]無用、作假若囘來就可以說我換的票子都不錯、[6]必是那帶票子的人換了假的。過快眞[7]可憐、銀子、錠子、洋錢都沒有了、就是去找作假[8]也怕找不到、就是找到了、問他要銀子、作假說他沒有銀子、怎麼樣呢。話說完了、雙喜的父親說、那個人我早已認識、十幾年前他借我十幾塊錢、到現在沒有還我、我也借給他幾吊錢、一副天平、也沒有拿囘來給我、他說話句句是假的、人萬不可和他辨事。[9]話說到這裏、有十點多鐘了、就都去[10]睡覺、明天早晨和老板算賬、又多給他幾個[11]水錢、叫帶來的那人把東西挑走了、就都趕快囘

---

1. *Ru² su⁴ chiao¹ ch'ing¹* 如數交淸 Would hand over the exact amount
2. *Fang liao hsin* 放了心 Let his mind go—made his mind easy.
3. *Ih chang ie* 一張也 Not a single note. . . .
4. Cursed both heaven and earth.
5. *U²-iong⁴* 無用 Useless. L. 15.
6. *Pih⁴ shï* 必是 It must have been. L. 18.
7. *K'o³ lien²* 可憐 Pitiable; to be pitied. L. 21. 23.
8. *Ie³ p'a⁴* 也怕 Also fear—in all probability. L. 13.
9. *Hua shoh tao chœ-li* 話說到這裏 When the conversation had reached this point. . . .
10. *Shui⁴ chiao⁴* 睡覺 To go to sleep; to go to bed. L. 15.
11. *Shui ch'ien* 水錢 Water money—a 'tip' for bringing hot water, etc.

去。雙喜把新帽子送小兄弟、叫他戴上、又把省城裏的事都說給母[1]親聽、又把作假哄[2]過快的事也說給他兄弟們聽聽、若他再和父親進城、再聽些事情、我必要在下課再寫了。

---

[1] *Mu*$^{3}$ *ch‘in*$^{1}$ 母親 Mother. V. 2.

[2] *Hong*$^{3}$ 哄 To deceive; to ‘do.’ L. 17.

## LESSON X. 第十課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 邊$^{1}$ | *pien* | A side; a border. |
| 海 | *hai*$^{27}$ | The sea. |
| 心$^{1}$ | *hsin*$^{1}$ | The heart; mind. The centre. |
| 都$^{1}$ | $t\left\{\begin{matrix}u\\ eo\end{matrix}\right.$ | All; the whole. |
| 喝$^{1}$ | *hoh* | To drink. To shout. |
| 信$^{1}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\ s\end{matrix}\right\}in$ | To believe-in-on. A letter; news. |
| 各$^{1}$ | *koh* | Each; every. |
| 愛$^{4}$ | *ai* | To love; to be fond of. |
| 辦$^{4}$ | *pan* | To manage; to arrange. To do. |
| 站$^{4}$ | *chan* | To stand. A stage of 60 to 90 *li*. |
| 靠$^{4}$ | *k‘ao* | To lean against; to trust to. Near to. |
| 纔$^{2}$ | *ts‘ai* | Just now. Thereupon; and then. |
| 呢$^{2}$ | *ni* | An interrogative and emphatic particle. |
| 路$^{4}$ | *lu*$^{14}$ | A road; a way. |
| 光$^{1}$ | *kuang* | Light; bare; only. |
| 菜$^{4}$ | *ts‘ai* | Vegetables; herbs. |
| 起$^{3}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch‘\\ k\end{matrix}\right\}i$ | To rise. To begin. |
| 樣$^{4}$ | *iang* | A pattern. A kind a manner. |
| 肉$^{4}$ | $r\left\{\begin{matrix}o^{2}\\ uh\end{matrix}\right.$ | Flesh; meat. |
| 魚$^{2}$ | *ü*$^{14,38}$ | Fish. |
| 饅$^{2}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *man-t‘eo*$^{1}$ | Bread; steamed bread. |
| 攏$^{3}$ 總$^{3}$ | *long-tsong* | All. |
| 告$^{4}$ 訴$^{4}$ | *kao-su* | To tell; to inform. |
| 釘$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ting-tsï*$^{1.21}$. | A nail. Read *ting*$^{4}$ To nail. |
| 門$^{2}$ 徒$^{2}$ | *men-t‘u*$^{1}$ | A disciple. |
| 不$^{1}$ 過$^{4}$ | *puh-ko* | Simply; nothing more than; but. |
| 身$^{1}$ 體$^{3}$ | *shen-t‘i*$^{1}$ | The body. |
| 怎$^{3}$ 麽$^{3}$ 樣$^{4}$ | *tsen-mo-iang* | How? how about? What if . . ., what then? |

習慣成自然 *Practice makes perfect.*

### 'All' expressed by *tu* 都 and *long-tsong* 攏 總.

1. The word 'all' is used more freely in Chinese than in English. *Tu* 都 follows the noun and has the special function of summarizing all that goes before—gathering it up in a comprehensive form. After two things have been mentioned it may be translated by 'both': preceding a negative it gives a turn to the sentence which may be rendered by 'not any'; 'none'. In distinctly idiomatic sentences it can scarcely be translated. After an enumeration it is joined to 有 *iu*.

*Long-tsong* 攏 總 or similar words, on the other hand, *precede* the noun, and are also often used when 都 *tu* follows; the use of both words roughly corresponding to 'in all'; 'the whole of,' etc., in English.

There are here, in all, 3,000 people; *tsai-chœ-li long-tsong iu san-ch'ien ren* 在 這 裏 攏 總 有 三 千 人.

I have not a single cash in the house; *o chia-li ih-ko ta ch'ien tu muh iu* 我 家 裏 一 個 大 錢 都 沒 有.

All those clothes are washed; *na-hsie i-shang tu hsi-liao* 那 些 衣 裳 都 洗 了.

None of them will come; *t'a-men tu puh lai* 他 們 都 不 來.

He is able to read, write and reckon; *nien-shu, hsie-tsï, ta-suan-p'an, t'a tu huei* 念 書, 寫 字, 打 算 盤, 他 都 會.

He has meat, fish and vegetables; *ro, ü, ts'ai, t'a tu iu* 肉 魚 菜 他 都 有.

All the men, women and children have just gone; *nan-ren, nü-ren, hai-tsï, long-tsong tu ts'ai tseo liao* 男人女人孩子攏總都纔走了.

### 'Each', 'Every'—how expressed.

2. Such words as 'each', 'every', 'different', etc., that individualize or give a distributive meaning may be expressed in three ways:—

*a.* By the use of 各 *koh* before a noun. Where 各 *koh* is repeated, it may be translated by 'own'; *e.g.*,

There is stone of every kind; *koh-iang shïh-t'eo tu iu* 各 樣 石 頭 都 有.

Every man has his own ideas; *koh ren iu koh ren tih i-sï* 各 人 有 各 人 的 意 思.

*b.* By the repetition of some nouns; *e.g.*,

Everybody loved him; *ren ren tu ai t'a* 人 人 都 愛 他.

Each house has a lamp; *chia chia tu iu teng* 家 家 都 有 燈.

*c.* By repeating the N. A. of the thing in question; *e.g.*,

You must wash each of these garments; *chœ-hsie i-shang chien chien tu iao hsi* 這 些 衣 裳 件 件 都 要 洗.

Each of these ten cash notes is false; *chœ shïh chang ch'ien-p'iao, chang chang tu shï chia tih* 這 十 張 錢 票 張 張 都 是 假 的.

## *Tih* 的 as indicating an Agent.

3. Many words used in English to indicate 'an agent,' are formed by the addition of such suffixes as 'or,' 'er,' etc.; as, 'hatter,' 'professor.' In other cases definite names are given to persons engaged in certain occupations; such names usually having something distinctive to point out the occupation in question; as, 'paper hanger.' The same distinction is made in Chinese; the word 的 *tih* indicating the agent and taking the place of the suffixes 'er,' 'or,' etc. Thus used, its force is that of 'he who,' or, 'they who'. For instance, 'a water carrier' is 挑水的 *t'iao-shui tih, i.e.*, 的 *tih*, he who, 挑 *t'iao*, carries, 水 *shui*, water. The word 'some' is similarly formed, *e.g.*, Some carried boxes, some tables 有挑箱子的 *iu t'iao hsiang-tsï tih*, 有挑棹子的 *iu t'iao choh-tsï tih*; *i.e.*, there were those who carried boxes; there were those who carried tables. Sometimes 有的 *iu tih* immediately precedes the noun; *e.g.*, 有的挑箱子, 有的挑棹子 *iu tih t'iao hsiang-tsï*; *iu tih t'iao choh-tsï*.

Some sold meat, some sold fish; *iu mai ro tih, iu mai ü tih* 有賣肉的, 有賣魚的.

They are washermen; *t'a-men shï hsi-i-shang-tih* 他們是洗衣裳的.

Tell the shoemaker to come to-morrow morning; *chiao tso-hsiai-tih ming-t'ien tsao-ch'en lai* 叫作鞋的明天早晨來.

He is a literary man; *t'a shï ko nien-shu-tih* 他是個念書的.

## *Ch'i-lai* 起來 as an Auxiliary Verb.

4. *Ch'i* 起 is used as an auxiliary verb and often denotes the beginning of an action. More generally, however, it is joined with 來 *lai*, when 起來 *ch'i-lai* may be used alone as a principal verb meaning, 'To get up; to rise'; or be joined as an auxiliary to another verb. The same is true of 出 *ch'uh*, which may take either 來 *lai* or 去 *ch'ü*, as, 出來 *ch'uh-lai*, To come out; 出去 *ch'uh-ch'ü*, To go out, but which may also be used in the same auxiliary manner as 起來 *ch'i-lai* with another verb; *e.g.*,

Get up earlier to-morrow morning; *ming-t'ien tsao ih-tien ch'i-lai* 明天早一點起來.

He has just gone out; *t'a ts'ai ch'uh-ch'ü* 他纔出去.

They have come out; *t'a men ch'uh-lai-liao* 他們出來了.

He cannot afford to buy that hat; *na-ting mao-tsï t'a mai puh ch'i* 那頂帽子他買不起.

Carry out this table; *pa chœ-chang choh-tsi t'ai ch'uh-ch'ü* 把這張棹子抬出去.

### *Pien* 邊 Idiomatic use of.

**5.** *Pien* 邊 joined to 這 *chœ* or 那 *na* is used to indicate a near or a remote locality; *e.g.*,

Put it down over here; *fang tsai chœ-pien* 放 在 這 邊.
Gold is produced in these parts; *chœ-pien ch'uh chin-tsï* 這 邊 出 金 子.
Do you use the abacus in your part of the world? *ni-men na-pien iong puh iong suan-p'an?* 你 們 那 邊 用 不 用 算 盤.

### *Iang* 様 as indicating Manner.

**6.** One way of indicating 'mode', or 'manner' is by the use of 様 *iang*. It furnishes, as it were, the *pattern* according to which anything should be done.

In N. China 這 麽 *chœ-mo* and 那 麽 *na-mo* are more commonly used than *chœ iang* 這 様 and *na-iang* 那 様: *tsen-mo-iang* 怎 麽 様 may be interrogative or not according to the connection; *e.g.*,

This is the same; *chœ shï ih-iang* 這 是 一 様.
Not the same; *puh ih-iang* 不 一 様.
That is different; *na shï liang-iang* 那 是 兩 様.
There are all sorts; *iang iang tu iu* 様 様 都 有.
You must do it this way; *iao chœ-iang tso* 要 這 様 做.
Not so; *puh shï chœ-iang* 不 是 這 様.
This is a different idea; *chœ shï liang-iang-tih i-sï* 這 是 兩 様 的 意 思.
How about him? *t'a tsen-mo-iang ni?* 他 怎 麽 様 呢.
But what if he has no money? *t'a muh iu ch'ien tsen-mo-iang ni?* 他 沒 有 錢 怎 麽 様 呢
What did he say? *t'a tsen-mo shoh ni?* 他 怎 麽 說 呢.
His child is only so, so; *t'a-tih hai-tsï puh tsen-mo-iang* 他 的 孩 子 不 怎 麽 様.

N.B. This is the origin of the pidgin English phrase, "this fashion"; "that fashion"; "what fashion can do?"

### Uses of *mo* 麽 and *ni* 呢.

**7.** In Lesson I, Section 4, 麽 *mo* was defined as an Interrogative Particle: 呢 *ni* is used in a somewhat similar way, only as the sign of an indirect question, and may follow when a question is already asked. In some cases it merely adds emphasis; *e.g.*,

Why do you strike me? *ni uei-shen-mo ta o ni?* 你 爲 甚 麽 打 我 呢.
Why does he not come to-day? *t'a chin-t'ien uei-shen-mo puh lai ni?* 他 今 天 爲 甚 麽 不 來 呢.
What is he doing over there? *t'a tsai-na-pien tso shen-mo ni?* 他 在 那 邊 作 甚 麽 呢.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十課雜句

他們都在這裏
那四個人都站在門外
各人辦各人的事
粗的, 細的, 他都有
那些人個個都不好
他是個送信的
他的哥哥是個刻字的
他們抬不出去
叫他站起來
我光要兩個
你們那邊有金錢沒有
我們都要靠救主
救主愛人

## NOTES.

NOTES.—*a.* *Tsen-mo* 怎 麼 is often used before verbs instead of *tsen-mo-iang* 怎 麼 樣.

*b.* *Shen-tsï* 身 子 is also used for ‘body’, but unlike *shen-t‘i* 身 體 it may be applied to the ‘body’ of a ship, etc.

*c.* *Chan* 站 takes no N. A.; *e.g.*, One stage of a journey; *ih-chan lu* 一 站 路.

[*See Lesson XXVIII.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

They are all here; *t‘a-men tu tsai-chæ-li.*

Those four men are all standing outside the door; *na si-ko ren tu chan tsai men uai.*

Each person manages his own affairs; *koh ren pan koh ren tih si.*

He has both coarse ones and fine ones; *ts‘u tih hsi tih t‘a tu iu.*

Each one of those men is bad; *na-hsie ren ko ko tu puh hao.*

He is a letter carrier; *t‘a shï ko song-hsin-tih.*

His elder brother is an engraver; *t‘a-tih ko-ko shï ko k‘eh-tsï-tih.*

They cannot carry it out; *t‘a-men t‘ai puh ch‘uh-ch‘ü*

Tell him to stand up; *chiao t‘a chan ch‘i-lai.*

I only want two; *o kuang iao liang-ko.*

Have you a gold coinage where you come from? *ni-men na-pien iu chin-ch‘ien muh iu?*

We must all trust the Saviour; *o men tu iao k‘ao Chiu-chu.*

The Saviour loves men; *Chiu-chu ai ren.*

*Translate*:—He is only talking false to you; you must not believe him. The ten nails he bought for me a few days ago are all good for nothing; not one is fit for use. Invite him to come out, and say to him that I have a small matter I wish to tell him. Mr. Fang has two boys and two girls; each one of them is good. Why will he not drink that cup of tea? I have no ready money in hand; I have nothing but a cash note for 2,000 cash. The baker said, Let every man go his own way. That young child cannot get up. Each of those men who came during the summer of last year, can speak Chinese, but they do not speak very well. The black garment that the fishmonger wears was given him by the butcher: the vegetable seller also has six red garments, not one fit to be seen. He came back an hour ago, and has just gone out: Where has he gone to? He told me he was going over to Mr. Pien's to ask him for the loan of $2.00. I asked him in this way and that, but he still did not understand my meaning. The three characters 路, 喝, 心, are not written in this way. He has been here two weeks; why does he not go? He believes and trusts in the Saviour: how about you? I also believe and trust in Him with all my heart. All those who believe and trust in the Lord obtain salvation.

Writing Lesson:—各 都 樣 信 起 愛 海 心 R. 61.

## READING LESSON X. 輯要第十

---

### Seeing the Sights.

### 城外遊觀

前兩年、五月初三、張家[1]的大兒子到我家裏來、對我說、你今天有事沒有、我說、沒有甚麼要緊的事、他說、我帶你出城到眞元字號那裏[2]看看熱鬧好不好、我說、那很好、我就先上樓[2a]去、洗了臉、換了衣裳、戴上[3]凉帽、等不多時我就下樓來、我們兩個人就上城外去。我們一出城門、看見有很多的人、[4]男女老少都有、有鄉下來買東西的人、有本城的人、有外人、有幾個是上海人、也有幾個是[5]京城人、各有各的[6]口音、[7]臉面也都不一樣、有穿好衣裳的、有沒戴帽子的、有抬石頭的、有送老女人回家去的、樣樣都有。各人說話也不一樣、有[8]放高聲說這個的、有[9]講大話說那個的。在舖子外頭也有換錢的、也有賣

---

1. *Chia* 家 is often added to nouns to indicate an individual : here 張家 =Mr. Chang. L. 27.

2. *K‘an k‘an reh-nao* 看看熱鬧 To see the sights.

2a. *Leo* 樓$^2$ Upper storey.

3. *Liang$^2$ mao* 涼帽 A summer (lit. cool) hat.

4. *Nan nü lao shao* 男女老少 Male and female, old and young; i.e., people of all kinds.

5. *Ching$^1$ ch‘eng$^2$* 京城 The Metropolis; capital of a country. V. 3.

6. *K‘eo$^3$ in$^1$* 口音 Pronunciation. L. 19.

7. *Lien$^3$ mien$^4$* 臉面 Face, countenance. Two characters of similar meaning are often used together for the sake of euphony.

8. *Fang$^4$ kao$^1$ sheng$^1$* 放高聲 To speak in a loud voice.

9. *Chiang ta hua* 大話 The same meaning as the above entry. The same thing is often said in two ways to preserve the balance of sentences and to make good rhythm.

菜的、還有賣盆的、賣燈的、這邊有站在路上用粗紅碗。[1]喝[2]冷茶的、還有個長臉的少年人、靠城門吃熱饅頭、[3]更不好看的、是個五十幾歲的人、光穿一隻鞋坐在板凳上、用熱水洗脚。我有意買幾件[4]零碎東西帶回家去送人、但沒有帶錢、光有三個銅（字兒角子）、[5]回去拿呢、也沒有工夫、我就借一塊零幾角洋錢、說、一回到家我就要還你。有個人在那裏賣各樣的東西、粗的、細的、黑的、黃的、都有、海外來的也有、本城出的也有、各是各的價錢、但東西[6]不怎麽樣、我問他甚麽價錢、他說[7]老先生我不好意思問你多要、外路來的東西貴、[8]愛那一樣可以買那一樣、這個小的不過要你半塊錢、這也不算多、我說太貴、我[9]買不起、我們纔要走、他就把我們叫囘來、說少賣八十個錢怎麽樣呢、肯買不肯買、我[10]還他的價、說、給你四角、他說再

---

[1] *Hoh* 喝 To drink. *Ch‘ih* may be applied both to eating and drinking, but *hoh* 喝 can only be used for drinking.

[2] *Leng*$^3$ *ch‘a*$^2$ 冷茶 Cool tea. This is often provided as a work of merit, and placed in large crock by the road side. To do this is spoken of as *sha ch‘a* 捨茶 To give away tea.

[3] *Keng puh hao k‘an tih* 更不好看的 What was more unsightly. . .

[4] *Ling*$^2$ *sui*$^4$ *tong-hsi* 零碎東西 Odds and ends.

[5] *Huei ch‘ü na ni* 回去拿呢 Should I return for it?

[6] *Puh tsen-mo-iang* 不怎麽樣 Not up to much.

[7] *Lao* 老 here does not necessarily mean old in years; it is often used as a term of respect. Compare English, ‘old fellow.’

[8] Note the idiom—*ai na-ih-iang* 愛那一樣 like which kind, *mai na ih iang* 買那一樣 buy which kind; i.e., buy whichever kind you prefer. See L. 21 *g*.

[9] *Mai puh ch‘i* 買不起 Cannot afford to buy it. See Note 5, Reading Lesson 6.

[10] *Huan t‘a tih chia* 還他的價 Made him an offer. *Huan chia* 還價 is to make an offer in response to a price asked.

[1]添五分就是了、這也是[2]不彀本、四角五不過換五百幾十個大錢、我就慢慢的數給他、不少給他一個、他對賣魚的說各人有各人的心、這位先生不錯。我們又走了幾[3]步、到了一塊[3a]空地、就看見一個[4]說書的、說[5]三國、有一二百人站在那裏聽、他說得也好、人都愛聽、我們到他那裏他快要說完、請人多給他幾個錢可以買茶喝。我們[5a]往東走、又看見一個人[6]擺一個小[7]攤子上頭擺了幾十本書、有大的、有小的、有紅[8]面子的、有黃面子的、他站在那裏[9]勸[10]過路的人買、我這纔曉得他是[11]賣書的。有一個人把一本書拿起來、[12]聞一聞說、這個書[13]有味、就放下走了、他走了[14]以後[15]又來了幾個人看看、賣書的說、這些書不是賣的、是半送半賣的、你們看這本[16]馬太[17]福音書、不過賣八個大錢、就是紙也買

---

1. *T'ien* 添 To add to.
2. *Puh keo pen* 不彀本 Under cost price.
3. *Pu* 步$^4$ A step. 3*a*. *K'ong* 空$^1$ Empty. V. 2.
4. *Shoh-shu-tih* 說書的 A story teller.
5. *San kueh* 三國 The Three Kingdoms. A popular historical novel covering a period of Chinese history from the middle of the second to the middle of the third century A. D. 5*a*. *Wang* 往$^3$ Towards.
6. *Pai*$^3$ 擺 To place; to set up. L. 11.
7. *T'an*$^1$*-tsï* 攤子 A stall.
8. *Mien*$^4$*-tsï* 面子 A cover; a surface. L. 29.
9. *Ch'üen*$^4$ 勸 To exhort; to persuade. L. 15.
10. *Ko lu tih ren* 過路的人 Passers-by.
11. *Mai-shu-tih* 賣書的 A colporteur.
12. *Uen*$^2$ *ih uen*$^2$ 聞一聞 Smelt it. L. 28.
13. *Iu uei*$^4$ 有味 Has a flavour—'it smells.'
14. *I*$^4$ *heo*$^4$ 以後 Afterwards. L. 19. 他走了以後 after he had gone.
15. *Iu*$^4$ 又 Also; in addition. In many cases, as here, it does not need to be translated, but merely indicates an additional particular. L. 14.
16. *Ma-t'ai* 馬太 Matthew.
17. *Fuh in*$^1$ *shu* 福音書 Gospel book.

不了、還有[1]印工不算、你們可以買兩本帶到家去看看、書中的[1a]道理也不錯、說、早一千九百多年前、有一位從天上到[2]世界上來、他爲甚麼來呢、[3]不是爲旁的、是因爲他愛人、下來作他們的救主。他還說多少話、勸他們信這書中的話、他說完了有好幾個人就買他的書帶走了。那時天不早、我們也家去了。

---

1. *In*$^4$ *kong*$^1$ 印工 'Printing work'—the printing. L. 25.

1a. *Tao-li* 道$^4$ 理$^3$ Teaching. L. 11.

2. *Shï*$^4$ *kiai*$^4$ 世界 The world. L. 15.

3. *Puh shi uei p'ang tih* 不是爲旁的 For nothing else than; for no other reason than.

## VOCABULARY II. 二第彙字

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 鹽$^2$ | *ien* | Salt; brine. |
| 羊$^2$ | *iang*$^9$ | A sheep; a goat. |
| 牛$^2$ | *niu*$^{14}$ | An ox; a cow. |
| 猪$^1$ | *chu*$^{23}$ | A hog; a pig. |
| 狗$^3$ | *keo*$^{14}$ | A dog; a term of contempt. |
| 掛$^4$ | *kua* | To hang up. N.A. |
| 唱$^1$ | *ch'ang* | To sing. |
| 髒$^1$ | *tsang* | Dirty; filthy. |
| 板$^3$ | *pan*$^2$ | A plank; a board. |
| 騎 | *ch'/k i* | To ride an animal; to stride. |
| 窮 | *ch'/k iong* | Poor; needy. |
| 空$^1$ | *k'ong* | Empty. Read *k'ong*$^4$ Leisure. A deficit. |
| 綫$^4$ | *hs/s ien*$^{14\ 21}$ | Thread; wire. |
| 死$^3$ | *sï* | To die; dead. |
| 針$^1$ | *chen*$^{21}$ | A needle; a pin; a probe. |
| 滿$^3$ | *man* | Full; the whole. |
| 馬$^3$ | *ma*$^{11}$ | A horse. |
| 雞$^1$ | *ch/k i*$^9$ | A fowl; a chicken. |
| 鐵$^3$ | *t'ieh* | Iron. |
| 母 | *mu* | A mother; a dam; female. |
| 親$^1$ | *ch/ts in* | Related. Relatives. Intimate. Self; in person. |
| 官$^1$ | *kuan* | An official; a mandarin. |
| 戴$^4$ | *tai* | To wear on the head or on the nose. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 縫$^2$ | *feng* | To sew. Read *feng*$^4$. A joint; a seam. |
| 富$^1$ | *fu* | Wealth; wealthy. |
| 根$^1$ | *ken* | A root. N.A. |
| 淨$^4$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *ing* | Pure; clean. |
| 河$^2$ | *ho*$^{27}$ | A stream; a river. |
| 木$^4$ 頭$^2$ | *muh-t‘eo*$^{21}$ | Wood; timber. |
| 父$^4$ 親$^1$ | *fu-ch‘in* | Father. |
| 母$^3$ 親$^1$ | *mu-ch‘in* | Mother. |
| 老$^3$ 板$^3$ | *lao-pan* | A master; an employer. |
| 官$^1$ 話$^4$ | *kuan-hua* | The Mandarin dialect. |
| 乾$^1$ 淨$^4$ | *kan-ching* | Clean; pure. |
| 十$^2$ 字$^4$ 架$^4$ | *shïh-tsï-chia* | A cross. |
| 一$^1$ 座$^4$ 山$^1$ | *ih-tso shan* | A hill; a mountain. |
| 一$^1$ 輛$^4$ 車$^1$ | *ih-liang-ch‘e* | A cart; a carriage. |
| 做$^4$ 買$^3$ 賣$^4$ | *tso-mai mai* | To trade; to do business. |
| 一$^1$ 匹$^3$ 驢$^2$ 子$^3$ | *ih-p‘ih lü-tsï* | A donkey. |
| 一$^1$ 乘$^2$ 轎$^4$ 子$^3$ | *ih-ch‘eng chiao-tsï* | A sedan chair. |

NOTES.—*a.* *Tso chen-hsien* 做針綫 ‘To do needle thread’—to sew.

*b.* *Ch‘in* 親 is usually omitted in speaking of father and mother together; *e.g.*, 我的父母都不在了 *o-tih fu-mu tu puh-tsai-liao*; Both my father and mother are dead.

---

## READING LESSON Xa. 次輯要第十

---

### Current Chat.

解問釋疑

道光年間、中國人過海到外國去的[1]不多、外國人過海到中國來的也不多、這是爲甚麽呢、是因爲有的人怕[2]去、有的人沒有錢去、有人說、有女[3]人國、那邊的人都是女人、不[4]

---

[1] *Tih* 的 here=who; 中國人 Chinese, 的 who, 過海到外國去 crossed the sea to foreign countries, 不多 were not many. So in the next sentence.

[2] *P‘a*$^4$ 怕 To be afraid. L. 13.

[3] *Nü ren kueh* 女人國 The country of women. Books about other countries, published twenty years ago, abounded in the most grotesque descriptions of foreigners and foreign countries.

[4] *Puh hao ch‘ü* 不好去 Was inadvisable to go.

好去、也有說、外國都是[1]野人、不穿衣裳、吃[2]生米、還有人說、是半人半[3]鬼、也有人說、是人頭馬身子、[4]所以後來有外國人到了中國、人看見他們的[5]頭髮是黃的、臉是白的、穿的衣裳很緊、戴的帽子和中國帽子兩樣、一大半就[6]害怕了、[7]不敢和他們[8]來往、也有[9]造謠言說、外國人來[10]挖眼做[11]千里鏡、挖心做[12]藥、叫沒有[13]出過門的更害怕、就是有先生來[14]傳教、到那一座城去、要[15]租[15a]房子住下、人也不敢給他們租房子、怕[16]鄰居[17]說他們的不是、又怕官要打他、但[18]日久見人心、慢慢的人就知道他們都是人、是吃[19]熟飯、不吃生米的、買東西給錢不[20]虧負人、也[21]講理、[22]到處就有肯租房

---

1. *Ie*$^3$ 野 Wild; savage. L. 27.
2. *Seng*$^1$ *mi*$^3$ 生 米 Uncooked rice.
3. *Kuei*$^3$ 鬼 A devil. L. 25.
4. *So*$^3$ *i*$^3$ 所 以 Therefore. L. 18.
5. *T'eo*$^2$ *fah* 頭 髮 Hair of the human head. L. 22.
6. *Hai*$^4$ *p'a*$^4$ *liao*$^3$ 害 怕 了 Were afraid.
7. *Puh kan*$^3$ 不 敢 Did not dare to.
8. *Lai*$^2$ *uang*$^3$ 來 往 To have intercourse with.
9. *Tsao*$^4$ *iao*$^2$*-ien*$^2$ 造 謠 言 To circulate evil reports. L. 29.
10. *Ua*$^1$ *ien*$^3$ 挖 眼 To dig out the eyes. L. 22.
11. *Ch'ien*$^1$ *li*$^3$ *ching*$^4$ 千 里 鏡 A telescope.
12. *Ioh*$^4$ 藥 Medicine. V. 3.
13. *Ch'uh men* 出 門 To travel. L. 17.
14. *Ch'uan*$^2$ *chiao*$^4$ 傳 教 To propagate religion.
15. *Tsu*$^1$ 租 To rent. L. 26. 15*a*. *Fang-tsï* 房$^2$ 子 A house. L. 11.
16. *Lin*$^2$ *chü*$^1$ 鄰 居 Neighbours. V. 6.
17. *Shoh* 說 here=To blame; to find fault with.
18. *Rïh*$^4$ *chiu*$^3$ *chien*$^4$ *ren*$^2$ *hsin*$^1$ 日 久 見 人 心 In the course of time men's motives may be seen.
19. *Shuh fan* 熟 飯 Cooked rice. L. 21.
20. *K'uei*$^1$ *fu*$^4$ *ren*$^2$ 虧 負 人 To take advantage of, or defraud others.
21. *Chiang li* 講 理 Spoke reason; i.e., were reasonable.
22. *Tao*$^4$ *ch'u*$^4$ 到 處 Everywhere. L. 29.

子給他們住的。那時有一個姓戴的、叫[1]戴德生、住在[2]浙江省[3]杭州府、天天在城裏城外傳教、[4]治病、人很[5]和氣、滿心愛人、信他的人就不少、得空他們到他家裏去、[6]一面聽他傳教、一面問他外國是甚麼樣的地方、有山沒有、有[7]月亮、有[8]太陽、有海、有河沒有、他就把外國事情、[9]風俗、都說給他們聽。有一天、有一個人來說、現在先生有空沒有、戴先生說有空、請坐、那人說、我來問一兩件事、不知道可以問得麼、先生說可以問得、那人說、前天我騎馬、騎到山那邊去、有一個做買賣的說、在外國人會說話、但馬、狗、雞、驢子、都不會叫、我就說、沒有這話。也有富有錢店的老板說、外國人生的時候、算一百歲、後來一年少算一年。有個抬轎的說、外國那邊金、銀、銅、鐵、都有、也多得很、他也說、那邊出木頭、出鹽、出鐵、出針、出得也好。還有個年老的女人、在那裏做針綫、說他的大兒子告訴他說、外國

---

[1] *Tai Teh-seng* 戴德生 the Rev. J. Hudson Taylor, founder of the China Inland Mission.

[2] *Cheh$^4$-chiang$^3$ seng$^3$* 浙江省 The province of Chehkiang.

[3] *Hang$^3$ cheo$^1$ Fu$^3$* 杭州府 Hangchow, the provincial capital of Chehkiang.

[4] *Chi$^4$ ping$^4$* 治病 Treated diseases. V. 3.

[5] *Ho$^2$-ch'i$^4$* 和氣 Friendly; affable.

[6] *Ih-mien ih-mien* 一面一面 On the one hand and on the other hand.

[7] *Üeh-liang$^4$* 月亮 The moon. V. 4.

[8] *T'ai$^4$-iang$^2$* 太陽 The sun. V. 4.

[9] *Feng$^1$-suh* 風俗 Customs; usages. L. 22.

城裏滿[1]街是人、滿處是有錢的人、都是富的、沒有窮的、人也都乾淨、一點也不髒、街上也很乾淨、人天天洗手、洗脚。他也說、官都戴小帽子、穿黑衣裳、不坐轎子、都坐馬車、帶兩三個人。他也說、那些馬車走得很快、抬轎的就說、這樣那邊抬轎的可憐、沒有飯吃、都要餓[2]死。我們在那裏正說話的時候、有個打鐵的來說、他到過外國纔回來、不過他沒說到了那一國、光說、外國木頭、板、都貴、樣樣東西也貴、買壺、買鐘、沒[3]有不貴的、也說、六七月間天乾。他的話還沒有說完、就來了一個姓封的、說、是我哥哥打發他來、請我快快騎回去見他、我就沒有工夫聽他們多說。他們說的那些話不曉得是眞的、是假的呢。戴先生說、一小半是眞的、一大半是假的、請先生再來可以再[4]說罷。我現在沒有工夫細講。[5]改日再見。

---

[1] *Man kiai* 滿街 The whole street was full of. So below *man ch'u* 滿處 Every place was full of.

[2] *O⁴-si³* 餓死 To die of hunger; to be very hungry. V. 5.

[3] *Muh iu puh kuei tih* 沒有不貴的 Nothing that was not dear—everything was dear. Chinese abounds in negative ways of putting things.

[4] *Tsai-shoh* 再說 To talk again. A common phrase for postponing any business.

[5] *Kai³ rih tsai⁴ chien⁴* 改日再見 We will meet some other day.

## REVIEW: LESSONS VI-X. 二第課考

1. In what order do the Chinese speak of the different divisions of time? Give two examples.

Which periods of time require the N. A. and which omit it?

Give four examples of 的 forming Relative Clauses.

Illustrate in three sentences the difference in meaning and use between 把 and 給.

What characters indicate the addition of something extra? Give three examples.

What is the difference in the interrogative use of 幾 and 多少?

What difference is observed in asking the age of adults and children?

How does 貴姓 differ in use from 他姓甚麼?

Give the words used to express the Comparative and Superlative Degrees, and illustrate their use in six sentences.

How is the character of an action expressed? Give two examples

Give in three sentences the different meanings of 用.

Give two sentences shewing the usage of 會.

State the different kinds of Chinese currency, and give illustrations of the use of each kind.

Give two sentences shewing the different usages of 借, and two sentences shewing the different usages of 找.

Shew the difference between the use of 都 and 攏總 in four sentences.

Give two examples of the use of 各.

Illustrate in four sentences the use of 的 to denote an agent.

Give four sentences shewing as many uses of 樣.

What is the difference in usage between 麼 and 呢?

Translate Reading Lessons VIII and X.

**2.** Give sound, meaning and tone to the following characters :—

海 邊 喝 銅 換 髒 綫 雞 富 掛 補 强 盆 眞 賣 買 黑 歲 戴 聖 高 濕 寬 慢 動 刻 秋 季 挑 快.

**3.** Correct, if necessary, the following, and give the reason for correction :—

一年有四個季。今年十二月初十三。三鐘點半。這是他東西買的。幾個中國句話。給我兩條手巾買。我不要再甚麼。他不還我那些個錢爲甚麼。他有多少個兒子。貴姓、我的姓張。這個一點好、那個得很好。你聽了錯。那個話他錯說了。他寫字用筆。把那

大頂帽子回拿來了。一塊二錢錢。二兩二角洋錢。五塊錢三角。錢換一千三吊。他會算算盤。三錢二角銀子。一萬個兩銀子。兩個字歲。都人在這裏。這都魚攏總是我的。我有三錢票。他們是肉買的。要做這樣。

**4.** Write in Chinese character:—God loves men. This man is competent to change money. He has gone out; he is not at home at present. Tell him to come back quickly. Get up; I want to return. He has all kinds of things. Male and female, old and young, are all willing to go. I lent him 20 tael cents. Every family has money. Two cash less than 100. Last month I had all sorts of things. He made a mistake in the reckoning. Give him 3,000 cash less. He buys things with money. Male and female come every day.

# 英華合璧卷貳

## 進益

# MANDARIN PRIMER

## PART II

## ADVANCED

## Lesson XI. 課一十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 比$^{3}$ | *pi* | To compare; to compare with. Than. |
| 及$^{2}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ih* | To reach to; to come up to. And. |
| 至$^{4}$ | *chï* | To reach. Very. |
| 如$^{2}$ | *ru* | Like; as. Equal to. |
| 嘴$^{3}$ | *ts* } *ui*<br>*ei* | The mouth; the lips. |
| 同$^{2}$ | *t'ong* | Together. The same as. All. And. |
| 泡$^{2,4}$ | *p'ao* | To soak; to infuse. A blister. |
| 擺$^{3}$ | *pai* | To place; to put; to spread out. |
| 越$^{4}$ | *üeh* | Sign of comparative; to exceed. |
| 和$^{2}$ | *ho* | With; and. Peace. |
| 罪$^{4}$ | *ts* } *ui*<br>*ei* | Sin; crime. Suffering; retribution. |
| 倍$^{4}$ | *pei* | Added to numerals = "fold;" "times." |
| 着$^{2}$ | *choh* | An auxiliary verb. A move at chess. |
| 像$^{4}$ | *hs*<br>*s*<br>*ch'* } *iang* | Like; similar. Resemblance. |
| 蓋$^{4}$ | *kai* | To cover. A cover. To build. |
| 住$^{4}$ | *chu* | To dwell; to stop. An auxiliary verb. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 屋$^{1}$ | *uh*$^{20}$ | A room; a house. |
| 似$^{1}$ | *sï* | Resembling; like. |
| 道$^{1}$ | *tao* | A road; a way; a principle; a doctrine. To speak. |
| 理$^{3}$ | *li* | Reason; principle; to regard. |
| 布$^{4}$ | *pu* | Calico; cotton cloth. |
| 好$^{3}$ 比$^{3}$ | *hao-pi* | As if; for example... |
| 好$^{3}$ 像$^{4}$ | *hao-hsiang* | Like; as if. |
| 房$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *fang-tsï*$^{20}$ | A house; a room. |
| 謝$^{4}$ 謝$^{4}$ | *hsie-hsie* | Thanks. |
| 道$^{4}$ 理$^{3}$ | *tao-li* | Doctrine; what is right. |
| 比$^{3}$ 方$^{1}$ | *pi-fang* | A comparison; an illustration; a parable. For instance. |
| 比$^{3}$ 不$^{1}$ 上$^{4}$ | *pi-puh-shang* | Inferior. |
| 趕$^{3}$ 不$^{1}$ 上$^{4}$ | *kan-puh-shang* | Not equal to; unable to overtake. |
| 讚$^{4}$ 美$^{3}$ 詩$^{1}$ | *tsan-mei-shï*$^{33.12.}$ | A hymn. |

### Comparison—Degrees of.

1. Persons or things may be compared in three degrees, viz., *a.* Inequality; *b.* Equality; *c.* Superiority; as, This is not so large as that; This is as large as that; This is larger than that. These degrees are expressed in Chinese as follows:—

*a. Inequality.*—The commonest forms used in this construction are 沒有 *muh iu*, 不如 *puh ru*, 不及 *puh chih*, 比不上 *pi puh shang* or 比不得 *pi puh teh*, and 趕不上 *kan puh shang*; the latter from 趕$^{3}$ *kan* To follow; to drive.

---

忙人無智 *Hurried men lack wisdom.*

This is not so good as that; *chœ-ko muh iu na-ko hao* 這個沒有那個好.

My cake is not so large as yours; *o-tih ping-tsï puh ru ni-tih ping-tsï ta* 我的餅子不如你的餅子大.

This piece of land is not so good as that piece; *chœ-k‘uai ti pi* (or *kan*) *puh shang na-k‘uai ti hao* 這塊地比 (or 趕) 不上那塊地好.

The false is not equal to the true; *chia-tih pi puh teh chen-tih* 假的比不得真的.

This pot is not equal to that pot; *chœ-pa hu puh chih na-pa hu* 這把壺不及那把壺.

It should be noticed that the last sentence has no word to indicate the point in which the inequality consists, as 及 *chih* rarely takes an adjective.

*b. Equality.*—This is expressed by 有 *iu*, 如 *ru*, 同 *t‘ong* or 和 *ho*, 像 *hsiang* or *hao-hsiang* 好像, followed by the object to be compared and 一樣 *ih-iang*; *e.g.*,

He has as much money as I; *t‘a iu o-tih ch‘ien to* 他有我的錢多.

This door is as high as that one; *chœ-ko men iu na-ko men kao* 這個門有那個門高.

This basin is the same as that one; *chœ-ko uan t‘ong na-ko uan ih-iang* 這個碗同那個碗一樣.

You speak like a Chinese; *ni shoh-hua ho Chong-kueh-ren ih-iang* 你說話和中國人一樣.

His heart is as deep as the sea; *t‘a-tih hsin shen ru hai* 他的心深如海.

Just like him; *hsiang* (or *hao hsiang*) *t‘a ih-iang* 像 (or 好像) 他一樣.

The negative form of this construction is used to indicate difference; *e.g.*,

This hill is different from that one; *chœ-tso shan ho na-tso shan puh ih iang* 這座山和那座山不一樣.

He rides differently from you; *t‘a ch‘i ma ho ni liang-iang* 他騎馬和你兩樣.

Northern Mandarin prefers 和 *ho* to 同 *t‘ong* in this construction.

*c. Superiority.*—In Lesson VIII, Section 1 些 *hsie* and 很 *hen* or 頂 *ting* were said to form the simple Comparative and Superlative degrees. The extent or measure of superiority is denoted by 點 *tien*, 些 *hsie*, 更 *keng*, 倍 *pei* and 得多 *teh-to*; *e.g.*,

This is a little dearer than that; *chœ-ko pi na-ko kuei ih-tien* 這個比那個貴一點.

This cart is much larger than that one; *chœ-liang ch‘œ pi na-liang ch‘œ keng ta* 這輛車比那輛車更大.

This is three times as heavy as that; *chœ-ko pi na-ko chong san pei* 這個比那個重三倍.

His "Mandarin" is very much better than yours; *t'a-tih kuan-hua pi ni-tih hao teh-to liao* 他的官話比你的好得多了.

Twice as good; *hao teh liang pei* 好得兩倍.

Different degrees of the same thing, especially Time, Dimension and Quantity, are often compared by repetition; in this idiom 似 *sï* is largely used in many districts and follows the adjective; *e.g.*,

Worse every year; *ih nien puh ru ih nien* 一年不如一年.

Better every day; *ih t'ien hao sï ih t'ien* 一天好似一天.

Hotter every month; *ih-ko üeh reh ih-ko üeh* 一個月熱一個月.

This water is deeper than that; *chœ-ko shui shen chih na-ko shui* 這個水深及那個水.

### Comparison denoted by *chœ-mo* 這麽 and *na-mo* 那麽.

2. In Lesson X, Section 6, both 這麽 *chœ-mo* and 那麽 *na-mo* were defined as indicating mode, or manner. They also denote comparison when some standard of comparison is either expressed or understood, and are the equivalents of the English "As . . . as this"; "As . . . as that"; *e.g.*,

Vegetables are not so dear as this; *ts'ai muh iu chœ-mo kuei* 菜沒有這麽貴.

The water is not so deep as that; *shui muh iu na-mo shen* 水沒有那麽深.

I want it so large; *o iao chœ-mo ta* 我要這麽大.

The above may be turned into adjectival phrases by the addition of 的 *tih*; *e.g.*,

A child of this size; *chœ-mo ta-tih hai-tsï* 這麽大的孩子.

A house as high as that; *na-mo kao-tih fang-tsï* 那麽高的房子.

### Double Comparative: how formed.

3. A double comparative is formed by 越 *üeh*, followed by an adjective and then repeated; *e.g.*,

The more disciples the better; *men-t'u üeh to üeh hao* 門徒越多越好.

The larger the worse; *üeh ta üeh puh hao* 越大越不好.

### Superlative Degree: Forms used for.

4. Some forms of the Superlative are used in certain connections, but usage forbids their use in others. Practice and observation alone can give proficiency in this matter, and shew where to use one form and where to use another; but the following examples may indicate some of the differences in usage. *Chï* 至 for instance, is largely used as an intensive with adjectives of time and quantity.

*Hen* 很 may be used before the auxiliaries 有 *iu* and 要 *iao*, as well as before most verbs, and also before adjectives and negatives. *Sï* 死 is commonly employed in speaking of such things as are not very pleasant, and roughly corresponds to a similar usage in colloquial English; as, "Dead tired;" "Worried to death;" etc. The expression 再 沒 有 比 *tsai muh iu pi* denotes something incomparably good or bad, etc.; *e.g.*,

He wants 40 cash at the very least; *t'a chi shao iao sï-shïh-ko ch'ien* 他至少要四十個錢.

He is only twenty years old at the most; *t'a chï to rï-shïh sui* 他至多二十歲.

He is very good at riding; *t'a hen huei ch'i ma* 他很會騎馬.

That person is very particular about his self-respect; *na-ko ren hen iao lien* 那個人很要臉.

They are very wealthy; *t'a-men hen iu ch'ien* 他們很有錢.

It is very inadvisable to manage in this way; *chœ-iang pan sï hen puh k'o-i* 這樣辦事很不可以.

I am bitterly cold to-day; *o chin-t'ien leng sï liao* 我今天冷死了.

There is nothing larger than this; *tsai muh iu pi chœ-ko ta* 再沒有比這個大.

### *Choh* 着: Its Use and Force.

5. Owing to the absence of any conjugation of the verb, it is difficult to express participial forms. *Choh* 着 as an auxiliary, in some connections denotes continued action, and so approximates to the present participle. It is used frequently with monosyllabic verbs, and is heard more frequently in some districts than in others. *Hai* 還 is also frequently used to indicate that an action is still going on; *e.g.*,

They two were sitting at the door talking; *t'a-men liang-ko tsai men-k'eo tso-choh shoh-hua* 他們兩個在門口坐着說話.

He was sitting listening; *t'a tso-choh t'ing-choh* 他坐着聽着.

He came on horseback; *t'a ch'i-choh ma lai* 他騎着馬來.

He simply depends on his father for a living; *t'a kuang k'ao-choh fu-ch'in ch'ïh-fan* 他光靠着父親吃飯.

He is still waiting there; *t'a hai tsai-na-li teng-choh* 他還在那裏等着.

*Choh* 着 also follows both 不 *puh* and 得 *teh* in the Potential Mood (see Lesson III) in certain connections, where it 'fits' better than any other word; *e.g.*,

I cannot use it; *o iong puh choh* 我用不着.

Just opposite the door; *cheng tui-choh men* 正對着門.

I have found it; *chao-choh liao* 找着了.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十一課雜句

這個和那個不一樣

這個比那個更要緊

有這麽大的沒有

說話越慢越好

你和他可以去

秋天, 一天冷一天

我沒有那麽多的錢

我明天有空

他至少要兩塊錢

他還在那裏寫字

人人都要死

救主釘死在十字架上

## NOTES.

NOTES.—*a*. In the North 屋 *uh* is a room and 房子 *fang-tsï* a house; but this is reversed in the South, where 子 *tsï* is often omitted after *fang* 房.

[*See Lesson XXVIII.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

This is not the same as that; *chæ-ko ho na-ko puh ih iang.*
This is much more important than that; *chæ-ko pi na-ko keng iao-chin.*
Have you any as large as this? *iu chæ-mo ta tih muh iu?*
The slower you speak the better; *shoh-hua üeh man üeh hao.*
You and he may go; *ni ho t'a k'o-i ch'ü.*
In the autumn it gets colder every day; *ch'iu-t'ien, ih t'ien leng ih t'ien.*
I haven't as much money as that; *o muh iu na-mo to tih ch'ien.*
I shall have leisure to-morrow; *o ming-t'ien iu k'ong.*
He will want $2.00 at least; *t'a chï shao iao liang-k'uai ch'ien.*
He is still there writing; *t'a hai tsai-na-li hsie-tsï.*
All men must die; *ren ren tu iao sï.*
The Saviour was crucified on the cross: *Chiu-chu ting si tsai shih-tsï-chia shang.*

*Translate*:—The house that Mr. Feng lives in, is not so good as the house Mr. Chang lives in; Mr. Chang's house is three times as good. Whom was it built by? It was built by a man named 馬. Make three cups of tea and put bread and cakes on the table; when you have done that you had better light the lamp, and go to the woman who lives outside the city, and tell her to come to-morrow morning to do needlework. Hang up this garment; (if) you put it here it will get dirty. A boy of that size is not able to write! he is not equal to a girl of six years old. It is not so good to drink hot water as it is to drink tea. For instance, there are two men, one rich, one poor; the rich has wealth, the poor has none; everybody says, The poor is not equal to the rich. This cloth is three times as good as that; the cloth he bought yesterday is much wider than the cloth you bought; it is the same as this. This empty box is as large as the one you made; a box full of money is heavier than this box. Who gave her the hat she is now wearing? How much did it cost? It was not so dear as the one you are wearing. To buy a large pig will cost at least more than two ingots of silver. I will give him at the most 10,000 odd cash. I do not believe in the principles he preached. How many sedan chairs do you want? I want three; tell the chair bearers to bring them along at once, and not wait half a day. I will go with you. What doctrine is he preaching? He says that everybody has sin, but that the Saviour died on the cross. He also said that God has opened the gate of heaven for us, and now invites both foreigners and Chinese to go in. God is love.

Writing exercise:—看 聽 到 上 做 先 個 子 R. 39 見 R. 147.

## READING LESSON XI. 輯要第十一

---

### Ancient and Modern.

### 世道變換

一年有四季、就是春、夏、秋、冬、這四季不能都一樣、夏天比冬天熱得好幾倍、但是把這兩季比起來、不[1]當說、一季好、一季不好、也不當說、夏天不及冬天、冬天比夏天更好、[2]沒有這個理、各季有各季的[3]天氣、就是了。人也是一樣、年紀老的、不當說年紀少的不及他們、若[4]往細處說、老年人的[5]力氣、趕不上少年人的力氣大。就是說[6]世事也是一理、有人說古時候好、[7]如今的[8]世代不好、這也不一定。比方一個人沒有錢、常常[9]生病、住的房子又不好、也沒有甚麼朋友、少吃少穿、他[10]一定要說[11]現今不如古時好、但人有錢、[12]不愁吃、不愁穿、事情都[13]順、有[14]妻子、

---

1. *Tang*$^1$ 當 Ought; should. L. 17.
2. *Muh iu chæ-ko li* 沒有這個理 No such principle; nothing of the kind.
3. *T'ien-ch'i* 天氣 Weather.
4. *Uang hsi-ch'u shoh* 往細處說 To go into detail. L. 14.
5. *Lih*$^4$*-ch'i*$^4$ 力氣 Strength; vigour.
6. *Shï*$^4$ *sï*$^4$ 世事 The affairs of the world; ordinary matters.
7. *Ru*$^2$*-chin*$^1$ 如今 The present time; now. L. 24.
8. *Shï*$^4$*-tai*$^4$ 世代 Generation; the times.
9. *Seng*$^1$ *ping*$^4$ 生病 To fall sick; to be ill.
10. *Ih-ting*$^4$ 一定 Certainly; surely. So with *ting* 定 alone, below.
11. *Hsien*$^4$*-chin*$^1$ 現今 Now-a-days. L. 24.
12. *Puh ts'eo*$^2$ *ch'ïh*; *puh ts'eo*$^2$ *ch'uan*$^1$ 不愁吃不愁穿 Not anxious about food and clothing.
13. *Shuen*$^4$ 順 Favourable; prosperous. L. 12.
14. *Ch'ï*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ 妻子 A wife. V. 4.

有兒女[1]、樣樣都如意[2]、他定要說、還是今時好。比方一個十幾歲的孩子穿衣裳、他身體不過這麼大、衣裳也不過是這麼大、若把他的衣裳給四五十歲的人穿、他自然[3]穿不上、不是衣裳不好、是他的身子大。論[4]古今也是一理。但天[5]下的人都有一樣的毛[6]病、就是長[7]大了、年紀老了、總[8]說、早年比現在大不同、現在沒有早年好。比方說、他媳[9]婦知道他愛吃魚、就上街去找賣魚的、找着了就買幾兩魚來家、慢慢的煎[10]、煎好了、又做些菜、擺在盤子上拿來給他吃、他吃了、就說哎[11]呀、現在的魚比不上我早年吃的那魚、早年的魚有滋[12]味、很好吃、這個魚一[13]點滋味都沒有。他那些話不是說錯了麼、媳婦買來的魚很新[14]鮮、沒有比他再新鮮的、煎的也好、但老人家因年紀老了、口[15]味變[16]了、就嘗[17]不出

---

1. *Ri$^{2}$-nü$^{3}$* 兒女 Children; sons and daughters.
2. *Ru$^{2}$-i$^{4}$* 如意 According to one's wishes.
3. ***Tsi$^{4}$-ran$^{2}$*** 自然 As a matter of course; naturally. L. 27.
4. ***Luen$^{4}$** ku$^{3}$ chin$^{1}$* 論古今 To discuss past and present. L. 13.
5. *T'ien-hsia* 天下 The world; the Empire; everywhere. L. 15.
6. *Mao$^{2}$-ping$^{4}$* 毛病 A fault; a defect. In the South used for disease
7. *Chang ta liao* 長大了 To be grown up.
8. *Tsong$^{3}$-shoh* 總說 Are sure to say. L. 28.
9. *Hsih$^{2}$-fu$^{4}$* 媳婦 A daughter-in-law; a wife. V. 5.
10. *Chien$^{1}$* 煎 To fry.
11. *Ai$^{1}$-ia$^{4}$* 哎呀 Alas! Oh dear! L. 19.
12. *Tsi$^{1}$-uei$^{4}$* 滋味 Flavour; taste.
13. *Ih-tien* 一點 A little.
14. *Hsin$^{1}$-hsien$^{1}$* 新鮮 Fresh, as fruit, meat, etc.
15. *K'eo$^{3}$-uei$^{4}$* 口味 Sense of taste; flavour.
16. *Pien$^{4}$ liao$^{3}$* 變了 Had changed—for the worse. L. 28.
17. *Ch'ang$^{2}$* 嘗 To taste. L. 22.

味來、是人不新鮮不是魚不新鮮、魚是和他早年吃的那魚一樣、一點兩樣沒有。再說人常說現今不如古時、他怎麽知道呢、天下很大、人的[1]見識[2]有限、念的書也不多、能記得的事也少、若知道古時天下攏總的事、也能拿來和現在天下的事比起來、我心裏想、他就不說、現在不如從前了。比方說、人生在[3]元朝的時候、必說古時[4]宋朝好、現在不好、但那時、說的元朝現今早成爲古時的元朝了。就是現在的[5]清朝、人說趕不上古時好、再過一二百年、人都要說還是古時的清朝好。[6]在我看、光有一個東西古今是一樣、那是甚麽東西呢、不是人的心麽、人人心裏都有罪、所以上帝打發救主來給　[7]贖罪。在[8]江蘇省[9]揚州府、有個八十幾歲的老年人、姓萬、叫萬古心、住在老城城東、他有四個兒子、三個在家裏、一個在外頭做買賣、有的時候他們都在家裏、他就對他們說、現在比不得

---

1. *Chien-shïh* 見識 Experience.
2. *Iu-hsien*⁴ 有限 Is limited.
3. *Üen*² *ch'ao*² 元朝 The Yüan Dynasty, 1260-1341 A.D.
4. *Song*⁴ *ch'ao*² 宋朝 The Song Dynasty, 960-1126 A.D.
5. *Ch'ing*¹-*ch'ao*² 淸朝 The Pure Dynasty; began 1583, ended 1912.
6. *Tsai o k'an* 在我看 As I see it; from my point of view.
7. *Shuh*²-*tsui*⁴ 贖罪 To redeem from sin. L. 17.
8. *Chiang*¹-*su*¹ *seng*³ 江蘇省 The province of Kiangsu.
9. *Iang*² *cheo*¹ *Fu*³ 揚州府 The prefectural city of Yangchow.

從前、我年輕的時候樣樣事都好得幾千倍。兒子就問他、甚麼事不如從前、他就說、道光年間換銀子一兩多換幾百錢、買東西沒有現在這麼貴、那時候人穿的衣裳、戴的帽子、也是兩樣、用的東西比現在用的更好、人蓋房子辦事、也不同、人早晨起來也起得早些、現在少年人要吃魚、吃肉、吃各樣的菜、像有錢的人一樣、不像早年間多吃飯少吃菜。小兒子說這話我也不很信、他們沒有錢買不起、怎麼能吃好的呢、這是[1]一定的道理。又說、那時念書的人少、現在我們比他們還好。父親就說、你年紀還輕、不懂事、沒有這個道理、他們肯穿粗布衣裳、至多三年買兩三件、一個月也用不了幾個錢。大兒子就說、從前到過外國的中國人少、海那邊來的東西也不多、那時候和這時候大不同、有的事像一點、有的事一點不像、現在有這些好東西、爲甚麼不可用呢。小兒子說、這個話[2]說的是、[3]很有理、這也是我的意思。老年人說、你們這些少年人不信我的話、我可以不再說、就是了。就站起來要去睡覺。

---

1. *Ih-ting tih tao-li* 一定的道理 A moral certainty.
2. *Shoh tih shi* 說的是 Said the truth; went to the point.
3. *Hen iu li* 很有理 Is very reasonable.

## LESSON XII. 課 二 十 第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 東$^{1}$ | *tong* | East; eastern. A master. |
| 南$^{2}$ | *nan* | The south. |
| 西$^{1}$ | *$\left.\begin{array}{l}hs\\s\end{array}\right\}i$* | The west; western. |
| 北$^{3}$ | *$p\left\{\begin{array}{l}eh\\ei\end{array}\right.$* | The North. |
| 里$^{3}$ | *li* | About $\frac{1}{3}$ of English mile. A lane; a street. |
| 直$^{2}$ | *chĭh* | Straight; straightforward; upright. |
| 行$^{2}$ | *hsing* | To do; to act. Read *hang*$^{2}$. A trade; business. A row, as trees, etc. |
| 往$^{3}$ | *uang* | To go towards. Formerly; past. |
| 離$^{2}$ | *li* | Distant from. To leave. |
| 差$^{1}$ | *ch‘a* | To differ. A discrepancy. Read *ch‘ai*$^{1}$. To send. |
| 船$^{2}$ | *ch‘uan*$^{9.14}$ | A boat; a ship. |
| 從$^{2}$ | *ts‘ong* | From; by. To follow. |
| 江$^{1}$ | *$\left.\begin{array}{l}ch\\k\end{array}\right\}iang$*$^{27}$ | A large river. |
| 裝$^{1}$ | *chuang* | To load; to pack; To pretend. |
| 遠$^{3}$ | *üen* | Distant; remote. |
| 能$^{2}$ | *neng* | Can; able; ability. |
| 近$^{1}$ | *$\left.\begin{array}{l}ch\\k\end{array}\right\}in$* | Near; recent. |
| 輪$^{2}$ | *luen*$^{1}$ | To revolve; a wheel. |
| 李$^{3}$ | *li*$^{1}$ | Plums. Baggage. |
| 鋪$^{1}$ | *p‘u* | To spread out; to arrange. |
| 火$^{3}$ | *$h\left\{\begin{array}{l}o\\uo\end{array}\right.$* | Fire; flame. |
| 僱$^{1}$ | *ku* | To hire; to engage. |
| 經$^{1}$ | *$\left.\begin{array}{l}ch\\k\end{array}\right\}ing$* | Classic books. To pass through. Already. |
| 順$^{1}$ | *shuen* | Favourable; prosperous. |
| 客$^{4}$ | *k‘eh* | A visitor. A traveller. A customer. |
| 風$^{1}$ | *feng* | Wind. Usage. |
| 颳$^{1}$ | *kuah* | To blow, as wind. |
| 收$^{1}$ | *sheo* | To receive; to gather together. |
| 拾$^{2}$ | *shĭh* | To pick up. Ten. |
| 行$^{2}$ 李$^{3}$ | *hsing-li* | Baggage; luggage. |
| 收$^{1}$ 拾$^{2}$ | *sheo-shĭh* | To gather together; to collect. To repair. |
| 鋪$^{1}$ 蓋$^{4}$ | *p‘u-kai* | Bedding. |

### Direction: how indicated.

1. Direction is spoken of in Chinese as in English in its relation to the points of the compass, but with the difference that intermediate positions, i.e., positions not directly N. and S. are referred to in reverse order, as E. N. for N. E., W. N. for N. W., etc. In speaking of the points of the compass the Chinese usually begin with the East and end with the North, the North being inauspicious; *e.g.*, *tong* 東 *hsi*

---

一路平安 *May all your journey be in peace!*

西 *nan* 南 *peh* 北. Chinese idiom moreover, usually adds 邊 *pien*; the South being spoken of as the South-side; etc.

In the north; *tsai peh pien* 在 北 邊.
In the south-west; *tsai hsi-nan pien* 在 西 南 邊.
Northerners are straightforward; *peh-pien-tih ren chïh* 北 邊 的 人 直.

Direction in relation to an action is indicated by 往 *uang* "To go toward;" *e.g.*,

Where is he going? *t‘a uang na-li ch‘ü?* 他 往 那 裏 去.
He is going to the North; *t‘a uang peh tseo* 他 往 北 走.
Go to the South; *uang nan tseo* 往 南 走.

### Distance: Terms relating to.

**2.** Distance is measured in China by 里 *li*, but idiom calls for the word 'road,' which in English is not expressed. For instance, when we speak of "So many miles," the word (of) "road" is understood, but in Chinese 路 *lu* or 地 *ti* is added, 地 *ti* being commonly used in the North and 路 *lu* in the South.

When distance is spoken of in more general terms, 遠 *üen* is used; either 幾 *chi* or 多 *to* being prefixed according as the distance is regarded as greater or less. This idiom commonly prefers 有 *iu*, though it may be omitted; *e.g.*,

How far? *iu to* (or *chi*) *üen?* 有 多 (or 幾) 遠.
Not far; *muh iu to* (or *chi*) *üen* 沒 有 多 (or 幾) 遠.
Not far from here; *li chœ-li puh üen* 離 這 裏 不 遠.
Shanghai is fifty *li* from here; *Shang-hai li chœ-li iu u-shïh li lu* (or *ti*) 上 海 離 這 裏 有 五 十 里 路 (or 地.)
How far is T‘ai-p‘ing from there? *T‘ai-p‘ing li na-li iu to* (or *chi*) *üen?* 太 平 離 那 裏 有 多 (or 幾) 遠.
*Nan-kuan* is more than ten *li* distant; *Nan-kuan li chœ-li iu shïh li to lu* (or *ti*) 南 關 離 這 裏 有 十 里 多 路 (or 地.)

### How to Ask the Way to a Place.

**3.** In asking the way to a place it is advisable to use 請 問 *ch‘ing-uen* 'May I ask,' or some other polite expression; to omit it may mean being set on the wrong road. The following expressions are used in this connection:—

Is this the way to Tong-ch‘eng? *shang Tong-ch‘eng shï ts‘ong* (or *ta*) *chœ-li tseo mo?* 上 東 城 是 從 (or 打) 這 裏 走 麼.
Yes, it is the way; *shï ts‘ong* (or *ta*) *chœ-li tseo* 是 從 (or 打) 這 裏 走.
Do you go by way of Chiang-k‘eo to San-shui? *shang San-shui shï ts‘ong* (or *ta*) *Chiang-k‘eo tseo mo?* 上三水是從 (or 打) 江口走麼.
Is this the right road to Li-chia Tien? *shang Li-chia-tien shï lu* (or *shï chœ-t‘iao lu*) *mo?* 上 李 家 店 是 路 (or 是 這 條 路) 麼

Straight on; *ih-chĭh tseo* 一直走.

This is the nearest way; *tseo chæ-li chin* 走這裏近.

In going to T‘ai-p‘ing do not go to the N., go to the Southwest; *Shang T‘ai-p‘ing puh iao uang peh tseo iao uang hsi-nan tseo* 上太平不要往北走要往西南走.

It should be noted that the reply to the first question was in the same terms as the question itself. This is very common, and it is a great help to imitate this way of speaking as much as possible, since part of the needed vocabulary is thus provided.

*Ching* 經 or 過 *ko* is used in speaking of passing through one place on the way to another; as,

I passed through Shanghai on my way to Kiukiang; *o shang Chiu-chiang ts‘ong Shang-hai ko* (or *ching-ko*) 我上九江從上海過 (or 經過.)

He passed through Shih-li P‘u; *t‘a ts‘ong Shĭh-li-p‘u lu ko* 他從十里舖路過.

## *Kan* 趕 as indicating Time.

In Lesson XI. Section I., 趕 *kan* was defined as meaning "To follow." As used in the North when applied to time, it denotes, "By the time; at the time; when." Compare English, "The following day." *Teng* 等 is used in the same sense, but more freely in the South than in the North; *e.g.*,

We shall be there by to-morrow; *o-men kan ming-t‘ien tao* 我們趕明天到.

He cannot get there by the 9th; *kan ts‘u-chiu t‘a tao puh-liao* 趕初九他到不了.

He had been gone some time when I arrived; *kan o tao tih shï-heo t‘a tsao-i tseo liao* 趕我到的時候他早已走了.

## Travel by Rail and Steamer.

4. Chinese lends itself very readily to coining new terms and phrases. This is owing to the genius of the language which allows one noun to act as an adjective and modify or define the meaning of the principal one. The same idiom obtains in English, only to a more limited extent, as in such combinations as ‘house-maid’; ‘tea-pot’; etc. The introduction of Western inventions and sciences has caused large numbers of such terms to be coined: in this Lesson we shall confine ourselves to some of them used in connection with railways and steamers:—

Railways; *t‘ieh-lu* 鐵路.

Trains; cars; *ho* (or *ho luen*) *ch‘œ* 火 (or 火輪) 車.

Railway station; *ch‘œ* (or *ho-ch‘œ*) *chan* 車 (or 火車) 站.

1st, 2nd and 3rd class; *t‘eo-teng; rï-teng; san-teng* 頭等, 二等, 三等.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十二課雜句

這個行不行

他能說不能行

他裝做好人

把這個蓋上

他的事很順

差二分錢

我明天請客,你能來不能來

我不上那裏去

這個東西不直

他從家裏纔來

順風順水

擺棹子,擺(開)飯

## NOTES.

To board the train; *shang-ch‘œ* 上 車.
To get out of the train; *hsia-ch‘œ* 下 車.
To travel by rail; *tso ho-ch‘œ* 坐 火 車.
To start; *k‘ai ch‘œ* 開 車.
Locomotive; *ho-ch‘œ t‘eo* 火 車 頭.
Steamer; *ho-luen ch‘uan* 火 輪 船.
To travel by steamer; *tso ho-luen ch‘uan* 坐 火 輪 船.
To embark; *shang-ch‘uan* 上 船.
To disembark; *hsia-ch‘uan* 下 船.
To set sail; *k‘ai ch‘uan* 開 船.

### Capacity to Contain: how expressed.

**5.** The words ‘contain’, ‘hold’, are in English applied indiscriminately to everything that has capacity to contain. For instance, a hall ‘holds’, or ‘seats’, so many people; a cup ‘holds’ so much water; etc. In contrast to this, Chinese idiom demands a special verb, according to the nature of the things spoken of; the verbs 坐 *tso* and 裝 *chuang* are of this class, and take 下 *hsia* or 了 *liao* as auxiliaries; *e.g.*,

One box will not hold all; *ih-k‘eo hsiang-tsï chuang puh liao* (or *hsia*) 一 口 箱 子 裝 不 了 (or 下).

That house will hold ninety people; *na-ko fang-tsï tso teh-hsia chiu-shïh-ko ren* 那 個 房 子 坐 得 下 九 十 個 人.

It will not hold fifty; *tso puh-hsia u-shïh-ko ren* 坐 不 下 五 十 個 人.

Will it hold sixty people? Yes; *luh-shïh-ko ren tso teh-hsia, tso puh-hsia? tso teh-hsia* 六 十 個 人 坐 得 下 坐 不 下, 坐 得 下.

Seated to the full it will hold eighty people; *tso man-liao, pah-shïh-ko ren k‘o-i tso teh-hsia* 坐 滿 了 八 十 個 人 可 以 坐 得 下.

---

NOTES.—*a.* In some districts 起 *ch‘i* takes the place of 颳 *kuah*; as, A wind has arisen, *ch‘i liao feng* 起 了 風

[*See Lesson XXVIII.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Will this do? *chæ-ko hsing puh hsing?*
He can talk, but not act; *t‘a neng shoh puh neng hsing.*
He pretends to be a good man; *t‘a chuang tso hao ren.*
Cover this over; *pa chæ-ko kai-shang.*
His affairs are very prosperous; *t‘a-tih sï hen shuen.*
There is a discrepancy of two dollar cents; *ch‘a rï fen ch‘ien.*
I am inviting company to-morrow; can you come? *o ming-tien ch‘ing k‘eh; nï neng lai puh neng lai?*
I am not going anywhere; *o puh shang na-li ch‘ü.*
This thing is not straight; *chæ-ko tong-hsi puh chïh.*
He has just come from home; *t‘a ts‘ong chia-li ts‘ai lai.*
Both wind and water favourable; *shuen feng shuen shui.*
Lay the table and set on food; *pai choh-tsï pai* (or *k‘ai*) *fan.*

*Translate*:—Pack the baggage in the cart. Yesterday it blew a great North-east wind; to-day there is no wind. Two foreign visitors have come in sedan chairs; the chairbearers did not know the road and carried them to the North; but they have brought them back now; they say the luggage will come later on. He said, Cross the river and go to the South-east, there is a railway station not far off. One train starts at 6.30 a.m., another one that travels faster starts at noon. What is the price of a 1st class ticket to 江口? A steamer is not so fast as a train. Travellers carry little with them. He came by way of Shanghai; he travelled half a day by rail and two days by steamer. Each trade has its own line of business. How far is it from here to the city gate? Not far, three or four *li* at the most; you will be there by the time the lamps are lighted. Hire four men to take these things away. He has not repaired this lamp very well. Now, many travellers travel by steamer; many more travel by rail. Men of the East, West, North and South were all created by God.

Writing Exercise:—說話能得把可以好.

## READING LESSON XII. 二十第要輯

Some Travelling Experiences.

櫛風沐雨

人常說、在家千日好、出門時時難、這是甚麼意思呢、就是說人離家到遠[1]方去是很費事、第一、要先把東西收拾好了、裝箱子、打[2]鋪蓋、換錢、安[3]家、這一[3a]切事都得辦[4]理妥[5]當。還要僱人挑東西到碼[6]頭。早年我要上陝[7]西省、西[8]安府去、那時我住在長[9]江湖[10]北

1. *Üen$^{3}$ fang$^{1}$* 遠方 A distant place. L. 15.
2. *Ta p‘u-kai* 打鋪蓋 To do up bedding.
3. *An$^{1}$-chia$^{1}$* 安家 To make arrangements for the family.
3a. *Ih-ch‘ieh* 一切$^{4}$ All.
4. *Pan$^{4}$-li$^{3}$* 辦理 To arrange; to manage; to do.
5. *T o$^{3}$-tang$^{1}$* 妥當 Satisfactorily.
6. *Ma$^{3}$-t‘eo$^{2}$* 碼頭 A jetty; a wharf: a mart. L. 18.
7. *Shan$^{3}$-hsi* 陝西 The province of Shensi.
8. *Hsi$^{1}$-an$^{1}$ Fu$^{3}$* 西安府 Sianfu, the capital of Shensi.
9. *Ch‘ang$^{2}$ chiang$^{1}$* 長江 The Long River, a colloquial name of the Yang-tsze Kiang; also called the *ta chiang* 大江.
10. *Hu$^{2}$-peh* 湖北 North of the Lake, i.e., the Tong-ting Lake—the province of Hupeh.

漢口[1]離西安有一二千里地、西安是在西北邊。那時中國沒有鐵路、也沒有小火輪船走小河。趕五月十幾、我們僱了一條船、[2]連人帶東西都裝得下、和[3]船行[4]講定了價、就上船、先把幾吊錢[5]付[6]船老板、叫他買米、買菜、第二天早晨就開船。先往北走、後來[7]順河往西、往東、不像走[8]旱路要問人從那裏走、順河走就錯不了。離漢口沒有多遠、又到一個小碼頭、在那裏過夜、第二天還不亮就開船、一直往西北走、那一天颳了項大的順風、到了晚上[9]已經走一百幾十里路、再過了幾天我們就走完了水路下船、要[10]起旱走。在店裏住了兩天、僱[11]騾子、僱馬。那邊和南邊大不同、沒有甚麽[12]平地、[13]小車[14]行不開。我們下船的地方、離西安有三四天的山路、很不好走、天也熱、[15]站口也遠、晚上到了店、眞是[16]辛苦、但離城有一天的路、我們不再騎騾子、就僱了一輛大

---

1. *Han$^4$-k'eo$^3$* 漢口 The mouth of the Han (river)—Hankow, a large commercial centre at the junction of the Han and Yang-tsze rivers.
2. *Lien$^2$ ren tai$^4$ tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* 連人帶東西 Including both persons and goods.
3. *Ch'uan$^2$ hang$^2$* 船行 The boat office. L. 25.
4. *Chiang$^4$-ting-liao chia* 講定了價 Settled the price.
5. *Fu* 付$^4$ To hand over to; to advance.
6. *Ch'uan lao-pan* 船老板 The captain.
7. *Shuen* 順 Here=to follow the course of.
8. *Han$^4$ lu$^4$* 旱路 Dry road, i.e., land travel as opposed to travel by water.
9. *I$^3$-ching$^1$* 已經 Already. L. 16.
10. *Ch'i$^3$ han$^4$* 起旱 To commence the road journey.
11. *Lo$^2$ tsï* 騾子 A mule.
12. *P'ing$^2$-ti* 平地 Level road. L. 16.
13. *Hsiao ch'æ* 小車 A wheelbarrow.
14. *Hsing$^2$ puh k'ai$^1$* 行不開 Could make no progress.
15. *Chan-k'eo* 站口 Distance between the stages of journey; a stage.
16. *Hsin$^1$-k'u$^3$* 辛苦 Wearisome; tiring; hard.

車、把東西都裝在裏頭、叫趕車的快趕、趕第二天九點多鐘就到了城、那城不小、有好幾個門、也有頂高的城門樓子[1]、街道[2]也寬、人也多、買賣也大、城裏東西南北的人都有、在東關[3]有回回教[4]的人、開店做買賣、若現在去就不難[5]、比早二十年前大不同、因爲現今已經修了鐵路[6]、人要上北京[7]去、坐快車[8]、一天半可以到了、就是上西安去、一大半路也可以坐火車、下了車還要僱騾子、僱車、纔能到城、火車站離城多遠、我不知道、沒有走過那條路。前幾年、有弟兄兩個在外頭做買賣、大的叫厚皮[9]、小的叫想家[10]、家裏有父母、年年過年、兩個人還家去、住幾天、趕正月十五就回來。有一年、臘月初十、送信的送了一封家信來、信上說、要他們快快回家、他們的家在北邊、離外河有幾百里（地路）、坐馬車至少要走四五天、晚上還得住店、吃飯吃菜要用錢不少。厚皮說、怎麼樣[11]呢、我們僱車不僱車、想家說、不僱、也不用坐船回去、坐船順風三天可以到家、風不

---

1. *Ch'eng men leo-tsï* 城門樓子 The erection over the gate of a Chinese city.

2. *Kiai-tao* 街道 Streets; thoroughfares.

3. *Tong kuan* 東關 The eastern suburb. *Kuan* 關 in the sense of 'suburb' is confined to the North.

4. *Huei²-huei²-chiao⁴* 回回教 Mohammedanism. L 20.

5. *Nan²* 難 Difficult.

6. *Hsiu¹ liao t'ieh lu* 修了鐵路 To construct a railway.

7. *Peh ching²* 北京 The northern capital, the city of Peking, the metropolis of China.

8. *K'uai ch'æ* 快車 An express train.

9. *Heo⁴-p'i²* 厚皮 Thick-skin!

10. *Hsiang³ chia¹* 想家 Home-sick.

11. *Tsen-mo-iang* 怎麼樣 How about it? What all we do?

順不曉得要走多少天數、還是坐火車回去好。厚皮說、那很好、我們可以打鋪蓋、收拾行李、把衣裳、書、筆、銀子、元寶、洋錢、都裝在箱子裏、但不知這一口紅木[1]箱裝得下裝不下、他們就裝裝看、正好、都裝得下、不多不少、裝滿了箱子、他們叫一個挑夫、姓李的來、把東西挑到車站、他一挑起來、說、先生、再重一點我眞挑不了、厚皮就裝沒聽見、[2]不理他、想家說、好、到了車站、多給你幾個錢就是了、他說、謝謝先生的好心。到了、厚皮就去打[3]了兩張二等的車票、他們就去要上車、趕到了就看見車上的客人很多、二等車都坐滿了、沒有地方、車上的人也不要他們上去、有說、沒有空的、有說、坐不下的、他們就去找了一個頭等半空的車坐下。慢慢的車開了、走的快得很、馬車差[4]的遠、就是人騎着馬趕、也趕不上。想家對厚皮說、這個比坐馬車好得多了、趕晚上我們就到家、不用住店、在家和父母吃晚飯、吃[5]家鄉的菜、這不是更好麼。厚皮說、是、我們也不要多花[6]錢、也不要開箱子、這樣辦辦得好了。

---

1. *Muh hsiang* 木 箱 Note that there is no *tsĭ* 子 added to *hsiang* 箱. Nouns taking *tsĭ* 子 frequently omit them when preceded by an adjective.
2. *Puh li t'a* 不 理 他 Took no notice of him.
3. *Ta . . . p'iao* 打 . . . 票 Bought . . . tickets.
4. *Ch'a tih üen*$^{3}$ 差 的 遠 Vastly inferior to.
5. *Chia-hsiang* 家 鄉 One's native place.
6. *Hua ch'ien* 花 錢 To spend money. L. 17.

## LESSON XIII. 第十三課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 丈$^4$ | *chang* | A measure of ten feet. An elder. |
| 寸$^4$ | *ts‘* } *uen*<br>*en* | An inch; $\frac{1}{10}$ of a Chinese foot. |
| 電$^4$ | *tien* | Lightning; electricity. |
| 論$^4$ | *l* } *uen*<br>*en* | To discuss. An essay. According to; by. |
| 替$^4$ | *t‘i* | For; instead of. |
| 氣$^4$ | *ch‘*<br>*k* } *i* | Breath; air; steam. Temper. |
| 怕$^4$ | *p‘a* | To fear. Lest. |
| 量$^2$ | *liang* | To measure. To buy, as grain. Read *liang*$^4$. A measure. |
| 彀$^4$ | *keo* | Enough. Fully; quite. |
| 尺$^3$ | *ch‘ih* | A foot; 10 Chinese inches. A foot rule. |
| 止$^3$ | *chï* | To stop; to desist. |
| 報$^4$ | *pao*$^5$ | To announce. To recompense. A newspaper. |
| 局$^2$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *üh* | An office; a shop. |
| 福$^2$ | *fuh* | Happiness; prosperity. |
| 享$^3$ | *hsiang* | To receive; to enjoy. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 政$^4$ | *cheng* | To rule. Government. |
| 貼$^1$ | *t‘ieh* | To stick-up-to; to paste. |
| 分$^1$ 局$^2$ | *fen-chüh* | Branch office. |
| 墨$^4$ | *meh*$^{2.17}$ | Ink. |
| 暗$^4$ | *an* | Dark. Late. Secret. Hidden. |
| 爲$^2$ | *uei* | To be; to do. Read *uei*$^4$. For; on account of. |
| 回$^2$ 信$^4$ | *huei-hsin* | A reply. |
| 收$^1$ 條$^2$ | *sheo-t‘iao* | A receipt. |
| 信$^4$ 箱$^1$ | *hsin-hsiang* | Letter box. |
| 信$^4$ 票$^4$ | *hsin-p‘iao* | Postage stamps. |
| 福$^2$ 氣$^4$ | *fuh-ch‘i* | Happiness; felicity. |
| 恩$^1$ 惠$^4$ | *en-huei* | Grace; favour. |
| 爲$^2$ 止$^3$ | *uei-chï* | As far as to... |
| 字$^4$ 典$^3$ | *tsï-tien*$^3$ | A dictionary. |
| 分$^4$ 兩$^3$ | *fen-liang* | Weight. |
| 尺$^3$ 寸$^4$ | *ch‘ih-ts‘uen* | Measure. |
| 郵$^2$ 政$^4$ 局$^2$ | *iu-cheng-chüh* | Government post office. |

### *Tih* 的 as denoting Material.

**1.** One common construction in Chinese may be defined as ‘descriptive’, as it describes things and actions as to their origin. In reference to material, nouns of material, such as wood, stone,

---

不上高山不顯平地 *If you do not scale the mountain you cannot view the plain.*

etc., are turned into descriptive adjectives by the addition of 的 *tih*, which thus answers to the termination ‘en’ in such words as ‘gold’, ‘golden’; ‘wood’, ‘wooden’; etc; *e.g.*,

The casket is golden; the abacus is wooden; *hoh-tsï shï chin-tsï-tih, suan-p‘an shï muh-t‘eo-tih* 盒子是金子的, 算盤是木頭的

### Phrases of Origin.

2. The origin of things with regard to the material of which they are composed, and of people, with regard to the place from whence they come, is usually indicated by a descriptive phrase denoting origin; as, Of what is this made? *chœ shï shen-mo tong-hsi tso tih* 這是甚麽東西做的—this is what thing made? Where is he from? *t‘a shï na-li lai tih?* 他是那裏來的. This last sentence might either refer to the place from which he started, or the place to which he belonged; the former would be clearly indicated by 從 *ts‘ong* in the place of 是 *shï*; *e.g.*,

This is made of gold; *chœ shï chin-tsï tso tih* 這是金子做的.

Where has he come from? *t‘a ts‘ong na-li lai-tih?* 他從那裏來的.

He has come from Tong-ch‘eng; *t‘a ts‘ong Tong-ch‘eng lai tih* 他從東城來的.

### Beginning and End of an Action: how indicated.

3. The starting point of an action is indicated by 從 *ts‘ong*, followed by some adverb or adverbial phrase, and completed by a verb having 起 *ch‘i* as an auxiliary. The point at which the action terminates is denoted by 爲止 *uei-chï*; *e.g.*,

Begin from here; *ts‘ong chœ-li ch‘i* 從這裏起.

Begin to measure from here; *ts‘ong chœ-li liang ch‘i* 從這裏量起.

Write as far as to this; *hsie tao chœ-li uei-chï* 寫到這裏爲止.

Measure from here as far as to the front door; *ts‘ong chœ-li liang ch‘i, liang tao ta-men uei-chï* 從這裏量起量到大門爲止.

### Measurement and Weight.

4. In Lesson III. Section 1, it was pointed out that the words indicating ‘ten hundred,’ or, ‘ten thousand,’ were taken as units of calculation for all numbers exceeding these amounts; *e.g.*, 1,300 was one thousand three hundred; not ‘thirteen hundred.’ The same principle holds good in measurements; *chang* 丈, a measure of ten Chinese feet, being taken as the unit, whether in a statement or a question. *Chi* 幾, *to* 多, and sometimes *to-shao* 多少, are used interrogatively as in Lesson XII. 2. In Hankow and the adjacent

region 幾多 *chi-to* is used for How many? but such a use is not common in the North; *hao to* 好多 is used in the West. *To* 多 often passes from an interrogation to an exclamation as in English; when so used in the North it usually has 麽 *mo* joined to it; *e.g.*,

How long is this? *chœ iu to ch‘ang?* 這有多長.

Not very long; *muh iu to ch‘ang* 沒有多長.

How long is that (if over ten feet)? *na iu ih-chang chi?* 那有一丈幾.

That is forty-five feet three inches long; *na iu sï chang, u ch‘ih, san ts‘uen ch‘ang* 那有四丈, 五尺, 三寸長.

That house is not very high; *na-ko fang-tsï muh iu to* (or *chi*) *kao* 那個房子沒有多 (or 幾) 高.

That thing is not very heavy; *na-ko tong-hsi muh iu to chong* 那個東西沒有多重.

I do not know how high it is; *o puh hsiao-teh to kao* 我不曉得多高.

What a fine looking child! *na-ko hai-tsï to-mo hao-k‘an ni!* 那個孩子多麽好看呢.

### *Luen* 論 as indicating Quantity or Measure.

**5.** Among many uses of the word ‘by,’ in English, is one which relates to measuring; as, Measure your desires by your fortunes; It was sold by the ounce; I engaged him by the day; etc. The word *luen* 論 ‘to discuss,’ corresponds to this use of ‘by’; a significant fact in view of the amount of haggling which goes on when bargains are made; *e.g.*,

This was bought by weight; *chœ shï luen fen-liang mai tih* 這是論分兩買的.

That was bought by measure; *na shï luen ch‘ih-ts‘uen mai tih* 那是論尺寸買的.

By the day; *luen t‘ien* 論天.

That paper was bought by the sheet; *na-ko chï shï luen chang-mai tih* 那個紙是論張買的.

### Electricity: Expressions relating thereto.

**6.** The introduction of telegraphy has given rise to a number of expressions in common use, formed on the same plan as those mentioned in Lesson XII. Section 4. Some of the commonest are the following:—

Electricity; *tien-ch‘i* 電氣.

Telegraph office; *tien-pao chüh* 電報局.

Telegram; *tien-pao* 電報.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十三課雜句

把這封信送到郵政局
把這個放在信箱裏
有回信沒有
叫他等回信
彀不彀
貼個三分信票
他送電報來
問他要收條
兩塊錢彀不彀
從這裏算起
怕甚麽, 不要怕
彀三里地
救主早已替我們死
他上天享福去了

## NOTES.

To send a telegram; *ta tien-pao* 打 電 報.
Telegraph wire; *tien-hsien* 電 綫.
Telegraph poles; *tien hsien kan-tsï* 電 綫 桿 子.
Electric light; *tien-ch'i teng* 電 氣 燈.
Submarine cable; *shui hsien* 水 綫.
Electric tramway; *tien* (or *tien-ch'i*) *ch'œ* 電 (or 電 氣) 車.

---

NOTES.—*a.* Postage stamps are also called *iu p'iao* 郵 票.

[*See Lesson XXVIII.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Take this letter to the post office; *pa chœ-feng hsin song tao Iu-cheng-chü.*
Put this into the letter box; *pa chœ-ko fang tsai hsin-hsiang li.*
Is there any answer? *iu huei-hsin muh iu?*
Tell him to wait for an answer; *chiao t'a teng huei-hsin.*
Enough or not? *keo puh keo?*
Stick on a three cent stamp; *t'ieh ko san fen hsin-p'iao.*
He has brought a telegram; *t'a song tien-pao lai.*
Ask him for a receipt; *uen t'a iao sheo-t'iao.*
Is $2.00 enough? *liang-k'uai ch'ien keo puh keo?*
Begin to reckon from here; *ts'ong chœ-li suan ch'i.*
What are you afraid of? Don't be afraid; *p'a shen-mo? puh iao p'a.*
Fully three *li*; *keo san li ti.*
The Saviour died for us long ago; *Chiu-chu tsao-i t'i o-men si.*
He has gone to heaven to enjoy happiness; *t'a shang t'ien, hsiang fuh ch'ü liao.*

*Translate*:—How large do you want this made? Make it 1 ft. 3 in. high; 3 ft. long; 2 ft. 6 in. wide, as large as that red box of mine. In hiring men, some hire by the month, some by the day; (if) by the day 200 cash a day; (if) by the month $5.00 a month. He has sent a telegram to his father's home. Go and buy $1.00 worth of three cent stamps; $1.00 worth of ten cent stamps; and $2.00 worth of five cent stamps: do not make a mistake in buying them. What is that pair of scales made of? Of brass. The post office is in 太 平 street, more than two *li* from here; this is too far away; take these letters to the branch office and bring back a receipt. Where has that young girl come from? She has just come from home. Let us read from the second chapter as far as to the fourth. Begin to sing from the second verse. What are foreign ships made of? Some are made of wood, some of iron. Those silver ones are the best; these wooden ones are inferior. Have you brought your foot rule with you? No, I forgot to bring it. Is 10 ft. 1 in. long enough? No. Stick up these two sheets of Chinese paper. The grace of God is deeper than the sea, higher than the heavens. Those who believe and trust the Saviour will go to heaven and enjoy great felicity.

Writing Exercise:—裏 位 甚 作 開 地 請 頭.

## READING LESSON XIII. 輯要第十三

### Newspapers and Telegraphs.

### 新聞速傳

從[1]古以來、中國有報、名[2]叫京[3]報、因爲是在北京印[4]的、從京裏發[5]的。報上說的、盡[6]是官[7]場中的事、誰做官、誰候[8]補、那一個升[9]官、那一個革[10]職、是一天發一[11]回、不是機[12]器印的、乃[12a]是木[13]板刻的、也是印在粗紙上。早幾十年、有個耶[14]穌教的牧[15]師、姓戴[16]、心靈[17]得很、想[18]了法子、做出活[19]字板來、叫擺[20]字的、先把字擺好、後來用機器刷[21]印、這比刻字更便[22]當、所以現在各省都有報[23]館、用機器印報、

1. *Ts'ong ku i-lai* 從古以來 From of old.
2. *Ming*$^2$ *chiao*$^4$ 名叫 Called; named.
3. *Ching pao* 京報 The *Peking Gazette*, the oldest newspaper in the world. Also called *ti-pao* 邸報.
4. *In*$^4$ 印 To print. L. 25.
5. *Fah*$^1$ 發 To issue. L. 14.
6. *Chin*$^3$-*shi*$^4$ 盡是 Nothing but . . . .; exclusively. L. 24.
7. *Kuan*$^1$ *ch'ang*$^3$ *chong*$^1$ 官場中 Official circles. V. 5.
8. *Heo*$^4$ *pu*$^3$ 候補 To await official employment; the one who waits for such an appointment.
9. *Sheng*$^1$ *kuan*$^1$ 升官 To receive official promotion.
10. *Keh*$^2$ *chih*$^2$ 革職 To be degraded.
11. *Ih huei* 一回 Once.
12. *Chi*$^1$-*ch'i*$^4$ 機器 A machine; machinery. 12*a*. *Nai*$^3$ 乃 But.
13. *Muh*$^4$-*pan*$^3$ 木板 Wooden blocks; a board.
14. *Ie*$^1$-*su*$^1$ *chiao*$^4$ 耶穌教 The religion of Jesus; Christianity. L. 20.
15. *Muh*$^4$-*si*$^1$ 牧師 A pastor; a clergyman.
16. *Tai*$^4$ 戴 The Rev. S. Dyer, of the London Missionary Society, the inventor of moveable Chinese type.
17. *Ling*$^2$ 靈 Intelligent. V. 3.
18. *Hsiang*$^3$ *liao*$^3$ *fah*$^2$-*tsi*$^3$ 想了法子 Thought of, or devised a plan.
19. *Hoh*$^2$ *tsi*$^4$ *pan*$^3$ 活字板 'Living word blocks'—moveable type.
20. *Pai-tsi-tih* 擺字的 A compositor. L. 28.
21. *Shuah*$^1$-*in*$^4$ 刷印 To print.
22. *Pien*$^4$-*tang*$^1$ 便當 Convenient. L. 17.
23. *Pao*$^4$-*kuan*$^3$ 報館 A newspaper office.

報上天天[1]論到天下的事。電報局也是新[2]立的、早年若告訴人、一點鐘能把[3]信息[4]傳一二萬里地、他必想你是[4a]哄他前幾年、人[5]下鄉[6]豎電綫桿子、眞不[7]容易、有說他們是給外國人做事的、有說是要[8]截[9]風水的、若不是到處的[10]地方官出[11]告示、把電報事的[12]來歷[13]說明、是那裏來的、是[14]奉旨做的、鄉下人總不肯[15]讓他們豎桿子。就是豎了桿子以後、人站[16]在桿子旁邊聽得有[17]響聲、就去叫[18]旁人來聽、聽了半天就說、[19]嗐、曉得了、這是[20]鬼聲、桿子裏必有鬼、這桿子裏的鬼對那桿子裏的鬼說話、[21]那裏是電氣傳話呢。但[22]天下是一理、早年[23]英國初[24]興

---

1. *Luen$^4$-tao$^4$* 論到 To speak of. L. 23.
2. *Lih$^4$* 立 To establish. L. 25.
3. *Hsin$^4$-hsih$^2$* 信息 News; information.
4. *Ch'uan$^2$* 傳 To transmit; to propagate. L. 15. 4*a*. *Hong*. L. 17.
5. *Hsia$^4$ hsiang$^1$* 下鄉 To go into the country. L. 16.
6. *Shu$^4$* 豎 To erect; to set up.
7. *Iong$^2$-i$^4$* 容易 Easy. V. 4.
8. *Chieh* or *ch'ieh$^2$* 截 To intercept.
9. *Feng$^1$-shui$^3$* 風水 Wind and water—a system of geomancy which is supposed to control growth and decay, life and death etc.
10. *Ti-fang kuan* 地方官 Local officials.
11. *Kao$^4$-shi$^4$* 告示 A proclamation. L. 22.
12. *Lai$^2$-lih$^4$* 來歷 Antecedents; history of.
13. *Shoh$^1$ ming$^2$* 說明 To state clearly.
14. *Feng$^4$ chi$^3$* 奉旨 By Imperial Decree.
15. *Rang$^4$* 讓 To allow; to suffer.
16. *Tsai$^4$ . . . p'ang-pien* 在旁邊 By the side; by the side of. L. 18.
17. *Hsiang$^3$-sheng$^1$* 響聲 A noise; a sound.
18. *P'ang$^2$ ren$^2$* 旁人 Others.
19. *Hai$^4$* 嗐 An expression of astonishment and contempt.
20. *Kuei$^3$* 鬼 A demon; a devil.
21. *Na li shi* 那裏是 The idea of it being . . . .?
22. *T'ien hsia shi ih li* 天下是一理 It is the same the world over.
23. *Ing$^1$-kueh$^2$* 英國 England.
24. *Hsing$^1$* 興 To put into operation.

火車也是那樣、人去量地的時候、或[1]是從南往北量、或是從城外量起、直量到離城幾十里地的村[2]莊、人也就造謠言說、火車冒[3]煙、莊[4]稼就不肯長、還有人說、牛一看見火車、奶[5]就嚇[6]沒有了、以後人再擠[7]不出奶來。還有趕車的、趕牲[8]口的、也不讓他們量地、說是要壞[9]他們的生[10]意。有的地方官總得派[11]兵護送、纔把地量好了。俗[12]話說的不錯、[13]羊羔雖美、衆口難調、你我不要學他們的糊[14]塗樣子、要知道打電報是便當得很。我昨天在大街上走、就從纔開的車站走過、往裏頭觀[15]看、就看見一個十幾歲的孩子、在那裏賣報、我就叫過他來、買了一張星[16]期報、一張日[17]報、帶

1. *Hueh-shi* 或是...或是... whether.... or else. L. 28.
2. *Ts‘uen*$^1$-*chuang*$^1$ 村莊 a village; a hamlet.
3. *Mao*$^4$ *ien*$^1$ 冒煙 To emit smoke; to smoke.
4. *Chuang*$^1$-*chia*$^4$ 莊稼 The crops; the harvest. L. [illegible].
5. *Nai*$^3$ 奶 Milk.
6. *Heh*$^4$ 嚇 To scare; to frighten. L. 27.
7. *Chi*$^3$ 擠 To squeeze; to milk.
8. ***Seng***$^1$-*k‘eo*$^3$ 牲口 Animals. V. 5.
9. *Huai*$^4$ 壞 To ruin; to spoil. L. 14.
10. *Seng*$^1$-*i*$^4$ 生意 Trade. L. 23.
11. *P‘ai*$^4$ *ping*$^1$ *hu*$^4$ *song*$^4$ 派兵護送 To furnish military escort.
12. *Suh*$^2$-*hua*$^4$ 俗話 A common saying; a proverb. L. 26.
13. *Iang*$^2$-*kao*$^1$ *sui*$^1$ *mei*$^3$, *chong*$^4$ *k‘eo*$^3$ *nan*$^2$ *t‘iao*$^2$ 羊羔雖美衆口難調 Though a lamb is good, it is difficult to suit everybody's taste—you can't please everybody.
14. *Hu*$^2$-*t‘u*$^2$ 糊塗 Stupid. L. 26.
15. *Kuan*$^1$ *k‘an*$^4$ 觀看 To gaze; to behold.
16. *Hsing*$^1$-*ch‘i* *pao*$^4$ 星期報 Weekly News. *Hsing ch‘i* 星期 is used to avoid the Christian term *li-pai* 禮拜. The names of twenty-eight stars are used as a cycle of twenty-eight days. This being exactly four weeks the characters that fall on the Sunday are always the same. The names of the stars are *fang* 房 *hsü* 虛 *mao* 昴 *hsing* 星.
17. *Rïh pao* 日報 The Daily News.

回家去、看報上說甚麽事、報上頭一件說、鹽、猪肉、羊肉、雞、都長價、看下邊說、銀子行市一千五百六、一毛洋錢至多換一百錢、也說、現在中國大官心裏有意思在各城裏開郵政局、賣信票、銀票、在門外擺一信箱、天天早晨、天天晚上收信、人光要在信上貼信票、信就送到了、一點不錯。報上也說有高大話先生到享福城量地去了、要在那裏蓋電報局、他從南門外量起、直量到西河爲止、彀三四十丈、也僱了人挑石頭、抬木頭、論天僱的一天得一百幾十個錢、論月僱的、一月得五塊多錢、也吃他的飯。這一句我念出來給我哥哥聽、他說、話是很好、他們能天天得那麽多的錢、算是他們的大福氣、若是經中人[1]的手、怕得不到一小半、就算不得福了。報上還有論、論說各國的事、大官怎樣做官、小官怎樣辦事、那一個有理、那一個沒有理、又論各行的事、我沒有工夫看完、就說、今天不再看、明天有工夫可以再買張報看、就是了。

---

[1] *Chong-ren* 中人 A middleman; a mediator. L. 20.

## Lesson XIV. 課四十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 府$^{3}$ | *fu*$^{1}$ | A prefecture; the officer governing it. |
| 州$^{1}$ | *cheo*$^{1}$ | A Department; a region. |
| 縣$^{4}$ | *hsien*$^{4}$ | A District—subdivision of 府. |
| 省$^{3}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}s\\sh\end{matrix}\right\}$ *eng* | A province. To diminish. To save—as time, etc. |
| 樓$^{2}$ | *leo*$^{20}$ | A loft. An upper storey. A tower. |
| 發$^{2.3}$ | *fah* | To issue; to put or send forth. |
| 斤$^{1}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in* | A 'catty' $=1\frac{1}{3}$lb. English. |
| 短$^{3}$ | *tuan* | Short; deficient. |
| 新$^{1}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}hs\\s\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in* | New; recent. |
| 又$^{4}$ | *iu* | And; also; again. |
| 舊$^{4}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *iu* | Old. |
| 壞$^{4}$ | *huai* | Bad; ruined; spoilt. |
| 拜$^{4}$ | *pai* | To worship; to pay respects. |
| 查$^{2}$ | *ch'a* | To search into; to look up. |
| 難$^{2}$ | *nan* | Difficult. Read *nan*$^{4}$. Trouble; difficulty. |
| 草$^{3}$ | *ts'ao*$^{21}$ | Grass; herbs. |
| 教$^{1.4}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *iao* | To teach. A religion. To allow. |
| 煮$^{3}$ | *chu* | To boil. |
| 進$^{4}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\ts\end{matrix}\right\}$ *in* | To enter—in. To advance. |
| 趟$^{4}$ | *t'ang* | A time; an occasion. |
| 益$^{2}$ | *ih* | Advantage; profit. |
| 掃$^{3}$ | *sao* | To sweep. |
| 孝$^{4}$ | *hsiao* | To honour parents. Filial. |
| 敬$^{4}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ing* | To reverence; to respect. |
| 堂$^{2}$ | *t'ang*$^{1}$ | A hall; a meeting place. |
| 處$^{4}$ | *ch'u* | A place; circumstances. |
| 常$^{2}$ | *ch'ang* | Constantly. Common. |
| 教$^{4}$ 堂$^{2}$ | *chiao-t'ang*$^{1}$ | Chapel; church. |
| 掛$^{4}$ 號$^{4}$ | *kua-hao* | To register. |
| 一$^{1}$ 棵$^{1}$ 樹$^{4}$ | *ih-k'o shu* | A tree. |

### Negative Forms of Sentences.

1. Chinese shews a great partiality for the use of negatives. Where, for instance, English would prefer, 'The men were many;' Chinese would usually prefer, 'The men were not few.' In some cases such a negative construction adds force; in other cases the sentence cast in this form runs better. The same is true of double negatives, which both in Chinese as in English make an affirmative. For instance, 'Dogs will eat anything,' or, 'There is nothing dogs will not eat,' mean the same thing, but the latter form would be more forcible in Chinese; *e.g.*,

---

將相本無種男兒當自强 *Generals and Premiers do not spring from seed; youth must rely on their own exertions.*

He has a good deal of money; *t'a-tih ch'ien puh shao* 他的錢不少.
Dogs will eat anything; *keo muh iu puh ch'ih tih* 狗沒有不吃的.
All went; *muh iu puh ch'ü tih* 沒有不去的.
None but want money; *muh iu puh iao ch'ien tih* 沒有不要錢的.

## Numerals used as Adverbs.

**2.** **Numerals used as adverbs in English are expressed in two ways.** For instance, we say, 'He came once, twice, thrice,' but beyond this number we commonly employ the word 'times,' as, 'He came four times.' This latter form is regularly used in Chinese. The words denoting 'times' vary according to the nature of the subject, and may be translated variously by 'once'; 'a time'; 'a spell'; etc. Both *huei* 回, *hsia* 下, *tao* 道, and *t'ang* 輛 are used; *e.g.*,

I upbraided him on two occasions; *o shoh-ko t'a liang huei* 我說過他兩回.

Mr. Li has been three times; *Li hsien-seng lai-ko san t'ang* 李先生來過三輛.

He struck him four times; or, He gave him four stripes; *t'a ta t'a sï hsia* 他打他四下.

Sing it again; *tsai ch'ang ih huei* 再唱一回.
The second time; *ti-rï huei* 第二回.
How often? *chi huei?* 幾回.
The last time; *shang huei* 上回.
The next time; *hsia huei* 下回.
It is so every time; *huei huei shï chœ-iang* 回回是這樣.

I invited him once, but he would not come; *o ch'ing-ko t'a ih-huei t'a puh k'en lai* 我請過他一回他不肯來.

I have been here twice before; *o lai-ko liang t'ang* 我來過兩輛

## *Fah* 發: its Force and Usage.

**3.** *Fah* 發 conveys the idea of 'manifestation,' 'development,' or 'expression in action'; *e.g.*,

His face has a yellow tinge; *t'a lien shang fah huang* 他臉上發黃.

The bread has not risen well; *man-t'eo muh iu fah hao* 饅頭沒有發好.

Such words as 'get,' 'grow,' become,' etc., often give its meaning but the connection alone can decide its force; *e.g.*,

He became faint; *t'a fah ruan* 他發軟. L. 29.
Send an extra letter; *to fah ih-feng hsin ch'ü* 多發一封信去.

## *Ren* 人 as a Suffix.

**4.** The word *ren* 人 is used with many verbs to indicate the effect upon the individual. It thus has something in common with our English use of the word 'you,' or 'one,' which is often used in a general way without any special reference to the person addressed. For instance, when we say, 'It exasperates you to hear him say so,' we may mean 'It is exasperating,' without any reference to a particular individual, or we may mean it has exasperated the person or persons in question. This, however, the connection alone can determine, and so in Chinese; *e.g.*,

Is not his talk exasperating? *t'a chœ-hsie hua ch'i-ren puh ch'i-ren?* 他這些話氣人不氣人.
God always loves; *Shang-ti ch'ang ai-ren* 上帝常愛人.
Virtue does not fear; *hao sï puh p'a-ren* 好事不怕人.

### *Ch'u* 處 as indicating Place and Circumstances.

5. In English such words as 'place'; 'situation'; 'position'; are used both literally and figuratively. We speak of a place as referring to a locality, and we also speak of a person being in a 'tight place,' in reference to his circumstances: and so of 'situation,' 'position,' and other words. The word 處 *ch'u* approximates somewhat to this in Chinese, being applied to a place and to a condition, or combination of circumstances. The character of such circumstances is indicated by some suitable word which denotes its quality, as, *e.g.*, 好處 *hao-ch'u* the condition of goodness, etc. In some districts 處 *ch'u* is used more freely than in others, being joined to almost any adjective or participle. The following forms are current everywhere:—

Shortcomings; faults; *tuan-ch'u* 短處.
Advantages; superiority; *ch'ang-ch'u* 長處.
Usefulness, or value; *iong-ch'u* 用處.
Difficulty; in straits; *nan-ch'u* 難處.
Profit; benefit; *ih-ch'u* 益處.
Dwelling place; *chu-ch'u* 住處.
Viciousness; bad habits; *huai-ch'u* 壞處.
Every place; everywhere; *koh tao koh ch'u* 各到各處.
He has great difficulties; *t'a hen iu nan-ch'u* 他很有難處.
This thing is useless; *chœ-ko tong-hsi muh iu iong-ch'u* 這個東西沒有用處.
He constantly talks of my son's shortcomings; *t'a ch'ang shoh o rï-tsï tih tuan-ch'u* 他常說我兒子的短處.
That child is not vicious; *na-ko hai-tsï muh iu huai-ch'u* 那個孩子沒有壞處.

### *Lao* 老 and *Chiu* 舊: Distinction between.

6. There are many English words which are applied indiscriminately to things and persons. We say, 'An old hat'; 'An old man'; and use the one word 'old' for both, but the Chinese use one word for 'old' in the first case, and another in the second. Generally speaking, *chiu* 舊 is applied to inanimate objects, and *lao* 老 to living creatures, and to age. A man is *lao* 老, but his hat is *chiu* 舊. Things that have fulfilled their functions and are worn out, as a decayed tree, are often spoken of as 老 *lao*; *e.g.*,

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十四課雜句

這個字我查不出來
各到各處有人
各府州縣有官
他上樓去了
叫他下樓來
一斤是十六兩
這封信要掛號
他是個孝子
他孝敬父母
他發大熱心
他上禮拜日進敎
他們在敎堂拜上帝

### NOTES.

I cannot get this old shoe on; *chœ-chï chiu hsiai-tsï o ch'uan puh shang chioh* 這隻舊鞋子我穿不上脚.

His clothes are old; *t'a-tih i-shang shï chiu-tih* 他的衣裳是舊的.

---

NOTES.—*a.* A place of worship is also called 禮拜堂 *li-pai t'ang;* and a preaching hall a 講書堂 *chiang-shu t'ang.*

*b.* The officials in charge of Departments, Prefectures and Districts were formerly termed 府官 or 知府; *fu kuan* or *chï-fu;* 州官 or 知州 *cheo kuan* or *chï-cheo;* and 縣官 or 知縣 *hsien kuan* or *chï-hsien;* now all are styled 知事 *chï sï.*

[*See Lesson XXIX.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

I cannot find this character; *chœ-ko tsī o ch'a puh ch'uh lai.*
There are men everywhere; *koh tao koh ch'u iu ren.*
There are officials in every city; *koh fu, cheo, hsien, iu kuan.*
He has gone upstairs; *t'a shang leo ch'ü liao.*
Tell him to come downstairs; *chiao t'a hsia leo lai.*
Sixteen ounces to a pound; *ih chin shī shīh-luh liang.*
This letter must be registered; *chœ-feng hsin iao kua-hao.*
He is a filial son; *t'a shī ko hsiao tsī.*
He respects his parents; *t'a hsiao-ching fu-mu.*
He shews great earnestness; *t'a fah ta reh-hsin.*
He entered the church last Sunday; *t'a shang li-pai-rīh chin chiao.*
They worship God in the church; *t'a-men tsai chiao-t'ang pai Shang-ti.*

*Translate*:—All these letters, without exception, were registered. That old gentleman wears an old hat and an old pair of shoes. China has twenty odd provinces; a few years ago there were only eighteen; in every province there are Prefectures, Departments and Districts; the Prefecture of 太平 has eight Districts; the District magistrate came last year; his name is 黃. Meat is bought by the pound, calico by the foot; go and buy 2 lbs. 3 oz. of pork and 10 ft. and 1 in. of Chinese calico. There are trees and grass outside the city; it is really pretty. How many times have you been there? I went once last year and twice during the summer of this year. Tell him to come in and not to stand outside; it is cold outside. He is a bad man; there is no benefit in managing affairs with him. Be so good as to look up this character 敝 for me in the dictionary; I cannot find it. I came once last month, and he was not at home; I come again, and he still is not at home; is it not exasperating! To do nothing but speak of peoples' faults is bad. The first time he measured from here; this time he measured from the North gate as far as to the door of the chapel. The number of those who come to the church to listen to the doctrine is many; they come once every day in the afternoon. The newly-built chapel is twice as large as the old one; it will hold, seated to the full, between 300 and 400 people. How excellent!

Writing Exercise:—麽事外前後拿方 R. 70; 比 R. 81.

## READING LESSON XIV. 輯要第十四

### The Land we live in.

### 本地風光

天上地下[1]所有的東西、沒有一樣不是上帝造的、[2]無論是天上的[3]日月星三光、是[3a]世界的江、[4]湖、河、海、是人、是東西、都是他造成的。[5]太初他用六天的工夫、把這[6]一切都造出來給人用、他光[7]吩咐[8]一聲、就有光、有暗、有[9]草木、有[10]鳥獸、有海中的魚、和天下的人。若叫人造一樣的[11]活東西、就是給他[12]材料、把他關在房裏、對他說、你若造不成就不叫你出來、他[13]一輩子出不來了。[14]連[15]盤古也是這樣。就是叫他颳風[16]下雨[17]下雪[18]下霜、叫太陽出來[19]曬[20]熟莊稼、他連一樣也做不出

---

1. *So$^3$-iu$^3$-tih$^1$* 所有的 All there are; everything. L. 17.
2. *U$^2$-luen$^4$* 無論 No matter whether. L. 17.
3. *Rih$^1$ üeh$^4$ hsing$^1$ san$^1$ kuang$^1$* 日月星三光 The Three Lights—sun, moon and stars. 3*a*. *Shï-kiai* 世界 The world.
4. *Hu$^2$* 湖 A lake. L. 21.
5. *T'ai$^4$-ts'u$^1$* 太初 In the beginning. L. 24.
6. *Ih$^1$-ch'ieh$^4$* 一切 The whole of; all. L. 20.
7. *Fen$^1$-fu$^4$* 吩咐 To command. L. 24.
8. *Ih-sheng* 一聲 'One-sound.' This expression after such words as 'speak,' 'command,' etc., denotes that the speaker needed only to speak and the thing was done.
9. *Ts'ao$^3$-muh$^4$* 草木 Flowers, grass and trees.
10. *Niao$^3$-sheo$^4$* 鳥獸 Birds and quadrupeds.
11. *Hoh$^2$* 活 Living. L. 19.
12. *Ts'ai$^2$-liao$^4$* 材料 Materials. V. 4.
13. *Ih$^1$-pei$^4$-tsï$^3$* 一輩子 A lifetime.
14. *Lien$^2$* 連 Even; including. L. 18.
15. *P'an$^2$-ku$^3$* 盤古 A mythical character who is supposed to have chiselled the heavens and earth out of chaos.
16. *Hsia$^4$-ü$^3$* 下雨 To rain. V. 3.
17. *Hsia$^4$-hsüeh$^3$* 下雪 To snow. V. 3.
18. *Hsia$^4$-shuang$^1$* 下霜 'To frost'—for frost to descend.
19. *Shai$^4$* 晒 To dry in the sun; for the sun to shine upon. V. 5.
20. *Shuh$^2$* 熟 Ripe; well cooked. L. 21.

來。人既[1]造不出一樣來、明[2]顯是上帝造的、若不是這位永[3]活的上帝顯[4]他的大能、誰能叫人活在世上呢。[5]再說、上帝造天地、顯出大聰[6]明、叫天下的地、出各樣的東西、南方[7]出的東西北方沒有、北方出的東西南方沒有、叫南方的貨[8]往北方去賣、叫北方的貨往南方去賣、這樣南北就有來往、長[9]了見識、各方的人彼[10]此認識、若不是這樣、這邊的人、看那邊的人爲野人、那邊的人拿[11]這邊的人不當人了。再說、[12]一方水土一方人、看天[13]氣怎麼樣、就知道人怎麼樣、北邊的人身[14]量高[15]大、南邊的人大[16]概是身量矮[17]小、南方多有吃米的、北方多有吃麵的、這也是因爲各地的

---

1. *Chi*⁴ 既 Since; since it is so . . . . L. 18.
2. *Ming*² *hsien*³ 明顯 It is clearly evident that . . . .
3. *Iong*³ 永 Perpetual; eternal. L. 23.
4. *Hsien*³ 顯 To manifest. L. 26.
5. *Tsai*⁴ *shoh*¹ 再說 Further; again. Introduces a new subject, or an additional thought.
6. *Ts'ong*¹*-ming*² 聰明 Wisdom. V. 4.
7. *Fang*¹ 方 A side; a place: *nan-fang* 南方 The South.
8. *Ho*⁴ 貨 Goods; merchandise. L. 19.
9. *Chang* 長 here=To increase in.
10. *Pi*³ *ts'i*³ 彼此 Mutually. L. 17.
11. *Na*² . . . . *puh*¹ *tang*⁴ *ren*² 拿不當人 Do not regard . . . . as men. L. 17.
12. *Ih*¹*-fang*¹ *shui*³*-t'u*³ *ih*¹*-fang*¹ *ren*² 一方水土一方人 Different climates different men. The Chinese attach a good deal of importance to the influence of climate (水土) on character.
13. *T'ien*¹*-ch'i*⁴ 天氣 Weather.
14. *Shen*¹*-liang*⁴ 身量 Stature.
15. *Kao*¹*-ta*⁴ 高大 Tall; of large build.
16. *Ta*⁴*-kai*⁴ 大概 Generally speaking. L. 19.
17. *Ai*³*-hsiao*³ 矮小 Short; of small build.

[1]土產[2]不同。現在人論到世界就說可以分爲五大[3]洲、就是[4]亞細亞[5]美國[6]斐洲、[7]歐羅巴、[8]奧斯達利亞、又叫[9]新金山、還有[9a]許多大小[10]海島不算[11]在內。這五洲的人、[12]一共有十六萬萬、也是一年多似一年。若[13]詳細說各洲的風俗、各地的土產、各人[14]所拜的神、所做的[15]手藝、就是說過幾千回、也是說不盡、如今[15a]只可[16]略說中國這一大國是[17]多大、地面是怎麽樣、那裏有山、那裏有水。若要知道那一省在那一方、省城叫甚麽[18]名字、那一方出那一樣東西、[19]不如[20]問道教這本書的先生、他就告訴你、若他不知道、請他趕快出幾角洋錢、買一本[21]地理誌、以後他就曉得中國天下的事了。中國是個頂大的國、從南到北

---

1. *T'u$^3$-ch'an$^3$* 土產 Productions; fruits of the soil.
2. *Puh$^4$-t'ong$^2$* 不同 Unlike; different.
3. *Cheo$^1$* 洲 A continent.
4. *Ia$^4$-hsi$^4$-ia$^4$* 亞細亞 Asia.
5. *Mei$^3$-kueh$^2$* 美國 America.
6. *Fei$^3$-cheo$^1$* 斐洲 Africa.
7. *Eo$^1$-lo$^2$-pa$^1$* 歐羅巴 Europe.
8. *Ao$^4$-si$^1$-tah$^2$-li$^4$-ia* 奧斯達利亞 Australia; Australasia.
9. *Hsin$^1$ chin$^1$-shan$^1$* 新金山 New California. California is 金山 or 舊金山.
9a. *Hsü-to* 許$^3$ 多$^1$ Many.
10. *Hai$^3$-tao$^3$* 海島 An island.
11. *Tsai$^4$-nei$^4$* 在內 Not included; extra. L. 16.
12. *Ih$^1$-kong$^4$* 一共 In all; all told. L. 23.
13. *Ch'iang$^2$-hsi$^4$* 詳細 In detail; minutely. V. 6.
14. *So$^3$ pai$^4$ tih$^1$ shen$^2$* 所拜的神 The gods that are worshipped. L. 17.
15. *Sheo$^3$-i$^4$* 手藝 Trade; handicraft. V. 6. 15a. *Chï* 只$^3$ Only.
16. *Lioh$^4$* 略 Briefly; slightly. L. 19.
17. *To$^1$* 多 here=how.
18. *Ming$^2$-tsi$^4$* 名字 A name. V. 3.
19. *Puh ru* 不如 Cannot do better than . . . .
20. *Uen$^4$ tao$^4$* 問道 To ask.
21. *Ti$^4$-li$^3$-chi$^4$* 地理誌 A geography.

有八千多里地長、從東到西有一萬二千六百多里地寬、也分爲[1]二十二省。一省的人有一省人的樣子、各省也有各省出的東西、有出金、銀、銅、鐵的、有出木頭的、不能都出一樣。在北邊有一道河、叫黃河、在南邊有一道江、叫長江、也有人叫大江的、這算是中國兩條頂長的河。黃河水不深、火輪船行不開、長江從江口直往西一千八百多里地、大船小船沒有不能上去的。各到各處蓋樓住的人少、十個人有八九個不住在樓上。有的地方山地少、有的地方山地多。在西邊離上海四五千多里地、有大高山彀有一千一二百丈高、那麼高的高山、眞是太冷了、不好住、那個地方、人、猪、雞、羊、牛、狗都很少。各省都有大城、小城、就是府、州、縣、這些城有知府、知州、知縣。有人說、古時候有一個老先生做官、生了三個兒子、都做孝子、念書也念得很好、後來都做了官、一個做府官、一個做州官、一個做縣官。那一家的人可以算有福了、人生那樣有用處的兒子少得很、有的人生兒子一點長處都沒有、兒子長大了、就不孝敬父母、叫父母的心有大難處、你我不可那樣行、都要做好人。

---

[1] *Fen*$^1$ *uei*$^2$ 分爲 Divided into.

# LESSON XV. 課五十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 厚$^4$ | *heo* | Thick; generous. |
| 傳$^2$ | *ch'uan* | To propagate; to hand down. To spread, as a disease. |
| 方$^1$ | *fang* | Square. A prescription. |
| 修$^1$ | *hs*, *s* } *iu* | To repair. To build. To cultivate. |
| 薄$^2$ | *poh* | Thin; mean. Ungenerous. |
| 笑$^4$ | *hs*, *s* } *iao* | To laugh—at; to smile. |
| 圓$^2$ | *üen* | Round. |
| 匠$^4$ | *ch*, *ts* } *iang*$^1$ | A workman; a mechanic. |
| 工$^1$ | *kong*$^1$ | Labour. A labourer. A day's work. |
| 情$^2$ | *ch'*, *ts* } *ing* | The affections; the feelings. Circumstances. |
| 實$^2$ | *shïh* | Real; true; really. Genuine. |
| 醒$^3$ | *hs*, *s* } *ing* | To wake up. To startle. |
| 首$^3$ | *sheo* | The head. A chief. First. N.A. |
| 禍$^4$ | *h* } *o*, *uo* | Calamity; misfortune. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 哭$^1$ | *k'uh* | To cry–for–about. |
| 淺$^3$ | *ch'*, *ts* } *ien* | Shallow; superficial. |
| 世$^4$ | *shï* | An age. The world. Society. |
| 文$^2$ | *uen*$^5$ | Literature. Civil, as opposed to military. |
| 勸$^4$ | *ch'*, *k* } *üen* | To exhort; to persuade. |
| 罵$^4$ | *ma* | To curse; to revile. |
| 惹$^3$ | *rœ* | To provoke; to exasperate. |
| 無$^2$ | *u* | Without; none. A negative. |
| 界$^4$ | *chieh*<br>*k* } *ai*, *iai* | A boundary; a limit. |
| 生$^1$ 氣$^{4*}$ | *seng ch'i* | To get angry. |
| 實$^2$ 在$^4$ | *shïh-tsai* | Truly; real. |
| 籃$^2$ 子$^3$ | *lan-tsï*$^1$ | A basket. |
| 世$^4$ 界$^4$ | *shï-kiai* | The world; society. |
| 睡$^4$ 覺$^{4*}$ | *shui-chiao* | To sleep. |
| 天$^1$ 下$^4$ | *t'ien-hsia* | The empire; the world. |
| 勸$^4$ 世$^4$ 文$^2$ | *ch'üen-shï-uen*$^5$ | A tract; moral essay. |

## Compound Adverbs.

1. Adverbs are frequently repeated before verbs. A large number of adjectives are thus turned into adverbs by repetition, and in such cases generally take a suffix, the commonest being 的 *tih* Some adjectives given in preceding Lessons may be so turned into compound adverbs; *e.g.*,

---

成人不自在，自在不成人 *To make a man of yourself you must toil; if you don't you won't.*

He explained in detail; *t'a hsi-hsi-tih shon* 他細細的說.
She saw him afar off; *t'a üen-üen-tih k'an-chien t'a* 他遠遠的看見他.
They hung it up high; *t'a-men kao-kao-tih kua ch'i-lai* 他們高高的掛起來.

### Abstract Nouns of Quality.

2. Abstract ideas are difficult to express in Chinese. Anything concrete is much more easily spoken of; it is almost impossible to render such terms as 'whiteness;' 'blackness;' etc. Such words as 'weight;' 'thickness;' etc., are expressed by an idiom which combines two words of opposite meaning, thus forming abstract nouns of quality. Some examples have already been given, viz., 買賣 *mai-mai*, 'business'; 尺寸 *ch'ih-ts'uen*, 'measurement.' Others are 遠近 *üen-chin* far near, i.e., 'distance'; 輕重 *ch'ing-chong*, light heavy, i.e., 'weight'. When 不 *puh* precedes each adjective it indicates the medium between them; *e.g.*,

The same thickness; *ih-iang-tih heo poh* 一樣的厚薄.
How about the size? *ta-hsiao tsen-mo-iang?* 大小怎麼樣.
A moderate distance off; *puh üen puh chin* 不遠不近.

### *Fah* 法 as a Suffix indicating Manner.

3. The manner in which an action is done is denoted by the word 法 *fah*, meaning 'A Law; a rule'; affixed to a verb it indicates the 'law' according to which things are done. At times it is joined to a noun, but this is not common; *e.g.*,

It is done in this way; *shï chœ-iang tso-fah* 是這樣做法.
It is not written like this; *puh shï chœ-iang hsie-fah* 不是這樣寫法.
How do you say this sentence? *chœ-chü-hua shï tsen-mo shoh-fah?* 這句話是怎麼說法.

### *Shang* 上 *hsia* 下 and *ko* 過 used as Auxiliaries.

4. The words 上 *shang* 下 *hsia* and 過 *ko*, may be joined to 來 *lai* and 去 *ch'ü* to form principal verbs, or they may be used as auxiliary to a principal verb in the same manner as 起來 *ch'i-lai* and 出來 *ch'uh-lai*; *e.g.*,

Come over here; *ko-lai* 過來.
Go over there; *ko-ch'ü* 過去.
Bring the book over here; *pa shu na ko-lai* 把書拿過來.
Go down; *hsia-ch'ü* 下去; go up; *shang-ch'ü* 上去.
Come down; *hsia-lai* 下來.
Come up; *shang-lai* 上來.
Carry it up; *t'ai shang-lai* 抬上來
Take it down; *tai hsia-ch'ü* 帶下去

### *Pen* 本: its Use and Force.

**5.** *Pen* 本, 'origin,' or 'root,' is used as a pronoun in certain connections; officials and memorialists employ it in speaking of themselves in documents. It has also passed into the colloquial and is prefixed to nouns to distinguish them as peculiar to a person, to the place where, and to the time when he lives. It needs to be translated according to the context in which it is found, as 'This'; 'The one in question'; 'I;' etc.; *e.g.*,

Native; the place in question; *pen-ti* 本 地.
Natives of a place; *pen-ti ren* 本 地 人.
This street; *pen kiai* 本 街.
My country; my native land; *pen kueh* 本 國.
This month; *pen üeh* 本 月.

### *Chiang* 匠 in combination.

**6.** In Lesson X. Section 3, it was explained that 的 *tih* indicated 'an agent,' or 'doer.' Many occupations are thus defined, but there are others which are more commonly indicated by 匠 *chiang*. The following are a few of the commonest:

Carpenter; *muh-chiang* 木 匠.
Stonemason; *shïh-chiang* 石 匠.
Blacksmith; *t'ieh-chiang* 鐵 匠.
Brassworker; *t'ong-chiang* 銅 匠.
Silversmith; *in-chiang* 銀 匠.

[*See Lesson XXIX.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

There are both round and square ones; *üen tih fang tih tu iu.*
He is very angry; *t'a seng ta ch'i.*
This matter is not easy to arrange; *chæ-ko sï-ch'ing puh hao pan.*
He slept well through the night; *t'a shui-ih ie tih hao chiao.*
He has just awoke; *t'a ts'ai hsing liao.*
That person is constantly making trouble; *na-ko ren ch'ang-ch'ang-tih ræ ho.*
This is Mr. Li's boundary stone; *chæ shï Li chia tih kiai-shïh.*
He is a good man without doubt; *t'a shïh-tsai shï ko hao ren.*
The Chinese are now building railways everywhere; *hsien-tsai Chong-kueh ren tao-ch'u hsiu t'ieh-lu.*
I exhorted him twice, but he would not listen; *o ch'üen-ko t'a liang huei t'a puh k'en t'ing.*
Men preach all over the country; *t'ien-hsia iu ren ch'uan-tao.*
I give you two tracts; *o song ni liang-chang ch'üen-shï-uen.*

*Translate*:—How about the length? Neither too long nor too short; just right. They came empty and returned full. How shall we manage this affair? This is not difficult; it is managed in this way. What is that child crying for? She says her parents are dead. Were they natives of this province? They were natives of this province

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十五課雜句

圓的, 方的, 都有
他生大氣
這個事情不好辦
他睡一夜的好覺
他纔醒了
那個人常常的惹禍
這是李家的界石
他實在是個好人
現在中國人, 到處修鐵路
我勸過他兩回, 他不肯聽
天下有人傳道
我送你兩張勸世文

## NOTES.

and lived in this street. Tell him to come up quickly, and not to wait outside the front door. He is constantly abusing people; as soon as he opens his mouth he begins to curse; he is not a good man; everybody says he is bad. Carry that round table over here, and carry this square one over there. The carpenters want their money; they are waiting below; tell them to wait a little longer, I don't want them to come upstairs now. You may reckon four days' labour. He exhorted them four times, but failed to move them; they still abused people. To act thus is to provoke people to anger. When the Saviour ascended to Heaven He told His disciples to go all over the world and propagate religion. Afterwards His disciples went to every country and preached, and very many believed. When He came to the world He was a poor man; He was a carpenter. Afterwards He went forth and preached in His native country, exhorting people to believe and trust in God. Sing the 101st hymn.

**Writing Exercise:**—時候很曉過呢太對.

---

## READING LESSON XV. 輯要第十五

---

### Pure Romance.

### 憑空談笑

同[1]治十三年、有人送我一本書、名叫萬寶全書、其[2]中有畫[3]圖、所畫的是各方的人、各方的東西、圖上有字、說這一國的人有甚麼樣[4]式、那一國的人有甚麼打[5]扮、西方的人是多野、東方的人不穿衣裳、光拿葉[6]子當衣裳、南方的人胸[7]中有窟[8]窿、要出門、人就把扛[9]子穿上、抬着走、不用坐轎子、

[1] *T‘ong*$^{2}$ *chï*$^{3}$ 同治 Title of reign 1862 to 1874.
[2] *Ch‘i*$^{2}$*-chong*$^{1}$ 其中 Inside; within. L. 20.
[3] ***Hua***$^{4}$***-t‘u***$^{2}$ 畫圖 Pictures; illustrations.
[4] *Iang*$^{4}$*-shï*$^{4}$ 樣式 Manner; style.
[5] *Ta*$^{3}$*-pan*$^{4}$ 打扮 Style of dress; 'get up.'
[6] *Ieh*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ 葉子 Leaves.
[7] *Hsiong*$^{1}$ 胸 The breast; the chest.
[8] *K‘uh*$^{1}$*-long*$^{2}$ 窟窿 A hole; an aperture.
[9] *Kang*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ 扛子 A carrying pole.

坐車、又說、北方有人不知道蓋房子、[1]挖[2]洞爲家住在裏頭、和[3]兎子一樣、沒有書筆、也不曉得寫字、算是一點[4]教化都沒有。又說、有女人國、一個男人也沒有、我一見這書、又[5]喜笑、又[6]嘆息、因爲知道那作書的、是[7]憑空寫的、沒有那些人、也沒有那些地方、他只[8]隨心寫出就是了、盡是[9]海外的奇談。俗話說、[10]坐井觀天、意思就是人沒有離了本鄉、見識就不大、這也[11]難怪、但項[12]可惜的、是人[12a]遇着見識大的人、萬不肯信他、[13]就如一個[14]暹羅國的[14a]皇上、早一百多年前、打發他的一個[15]臣子到外國去、看人看地、過一年多他就回來、告訴皇帝說、外國人用[16]顯微鏡、看東西就顯得大幾十倍、又說[17]船桅有三四丈高、

---

1. *Uah*$^1$ 挖 To scoop out; to dig. L. 22.
2. *Tong*$^4$ 洞 A cave; a cavern.
3. *T'u*$^4$*-tsï*$^3$ 兎子 Rabbits; hares.
4. *Chiao*$^4$*-hua*$^4$ 教化 Civilization. Note 一點 . . . 都沒有 not the slightest.
5. *Hsi*$^3$*-hsiao*$^4$ 喜笑 To laugh: two characters are used here to match with 嘆息 below, but 笑 is usually used alone in the colloquial.
6. *T'an*$^4$*-hsih*$^2$ 嘆息 To sigh.
7. *P'ing*$^2$ *k'ong*$^1$ 憑空 'To lean on emptiness'—to have no ground for . . .; without cause or evidence.
8. *Sui*$^2$ *hsin*$^1$ *hsie*$^3$ *ch'uh*$^1$ 隨心寫出 To follow one's own imagination in writing. L. 17.
9. *Hai*$^3$*-uai*$^4$*-tih*$^1$ *ch'i*$^2$ *t'an*$^2$ 海外的奇談 Wonderful tales from beyond the sea—travellers' yarns.
10. *Tso*$^4$ *ching*$^3$ *kuan*$^4$ *t'ien*$^1$ 坐井觀天 To sit in a well and look at the sky—a limited outlook.
11. *Nan*$^2$ *kuai*$^4$ 難怪 And no wonder.
12. *K'o*$^3$*-hsih*$^1$ 可惜 Alas! 12*a*. *Ü-choh* 遇着 To meet with.
13. *Chiu ru* 就如 As for example. . . .
14. *Hsien*$^1$*-lo*$^2$ 暹羅 Siam. 14*a*. *Hwang shang* 皇上 Emperor.
15. *Ch'en*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ 臣子 A statesman. V. 3.
16. *Hsien*$^3$*-uei*$^2$*-ching*$^4$ 顯微鏡 A microscope.
17. *Ch'uan*$^2$*-uei*$^2$ 船桅 A ship's mast

這話皇上就不[1]十分信。臣子還說、他到過北邊、[2]每到了冬天、人能走在水面上、也用[3]冰鞋走來走去、如[4]飛一樣、他這話還沒有說完、皇上就生大氣、吩咐人快把他殺了、說他[5]敢在皇帝面前這樣[6]撒謊、[7]本來[8]該死。我們本街上有李家、有張家、張家有三個兒子、一個做木匠、一個做鐵匠、一個做皮匠、李家也有兒子、一個常在外頭[9]辦貨。本月十幾、我碰見張家的大兒子、叫張肯信、我們[10]敘談的時候、他對我說、李先生的兒子纔回來、你見了他沒有、我說還沒有、光聽人說他早兩天來家、這一回他從那裏回來呢。肯信說、他告訴我走的地方不少、見的事也很多、他對我說、中國好幾省現在修鐵路、在南邊靠海修的、修法也是和西邊的修法一樣、難修的地方請了外國人來修。有的鐵路實在修的好、有的比不上西邊的、有人說、再過幾年沒有不修的地方、省省都修、就是本省也要修。他也說坐過一回火車、車上

---

1. *Shih fen* 十分 Ten-tenths—entirely. L. 27.
2. *Mei*$^3$*-tao*$^4$ 每到 Whenever it came to . . . . 每到了冬天 every winter L. 28.
3. *Ping*$^1$ *hsiai*$^2$ 冰鞋 Skates.
4. *Fei*$^1$ 飛 To fly. L. 22.
5. *Kan*$^3$ 敢 To dare; to presume to . . . . L. 20.
6. *Sah*$^3$*-huang*$^3$ 撒謊 To lie. L. 23.
7. *Pen*$^3$*-lai*$^2$ 本來 Naturally and rightly. L. 23.
8. *Kai*$^1$*-si*$^3$ 該死 Ought to die. Often used as an imprecation.
9. *Pan*$^4$ *ho*$^4$ 辦貨 To lay in and transport goods home for sale.
10. *Hsü*$^4$ *t'an*$^2$ 敘談 To chat.

有兩個少年人、都帶着行李、不知道是爲甚麽事情、這一個開口罵起來、說那一個不[1]講理、又說他父母的不是、慢慢的兩個人就打起來、車上的人一看動[2]打、就不肯、把他們[3]勸開說[4]和了、那一個就哭了、說、到了家要告訴他母親、這一句話惹得一車人大大的笑起來、到了車站、他就下車又哭又罵走了、把這麽大小的籃子忘記帶去、裏頭有斤多猪肉、四個本地針、女人頭上戴的幾件首[5]飾、還有幾兩鹽、三根雞毛、一尺粗紅布、有二寸厚薄的一塊四方板、一吊錢的一張錢票、幾張勸世文、一個小洗臉盆、一個白盤子、一頂舊帽子、一隻女人鞋、還有一盒子餅子、圓的方的都有、一盞燈不是外國燈、是本地人作的、也有一條發黃的黑手巾、一把小壺、幾個鐵釘子、還有一掛表。怕他到了家告訴母親、母親不問他那人罵的甚麽話、光問他要籃子怎麽樣呢、他就是去趕火車也趕不上、東西可以算沒有了、得不回來了。

---

1. *Puh chiang li* 不講理 Didn't talk sense; was unreasonable.

2. *Tong ta* 動打 Made a move to fight; to come to blows.

3. *Ch'üen-k'ai* 勸開 Caused them to desist by persuasion; persuaded them to give over.

4. *Shoh ho liao* 說和了 Settled it amicably.

5. *Sheo$^{3}$-shih$^{1}$* 首飾 Head ornaments.

## REVIEW: LESSONS XI-XV. 三第課考

**1.** Give examples of each Degree of Comparison.

Shew in two sentences how things are compared by repetition.

How is the Double Comparative formed? give two examples.

Illustrate in six sentences the use of 很 至 着.

In four sentences shew uses of 離 里 往 經.

Give Chinese for: locomotive; telegram; railway station; third class; electric light; electric tramway; submarine cable; telegraph pole.

Give two examples each of the use of 裝 趕 起, 爲 止.

Illustrate the use of 的 to indicate origin.

Shew two uses of 從 論.

Correct the following: 這 本 房 是 三 十 三 尺 高: 我 的 兄 弟 的 塊 船 六 丈 一 寸 長.

Write three sentences containing Double Negatives.

What is the meaning of 發? shew its use in two sentences.

Translate:—How many times a day? Every time, without exception, he says the same thing. The last time he was not at home. The next time I will tell him to wait.

Shew use of 人 as a suffix after verbs; and 處 in its literal and adapted use in three sentences each.

What is the difference in the use of 老 and 舊? give two examples.

Translate:—Chapel. Place of worship. A hall. A preaching hall.

Give the names of cities of three degrees, with titles of the officials who govern them.

Give three examples of the use of Compound Adverbs and shew how they are formed.

Form three abstract nouns of quality, and give three sentences to shew how they are used.

What is the meaning of 法? how it is used?

Illustrate in four sentences, 上 來, 上 去, 過 來, 過 去, both as principal and as auxiliary verbs.

How is 本 used? give three examples.

Translate Reading Lessons XIV and XV.

**2.** Give sound, tone, and meaning of the following:—似 至 倍 倆 差 拾 氣 局 縣 益 煮 替 樓 豎 唱 縫 騎 窮 狗 辦 擺 越 修 禍 勸 淺 惹 薄 厚.

3. Correct, if necessary, the following, and give reasons for the correction :—

泡茶好了有沒有。我的布你的碗大一樣。他住在北。在南西邊。他走三里。太平這裏離多遠。明天我們趕到了。我箱子四十件書不裝。沒有滿了裝。這個東西木頭是做的。他來的是從那裏。這裏起念第三個章六根節。多高這是我不知道。那件布是尺寸論買。一百尺三寸短。他送過報電和票信來。樓上你要去現在。他三回來。一下打他得很重。他的臉紅發了。沒有好處這匹事情。小孩子戴兩雙老鞋穿了一塊老帽子舊年紀的先生說老舊不分。做鐵路的人罵。他道理傳好好的。做饅頭的匠。寫法是這個。叫他來上抬。有方有圓的。

4. Write in Chinese character :—

I want to meet him next time. What did he say last time? When did he go? He went the 23rd of last month. I saw him when I was at home, but I do not know where he is now. He invited the wrong person. I heard it said at that time that he had money and was engaged in business in Shanghai. On the 21st of the 5th month that old woman came to change money. Can they come? They can all come. He is not fond of going out. The things inside are better than those outside. What does the letter say? After he had finished doing it, he went to the house of Mr. Chang. He first said, The people are too many; afterwards he said, The old people are too few Did you know that those four gentlemen came in the 5th month?

## VOCABULARY III. 三 第 彙 字

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 害$^{4}$ | *hai* | To contract a disease. To injure. Injury. |
| 病$^{4}$ | *ping* | Disease. A vice; a fault. |
| 雪$^{3}$ | *s*<br>*hs* } *üeh* | Snow. |
| 醫$^{1}$ | *i* | To heal; to cure. |
| 養$^{3}$ | *iang* | To rear; to nourish. To support. To 'keep,' as animals. |
| 京$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ing* | The metropolis; a capital. |
| 英$^{1}$ | *ing* | Brave; heroic. England. |
| 美$^{3}$ | *mei* | Beautiful; excellent. America. |
| 德$^{2}$ | *teh* | Virtue; moral excellence. Germany. |
| 院$^{4}$ | *üen* | A courtyard. A public building. |
| 皇$^{2}$ | *huang* | Imperial. The sovereign. |
| 狼$^{2}$ | *lang*$^{1}$ | The wolf. Cruel. |
| 雨$^{3}$ | *ü* | Rain. |
| 靈$^{2}$ | *ling* | Spirit; spiritual. Intelligent. Efficacious. |
| 魂$^{2}$ | *huen* | The soul; the wits. |
| 雷$^{2}$ | *l* } *ei*<br>*ui* | Thunder. |
| 層$^{2}$ | *ts'eng* | A storey; a layer. An item. Division of a subject. |
| 夫$^{1}$ | *fu* | A sage. A husband. A labourer. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 治$^{4}$ | *chï* | To cure; to heal. To govern. |
| 醫$^{1}$ 生$^{1}$<br>大$^{4}$ 夫$^{1}$ | *i-seng*$^{1,7}$<br>*tai-fu* | A doctor; a physician. |
| 靈$^{2}$ 魂$^{2}$ | *ling-huen*$^{1}$ | The soul. |
| 京$^{1}$ 城$^{2}$ | *ching-ch'eng* | The capital city; the metropolis. |
| 名$^{2}$ 字$^{4}$ | *ming-tsï*$^{1}$ | A name. |
| 挑$^{1}$ 夫$^{1}$ | *t'iao-fu*$^{1}$ | A coolie. |
| 禱$^{3}$ 告$^{4}$ | *tao-kao* | To pray-to; prayer. |
| 英$^{1}$ 國$^{2}$ | *ing-kueh* | England. |
| 美$^{3}$ 國$^{2}$ | *mei-kueh* | America. |
| 法$^{2}$ 國$^{2}$ | *fah-kueh* | France. |
| 德$^{2}$ 國$^{2}$ | *teh-kueh* | Germany. |
| 省$^{3}$ 城$^{2}$ | *seng-ch'eng* | Provincial capital. |
| 方$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *fang-tsï*$^{1}$ | A prescription. |
| 醫$^{1}$ 院$^{4}$ | *i-üen*$^{1}$ | A hospital. |
| 皇$^{2}$ 帝$^{4}$ | *huang-ti*$^{1.7}$ | Emperor; King; ruler. |
| 臣$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ch'en-tsï*$^{1.7}$ | A statesman. |
| 獅$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *s*<br>*sh* } *ï-tsï*$^{1}$ | A lion. |
| 老$^{3}$ 虎$^{3}$ | *lao-hu*$^{1}$ | A tiger. |
| 法$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *fah-tsï*$^{1}$ | A plan; a method. |
| 一$^{1}$ 道$^{4}$ 牆$^{2}$ | *ih-tao ch'iang* | A wall. |
| 一$^{1}$ 劑$^{4}$ 藥$^{4}$ | *ih-chi ioh* | A dose of medicine. |

**Notes.**—*a.* Both 長 *chang* and 生 *seng* are also used in reference to the contraction of disease, as, 他 長 了 病 *t'a chang-liao ping,* He has contracted a disease.

*b. Ling-huen* 靈魂 is often transposed to 魂靈 *huen-ling* with no change of meaning,

*c.* The 字 *tsï* is often omitted in speaking of names.

*d.* An Emperor is also called 皇上 *huang-shang.*

*e. Tsï* 子 is frequently changed to 兒 *rï*, as 法兒 *fah-rï.*

*f. Hsia* 下 is used as a verb before both 雨 *ü* and 雪 *hsüeh*, as, 下雨 *hsia-ü* To rain; it rains; 下雪 *hsia-hsüeh* To snow; it snows.

*g.* To thunder, is 打雷 *ta lei.*

*h.* To write a prescription is 開方子 *k'ai fang-tsï.*

*i. Uen* 文 is often used in the sense of 'language,' as, The English language, 英文 *ing uen*; and so with other languages. The first of the characters which compose the name of the country stands for the name, as, French, 法文 *fah-uen*; etc.

## READING LESSON XVa. 次輯要第十五

### An Awakening and a Journey.

### 大夢初醒

有一個著[1]書的、書中著上了幾句笑[2]話、說、有一個人下鄉去遊[3]逛、走累[4]了、見一塊草地、就躺[5]下睡覺、後來醒了、用手揉[6]了揉眼睛、纔得睜[7]開、隨[3]後又起來舒[9]伸了舒伸、打[10]了幾個呵欠、四[11]圍一看、就見地方變了、人也不是早[12]先所認識的、慢慢的訪[13]問了訪問、纔知道已經睡了幾百年、別[14]有天

1. *Chu$^4$-shu$^1$-tih$^1$* 著書的 An author. 做 *tso* is also used in place of 著 *chu*
2. *Hsiao$^4$ hua$^4$* 笑話 A funny story: to ridicule.
3. *Iu$^2$-kuang$^4$* 遊逛 To stroll; to ramble.
4. *Lei$^4$-liao$^3$* 累了 Tired; fatigued.
5. *T'ang$^3$-hsia$^4$* 躺下 To lie down.
6. *Reo$^3$ liao$^3$ reo$^3$* 揉了揉 To give (the eyes) a rub.
7. *Tseng$^1$-k'ai$^1$* 睜開 To open—used of the eyes only; 閉 *pi* is used of closing the eyes, not 關.
8. *Sui$^2$-heo$^4$* 隨後 Bye-and-bye; later on.
9. *Shu$^1$ shen$^1$* 舒伸 To stretch oneself—as on awaking.
10. *Ta$^3$ . . . . ha$^1$-ch'ien$^4$* 打呵欠 To yawn. L. 25.
11. *Sï$^4$-uei$^2$ ih$^1$ k'an$^4$* 四圍一看 To look round on all sides.
12. *Tsao-hsien* 早先 Formerly; previously. L. 24.
13. *Fang$^3$-uen$^4$* 訪問 To make enquiries. L. 28.
14. *Pieh iu t'ien ti liao* 別有天地了 It was another world.

地了。這[1]雖是笑話、其中也有意思、甚麼意思呢、就是[2]比出古今的事、古今的人來了。在我看、若是有我們宋朝的一個[3]祖宗[4]復活起來、看[5]當朝的[6]中華、他也必揉揉眼、[7]以爲不在他本國了、他必看火船、火車、電報、水綫、爲[8]怪物、他若用[9]留聲器必要叫他[10]嚇一大跳、聽中國人說外國話、寫英文、法文、他總以爲[11]希奇、叫他更希奇的、是叫他看[12]甚麼[13]自行車、[14]脚踏車、又看[15]飛行器、飛[16]在空中、他若看這一切、心中必[17]亂、[18]摸不着東西南北了。現在生的人不以這些爲[19]希罕、因爲國國都有、若把國比起來、算是美國、英國、德國、[20]最會造這樣的[21]巧東西、這

---

1. *Sui*$^1$ 雖 Although. L. 18.
2. *Pi . . . . ch'uh-lai* 比 . . . . 出來 To bring out by comparison.
3. *Tsu*$^3$*-tsong*$^1$ 祖宗 Ancestors. L. 26.
4. *Fuh*$^1$*-hoh*$^1$ *ch'i*$^3$*-lai*$^2$ 復活起來 To come to life again; to have a resurrection.
5. *Tang*$^1$*-ch'ao*$^2$ 當朝 The present dynasty.
6. *Chong*$^1$*-hua*$^2$ 中華 China.
7. *I*$^3$*-uei*$^2$ 以爲 To think; to consider. L. 19.
8. *Kuai*$^4$ *uh*$^4$ 怪物 Uncanny things.
9. *Liu*$^2$*-sheng*$^1$*-ch'i*$^4$ 留聲器 A gramophone.
10. *Heh*$^4$ *ih*$^1$ *ta*$^4$ *t'iao*$^4$ 嚇一大跳 To receive a great shock.
11. *Hsi*$^1$*-ch'i*$^2$ 希奇 Strange; wonderful.
12. *Shen-mo* 甚麼 used before an enumeration of things or persons may be translated by 'Such things as' . . . .
13. *Tsï*$^4$*-hsing*$^2$*-ch'æ*$^1$ 自行車 Motor cars. Also called 氣車 *ch'i ch'æ*.
14. *Chioh*$^3$ *t'ah*$^4$ *ch'æ*$^1$ 脚踏車 Bicycles.
15. *Fei*$^1$*-hsing*$^2$*-ch'i*$^4$ 飛行器 Flying machines.
16. *Tsai*$^4$*-k'ong*$^1$*-chong*$^4$ 在空中 In the air.
17. *Luan*$^4$ 亂 Confused; bewildered.
18. *Mo*$^1$ *puh*$^1$ *choh*$^2$ 摸不着 Unable to find out; 摸不着東西南北 to completely lose one's bearings.
19. *Hsi*$^1$*-han*$^3$ 希罕 Rare; uncommon.
20. *Tsui*$^4$ 最 Extremely; very; sign of Superlative. L. 27.
21. *Ch'iao*$^3$ 巧 Ingenious; clever.

一國做的好、那一國要做的更好、就是、精[1]中求精。恐[2]怕有些念這書的人、不能都坐火船跑[3]到各國去看看、所以我略略的把一國的事、詳細述[4]說一徧、若後來有錢、有空、有機[5]會、去親[6]眼看看、就可以知道我這話是實在、是不錯的了、若到別[7]國去看了甚麼希罕事情、再著在書上、我敢[8]保說、要買的人多、我就是要當[9]當也必買一本看看。在西邊、離中國三萬多里路、有一國叫英國、從中國到那裏去、坐船可以、坐火車也可以、但是坐火輪船工夫就大、至少要走五個多禮拜、船上吃飯是吃船上的飯、不用帶甚麼東西吃、喝水喝茶、也是喝船上的。坐火車、要先往北走、過一道海、就有鐵路、火車站、客人在那裏買了車票、就上車坐下、車一開、實在走的很快、一點鐘可以走八九十里地。慢慢的要、從德國、法國、那裏過、就到了海邊、在那裏換船走幾點

---

[1] *Ching$^1$ chong$^1$ ch'iu$^2$ ching$^1$* 精中求精 To seek to better that which is already good.

[2] *K'ong$^3$-p'a$^4$* 恐怕 Perhaps, it may be that .... L. 19.

[3] *P'ao$^{2\text{-}3}$* 跑 To go to; to run. L. 17.

[4] *Shuh$^4$-shoh$^1$ ih$^1$-pien$^4$* 述說一徧 To give an account of.

[5] *Chi$^1$-huei$^4$* 機會 An opportunity or occasion. L. 23.

[6] *Ch'in$^1$ ien$^3$* 親眼 With one's own eyes.

[7] *Pieh$^2$* 別 Other; another. L. 21.

[8] *Kan$^3$-pao$^3$* 敢保 To guarantee; to warrant.

[9] *Tang$^4$-tang$^4$* 當當 To put something in pawn. L. 17, 29.

15.

鐘的工夫、就到了英國。英國人從中國回家、到了本國就[1]享福、能見老家、見老父母哥哥兄弟、兒女、又吃家裏的菜、樣樣都很好。英國沒有多大、有中國的山東省那麽大、但人多心靈、會造各樣的東西、就是洋布、火車、火輪船、和銅、鐵作的東西、發到天下賣給各國的人、東西作的好、到處的人肯買。現在天下說英國話的人頂多、國大小不要緊、要緊是有能人、會辦事、有了能人、就是國小也可以算大、好比一個人、身體大、頭也大、手也大、脚更大、但心中[2]魯莽、[3]毫不懂事、一點也不靈、光會做挑夫、抬轎、一天吃十幾碗飯、晚上睡覺、早晨醒了、天天這樣行、也算不得是大人、但一個人心大、知道說話、辦事、就是身體小、也算不得是小、一個國、一個人比起來[4]同是一樣。[5]還有一件、人肯拜上帝、上帝能叫他的心靈、手裏辦的事樣樣都順、沒有不順的了、這樣人拜上帝是頂要緊的、是第一要緊的大事。

---

1. *Hsiang³ fuh²* 享福 To enjoy oneself; to be happy
2. *Lu³-mang³* 魯莽 Dull of understanding.
3. *Hao²-puh¹ tong³ si⁴* 毫不懂事 Utterly unversed in affairs.
4. *T'ong² shï⁴ ih¹-iang⁴* 同是一樣 Are all alike.
5. *Huan iu ih-chien* 還有一件 Still another matter; further.

# LESSON XVI. 課六十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 被 | *pei*$^{45}$ | A coverlet. Sign of the passive. To suffer. |
| 橋$^{2}$ | *ch‘* / *k* } *iao*$^{27}$ | A bridge. |
| 罷$^{4}$ | *pa* | Sign of the Imperative. Interrogative particle. |
| 蒙$^{2}$ | *meng* | To cover; to conceal. Sign of the passive. |
| 碰$^{4}$ | *p‘eng* | To strike against; to happen; to meet with. |
| 學$^{2}$ | *hs* { *ioh* / *üeh* | To learn; to study. To imitate; to mimic. A science. |
| 受$^{4}$ | *sheo* | To endure. To receive. Sign of the passive. |
| 廟$^{4}$ | *miao*$^{1.13}$ | A temple. |
| 想$^{3}$ | *hs* / *s* } *iang* | To think; to ponder. To call to mind. |
| 鄉$^{1}$ | *hsiang* | The country. |
| 弄$^{4}$ | *long* | To do; to act. |
| 平$^{2}$ | *p‘ing* | To weigh silver; even; level. Just. Common. |
| 內$^{4}$ | *n* } *ei* / *ui* | Within; inside; among. |
| 苦$^{3}$ | *k‘u* | Bitter. Sorrow; suffering. |
| 遭$^{1}$ | *tsao* | To meet with; to befall. A time. |
| 議$^{4}$ | *i* | To discuss; to talk over. |
| 領$^{3}$ | *ling* | To lead; to guide. To receive. |
| 村$^{1}$ | *ts‘* { *uen* / *en* | A village; a hamlet. |
| 另$^{4}$ | *ling* | Separate; besides; extra. Again. |
| 另$^{4}$ 外$^{4}$ | *ling-uai* | In addition; besides. |
| 商$^{1}$ { 量$^{2}$ / 議$^{4}$ | *shang* { *liang* / *i* | To talk over; to deliberate. |
| 吃$^{1}$ 苦$^{3*}$ | *ch‘ih-k‘u* | To suffer; to suffer hardship. |
| 本$^{3}$ 事$^{4}$ | *pen-sï* | Ability; capacity. |
| 已$^{3}$ 經$^{1}$ | *i-ching* | Already; Sign of past tense. |
| 學$^{2}$ 堂$^{2}$ | *hsioh-t‘ang* | A school; a schoolroom. |
| 學$^{2}$ 生$^{1}$ | *hsioh-seng* | Scholars; pupils. |
| 受$^{4}$ 罪$^{4*}$ | *sheo-tsui* | To bear suffering; to suffer |
| 綢$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ch‘eo-tsï* | Silk; pongee |
| 一$^{1}$ 尊$^{1}$ 菩$^{2}$ 薩$^{1}$ | *ih-tsuen p‘u-sa* | An idol. |

### Passive Voice: How expressed.

1. There are several ways of expressing the Passive Voice in Chinese. Sometimes no special word is needed as it is contained in the construction, especially with 是 *shï* and 的 *tih;* at other times special forms are used. These in turn, vary in their use according as the one on whom the action terminates is affected by it; as for example, whether he suffers or is benefited. The commonest and most colourless form is 被 *pei.* This is most usual in the South,

---

欲爲人上人, 先受苦中苦 *You must first endure much travail if you wish to come out on top.*

but in the North 叫 *chiao* or 敎 *chiao* largely replaces it in colloquial use.

*Sheo* 受 *tsao* 遭 and *ch‘ih* 吃, more commonly refer to anything met with or borne of an undesirable character, as loss, suffering, injury, etc. *Meng* 蒙 on the other hand points out a person as the recipient of some favour; as does 領 *ling* in certain connections; *e.g.*,

He was struck by a stone; *t‘a pei shïh-t‘eo ta liao* 他被石頭打了.

I don't know by whom that money was taken; *o puh chï-tao na ch‘ien chiao shui na liao ch‘ü* 我不知道那錢叫誰拿了去.

I have been injured by him; *o sheo-ko t‘a-tih hai* 我受過他的害.

They suffered greatly; *t‘a-men ch‘ih ta k‘u* 他們吃大苦.

She received two cash notes; *t‘a ling-liao liang-chang ch‘ien p‘iao* 他領了兩張錢票.

We are all recipients of the Saviour's grace; *o-men tu meng-liao Chiu-chu-tih en-huei* 我們都蒙了救主的恩惠.

## *I-ching* 已經: its Use and Force.

2. *I-ching* 已經 is stronger than 了 *liao* used alone, and when it precedes a verb 了 *liao* often follows it; *e.g.*,

I have already spoken twice; *o i-ching shoh-ko liang-huei* 我已經說過兩回.

He has already received the silver; *t‘a i-ching ling-liao in-tsï* 他已經領了銀子.

There is no help for it, the business is already ruined; *muh iu fah-tsï, sï-ch‘ing i-ching huai liao* 沒有法子, 事情已經壞了.

## *Pa* 罷: How and where used.

3. *Pa* 罷 may stand at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it stands at the beginning it usually takes 了 *liao*, and is commonly repeated. So used it expresses satisfaction or acquiescence. As a final particle it may be variously translated according as it stands as a sign of the Imperative, or denotes a query. Its special uses must be watched and gradually acquired.

It is enough! my son is yet alive; *pa-liao, pa-liao, o-tih rï-tsï huan tsai* 罷了罷了, 我的兒子還在.

I wonder if you have any boiling water? I am afraid not; *ni iu k‘ai shui pa? muh iu pa* 你有開水罷, 沒有罷.

Let us go; *o men tseo pa* 我們走罷.

Begone; *ch‘ü pa* 去罷.

There's an end of it, say no more about it; *suan liao pa, puh iao to shoh* 算了罷, 不要多說.

N.A. Care should be taken in using the fourth sentence, as it expresses a desire to be rid of a person in the strongest possible manner.

### *Shï* 使: How used.

**4.** *Shï* 使, Lesson VIII. was defined as ‘To cause.’ It and 呌 *chiao* or 敎 *chiao* is used to indicate end or purpose; to denote the cause or reason, and in some connections to point out the manner of action. In the South 給 *chih* is employed in a similar sense, but so used it is not heard in the North. *Chiao* 呌 is most commonly used and is rather more colloquial than 使 *shï*; it is often coupled with 好 *hao* with no change of meaning; *e.g.*,

You really put me in a difficulty; *ni chen chiao o uei nan* 你眞呌我爲難.

He speaks so as to make people angry; *t‘a shoh-hua chiao ren seng-ch‘i* 他說話呌人生氣.

Better not let him go; *puh k‘o-i chih t‘a ch‘ü* 不可以給他去.

We preach that men may trust the Saviour; *o-men chiang tao-li chiao ren k‘ao Chiu-chu* 我們講道理呌人靠救主.

Give me the money that I may return home; *pa ch‘ien chih o, chiao o hao huei chia ch‘ü* 把錢給我呌我好回家去.

### *Nei* 內 and *Uai* 外.

**5.** *Nei* 內 and *uai* are opposites, 外 *uai* denoting anything over and above, or external to something else; it is specially applied to relatives through the female branches; 內 *nei* has an inclusive sense; *e.g.*,

An outsider; *uai lu ren* 外路人.
Outside; overplus; *tsai uai* 在外.
A province other than that of the speaker; *uai seng* 外省.
An outsider; one outside the business; *uai hang* 外行.
An expert; ‘an insider’; *nei hang* 內行.
Within; included; *tsai nei* 在內.
Not included; *puh tsai nei* 不在內.
The interior—of a country; *nei ti* 內地.

*Tsai nei* 在內 and *tsai uai* 在外 are placed at the end of sentences; 另 *ling* or 另外 *ling-uai* usually at the beginning; *e.g.*,

That silk is extra; *na ch‘eo-tsï tsai uai* 那綢子在外.

The twenty cents is included in the reckoning; *rï chioh ch‘ien suan tsai nei* 二角錢算在內.

The 400 cash is not included; *na sï-peh ch‘ien puh tsai nei* 那四百錢不在內.

---

NOTES.—*a.* *Hsioh-fang* 學房 is also used for ‘school.’

*b.* Pupils are styled 門生 *men-seng* as well as 學生 *hsioh-seng*. A teacher would use the term in speaking to or of his own pupils.

*c.* The following expressions relating to the country will be found useful:—Down in the country; *tsai hsiang hsia* 在鄉下; To go to the country; *hsia hsiang* 下鄉: country people; *hsiang-hsia ren* 鄉下人.

[*See Lesson XXIX.*]

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十六課雜句

天冷, 我們要蓋被
這是另外的
我在街上碰見他
今天下大雨
這事你弄的不好
平二兩銀子
沒有法子
我們先要商議
我們家去罷
我吃過他的大苦
我已經受過他的兩回欺
救主受苦叫我們得救
菩薩沒有法子救人

## NOTES.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

It is cold, we must cover with a quilt; *t'ien leng, o-men iao kai pei.*
This is over and above; *chæ shï ling-uai tih.*
I met him on the street; *o tsai kiai shang p'eng-chien t'a.*
It is raining heavily to-day; *chin-t'ien hsia ta ü.*
You have made a mess of this; *chæ sï ni long tih puh hao.*
Weigh two taels; *p'ing rï liang in-tsï.*
No help for it; *muh iu fah-tsï.*
We must talk the matter over first; *o-men hsien iao shang-i.*
Let us go home; *o men chia ch'ü pa.*
I suffered greatly at his hands; *o ch'ïh-ko t'a-tih ta k'u.*
I have already been insulted by him twice; *o i-ching sheo-ko t'a-tih liang kuei ch'i.*
The Saviour suffered that we might be saved; *Chiu-chu sheo k'u chiao o-men teh chiu.*
Idols have no means of saving men; *p'u-sa muh iu fah-tsï chiu ren.*

*Translate*:—He was eaten by a lion. He has been ill for two months, and there is no means of curing him; I fear he cannot get better. He keeps two pigs, three dogs, and also keeps twenty chickens. On the 3rd of the 12th month it snowed heavily; on the 4th it rained heavily. It does not thunder in the winter, but in the summer. That scholar has great ability; his teacher says he will be a doctor. Dr. Li has opened a hospital outside the city; he sees patients every day; people come to see him, both from the city and the country. He writes a prescription and says, Take two doses a day. Some are unwilling to take foreign medicine and go to the native drug shop to buy native medicine. The medicine he dispenses is very efficacious When you go out of the city, go straight on; four *li* from the city there is the village of the Chang family; at the east end there is a temple, at the west end there is a school. You are there as soon as you cross the bridge. I think he has already gone. The tea-cups and the silk are included; the medicine is extra. The capital city of every country is much larger than the provincial capital. I cannot think of a plan; can you? Neither can I. That hospital is three storeys high; we have no house so high as that in this city. He bought the wrong medicine and was injured in consequence. Idols are made by men's hands, and men place them in temples. Some are made of wood, others of stone, gold or silver. They cannot walk, nor speak, nor save men; to pray to them is useless. The Saviour is able to save our souls; we may all accept His saving grace and obtain salvation.

Writing Exercise:—名 已 句 從 還 經 些 工 R. 48.

## READING LESSON XVI. 輯要第十六

London.

### 談叙倫敦

我們[1]上回不是[2]論說英國、和英國人麽、[3]這一回我要說英國京城的事。這座城可算是天下頂大的城、再沒有比他大的、城裏住的人有七八百萬、早年有城牆、有城門樓子、現在[4]城根還在、但人多起來牆算無用。城裏的街道修的好看、又大、又寬、又乾淨、天天有人[5]淨街、舖子也多、裏頭本國的各樣東西都有、還有外路來的東西很多。房子頂高、有三層樓的、有六七八層樓的。城東西南北都有火車站、人要下鄉不難、也不要出多少錢、鄉下人上來辦事、買東西、也不用多出錢。在城中有兩個大院、名叫[6]上議院、下議院、[7]大官和臣子在那裏頭商議一國要緊的事、年年皇上[8]親自去開這兩個院、對臣子說幾句話、勸他們[9]認眞辦事。城裏還有好些醫院、人生病、

---

1. *Shang*$^4$ *huei*$^2$ 上回 The last time. L. 22.
2. *Luen*$^4$ *shoh*$^1$ 論說 To discuss; to talk about. L. 28.
3. *Chæ ih huei* 這一回 This time.
4. *Ch'eng*$^2$ *ken*$^1$ 城根 Foundations of city wall.
5. *Ching*$^4$ *kiai*$^1$ 淨街 To clean the streets.
6. *Shang*$^4$ *i*$^4$*-üen*$^4$, *hsia*$^4$ *i*$^4$*-üen*$^4$ 上議院, 下議院 House of Lords and House of Commons.
7. *Ta*$^4$ *kuan*$^1$ 大官 High officials.
8. *Ch'in*$^1$*-tsï*$^4$ 親自 In person; personally
9. *Ren*$^4$*-chen*$^1$ 認眞 Honestly; faithfully

受害、可以進去養[1]病、有本事的醫生在那裏給他醫治、也不問他要一個大錢。還有大小禮拜堂、城中的大山頂上、有一個很大的禮拜堂、人從遠處能看見、坐滿了、可以坐得下五千多人、聽那麼多的人唱讚美詩、實在好聽的很、好像已經進了天門一樣。城裏的工人也多、有銀匠、銅匠、鐵匠、木匠、石匠、還有作鞋的、作饅頭的、作各樣吃的、穿的、戴的東西的。還有幾塊空地、裏頭有樹、有草、人沒事可以進去走來走去、天熱可以坐在樹下乘[2]涼、沒有不愛去的。人要從城這邊往城那邊去、在街上修的有電車、在[3]街底下也有電車、人出幾個錢進一個房子、坐滿了人、這房子就往[4]下落四五丈纔停[5]住、人就出來上車、到了車站再出來、進小房就上到街上來了。城中有的地方人造幾道橋、在上邊修鐵路、車也能從上頭走、眞比中國大不同。街街有信箱、人要買信票、條條大街有郵政局、人光要貼上信票、局裏的人就給他發了去。但城裏壞人不少、生[6]人到那裏去、要朋友領[7]

---

1. *Iang³ ping⁴* 養病 To have a disease treated; to lay up on account of sickness.
2. *Ch'eng⁴ liang²* 乘涼 To take the air; to cool off.
3. *Tsai⁴ . . . . ti³-hsia⁴* 在底下 Below; underneath.
4. *Uang³ hsia⁴ loh⁴* 往下落 To drop down; to descend.
5. *T'ing²-chu⁴* 停住 To come to a standstill; to stop. L. 24.
6. *Seng ren* 生人 Inexperienced persons; strangers.
7. *Ling³ lu⁴* 領路 To guide; to lead.

路、他就不得吃大苦。城中有一條大河、人來往過河、不用坐擺[1]渡船、因有十幾道大鐵橋已經修好了、無論是人、是車、是牲口、經過都不要錢、還有些船[2]塢、有船從海外來要修[3]補、就進去修補。城北還有動物[4]園、裏頭有獅子、熊[5]、鹿[6]、老[7]虎、豹[8]子、象[9]、和各樣的雀[10]鳥、還有蛇[11]在玻[12]璃房內、人站在外頭可以看、蛇卻[13]沒[14]有法子咬[15]人、若咬着人、眞是了[16]不得、因爲那些蛇頂毒[17]、一咬着人、他的毒[18]氣定要把人毒死。還有猴[19]子在鐵[20]網籠裏頭怪[21]難看。在城東有一個高樓、裏頭有皇上坐寶[22]座戴的冠[23]冕、和他手裏拿的金[24]杖、還有他穿戴的寶[25]器、這些東西値[26]無數的銀子、因有重[27]價珍[28]

1. *Pai$^3$ tu$^4$ ch'uan$^2$* 擺渡船 A ferry boat.
2. *Ch'uan$^2$-u$^3$* 船塢 Dry docks ; docks.
3. *Hsiu-pu* 修補 To repair.
4. *Tong$^4$-uh$^4$ üen$^2$* 動物園 Zoological gardens.
5. *Hsiong$^2$* 熊 A bear.
6. *Luh$^4$* 鹿 A deer.
7. *Lao$^3$-hu$^3$* 老虎 A tiger.
8. *Pao$^4$-tsï$^3$* 豹子 A leopard.
9. *Hsiang$^4$* 象 An elephant.
10. *Ch'ioh$^3$-niao$^3$* 雀鳥 A bird ; birds. L. 22.
11. *Shæ$^2$* 蛇 A snake ; snakes. Called *ch'ang$^2$-ch'ong$^2$* 長蟲 in the North.
12. *Po$^1$-li$^2$* 玻璃 Glass.
13. *Ch'ioh$^4$* 卻 But ; an adversative particle. L. 18.
14. *Muh iu fah-tsï* 沒有法子 No way out of ; no means whereby.
15. *Iao$^3$* 咬 To bite. V. 6.
16. *Liao$^3$ puh$^1$ teh$^4$* 了不得 Very serious ; dreadful ; terrible. V. 4.
17. *Tuh$^2$* 毒 Poisonous ; poison.
18. *Tuh$^2$-ch'i$^4$* 毒氣 Virus ; poison.
19. *Heo$^2$-tsï$^3$* 猴子 Monkeys.
20. *T'ieh$^3$-uang$^3$-long$^2$* 鐵網籠 Iron wire cage.
21. *Kuai$^4$* 怪 Very. An intensive applied to things disagreeable or offensive. 怪難看 extremely ugly.
22. *Pao$^3$ tso$^4$* 寶座 A throne.
23. *Kuan$^1$-mien$^3$* 冠冕 A crown.
24. *Chin$^1$ chang$^4$* 金杖 A sceptre.
25. *Pao$^3$ ch'i$^4$* 寶器 Ornaments ; adornments.
26. *Chïh$^4$* 値 Value ; to be worth. L. 27.
27. *Chong$^4$ chia$^4$* 重價 High-priced ; very valuable.
28. *Chen$^1$-chu$^1$* 珍珠 Precious stones.

珠鑲[1]在上頭、可算是無[2]價之寶。在城西北有中國欽[3]差的衙[4]門、還有跟他去辦[5]文案的、當[6]差的、跟也住在那裏頭、其中有本事的、住[7]久了、也會說一口的好英國話、正[8]是、近[9]朱者赤、近墨者黑。但話[10]長紙短、不能把城裏的一切事說盡了、若日[11]後你我得空、我可以領你去看看、好不好、

---

1. *Hsiang*$^1$ 鑲 Inlaid.
2. *U*$^2$ *chia*$^4$ *chï*$^1$ *pao*$^3$ 無價之寶 Priceless.
3. *Ch'in-ch'ai*$^1$ 欽差 Ambassador; Imperial Commissioner.
4. *Ia*$^2$-*men*$^2$ 衙門 Official residence; court of law.
5. *Pan*$^4$ *uen*$^2$ *an*$^4$ *tih*$^1$ 辦文案的 Those who attend to official correspondence; secretaries.
6. *Tang*$^4$-*ch'ai-tih*$^1$ 當差的 Yâmen runners; attendants on an official.
7. *Chu*$^4$ *chiu*$^3$ *liao*$^3$ 住久了 To reside for a long time.
8. *Cheng*$^4$ *shï*$^4$ 正是 An expression used before quotations—'As it is said'
9. *Chin*$^4$ *chu*$^1$ *chæ*$^3$ *ch'ih*$^4$, *chin*$^4$ *meh*$^4$ *chæ*$^3$ *heh*$^1$ 近朱者赤近墨者黑 He who goes near to red becomes red; he who goes near to ink becomes black i.e., we are affected by our surroundings, associations, etc.
10. *Hua*$^4$ *ch'ang*$^2$ *chï*$^3$ *tuan*$^3$ 話長紙短 "Words are long and paper short"—more than can be said.
11. *Rïh*$^4$-*heo*$^4$ 日後 In the future; bye and bye.

## LESSON XVII. 課七十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 當$^1$ | *tang* | Ought. To be equal to. Then. Read *tang*$^4$. To regard as. To pawn. |
| 與$^3$ | *ü* | With; by; to. To give. |
| 所$^3$ | *so* | That which; whatsoever. A place. A cause. N.A. |
| 管$^3$ | *kuan* | To care; to control. A tube. N. A. |
| 燒$^1$ | *shao* | To burn; to heat. To roast. Fever. |
| 相$^1$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *iang* | Mutual; reciprocal. |
| 哄$^3$ | *hong* | To cheat; to deceive. |
| 跟$^1$ | *ken* | To follow. And; with. To apply to. The heel. |
| 贖$^2$ | *shuh* | To redeem; to atone; to ransom. |
| 求$^2$ | *ch'*<br>*k* } *iu* | To seek; to implore; to beg. |
| 面$^4$ | *mien* | A surface; a side The front; before. Personally. N. A. |
| 該$^1$ | *kai* | Should; ought. To owe. |
| 花$^1$ | *hua*$^{6,34}$ | Flowers; to spend. Cotton. To waste. |
| 彼$^3$ | *p* { *i*<br>*ei* | That; the other There. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 割$^1$ | *koh* | To cut; to hack; to reap. To part with. |
| 此$^3$ | *ts‘i* | This. Here. |
| 便$^4$ | *pien* | Convenient. Advantageous. Then; in that case. Read *p‘ien*$^1$. Cheap. |
| 隨$^2$ | *sui* | To follow; to accompany. Forthwith. Subsequently. |
| 加$^1$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ia* | To add to; to increase. |
| 跑$^{3,2}$ | *p‘ao* | To run; to gallop; to hurry. |
| 費$^4$ | *fei* | To waste. To expend. Expenditure. |
| 干$^1$ | *kan* | To oppose. To offend against. To concern. Results. |
| 通$^1$ | *t‘ong* | Through. Universal; all. To understand. |
| 通$^1$ 行$^2$ | *t‘ong-hsing* | Everywhere current. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 出$^1$ 閣$^2$ | *ch‘uh-koh* | To marry—of a woman. |
| 出$^1$ 門$^{2*}$ | *ch‘uh-men* | To travel. To get married—of a woman. |
| 無$^2$ 論$^4$ | *u-luen* | No matter; irrespective of. |
| 跟$^1$ { 從$^2$<br>隨$^2$ | *ken* { *ts‘ong*<br>*sui* | To follow. |
| 便$^1$ 當$^4$ | *pien-tang* | Convenient; opportune. |
| 彼$^3$ 此$^3$ | *pi-ts‘i* | That; this—both. Mutually. |
| 相$^1$ 干$^1$ | *hsiang-kan* | Concern; interest. |
| 隨$^2$ 便$^{4*}$ | *sui-pien* | To please oneself; as you like. |
| 在$^1$ 底$^3$ 下$^4$ | *tsai-ti-hsia* | Below; underneath. |
| 在$^4$ 面$^4$ 前$^2$ | *tsai-mien-ch‘ien* | Before; in the presence of. |

## Concurrence: how expressed.

1. Numerical order is usually indicated by 第 *ti* before numbers. Some exceptions were noticed in Lesson V. Section 2; other additional exceptions are also herewith given. For instance, in the recapitulation of events, or narration of them in regular sequence 第 *ti* is not required; such expressions being the equivalent of phrases like ‘In the first place’; ‘In the next place’; ‘On the one hand; ‘On the other hand’; ‘Both . . . . . and;’ etc. This last phrase may either indicate: *a*, simultaneous action; *b*, the possession of more than one quality; *c*, the enumeration of events. The Chinese equivalents are employed in similar applications. The following expressions are those most commonly used in this construction: 一 層 *ih ts‘eng*; 一 面 *ih-mien*; 一 邊 *ih-pien*; 一 來 *ih-lai*; 二 來 *rï-lai*; 又 . . . . 又 *iu* . . . . *iu*; 隨 . . . . 隨 *sui* . . . . *sui*; 一 不 *ih puh*; 二 不 *rï puh*; *e.g.*,

---

吃 不 盡 的 苦, 學 不 盡 的 怪 *There is no end to the experience that may be gained, nor to the suffering endured—in gaining it.*

**In the first place** I have no time, and **in the second** place no money; *o ih-ts'eng muh iu kong-fu; rï-ts'eng muh iu ch'ien* 我一層沒有工夫, 二層沒有錢.

He is unwilling in the first place, and unable in the second; *t'a ih puh k'en, rï puh neng* 他一不肯, 二不能.

In the first place the doctor had no ability; and in the second place the medicine was of no value; *ih-lai i-seng muh iu pen-sï, rï-lai ioh puh ling* 一來醫生沒有本事, 二來藥不靈.

That child cries as she walks; *na-ko hai-tsï sui tseo sui k'uh* 那個孩子隨走隨哭.

He preaches as he goes; *t'a ih-mien tseo, ih-mien ch'uan-chiao* 他一面走, 一面傳教.

Mr. Li has both wealth and land; *Li hsien-seng iu ch'ien iu ti* 李先生有錢有地.

### Result of Actions: how indicated.

2. The effect or result of an action which is commonly indicated in English by such words as 'through,' 'by,' etc., as 'He lost his sight through lightning,' is expressed in Chinese by a verb followed by an adjective or any word that does duty for it, without anything special to shew instrumentality; *i.e.*, the verb shews the cause, the word following, the effect; *e.g.*,

He is blind through crying; *t'a-tih ien-ching k'uh huai-liao* 他的眼睛哭壞了.

My clothes are dirty through being hung up; *o-tih i-shang kua tsang-liao* 我的衣裳掛髒了.

This pair of shoes is ruined by wear; *chœ-shuang hsiai-tsï ch'uan huai-liao* 這雙鞋子穿壞了.

### Relation and Lack of Relation

3. Idiomatic phrases which express lack of relation, such as 'No matter'; 'Just as you like'; etc. scarcely fall under any well-defined grammatical rule. Generally speaking they convey the idea of unconcern and lack of interest, or else indicate a careless assent in view of something to follow. The subjoined expressions are used to express these ideas:—

I don't care; *o puh kuan* 我不管.

Never mind who it is; *puh uen shï shui* (or *na-ih-ko*) 不問是誰, or 那一個).

No matter what you say, he is unwilling; *ni u-luen tsen-mo shoh, t'a chiu-shï puh k'en* 你無論怎麼說, 他就是不肯.

Just as you like about going; *ch'ü puh ch'ü sui ni-tih pien* 去不去隨你的便.

He talks quite beside the mark; *t'a shoh hsie puh hsiang kan tih hua* 他說些不相干的話.

It has nothing to do with me; *chœ sï ü o u kan* 這事與我無干.

Take no notice of him whatever he says; *puh luen t‘a shoh shen-mo puh iao li t‘a* 不論他說甚麼不要理他.

On the other hand the idea of relationship, such as is denoted in English by ‘mutual’; ‘reciprocal’; etc., is usually indicated by 相 *hsiang* before a verb; or by 彼此 *pi-ts‘i*; *e.g.*,

This has to do with him; *chœ sï ü t‘a iu hsiang kan* 這事與他有相干.

We all meet here to-day; *o-men chin-t‘ien tu tsai-chœ-li hsiang huei* 我們今天都在這裏相會.

To love one another; *pi-ts‘i hsiang ai* 彼此相愛.

### *So* 所 as a Relative Pronoun.

4. The Relative Pronoun 所 *so* used in a relative clause, precedes the verb; the noun on which it is dependent standing at the end of the clause; i.e., its position is before the noun, and not as in English after it; *e.g.*,

The books which we read is, ‘The we which read books’; *o-men so nien-tih shu* 我們所念的書; *shu*, the books; *so*, which; *o-men*, we; *nien*, read.

The doctrine which we preach; *o-men so chiang-tih tao-li* 我們所講的道理.

The flowers that he bought; *t‘a so mai-tih hua* 他所買的花.

The words that were spoken; *so shoh-tih hua* 所說的話.

The men that came; *so lai-tih ren* 所來的人.

It is my business to do it; *chœ shï o so tang pan tih sï* 這是我所當辦的事.

*So* 所 has also an inclusive sense, which is emphasized by the addition of 有 *iu*; *e.g.*,

All the things that I have; *o so-iu-tih tong-hsi* 我所有的東西.

The whole of his money is here; *t‘a so-iu-tih ch‘ien tu tsai-chœ-li* 他所有的錢都在這裏.

### *Tang* 當: Some uses of.

5. *Tang* 當 is a very difficult word to use, and a beginner is apt to be dazed by the various meanings it takes on in various connections. It may be helpful to consider here three of its principal uses:—

*a.* It stands for what is, in the nature of things, fitting or right. Thus used it sometimes stands alone, and at other times has 本 *pen* or 該 *kai* joined to it; *e.g.*,

You should act in this way; *kai-tang chœ-iang hsing* 該當這樣行

You have no right to curse him; *ni puh tang ma t‘a* 你不當罵他.

It is properly my duty to say this; *o pen-tang shoh chœ hua* 我本當說這話.

*b.* To stand for; to represent; to regard as.

Take, for example, the sentence: He regards money as of no value; *t‘a na ch‘ien puh tang ch‘ien iong* 他拿錢不當錢用;

i.e., *t‘a*, he; *iong*, uses; *na*, introducing object; *ch‘ien*, money; *puh tang*, as though it did not stand in the place of (*i.e.*, as if it were anything else than) *ch‘ien*, money. Or, I have fallen into his trap, *o shang-liao t‘a-tih tang* 我上了他的當; *o*, I; *shang-liao*, have gone into; *t‘a-tih*, his; *tang*, what stood in the place of—what I thought it was—trap.

Will you kindly pawn this for me; *ch‘ing ni chih o tang ko tang* 請你給我當個當.

He has gone to redeem a pledge; *t‘a shang tang p‘u-tsï shuh tang ch‘ü* 他上當舖子贖當去.

I was taken in by him to-day; *o chin-t‘ien shang t‘a ih-ko tang* 我今天上他一個當.

Whom do you take him to be? *ni pa t‘a tang shen-mo ren?* 你把他當甚麼人.

He makes the false stand for the true, the true for the false, *t‘a pa chia-tih tang tso chen-tih, chen-tih tang tso chia-tih* 他把假的當做眞的, 眞的當做假的.

A pawn ticket; *ih-chang tang p‘iao-tsï* 一張當票子.

c. At the time of; to serve in the capacity of.

You cannot go and return on the same day; *tang-t‘ien ch‘ü, puh neng huei-lai* 當天去, 不能回來.

At that time I was ill; *na-ko tang-k‘eo o iu-liao ping* 那個當口我有了病.

Chang Iu-fah is acting in the capacity of a teacher; *Chang Iu-fah tang hsien-seng* 章有發當先生

### *Ken* 跟: Idiomatic use of.

6. In addition to its primary meaning of ‘to follow,’ 跟 *ken* has a few idiomatic uses with which one needs to be familiar; *e.g.*,

I studied Mandarin under Mr. Hai; *o ken* (or *ts‘ong*) *Hai hsien-seng hsioh kuan-hua* 我跟 (or 從) 海先生學官話.

He learned how to calculate from Mr. Li; *t‘a ken Li Lao-pan hsioh suan-fah* 他跟李老板學算法.

I went with Mr. Li to Peking; *o ken Li hsien-seng shang Peh-ching ch‘ü* 我跟李先生上北京去.

They applied to him for money; *t‘a-men ken t‘a iao ch‘ien* 他們跟他要錢.

### *Fei* 費: How used.

7. *Fei* 費 carries with it the idea of putting one self about; or of going to some trouble; *e.g.*,

To expend effort; troublesome; *fei sï* 費事.

I put myself to no end of trouble on his account; *puh chï-tao uei t‘a fei-liao to-shao sï* 不知道為他費了多少事.

This is a troublesome affair; *chœ sï chen fei lih* 這事眞費力.

You have put yourself about for me; *hsien-seng uei o fei-liao hsin* 先生爲我費了心

It may often be translated by the word 'expenses,' the word which indicates the cause of the expense immediately preceding it; *e.g.*,

The expenses are heavy; *iong-fei* or *fei-iong ta* 用費 or 費用大.

The expense of cart hire was considerable; *ch'œ fei puh hsiao* 車費不小.

His father gave him 400 cash for travelling expenses; *t'a-tih fu-ch'in song t'a sï peh ch'ien tih lu-fei* 他的父親送他四百錢的路費.

---

NOTES.—*a.* As a N. A., *so* 所 refers to a block of buildings composed of several *chien* 間.

[*See Lesson XXIX.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

He fears neither God nor man; *t'a ih puh p'a shen, rï puh p'a ren.*
This is very inconvenient; *chæ hen puh pien-tang.*
He has gone on a journey; *t'a ch'uh men ch'ü liao.*
Is this expression generally understood? *chæ-chü hua t'ong-hsing puh t'ong-hsing?*
They were burnt to death; *t'a-men shao sï liao.*
How much do you owe him? *ni kai t'a to-shao ch'ien?*
Add a little more; *tsai chia shang ih-tien.*
He cannot manage that child; *t'a kuan puh choh na-ko hai-tsï.*
They prayed for rain but in vain; *t'a-men ch'iu ü ch'iu puh hsia-lai.*
He spent a great deal of money; *t'a hua ch'ien puh shao.*
I am going whether or no; *u-luen tsen-mo-iang o iao ch'ü.*
I was taken in when I bought this; *mai chæ-ko chiu shang-liao tang.*
The Saviour redeemed us from sin; *Chiu-chiu uei o-men shuh tsui.*

*Translate:*—From whom did you learn Mandarin? Just as he likes; (if) he comes well and good; (if) he does not very well. It is a troublesome business learning English; the books are difficult to read; the words are difficult to write, but come what may I will learn it. No matter whether they were lions or tigers he did not fear them. The teacher struck the scholar a blow and destroyed one of his eyes. What he does, does not agree with what he says. That coolie carried my box and spoilt it in the carriage. On the one hand he talks unreasonably, and on the other, he curses as soon as he opens his mouth; take no notice of him. He learnt to use the abacus from Mr. Chang. No matter what he does, I cannot keep up with him. Follow me. My heel is injured. I took him for a doctor, but I mistook my man. That man named Li is very poor; on the 6th of last month he went to the pawn shop and pawned a garment; now that the weather is cold he wants to redeem it and cannot, and cannot think of a plan; you think of one for him. This matter has nothing to do with me; I cannot look after his business. I have been taken in by him twice. How will it do for you to go with me? He owes you Tls. 2¾; why don't you apply to him for them? I did so yesterday, and he said it was not convenient to repay it just now, but he would see later on. (If) we pray to God, He will hear our prayer More than 1,800 years ago the Saviour died for us on the cross in order to redeem us from sin; grace such as this is higher than the heavens, beyond the thought of man.

Writing Exercise:—當所此意思怎夫點.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十七課雜句

他一不怕神, 二不怕人
這很不便當
他出遠門
這句話, 通行不通行
他們燒死了
你該他多少錢
再加上一點
他管不着那個孩子
他們求雨, 求不下來
他花錢不少
無論怎麽樣我要去
買這個, 就上了當
救主爲我們贖罪

## NOTES.

## READING LESSON XVII. 輯要第十七

### The Unwary Youth I.

癡心出洋

這十幾年以[1]來、中國把從古時候所守[2]的章[3]程廢[4]了、看[5]重西[6]學、熱[6a]學、地[7]學格[7a]物、算[8]學光[9]學、化[10]學、代[11]數、和各樣的外國學[12]問、自[13]從改[14]了章程以後、有許多年輕的人、心裏想、若能跑到外國去學過一[15]年半載、就能把一[16]肚子的學問帶回來、卻[16a]不想、一來要有天[17]分、二來要有工夫、纔能學[18]到好處、花錢更[19]不用說、有天分的也

---

1. *I$^{3}$-lai$^{2}$* 以來 This expression follows some reference to time and is not used alone: 這十幾年以來 For more than ten years past.

2. *Sheo$^{3}$* 守 To observe; to keep. L. 26.

3. *Chang$^{1}$-ch'eng$^{2}$* 章程 Procedure; policy; set of rules; regulations. V. 6.

4. *Fei$^{4}$* 廢 To abolish; to do away with.

5. *K'an$^{4}$ chong$^{4}$* 看重 To attach importance to; to emphasize.

6. *Hsi hsioh* 西學 Western learning. 6*a*. *Reh-hsioh* 熱$^{4}$學$^{2}$ Heat, as a science.

7. *Ti-hsioh* 地學 Geology. 7*a*. *Keh$^{2}$ uh$^{2}$* 格物 Natural science.

8. *Suan hsioh* 算學 Mathematics; arithmetic.

9. *Kuang$^{1}$ hsioh* 光學 Light—as a scientific study.

10. *Hua$^{4}$ hsioh* 化學 Chemistry.

11. *Tai$^{4}$-su$^{4}$* 代數 Algebra.

12. *Hsioh-uen* 學問 Learning; education.

13. *Tsï ts'ong . . . . i-heo* 自從 . . . . 以後 From . . . . till afterwards; since: 自從 is used in correlation with 以後 and 以前=from . . . . henceforward, etc.

14. *Kai$^{3}$* 改 To alter; to change.

15. *Ih$^{1}$ nien$^{2}$ pan$^{4}$ tsai$^{3}$* 一年半載 A year or thereabouts.

16. *Ih$^{1}$ tu$^{2}$-tsï tih* 一肚子的 A bellyful: the belly is regarded as the repository of knowledge. 16*a*. *Ch'ioh* 卻$^{4}$ But.

17. *T'ien-fen* 天分 Natural endowment or gift; 'parts.'

18. *Hsioh tao hao-ch'u* 學到好處 To study to good purpose.

19. *Keng puh iong shoh* 更不用說 It is quite needless to say.

要[1]用工夫、沒有天分的就是用工夫也是無用、俗話說的不錯、刀[2]鈍石頭[3]磨、人鈍[4]沒奈何、所以如今有人從[5]日本回來、好像[6]半缾醋、[7]亂搖亂響、卻不想[8]整缾是半點不響了。比方、空船[9]漂在水面上[10]顯爲高大、船[11]裝滿了載、雖不顯高大、卻[12]遇見大風大[13]浪、還是[14]穩當[15]反不了、人也是一樣。我現在要把一個[16]自是的少年人所[17]遭遇的事、述說一徧、請念這課的少年人、[18]不要見怪。早幾年有個二十幾歲的人、姓雷、名叫空發、念了幾年書、心裏想百事都通、沒有不懂的事、有一天他在街上碰見一個[19]有名無實窮

---

1. *Iong kong-fu* 用工夫 To give time to; to work at—as study. Note difference of usage, 工夫 being applied both to time and to work.

2. *Tuen*$^4$ 鈍 Blunt; dull-witted.

3. *Mo*$^2$ 磨 To rub; to sharpen.

4. *Muh*$^4$ *nai*$^4$ *ho*$^2$ 沒奈何 No resource; no help for it.

5. *Rih-pen* 日本 Japan.

6. *Pan*$^4$ *p'ing*$^2$ *ts'u*$^4$ 半缾醋 Half a bottle of vinegar.

7. *Luan*$^4$ *iao*$^2$ *luan*$^4$ *hsiang*$^3$ 亂搖亂響 When violently shaken makes a violent noise.

8. *Cheng*$^3$ *p'ing*$^2$ *shï*$^4$ *pan*$^4$ *tien*$^3$ *puh*$^1$ *hsiang*$^3$ 整缾是半點不響 A full bottle doesn't make the slightest sound.

9. *P'iao*$^1$ 漂 To float.

10. *Hsien*$^3$ *uei*$^2$ 顯爲 It appears to be.

11. *Chuang*$^1$ *man*$^3$ *liao*$^3$ *tsai*$^4$ 裝滿了載 Fully laden.

12. *Ü*$^4$*-chien*$^4$ 遇見 To meet with; to happen.

13. *Lang*$^4$ 浪 Waves.

14. *Uen*$^3$*-tang*$^1$ 穩當 Steady; firm.

15. *Fan*$^3$ *puh*$^1$ *liao*$^3$ 反不了 Will not turn over.

16. *Tsï shï* 自是 Self-opinionated.

17. *Tsao*$^1$ *ü*$^4$ 遭遇 To meet with: differs from 遇見 in that it is applied to things disagreeable or distasteful.

18. *Puh iao chien kuai* 不要見怪 Don't be offended.

19. *Iu ming u shih* 有名無實 To have a name without reality; sham.

念書的、姓白、名叫少理、少理就問他、你跟我學法文怎麽樣、你我[1]相好錢算小事、跟我學、不到六個月就會說一口的法國話、字也要認識的不少、空發就滿心滿肯去學了、幾個月、拿上了幾十兩銀子、謝謝少理、[2]還不知道是被少理哄了、不過學了幾句法國話、本不彀用的、他想是已經學會法國話了。後來他和本家的人商議、可以到法國去、但他父母怕要錢太多、去也無用、算是白費錢、白費力、空發卻不信、就去問朋友借了一二百塊錢、又把幾件綢子衣裳當了、把當票放在他哥哥那裏、就到上海去、買了法國三等船票、上船去了、想現在通法文、就能通天下的事。頭幾天颳了大風、他[3]暈船不想吃飯、就病的不能行動、頭也抬不起來、光能從早到晚想家、想到他的老母親、但這也是白想、一來母親來不了、就是能來、也不能叫他抬起頭來、還怕母親也[4]病倒了。船上的人看他的臉、聽他所說的話、知道他是外路人、就拿他當外路人看、誰也沒有工夫管他的事、他就是問他們要熱水洗臉、要手巾、要茶、他們也不懂他的話、想

---

[1] *Hsiang hao* 相好 On good terms.

[2] *Huan puh chi-tao* 還不知道 Still ignorant of the fact that. . . .

[3] *Üin$^{4}$ ch'uan* 暈船 Was sea sick.

[4] *Ping tao liao* 病倒了 Laid prostrate by sickness.

他說的是中國話、就是他們懂的一兩句、也假裝不懂、叫他眞是爲難[1]、他心裏就細細的想、說、[2]這還是我上少理的當了、他教我的是些不相干的話、我早曉得萬不能跟他學、也萬不能給他那麼多的銀子、我這一回算錯出了門、求[3]老天給我開一條回老家的路就好了、他先想比人高、又細想不如人、想到這裏、沒有法子、[4]忍不住就哭起來了、哭了一茶碗苦水、但哭也無用、他這一哭[5]同船的人都笑起來、叫他生氣、又叫他越發難受、心裏說、哎呀、[6]我的娘阿、我的娘阿、這眞[7]要我這一條命喇[8]、再等一等、就一面罵少理、一面睡覺、等到天好了再想法子罷、眼睛不是[9]洞庭湖。要知道後來怎麼樣、吃了甚麼苦、遭了甚麼罪、碰見甚麼事、請看下課就知道了。

---

1. *Uei nan* 爲難 To be in difficulties.

2. *Chæ hai shï* 這還是 In this connection=This is after all . . . . ; this is nothing but. . . .

3. *Lao t'ien* 老天 Heaven ; Providence.

4. *Ren³ puh³ chu⁴* 忍不住 Unable to restrain—as feelings, etc.

5. *T'ong-ch'uan tih ren* 同船的人 Fellow-passengers.

6. *O-tih niang² a* 我的娘阿 Oh my mother! Chinese commonly call out for their mothers when in distress.

7. *Iao . . . . ming* 要 . . . . 命 Take all the life out of.

8. *Lah¹* 喇 A final particle.

9. *Tong⁴-t'ing² hu²* 洞庭湖 The Tongting lake in Hunan.

# LESSON XVIII. 課八十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 連$^2$ | *lien* | To connect. Including; even. |
| 犯$^4$ | *fan* | To transgress; to offend. Worth while. |
| 倒$^3$ | *tao* | To fall over. Read *tao*$^4$. To pour out. On the contrary; but. |
| 感$^3$ | *kan* | To influence; to affect. To thank. |
| 旁$^2$ | *p‘ang* | By the side of. Other. |
| 自$^4$ | *tsï* | Self; personal. From. Naturally. |
| 己$^3$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *i* | Private; self. |
| 必$^4$ | *pih* | Certainly; must; necessary. |
| 若$^4$ | *roh* | If; supposing. To be like. |
| 雖$^1$ | *sui* | Though; even if. |
| 然$^2$ | *ran* | Yes. Still; nevertheless; on the other hand. |
| 旣$^4$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *i* | Since. A sign of the past tense. |
| 因$^1$ | *in* | A cause. Because; in consequence of. |
| 以$^3$ | *i* | By; with. To regard as. Forms part of some prepositions and adverbs. |
| 喜$^3$ | *hsi* | Pleasure; joy. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 卻$^4$ | *ch‘*<br>*k* } *ioh* | Yet; still; etc. To reject. |
| 若$^4$ 是$^4$ | *roh-shï* | If; supposing. |
| 尾 巴$^1$ | *i*<br>*uei* } *-pa*$^1$ | Tail of an animal. |
| 碼$^3$ 頭$^2$ | *ma-t‘eo*$^1$ | A jetty; wharf; mart. |
| 雖$^1$ 然$^2$ | *sui-ran* | Although; even if. |
| 自$^4$ 己$^3$ | *tsï-chi* | Self; own. |
| 所$^3$ 以$^3$ | *so-i* | Therefore; hence. |
| 歡$^1$ 喜$^3$ | *huan-hsi* | Pleased with; fond of. |
| 旣$^4$ 然$^2$ | *chi-ran* | Since; it being so |
| 辮$^1$ 子$^3$ | *pien-tsï* | A queue. |
| 因$^1$ 爲$^4$ | *in-uei* | Because. |
| 聖$^4$ 靈$^2$ | *Sheng-ling* | The Holy Spirit. |
| 感$^3$ 動$^4$ | *kan-tong* | To influence; to move. |
| 在$^4$ 旁$^2$ 邊$^1$ | *tsai-p‘ang-pien* | By the side; by the side of. |
| 差$^1$ 不$^1$ 多$^1$ | *ch‘a-puh-to* | Almost; nearly; not far out. |

### Reflexive Pronoun *tsï-chi* 自己.

1. The word 自己 *tsï-chi* may be added to pronouns in Chinese, like the word ‘self’ in English, and with the same force; viz., either to impart emphasis, as, I *myself*; or to shew that the action is turned back upon the agent, as, I hurt *myself*. *Ch‘in* 親 and *pen* 本 are also used with the same meaning, but differ from 自己 *tsï-chi* in that they have no possessive form; *e.g.*,

---

在家千日好，出門時時難 *At home it is pleasant all the time; abroad it is unpleasant continually.*

I wrote this myself; *chœ shï o ch'in-tsï hsie tih* 這是我親自寫的.
He saw it with his own eyes; *t'a ch'in-ien k'an-chien* 他親眼看見.
I struck him with my own hand; *o ch'in-sheo ta t'a* 我親手打他.
I myself am also sick; *o pen-shen ie hai ping* 我本身也害病.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Myself; | *o* | *tsï-* | 我 | 自己 and so with the plural forms. |
| Thyself; | *ni* | *chi* | 你 | |
| Himself; | *t'a* | | 他 | |
| My own; | *o* | *tsï-* | 我 | 自己的 and so with the plural forms. |
| Thine own; | *ni* | *chi-* | 你 | |
| His own; | *t'a* | *tih* | 他 | |

### Either . . . or; Neither . . . nor.

2. Sentences containing correlative phrases, *i.e.*, introduced by "either . . . or"; "neither . . . nor"; "both . . . and"; are variously translated. Sometimes a Chinese equivalent *hai* 還 . . . *hai* 還, or *ie* 也 . . . *ie* 也 is used, at other times it is omitted as being obviously understood; *e.g.*,

Is it you or he? *shï ni shï t'a?* 是你是他.

Did he say it or did you? *shï t'a shoh-tih shï ni shoh-tih?* 是他說的, 是你說的.

If he did not say it, then you did; *puh shï t'a shoh-tih chiu-shï ni shoh-tih* 不是他說的就是你說的.

Did you do it or did he? *hai shï ni tso-tih, hai shï t'a tso-tih?* 還是你做的, 還是他做的.

He worships neither God nor idols; *t'a ie puh pai Shang-ti, ie puh pai p'u-sa* 他也不拜上帝, 也不拜菩薩.

Neither has he much ability; *t'a ie muh iu shen-mo pen-sï* 他也沒有甚麼本事.

### Supposition: how expressed.

**3.** Sentences indicating supposition or condition are formed by 若 *roh* or 若是 *roh-shï*; by 要 *iao* or 要是 *iao shï*; and by 不是 *puh shï* . . . . 就是 *chiu-shï* followed by the corresponding correlative 就 *chiu*, 也 *ie*, 還 *huan*, and some others. Euphony usually decides whether 若 *roh* shall be used alone or not, the addition of 是 *shï* does not affect the meaning. One of the things that makes good Chinese is the right use of suitable words—correlative conjunctions—to express the relation between sentences; but as usage is the thing that decides, it is difficult to lay down any definite rules, save to point out that 就 *chiu* and 也 *ie* are among the commonest connectives.

The consideration of 若 *roh* has been left to this Lesson, as it is a fault of beginners to use it too freely. Supposition is very frequently implied rather than expressed; the use of 就 *chiu* or 也 *ie* at the beginning of the second part—the 'turn'—of the sentence being sufficient to indicate it. As between 若 *roh* and 要 *iao* colloquial usage prefers 要 *iao* rather than 若 *roh*, 若 *roh* being somewhat bookish; *e.g.*,

If I see him I will tell you; *o roh k'an-chien t'a chiu kao-su ni* 我若看見他就告訴你.

If you want it I will give it to you; *ni roh iao o chiu chih ni* 你若要我就給你.

If it had not been you that said it, I should not have believed it; *roh puh shï ni shoh tih o chiu puh hsin* 若不是你說的我就不信.

If you wish to go, well and good; *ni roh iao ch'ü ie k'o-i* 你若要去也可以.

If he had not cursed me, should I have struck him? *roh shï t'a puh ma o, o hai neng ta t'a mo?* 若是他不罵我,我還能打他麼

If it is not Mr. Li then it is Mr. Chang; *puh shï Li hsien-seng, chiu-shï Chang hsien-seng* 不是李先生,就是張先生.

### *Chi-ran* 旣然 and *Sui-ran* 雖然.

**4.** *Chi* 旣 and 雖 *sui* are used with or without 然 *ran*, but such a use is in most cases more bookish than colloquial. The addition of 是 *shï* forms a style half bookish and half colloquial, but its use is conditioned by considerations of rythm and force. *Chi-ran* 旣然 forms the Perfect Participle and may be translated, 'having'; 'since'; 'inasmuch as,' etc.; it is followed by a principal verb, and like 若 *roh* takes 就 *chiu*, 也 *ie*, or 還 *huan* as required. *Sui-ran* 雖然 in addition to these takes 卻 *ch'ioh* as an adversative particle introducing the answering clause; *e.g.*,

Although he is unfilial, he is still his father's son; *sui-ran t'a puh hsiao t'a hai shï t'a fu-ch'in-tih rï-tsï* 雖然他不孝他還是他父親的兒子.

Though there is not much, still it is enough; *siu-ran puh to, huan k'o-i suan keo-liao* 雖然不多,還可以算彀了.

Although he gets angry, he is a good man; *sui-ran t'a seng-ch'i t'a ch'ioh shï ko hao ren* 雖然他生氣他卻是個好人.

Since it is his, what do you want with it? *chi shï t'a-tih ni iao tso shen-mo?* 旣是他的你要做甚麼.

### Adversative Conjunction *tao* 倒.

**5.** In the sentence, 'He was a good man; *but* he was not esteemed'; the word 'but' serves the purpose of carrying the mind to something, the contrary of what we should have expected. The conclusion we should naturally draw from the first sentence 'he was a good man,' would be that the people would esteem him; 'but' points out that in this case the natural conclusion does not follow. Such is the force of the word *tao* 倒. It thus carries its original meaning of 'To turn upside down'; the thought or the conclusion we should draw, is as it were 'overturned' by its use. Hence we may translate it by 'But'; 'Yet'; 'Nevertheless'; 'On the other hand'; 'At the same time'; or any word or phrase that places the second sentence or clause in some kind of opposition to what precedes. When such opposition is of a favourable character, *ie* 也 generally follows it; *e.g.*.

He is very poor, but what he says is correct; *t'a hen ch'iong, t'a-tih hua tao ie shoh-teh puh-ts'o* 他很窮,他的話倒也說得不錯.

Though he has ability, he has made a mess of this matter; *sui-ran t'a iu pen-sï; chœ-chien sï t'a tao tso-teh puh-hao* 雖然他有本事,這件事他倒做得不好.

### Compulsion expressed by *pih* 必.

6. *Pih* 必 is not often used alone, but has either 要 *iao* or 得 *teh* joined to it, the latter being more common in the North. At times it strengthens the future form, but more usually denotes 'obligation'; 'compulsion'; 'necessity'; and the like; *e.g.*,

You must go; *ni pih teh ch'ü* 你必得去.

You must put this matter through quickly; *chœ-chien sï ni pih iao k'uai pan* 這件事你必要快辦.

---

NOTES.—*a. Lien* 連 is joined with 帶 *tai* as a correlative; *e.g.*, Including both the cows and the horses; *lien niu tai ma* 連牛帶馬.

*b. P'ang* 旁 in colloquial usage takes 的 *tih* when used in the sense of 'other'; *e.g.*,

This is other people's business; *chœ shï p'ang ren tih sï* 這是旁人的事.

Nothing else; simply this; *puh shï p'ang-tih, chiu shï chœ-ko* 不是旁的就是這個.

*c. Huan-hsi* 歡喜 is often reversed without altering the meaning.

[*See Lesson XXX.*]

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

He has broken the law; *t'a fan-liao fah.*

His disease has recurred; *t'a-tih ping fan liao.*

He is nearly dead; *t'a ch'a-puh-to sï liao.*

He is engaged and therefore cannot come; *t'a iu sï so-i puh neng lai.*

Pour out the water; *tao shui.*

They could not go, because they had no money; *t'a-men puh neng ch'ü in-uei muh iu ch'ien.*

To plait the queue; *ta pien-tsï.*

To-day the Li family have an occasion of rejoicing; *chin-t'ien Li chia iu hsi sï.*

He was very pleased to get that letter; *t'a hen huan-hsi teh na-feng hsin.*

Go to the jetty and hire a boat; *k'o-i shang ma-t'eo ch'ü, ku* (or *chiao*) *ch'uan.*

He was influenced by the Holy Spirit; *t'a pei Sheng-ling kan-tong.*

We have all broken God's law; *o-men tu fan-liao Shang-ti-tih fah.*

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十八課雜句

他犯了法
他的病犯了
他差不多死了
他有事所以不能來
倒水
他們不能去, 因爲沒有錢
打辮子
今天李家有喜事
他很歡喜得那封信
可以上碼頭去雇(叫)船
他被聖靈感動
我們都犯了上帝的法

### NOTES.

*Translate* :—What is that by the side of the tree? Is it not a cup? Although he was willing to go himself, his elder brother was unwilling. Including both books and paper, it cost 500 cash; the pencils were additional. You must tell him to come and see me to-morrow. Infuse and bring a pot of hot tea; and also pour out a cup of cold water and bring it. The wall has fallen down. If he cheats you, you come and tell me; he does nothing but cheat people. If the teacher knows he will punish you. If he does not repay you, I will. Although he has money he is a bad man. Inasmuch as he is willing why are you unwilling? Since you did not see how do you know? I know, because I heard Mr. Li say it. Although you cannot control his affairs still you should have said a few words to him. Since he said it, I believe it. Although this affair has nothing to do with me, I must go and see. When he was on his journey he saw a lion a long way off; he was afraid in consequence and ran back to the inn. Though this is a troublesome affair, I will still do it. It is now Spring, and the flowers are open. If you did not do it, your elder brother did. Because it was troublesome to have his queue plaited every week he therefore cut it off. If God had not sent the Saviour to die for us, we should have no way of being saved. The Holy Spirit came down from heaven that He might influence mens' hearts and cause them to believe and trust the Saviour. Inasmuch as the Saviour has come shall we not believe in Him?

**Writing Exercise**:—必打住早往等自 R. 132; 己 R. 39.

## READING LESSON XVIII. 輯要第十八

### The Unwary Youth II.

海面遭苦

空發在船上所遭的苦[1]情、我本[2]沒有工夫一[3]一的細說、光說有一夜他從底下上來、沒有看見有個信箱擺在他面前、就把他的一隻眼碰壞了、到第二天早晨醫生來見他、見他臉上發黃、像菜[4]根一樣、

---

[1] *K'u ch'ing* 苦情 'Bitter matters'—bitterness; trouble.

[2] *Pen* 本 Is often used as here to add emphasis='as a matter of fact.' See below 本是.

[3] *Ih-ih-tih* 一一的 One by one; in detail.

[4] *Ts'ai ken* 菜根 Cabbage stalk.

醫生說、這病無法可治、叫空發又哭了一回、說、[1]罷了、罷了、我這一遭受苦彀受的了、後來就是有人把幾萬銀子給我、我也不肯走到這一條路上來了、我這一回省[2]事倒算費了大事。還有一件、就是在船上有一個窮法國人、也是三等客、姓海、叫心深、前在上海當[3]殺猪的、因沒有買賣、就靠[4]哄人吃飯、他也會說幾句中國話、空發慢慢的和他相好、領[5]他的教、多學了幾句法國話、既然認識、就常常和他說話、心深對他說、你我都是出門的人、[6]不必分彼此、你的苦就是我的苦、我要把你的事當自己的事辦、我雖是法國人、也肯爲你費心、我對船上的人給你說幾句好話、茶、水、飯、菜、樣樣就都[7]便當了。他這樣說、就把空發說的[8]心[9]花都開、因爲他拿這話當眞的、所以對心深說、我實在蒙了你的恩了、要不是你在船上、我一個人在這裏就苦死了、心深

---

1. *Pa-liao pa-liao* 罷了罷了 There is an end of it! that is enough!
2. *Seng si* 省事 To save trouble; to economize labour.
3. *Tang shah chu tih* 當殺猪的 Was a butcher; plied the trade of a butcher.
4. *K'ao . . . . ch'ih-fan* 靠 . . . . 吃飯 Got a living by. . . .
5. *Ling . . . . chiao* 領 . . . . 教 To receive instruction; to be taught by.
6. *Puh pih fen pi-ts'i* 不必分彼此 It is needless to make any distinction.
7. *Tu pien-tang* 都便當 All satisfactory.
8. *Tih* 的 As used here=up to the point of; so as to . . . , 得 would be used in some districts. See Revised Version (Mandarin), Acts. xiv, 1. and below 氣得心如火燒.
9. *Hsin hua tu k'ai* 心花都開 'All the flowers of the heart open'—greatly elated.

說、不錯、你我眞是[1]知心的好朋友、有甚麼事[2]可以問我、我們兩個[3]有福同享、有苦同當、到了法國你所有的事、我都可以給你辦就是了。再說、還有些三等的客、本是無禮的粗人、有一天空發看他們[4]三五個站在一處、一面往他那裏看、一面[5]低聲說話、說了一回、就都大聲笑起來、那時空發[6]歪戴着一頂舊白外國帽子、也少了一隻眼、眞[7]難看、他心裏說、這些人必是說[8]我的甚麼事、他就[9]問道心深、心深說、沒有甚麼要緊的話、他們不過說幾句閒話、不要理他們、但空發[10]再三的[11]求問他、他就告訴空發說、那站在旁邊六尺多高的人說、他本鄉的人有一樣猪、頭是白的、尾巴和身子是黑的、他父親也養着少一隻眼的那樣猪、一看見你就[12]想起來、雖然他多年在外頭沒回家去、還是認識、好比碰見老朋友一樣。空發一

---

1. *Chï hsin tih* 知心的 Intimate.
2. *K'o-i uen o* 可以問我 May refer to me.
3. *Iu fuh t'ong hsiang, iu k'u t'ong tang* 有福同享, 有苦同當 We will share happiness and grief together.
4. *San u* 三五 Three or four; a small group.
5. *Ti*¹ 低 Low. To lower.
6. *Uai*¹ 歪 Awry; lopsided.
7. *Nan-k'an* 難看 Ugly.
8. *O-tih shen-mo sï* 我的甚麼事 Something or the other about me.
9. *Uen-tao* 問道 Asked.
10. *Tsai san* 再三 Repeatedly.
11. *Ch'iu*²*-uen*⁴ 求問 To enquire of; to entreat.
12. *Hsiang ch'i-lai* 想起來 To call to remembrance.

聽這話、就氣得心如火燒、[1]等不得下去、借了一把刀子把辮子割了、這回弄得成了、一個[2]四不像了、眞看不得、[3]使他們更笑他、心深也暗暗的笑了、對他說、[4]大人不見小人過、可以[5]把大事看小了、小事看了了、就是走到各國、也樣樣事都順了、你到了碼頭、必要叫我先下船、上鋪子去給你買幾件好法國衣裳、一項新帽子、人就[6]看不出你是中國人來、看你[7]不是外路來的官、就是本國多年在外頭的知府、臉上有一點黑帶黃就是了、[8]不說旁的、像你這樣的人、也眞是[9]難得、我早年見了本國皇上的兒子、從外國回來、和你一樣、你[10]眞正有一點像他、這話叫空發的心歡喜得很。若要曉得空發到了法國怎麼樣、心深是怎樣的好朋友、怎樣替他辦事、看下課就知道了、

---

[1] *Teng puh teh hsia ch'ü* 等不得下去 Could not wait to go down.

[2] *Sï puh hsiang* 四不像 A monstrosity; neither one thing nor the other.

[3] *Shï t'a-men keng hsiao t'a* 使他們更笑他 So that they laughed at him the more.

[4] *Ta ren puh chien hsiao ren ko* 大人不見小人過 The great man does not notice the offence of the one beneath him.

[5] *Pa ta sï k'an hsiao liao, hsiao sï k'an liao liao* 把大事看小了,小事看了了 Regard great matters (of offence) as trifles; and small matters as already settled. L. 22.

[6] *K'an puh ch'uh . . . . lai* 看不出....來 Unable to distinguish.

[7] *Puh-shï . . . . chiu-shï* 不是....就是 If not . . . . then. . . .

[8] *Puh shoh p'ang-tih* 不說旁的 To speak of nothing else . . . .; simply to mention. . . .

[9] *Nan teh* 難得 Difficult to meet with, or find.

[10] *Chen¹-cheng⁴* 眞正 Really; truly.

# LESSON XIX. 課九十第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 成$^{2}$ | *ch'eng* | To complete; to perfect. To succeed. A tenth. |
| 遍$^{4}$ | *pien* | Everywhere; the whole. |
| 定$^{4}$ | *ting* | To fix; to decide. Decidedly; certainly. |
| 饒$^{2}$ | *rao* | To forgive; to pardon; to overlook. |
| 埋 | *mai* | To bury. To lie in wait. |
| 準$^{3}$ | *chuen* | To allow; to grant; to permit. Exactly; certainly. |
| 談$^{2}$ | *t'an* | To chat; to converse about. |
| 恐$^{3}$ | *k'ong* | Lest. Fearful; apprehensive. |
| 貨$^{4}$ | *ho*$^{4}$ | Goods; wares; cargo. |
| 音$^{1}$ | *in* | A sound; a tone; pronunciation. |
| 惜$^{1}$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *ih* | To regard; to love. To be sparing of. |
| 恕$^{4}$ | *shu* | To forgive; to excuse. |
| 復$^{4}$ | *fuh* | To return; to repeat. Again. |
| 墓$^{4}$ | *m* { *o*<br>*u* | A grave. |
| 未$^{4}$ | *uei* | Not yet; not. |
| 墳 | *fen*$^{1}$ | A grave; a tomb. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 碑$^{1}$ | *pei* | A grave-stone. A stone tablet. |
| 許$^{3}$ | *hsü* | To promise. To allow. Perhaps. |
| 概$^{4}$ | *kai* | Generally; for the most part. All. |
| 規$^{1}$ | *kuei* | Custom; usage; regulations. |
| 活$^{2}$ | *hoh* | Living; lively. Moveable. An occupation. |
| 略$^{4}$ | *lioh* | Slightly; a little. A summary. |
| 定$^{4}$規$^{1}$ | *ting-kuei* | Fixed; decided. |
| 許$^{3}$多$^{1}$ | *hsü-to* | Many; a large number. |
| 福$^{2}$音$^{1}$ | *fuh-in* | Happy sound—the Gospel. |
| 饒$^{2}$恕$^{4}$ | *rao-shu* | To pardon; to overlook. |
| 恐$^{3}$怕$^{4}$ | *k'ong-p'a* | Lest; perhaps. What if. |
| 口$^{3}$音$^{1}$ | *k'eo-in* | Accent; pronunciation. |
| 哎$^{3}$呀 | *ai-ia* | Indeed! Oh dear! |
| 大$^{4}$概$^{4}$ | *ta-kai* | Generally, probably. |
| 可$^{3}$惜$^{1}$ | *k'o-hsih* | Alas! How sad! |
| 略$^{4}$略$^{4}$的$^{1}$ | *lioh-lioh-tih* | Briefly; slightly |

## Completion as expressed by *uan* 完 *ch'eng* 成 and *ting* 定.

1. The results of certain actions such as success, or failure; completion, or non-completion; may be expressed in a variety of ways, the more common perhaps being by a verb and an adverb; as, 'Carried through successfully.' In some cases however, one verb may follow another, as 'To make complete.' This latter form has its counterpart in Chinese, when the verbs *uan* 完, *ch'eng* 成, and

---

師傅領上門, 巧妙在各人 *The instructor leads to the door, but aptitude rests with the individual.*

*ting* 定, following another verb. *Ting* 定 may in certain cases be prefixed; thus answering to such an English expression as, 'Made to order'; *e.g.*

This was made to order; *chœ shï ting tso-tih* 這是定做的.

The bargain is completed; *chia-ch'ien chiang-ting-liao* 價錢講定了.

When we have finished reading, we will go down; *nien uan-liao shu, o-men k'o-i hsia-ch'ü* 念完了書, 我們可以下去.

Redemption is accomplished; *shuh-tsui-tih sï tso ch'eng-liao* 贖罪的事做成了.

He could not do it; *t'a tso puh-ch'eng* 他做不成.

One box will not hold all; *ih-chï hsiang-tsï chuang puh-uan* 一隻箱子裝不完.

## Probability.

**2.** There are several words used in Chinese to express the idea of 'probability,' such as are indicated in English by 'most likely'; 'seemingly'; 'in all likelihood'; etc., the commonest are:—

*Hsiang* 想; *hsü* 許; *ie-hsü* 也許; *hsiang-pih* 想必; *k'ong-p'a* 恐怕; *to-pan* 多半.

*Hsü* 許 and *ie-hsü* 也許 are more widely used in the North than in the South, where 恐怕 *k'ong-p'a* largely does duty for both. In the North 恐怕 *k'ong-p'a* usually carries its original meaning of 'apprehension', the idea of 'probability' being largely absent. *Hsiang* 想 and *hsiang-pih* 想必 are in current use in most parts; *e.g*

I think he can read; *o hsiang t'a shïh-tsï* 我想他識字.

He probably will not come; *hsü t'a puh lai* 許他不來.

He may come, or he may not; *t'a ie-hsü lai, ie-hsü puh lai* 他也許來, 也許不來.

Mr. Hai has not come to-day. Perhaps he has some engagement at home? *Hai hsien-seng chin-t'ien muh iu lai; hsiang-pih chia li iu sï* 海先生今天沒有來, 想必家裏有事.

Perhaps he is on the jetty? *k'ong-p'a t'a tsai ma-t'eo shang?* 恐怕他在碼頭上.

Most likely it is his own fault; *to-pan shï t'a tsï-chi-tih ts'o* 多半是他自己的錯.

## Certainty and Uncertainty.

**3.** The word 定 *ting*, 'to fix,' is the principal word used in colloquial to express the idea of 'certainty'; 'assurance'; etc. Other words are joined with it, but do not appreciably modify its meaning. The opposite meanings of 'uncertainty', and 'improbability', are denoted by 未 *uei* and 不 *puh*, also used in combination. The following lists give the collocations most commonly in use:—

| *Certainty.* | | *Uncertainty.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Ih-ting* | 一定. | *Uei-pih* | 未必. |
| *Ting-ran* | 定然. | *Puh-ih-ting* | 不一定. |
| *Ting-chuen* | 定准. | *Puh-chien-teh* | 不見得. |
| *Pih-ran* | 必然. | *Puh chien ch‘i* | 不見其. |
| *Pih-ting* | 必定. | *Ie-uei-k‘o-ting* | 也未可定. |

It is not at all certain that he will be willing to come; *t‘a uei-pih k‘en lai* 他未必肯來.

It is not certain that what he says is true; *t‘a so shoh-tih hua puh-chien-teh shï chen-tih* 他所說的話不見得是眞的.

People say that the District Magistrate is a bad man; who knows? *ren shoh chï-hsien shï ko huai ren; chœ ie-uei-k‘o-chï* 人說知縣是個壞人,這也未可知.

Will the steamer come to-day? It is not certain; *chin-t‘ien ho-luen-ch‘uan lai puh lai? puh ih-ting* 今天火輪船來不來,不一定.

It will certainly be here by to-morrow; *kan ming-t‘ien chuen tao* 趕明天准到.

This was certainly done by him; *chœ ting-chuen shï t‘a tso-tih* 這定准是他做的.

He surely cannot afford to buy such a dear watch; *na-mo kuei tih piao t‘a pih-ran mai puh ch‘i* 那麼貴的表,他必然買不起.

## Approximation.

**4.** Phrases which convey the idea of approximation, as applied to exactness and accuracy are much in evidence in every-day speech. A non-committal and inexact attitude of mind, coupled with a genius for generalizing, accounts for a good deal of it. Some of the phrases under Section 2, are employed in this connection; the ideas of probability and approximation running into each other. The following are the expressions most commonly used:—*ch‘a-puh-to* 差不多; *shang-hsia* 上下; *ta-kai* 大概; *ta-pan* 大半; *to-pan* 多半; *e.g.*,

This tub is nearly full; *chœ-ko p‘en ch‘a-puh-to man liao* 這個盆差不多滿了.

Generally speaking, men are unwilling to worship God; *ta-kai ren puh k‘en pai Shang-ti* 大概人不肯拜上帝.

For the most part men have not travelled widely; *ren ta-pan muh iu ch‘uh ko üen men* 人大半沒有出過遠門.

That old gentleman is about seventy years old; *na-ko lao hsien-seng iu ch‘ih-shïh sui shang-hsia* 那個老先生有七十歲上下.

## *I* 以 in Combination.

**5.** *I* 以 is used alone sparingly in colloquial, but, joined to many prepositions and adverbs is in constant use; the most common combinations are as follows:—

Before; formerly; *i-ch'ien* 以 前.
Behind; afterwards; *i-heo* 以 後.
Outside; beyond; *i-uai* 以 外.
Above; over; *i-shang* 以 上.
Below; under; *i-hsia* 以 下.
To regard as; to consider; *i-uei* 以 爲.

This last expression differs from the rest in that it is verbal in form, and admits of the Object being inserted between its parts; i.e., *i* 以 introduces the immediate Object. It is used largely in documents and in the speech of educated men, but is slightly bookish:—

He considered himself in the right; *t'a tsï i-uei shï* 他自以爲是.

I must be about my father's business; *o tang i o fu-ch'in-tih sï uei nien* 我 當 以 我 父 親 的 事 爲 念.

---

NOTES.—*a. Fuh* 復 is not used in colloquial in the sense of 'again', except with other words, *e.g.*, To come to life again; resurrection; *fuh-hoh*, or *fuh-seng* 復 活 or 復 生 and a few others.

*b. Fen* 墳 is used both alone and in combination, as *e.g.*, The grave; *fen-mo* 墳 墓; She has gone to the grave to weep; *t'a shang fen ch'ü k'uh* 他 上 墳 去 哭; but *mo* 墓 is rarely used alone.

*c. Ho* 貨 when applied to cargo sometimes takes *chien* 件 and sometimes not; *e.g.*, How much cargo has that ship on board? About 30,000 packages; *na-t'iao ch'uan iu to-shao ho? iu san uan chien ho* 那 條 船 有 多 少 貨, 有 三 萬 件 貨.

*d.* The distinction between 'to make,' and 'to make into', is not shewn in Chinese by affixing a preposition to the word 'make,' but by affixing the verb *ch'eng* 成; *e.g.*,

He made four pieces of wood into a box; *t'a pa sï-k'uai pan tso-ch'eng ih-chï hsiang-tsï* 他 把 四 塊 板, 做 成 一 隻 箱 子.

*e.* In the West *chia puh tih* 加 不 的 is used to express 'uncertainty'.

[*See Lesson XXX.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

He certainly cannot manage this affair; *chæ-chien sï t'a ih-ting pan puh ch'eng.*
Let it be so settled; *chiu shï na-mo ting-kuei pa.*
One cannot speak of this matter with any certainty; *chæ-ko sï ie shoh puh ting.*
The teacher will not allow him to go; *hsien-seng puh chuen* (or *hsü*) *t'a ch'ü.*
He has decided to do it in that way; *t'a ting-kuei iao na iang tso.*
Take a seat and let us have a chat; *ch'ing tso, o-men k'o i t'an-t'an.*
He briefly explained the general meaning; *t'a lioh-lioh-tih chiang ta-kai-tih i-sï.*
Unfortunately he will not listen to any persuasion; *k'o-shih t'a puh t'ing ch'üen.*
He lived to be eighty years of age; *t'a hoh tao pah-shïh sui.*
Alas! he is nearly dead; *ai-ia! t'a ch'a-puh-to sï liao.*
God is willing to pardon; *Shang-ti k'en rao-shu ren.*
The Lord doubtless has already risen from the dead; *Chu i-ching fuh-hoh liao; chæ shï ih-ting-tih.*
This must be made known everywhere; *chæ iao ch'uan pien t'ien hsia.*

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第十九課雜句

這件事,他一定辦不成
就是那麽定規罷
這個事也說不定
先生不准(許)他去
他定規要那樣做
請坐,我們可以談談
他畧畧的講大概的意思
可惜他不聽勸
他活到八十歲
哎呀他差不多死了
上帝肯饒恕人
主已經復活了,這是一定的
這要傳遍天下

## NOTES.

*Translate*:—Call the shoemaker; I want him to make me a pair of foreign boots to order. There are a great many people in the street; in all probability they are going to see the newly-arrived Prefect disembark. It is by no means certain that these two doses of medicine will make your disease better. He may come to-morrow or he may not; there is no certainty. The three large characters 德成靈 were engraved upon the tombstone. The goods at the shop 大發 are both dear and bad; they are certainly unsaleable. Probably he will not come to-day, because he is afraid it will rain. His accent is not very good. He has travelled everywhere and been to almost every country. The pupil came late to-day, therefore he cannot go back early. This trouble was most likely provoked by 章未成. I will briefly recount to you the opening of the hospital. That carpenter has come a good few times; I have already told him that a plank of this thickness is of no use. Perhaps he did not understand your meaning? He has brought the wrong receipt, this is a receipt for money received, not for a registered letter; no doubt he has not been to the Post Office. The Saviour was first crucified on the cross, afterwards buried in the grave, and on the 3rd day He rose again. Now His grave is empty because He has already ascended into heaven. Afterwards, when the time has come, He will return to the world and cause all those who believe in Him to enjoy great felicity. This is the general meaning of the Gospel.

Writing Exercise:—如同和送發今問昨.

## READING LESSON XIX. 輯要第十九

### The Unwary Youth III.

### 敗興而返

走了一個月零幾天、船就到了法國、還沒有到碼頭、心深和空發[1]商議定了、叫心深先下船去買衣裳、買成了就回來把空發帶到飯店、後來再給他找事、話說好了、空發先點[2]點銀子、看有幾兩、後來把十兩給心深、心深把銀子拿到手中說、這一定不彀、還要加上十兩、若不加上怕買不成、空發先是定准不加、但

---

[1] *Shang-i ting-liao* 商議定了 Had decided after consultation.

[2] *Tien tien in-tsi* 點點銀子 Counted over the money.

心深說些好話、把他勸信了、他慢慢的又把十兩給他自己光有一二兩[1]在身上。到了碼頭、心深說、你放心、我的箱子在這裏、我快快要回來、連衣裳帶帽子我都要拿回來。他去後、空發等在船上、[2]當天心深沒有回來、趕第二天也沒有回來、空發就怕被他哄了、所以他下船去找、[3]大街小巷都找遍了、還是找不着、光見街上的許多人、向他發笑、叫他心裏說、哎呀、可惜可惜、[4]眞苦死了、我到這[5]人地兩生的地方、[6]怎得了呢、慢慢的回到船上、就知道心深已經來過了、又走了、把空發的箱子、和空發的行李、攏總都帶了去、他自己的箱子還在那裏、[7]打開一看、就見滿箱子是石頭、心深又請船上的人替他對空發說、一下船就碰見本城的[8]鄉親、說他母親不在了、家裏的人要他坐火車快回家去埋老母親[9]行孝、早已知道你也是孝子、卻因離家遠、就無法行孝、想必你沒有不肯把銀子借用的。又說、埋完了母親一定要叫石匠刻碑、上邊刻、空發[10]敬意、四個大字、叫人人曉得[11]中外是

---

1. *Tsai shen shang* 在身上 On the person.
2. *Tang t'ien* 當天 That day; the same day.
3. *Ta⁴ kiai¹ hsiao³ hsiang⁴* 大街小巷 Streets and lanes.
4. *Chen k'u sï liao* 眞苦死了 Things have come to a pretty pass.
5. *Ren ti liang seng* 人地兩生 A strange place and strange people.
6. *Tsen teh liao* 怎得了 How shall I manage? how can I get out of this difficulty?
7. *Ta-k'ai ih k'an* 打開一看 No sooner had opened it and looked. . . .
8. *Hsiang ch'in* 鄉親 A fellow-countryman; one from the same district
9. *Hsing hsiao* 行孝 To perform the duties of a filial son.
10. *Ching⁴-i⁴* 敬意 A present; an expression of respect.
11. *Chong uai shï ih li* 中外是一理 The same principle both in China and abroad.

一理、[1]孝道眞是不可少的、又知道空發在心深母親的墳上行了孝、許他們兩個後來再會、這也未可知。還有一句、說一路爲你費心、[2]本當得幾個錢當[3]工錢。空發等不得聽完、便先哭後罵、若不是船上的人勸他、他就要用刀[4]自殺、船上的人看他爲難、就發了好心、說、這樣罷、你可以坐本船回國去、我們僱你當[5]小工、你爲客人[6]鋪行李、[7]擺棹子、[8]洗盤碗、刀子、[9]刷刷客人的鞋、有甚麼旁的事、也可以給他們作、到了上海、[10]開你幾個茶水錢、[11]就算了。以後過了兩個月、空發就到了家、使老父母很喜歡、好像死了復活一樣、就給他買衣裳、擺上[12]上等的菜飯、又請了本街上、和本家的人來會他、但空發要把他所遭的罪說出來、便[13]不知道從那裏說起、一來自己離家有錯、二來[14]太不用心、上了外人的當、就略略的講了幾句給他們聽、假裝[15]做沒有受過多少苦的樣子。所以年紀輕的人、若有念這兩章書的、必要記得、出門

---

1. *Hsiao-tao* 孝道 The doctrine of filial piety; filial duty.
2. *Pen tang* 本當 It is only fitting that. . . .
3. *Kong-ch‘ien* 工錢 Wages.
4. *Tsï shah* 自殺 To kill oneself; to commit suicide.
5. *Hsiao kong* 小工 A labourer.
6. *P‘u hsing-li* 鋪行李 To make beds.
7. *Pai choh-tsï* 擺棹子 To lay the table.
8. *Hsi p‘an uan* 洗盤碗 To wash up plates and dishes.
9. *Shuah* 刷 To brush.
10. *Ka‘i ni chi-ko ch‘a shui ch‘ien* 開你幾個茶水錢 Give you a ‘cumshaw ’t
開 is often used in the sense of ‘to pay; to settle up.’
11. *Chiu suan liao* 就算了 And that will settle every thing
12. *Shang teng tih* 上等的 First class; tip top.
13. *Puh chï-tao ts‘ong na-li shoh ch‘i* 不知道從那裏說起 Did not know where to begin his story.
14. *T‘ai puh iong hsin* 太不用心 Was altogether too heedless.
15. *Tso . . . . iang-tsi* 做 . . . 樣子 To put on a style; to make believe.

不可聽信外人的話、雖然他說一口的好話、還是自己該用心、恐怕被他哄了、面$^1$生的人多、光知道面不知道心、還算彀了麽。要是空發再出遠門、我可以把他所碰的事、都寫出來、發給報$^2$主、天下的人就能知道了。

---

[1] *Mien seng* 面生 Not to know by sight.

[2] *Pao chu* 報主 Newspaper proprietor

## LESSON XX. 第二十課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 脫$^1$ | *t‘oh* | To cast off; to abandon. To undress; to strip. |
| 約$^1$ | *ioh* | A covenant; an agreement. About; nearly. |
| 隔$^2$ | *keh* | To separate. Divided by. A partition. |
| 善$^4$ | *shan* | Good; moral. |
| 惡$^4$ | *oh* | Evil; wicked. Read *u*$^4$. To hate; hateful. |
| 其$^2$ | *ch‘* / *k* *i* | He; she; it; they; this; that. |
| 悲$^1$ | *pei* | Grieved; sorry; sad. |
| 傷$^1$ | *shang* | To wound; to injure. Distressed. |
| 赦$^4$ | *shœ* | To forgive; to pardon. |
| 免$^3$ | *mien* | To avoid; to escape. To remit; to forego. |
| 豈$^3$ | *ch‘* / *k* *i* | An interrogative particle. |
| 敢$^3$ | *kan* | To dare; to venture; to presume. |
| 寺$^4$ | *sï*$^1$ | A Buddhist monastery. A mosque. |
| 基$^1$ | *ch* / *k* *i* | A foundation. Property. |
| 督$^1$ | *tuh* | To oversee; to superintend. |
| 怪$^4$ | *kuai* | Strange. To blame. |
| 梳$^1$ | *s* / *sh* | A coarse comb. To comb. |
| 捨$^3$ | *shœ* | To give alms; to bestow. To part with; to reject. |
| 命$^4$ | *ming*$^{14}$ | Life. Fate; destiny. A command. |
| 全$^2$ | *ch‘* / *ts* *üen* | Entire; perfect. All; the whole. |
| 應$^1$ | *ing* | Ought; should; suitable. Read *ing*$^4$. To respond; [to fulfil. |
| 佛$^2$ | *f* *o* / *uh* | Buddha. |
| 耶$^{1,2}$穌$^1$ | *ie-su* | Jesus. |
| 一$^1$切$^1$ | *ih-ch‘ieh* | All; the whole. |
| 悲$^1$傷$^1$ | *pei-shang* | Grieved; distressed. |
| 赦$^4$免$^3$ | *shœ-mien* | To pardon; to forgive. |
| 基$^1$督$^1$ | *chi-tuh* | Christ. |
| 報$^4$應$^4$ | *pao-ing*$^1$ | A recompense; retribution. |
| 快$^4$活$^2$ | *k‘uai-hoh* | Happy; cheerful. |
| 中$^1$人$^2$ | *chong-ren*$^1$ | A mediator; a middle-man. |
| 捨$^3$命$^4$ | *shœ-ming* | To give up life for others. |
| 奇$^2$事$^4$ | *ch‘i-sï*$^1$ | Marvels; miracles; wonders. |
| 天$^1$堂$^2$ | *t‘ien-t‘ang* | Heaven. |
| 一$^1$下$^4$子$^3$ | *ih-hia-tsï* | A short time; at once. |

不經一事、不長一智 *No wisdom is gained without experience.*

### *Keh* 隔: how used.

1. The word *keh* 隔 is often the equivalent of the English word 'interval,' and is applied both to time and distance. It has a secondary meaning of 'to belong to something different', as say, a country, or a religion; *e.g.*,

Take this medicine once every other day; *chœ-ko ioh keh ih-t‘ien ch‘ih ih huei* 這個藥隔一天吃一回.

A man named Hsü lives three streets off; *keh liang-t‘iao kiai, iu ko hsing Hsü-tih chu-chia* 隔兩條街, 有個姓許的住家.

We belong to different religions; *o-men keh-choh chiao* 我們隔着教.

### *Ch‘i* 其 in combination.

2. *Ch‘i* 其 is a character principally used in the book style, or *wen-li* 文理, but like 以 *i*, it is used in colloquial in combination with other words. It forms part of many prepositions, its meaning being determined by the preceding noun. The following combinations are in constant use:—

Really; in fact; whereas; but; *ch‘i-shïh* 其實.

In the midst of; among; *ch‘i-chong* 其中.

The rest; the remainder; *ch‘i-ü* 其餘 (*ü* 餘$^2$ surplus).

Amongst; in the interval; *ch‘i-chien* 其間.

We will speak of the other matters when I come again; *ch‘i-ü-tih si teng o tsai lai tsai shoh* 其餘的事等我再來再說.

He considered that he had mastered the subject, but, as a matter of fact, he had not half done so; *t‘a i-uei hsioh huei liao, ch‘i-shïh t‘a iu ih ta pan puh huei* 他以爲學會了, 其實他有一大半不會.

A great many people were taken ill, among them an official; *iu hsü-to ren chang-ping, ch‘i-chong iu ih ko kuan* 有許多人長病, 其中有一個官.

In the doctrine that he preaches there is much to affect men; *t‘a chiang tih tao-li ch‘i-chong hen iu hsie kan-tong ren tih hua* 他講的道理, 其中很有些感動人的話.

### *Ch‘i* 豈: its Use and Force.

3. *Ch‘i* 豈 strengthens an interrogative statement, and usually demands an emphatic answer in the negative unless followed by 不 *puh*, when an affirmative answer is required. It forms part of a few bookish phrases which have passed into colloquial use; as,

How dare I? *ch‘i kan* 豈敢—a polite phrase signifying that the speaker is unworthy of the honour or compliment paid to him.

How is there such a principle?—there is no such principle as this; *ch‘i iu ts‘i li* 豈有此理.

It commonly conveys the idea of surprise or astonishment; as, 'Can it be . . . . ? Is it possible . . . . ?' *e.g.*,

Know ye not that we were baptized into His death? *ch‘i puh hsiao-teh o-men shï hsiao t‘a-tih si sheo hsi mo?* 豈不曉得我們是效 (效$^4$ to imitate) 他的死受洗麼.

Will it do to imitate his evil ways? *o-men ch'i k'o ken t'a hsioh huai mo?* 我們豈可跟他學壞麽.

Do not I know his meaning? *o ch'i puh chï-tao t'a-tih i-sï mo?* 我豈不知道他的意思麽.

## Repetition of Verbs.

**4.** Verbs are repeated for emphasis or for euphony. Many verbs thus repeated have 看 *k'an* as a suffix in the sense of 'to try'; or as we say in English 'to see'—if one can do it. In some cases the verbs are separated by *ih*, as 等一等 *teng-ih-teng*, Lesson VII. Section 6; *e.g.*,

Try and do it; *tso-tso k'an* 作作看.

See if you can write it; *hsie-hsie k'an* 寫寫看.

Measure it and see; *liang-liang k'an* 量量看.

Let us go and listen; *o-men k'o-i ch'ü t'ing-t'ing pa* 我們可以去聽聽罷.

**5.** There is nothing in English exactly equivalent to *ih-hsia-tsï* 一下子, or *ih-hsia* 一下; or as it is commonly pronounced *ih-ha-tsï* or *ih-ha*. It is heard more frequently in the South and West than in the North. Perhaps the nearest thing to it is found in such idiomatic forms as, 'Give it a push'; Give it a pull'; etc.; *e.g.*,

Give him a beating; *pa t'a ta ih-ha-tsï* 把他打一下子.

I will be there immediately; *o ih-ha-tsï chiu lai* 我一下子就來.

Wait a while; *teng ih-ha-tsï* 等一下子.

Give it to him all at once; *ih-ha-tsï chih t'a* 一下子給他.

---

NOTES.—*a.* In describing religions the word 敎 *chiao* takes the place of 'ism' and other suffixes; *e.g.*,

Protestantism, or Christianity; *Ie-su-chiao*, or *Chi-tuh-chiao*; 耶穌敎, or 基督敎.

Romanism; *t'ien-chu-chiao* 天主敎.

Taoism; *tao-chiao* 道敎.

Buddhism; *fuh-chiao* 佛敎.

Mahometanism, *huei-huei-chiao* 回回敎.

[*See Lesson XXX.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

No wonder he's ill! he has eaten too much; *kuai puh teh t'a ping liao, t'a ch'ih tih t'ai to.*

Don't blame him; *puh iao kuai t'a.*

Not very far from each other; *hsiang keh puh üen.*

That house has a good foundation; *na-ko fang-tsï iu ken iu chï.*

He has left the path of rectitude; *t'a shæ-liao cheng lu.*

That person is very joyful; *na-ko ren hen k'uai-hoh.*

A middleman is indispensible; *chong-ren shï shao puh liao tih*

Tell him to take off his shoes; *chiao t'a t'oh hsiai-tsï.*

The whole family is good; *ch'üen chia tu shï hao ren.*

The entire Scriptures; *Sheng-ching ch'üen shu.*

The Old and New Testaments; *Chiu-ioh, Hsin-ioh.*

God is gracious and forgives mens' sins; *Shang-ti iu en-huei, shæ-mien ren-tih tsui.*

Jesus gave up His life for us; *Ie-su uei o-men shæ-ming.*

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十課雜句

怪不得他病了，他吃的太多

不要怪他

相隔不遠

那個房子有根有基

他捨了正路

那個人很快活

中人是少不了的

呌他脫鞋子

全家都是好人

聖經全書

舊約，新約

上帝有恩惠，赦免人的罪

耶穌爲我們捨命

## NOTES.

*Translate* :—We were separated by a high wall. They lived two streets away. I talked the matter over with him, and he said, Is it possible that you don't know we must invite a middleman? When you get up in the morning you must put on your clothes, wash your face, comb your hair, and sweep up the floor. None of the things that he is using are his own, all are lent to him by other people. Everybody said the death of the man Li the day before yesterday was a retribution; he truly was a bad man. The Emperor has already forgiven those criminals. Although his friends exhorted him not to weep, he still wept because his spirit was wounded. Give what is over of the rice to the poor. In this city there are Christians, Buddhists, Taoists, Romanists, and Mahometans. Buddhism came to China nearly 2,000 years ago. Mr. Chang is constantly saying that his family is wealthy, but as a matter of fact, the whole family has not much money. The ancients supposed the earth to be flat, but as a matter of fact, it is round. Is it possible that such a good man as he is would do such evil deeds? You speak very good Mandarin. You are too complimentary; my vocabulary is very limited. Heaven is a good place; all the people there are happy and joyful. Good has a good recompense, evil an evil retribution. Christ gave up His life because He loved men; if He had not loved them would he have been willing to die for them? Those who worship Buddha think that he is able to forgive them their sins, whereas he cannot do so; none but God can forgive men's sins.

Writing Exercise :—動 坐 半 許 分 中 幾 無.

## READING LESSON XX. 十 二 第 要 輯

### A City Ramble I.

端陽放工

在本城、離我家差不多有半里路、隔三條街、有個木匠住家、姓許、名叫要知、年紀有四十上下、爲人不錯、常[1]給老板作活、工錢雖然不多、家裏[2]過日子還算可以、養兩口猪、一個[3]母雞、他有個朋友也是[4]同行、年紀比他大六七歲、姓馬、父母[5]養他的時候、叫

---

1. *Chih lao-pan tso hoh* 給老板作活 Worked for his employer.
2. *Ko rih-tsï* 過日子 To pass the days; to live.
3. *Mu chi* 母雞 A hen.
4. *T'ong hang* 同行 Fellow-craftsman; in the same business.
5. *Iang* 養 To give birth to; to beget.

他全知、但認識他的人、叫他半知。他對要知說、你我一天到晚作活、就沒有空出去看看、雖是這樣、到五月初五、我們卻要[1]上半天的門、我可以帶你走遍本城、看看人、看看地方、[2]行不行、要知說、行、你既然肯爲我費事、我豈有個不肯麼、[3]全無此理、再說、你比我年紀大幾歲、你本家早幾百年前也出了些能人、我肯跟你去學學、我所不知道的、求你告訴我就是了。到了時候、要知就洗洗臉、穿上兩件乾淨衣裳、跑到半知的門口[4]叫門、說來了、半知說、[5]是誰、要知說、是我、半知說哎呀、我不知道你來的這麼早、連衣裳還沒穿好、等一等、我戴上帽子就來、等了一下子他就出來、說、我們先上城北罷、要知說、隨你[6]老夫子的便、兩個人到了北門大街、就看見許多人走來走去、滿街是人、這是因爲纔修的鐵路火車站[7]相隔不遠、不過半里多地、所以在街頭上有鄉下人坐火車來看看的很多、大概從前沒有進過城的也不少。兩個人便從新蓋的電報局經過、就到了一個大廟、門是開的、他們就進去、[8]正面上看有一尊

---

[1] *Shang . . . men* 上 . . . 門 Shut up shop. The 5th of the 5th month is observed as a half holiday.

[2] *Hsing puh hsing* 行不行 How will that do?

[3] *Ch'üen u ts'i li* 全無此理 No such thing.

[4] *Chiao men* 叫門 'Called the door'—called outside the door.

[5] *Shi shui* 是誰 Who's there? This or 那一個 is the usual enquiry which is answered by the illuminating reply 是我.

[6] *Lao fu-tsi* 老夫子 'Old sage'—a complimentary term.

[7] *Hsiang keh puh üen* 相隔不遠 Was not far away from where they were

[8] *Cheng mien shang* 正面上 Directly facing them; just opposite to

六七尺高的菩薩、臉上是紅的、身子是黑的、難看得很、可惜有許多女人在他面前敬拜、以爲他能免罪、[1]賜福、[1a]送子、救人死後可以到天堂。半知就愛[2]隨着拜、要知不肯、說、我是木匠、自己會作那麼個東西、我豈不是比他高麼、人拜這不靈的像、其中必有錯。半知聽見便說走罷、菩薩若聽見你這話、怕你要遭報。兩個人走出來、就一直走、不到半點鐘的工夫、到了一個[3]禮拜寺、正要進去、看門的不准、說、脫鞋、不然萬不能許你們進去、所以他們脫了鞋、以後進去、既然到了裏頭、[4]四下一看、看不見甚麼、光看見一個木[4a]臺子、又看見牆上有兩個字、要知念過幾年書、認識幾個字、再看一遍、說、不是淨眞麼、半知假裝認識、說、不是、不是、是京城兩個字、其實他半個大字還不認識呢。一出了寺門、看見[5]對門有個饅頭鋪、門口掛着一塊板、板上有[6]教門兩個字、底下有一把壺的像、要知說、我聽說這是回回教的人開的、又聽人說他們不吃猪肉、半知說甚麼不吃、怕是買不起、我也是和他們一樣。要曉得他們後來上那裏去、看見甚麼事、看下課就知道了。

---

[1] *Ts'ï*$^4$ 賜$^4$ To bestow. [1a] *Song tsi* 送子 Give children.

[2] *Sui-choh* 隨着 To go with the crowd; to do as others do.

[3] *Li-pai-si* 禮拜寺 A mosque. Also called 清眞寺.

[4] 四下一看 Looked all round. [4a] *T'ai-tsi* 臺$^2$子 A platform.

[5] *Tui men* 對門 Opposite; over the way.

[6] *Chiao-men* 教門 Sect; religion. Usually painted on Mahometan sign-boards, with a tea pot underneath.

## VOCABULARY IV. 四第彙字

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 瓶$^{2}$ | *p‘ing*$^{1}$ | A bottle; a vase; a jug. |
| 亮$^{4}$ | *liang* | Light; bright. |
| 兵$^{1}$ | *ping*$^{1}$ | A soldier; troops; military. |
| 推$^{1}$ | *t‘ui* | To push; to shove. To shirk. |
| 材$^{2}$ | *ts‘ai* | Materials; stuff. |
| 熟$^{2}$ | *shuh* | Ripe; experienced; versed in. Cooked. Intimate. |
| 姑$^{1}$ | *ku* | A girl. A paternal aunt. |
| 娘$^{2}$ | *niang* | A girl; a woman; a mother. |
| 失$^{1}$ | *shïh* | To lose. To slip; to err. |
| 仗$^{4}$ | *chang* | To rely on. To fight. |
| 料$^{4}$ | *liao* | Materials; ingredients. To estimate. |
| 公$^{1}$ | *kong* | Public. Fair; just. Male. |
| 吐$^{3,4}$ | *t‘u* | To spit; to vomit. |
| 明$^{2}$ | *ming* | Bright; clear; intelligent. To understand. |
| 砍$^{3}$ | *k‘an* | To hack; to chop. To throw stones at. |
| 夢$^{4}$ | *meng* | A dream. To dream. |
| 財$^{2}$ | *ts‘ai* | Wealth; property. |
| 貪$^{1}$ | *t‘an* | To covet. Avaricious. |
| 戶$^{4}$ | *hu* | A door. A family. Population. |
| 合$^{2}$ | *hoh* | To shut; to agree. United. The whole. |
| 米$^{3}$ | *mi* | Rice and millet after they are hulled. |
| 麵$^{4}$ | *mien* | Flour; vermicelli. Dough. |
| 式$^{4}$ | *shïh* | A form; a pattern. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 陽$^{2}$ | *iang* | Clear. The sun. The so-called "male principle." |
| 娶$^{3}$ | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *ü* | To marry; to take a wife. |
| 容$^{2}$ | *iong* | Appearance. To allow. To endure. |
| 臺$^{2}$ | *t‘ai*$^{1}$ | A terrace; a platform. A title of respect. |
| 姑$^{1}$ 娘$^{2}$ | *ku-niang*$^{1}$ | A young woman; a girl. |
| 耳$^{3}$ 朶$^{3}$ | *rï-to* | The ear. |
| 明$^{2}$ 白$^{2}$ | *ming-peh.* | To understand clearly. Intelligent. |
| 妻$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *ch‘i-tsï*$^{1}$ | A wife. |
| 打$^{3}$ 仗$^{4}$ | *ta-chang*$^{1}$ | To fight; to war. |
| 丈$^{4}$ 夫$^{1}$ | *chang-fu*$^{1}$ | A husband. A man of spirit. |
| 麥$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *meh-tsï*$^{50}$ | Wheat. |
| 扇$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *shan-tsï*$^{3}$ | A fan. The leaf of a door. |
| 窗$^{1}$ 戶$^{4}$ | *ch‘uang-hu*$^{1}$ | A window. |
| 材$^{2}$ 料$^{4}$ | *ts‘ai-liao* | Material. |
| 容$^{2}$ 易$^{4}$ | *iong-i* | Easy. |
| 合$^{2}$ 式$^{4}$* | *hoh-shïh* | Agreeable; suitable. |
| 慈$^{2}$ 悲$^{1}$ | *ts‘i-pei* | Compassionate; merciful. |
| 聰$^{1}$ 明$^{2}$ | *ts‘ong-ming* | Wisdom; wise; clever. |
| 太$^{4}$ 陽$^{2}$ | *t‘ai-iang*$^{1}$ | The sun. |
| 月$^{4}$ 亮$^{4}$ | *üeh-liang*$^{1}$ | The moon. |
| 了$^{3}$ 不$^{1}$ 得$^{2}$ | *liao-puh-teh* | Exceedingly; matchless; etc. |

NOTES.—*a.* Great care needs to be exercised in using terms relating to women, since what is respectful in one place may be insulting in another. *Ku-niang* 姑娘 in some districts is quite unobjectionable, but in others the reverse is the case.

---

## READING LESSON XXa. 十二第要輯文

## A City Ramble II.

### 登堂聽道

要知和半知、快到北門、就看見一所兩層高的樓房、在上邊有個大銅十字發[1]亮、在大門以上有天主堂三個大金字、門既是開的、他們就進去、抬頭一看、就看見一個老人的像、高掛在大門對面、要知說、想必這是他們拜的神的像罷、半知說、未必、一定是外國皇上的像、他們又看見堂的兩邊、有許多木人、石人、要知說、大概這些老先生是古時候教中的人罷、現在教中的人錯以他爲神、求他賜福、和佛教人求佛一樣、半知說、甚[2]麼古人、這必是老神[3]父本家的人、不是本家就是朋友、我們回去罷、天不早了。他們往家去、已經到了點[4]燈的時候、在大街上路[5]北看見一個大堂、大門上有福音堂三個字、裏頭擺着幾十條板凳、有一百上下的人在那裏坐

---

1. *Fah*$^{5}$ *liang*$^{4}$ 發亮 Sending forth light; glittering.
2. *Shen-mo* 甚麼 As used here=The idea of such a thing—they the ancients indeed!
3. *Shen-fu* 神父 A Roman Catholic priest.
4. *Tien teng tih shi-heo* 點燈的時候 Dusk.
5. *Lu peh* 路北 North side of the road.

着、掛着幾盞洋燈、在堂的北頭有個[1]講書臺、上邊站着一位中國先生、有四十來歲、手裏拿着一本聖經、還有幾個人手中拿着讚美詩、要知說、我們可以進去聽聽、不知道福音是甚麽意思、他們一進去、就看見一個[2]熟人、靠窗戶坐着、姓海、叫福滿、他早年[3]當兵、後來中國和外國打完了仗、他不再當兵了、有了錢、就在城裏開鋪子、賣蓋房子的各樣材料、已經娶了妻、有了兩個兒子、他手裏拿着一把扇子、[4]一臉的福氣、[5]滿臉發光、有一點像太陽似的。他一看見就起來說、二位來了[6]可喜、請坐、請坐、既坐下他又說、我沒有事常來聽聽、越聽眞是越愛聽、實在叫我心裏有說不出來的快活、他說到這裏、臺子前拿讚美詩的那幾個人、就唱起來了、所唱的是、耶穌愛我捨他命、我的罪好洗得淨、天堂門他給我開、把他小羊叫進來、耶穌救主愛我、有聖書告訴我。唱完了這一首詩、福滿說、聽得怎麽樣、豈不是好聽麽、我就是一天聽幾十遍、也不以爲太多、這眞合我的式、要知正要說句話、臺子上站的先生就開口說、我先念[7]兩節書給你們先生們

---

1. *Chiang shu t'ai* 講書台 A pulpit; a platform.
2. *Shuh ren* 熟人 An old acquaintance.
3. *Tang ping* 當兵 To enlist as a soldier; to be in the army.
4. *Ih lien tih fuh-ch'i* 一臉的福氣 A countenance full of joy.
5. *Man lien fah kuang* 滿臉發光 A beaming face.
6. *K'o-hsi* 可喜 An occasion of joy; "delighted!"
7. *Liang chieh shu* 兩節書 Two verses (of) the book. Compare 二里路

聽、後來再把其中的意思說一說給你們聽、以後也許都要略略明白大概的意思、有話說、[1]明人不用細講、這話也不錯、但這本聖經、你們大半沒有看見過、頭一回聽其中的道理、就怕難懂、你我都是中國人、你們認識我的也多、知道早年間我是[2]好佛的人、父母也是好佛、[3]念經、[4]燒紙、就是佛教一切的禮、一切的書、我也沒有不懂得的、但我求佛、越求心裏是越空、我也跟過母親連夜的求、卻[5]免不了罪、心中眞苦、若[6]不是蒙了上帝的大恩、使我能得這本書、明白其中的道理、我直到現在還享不到福、心裏還是空的、本堂中還有幾位先生也是那樣、曉得我這話是實話、因爲他們已經走過這條路、有話說、要知上山路、必問過來人、但我也[7]不必多說、我就念兩節書給合堂的人聽。要知道他念的是那兩節、以後說了甚麼話、使一堂的人受了感動、聽得喜歡、請看下課就明白了。

---

[1] *Ming ren puh iong hsi chiang* 明人不用細講 It is needless to ente into detail with men of understanding.

[2] *Hao⁴-fuh* 好佛 Devoted to Buddhism.

[3] *Nien ching* 念經 To repeat or chant prayers.

[4] *Shao chï* 燒紙 To burn paper money.

[5] *Mien puh liao tsui* 免不了罪 Could not escape from sin or its consequences.

[6] *Puh shï . . . . huan* 不是 . . . 還 *Huan* marks the 'turn' of the sentence and is correlated with 不是: "If I had not . . . then I should not"

[7] *Puh pih to shoh* 不必多說 It is unnecessary for me to say more.

## REVIEW: LESSONS XVI-XX. 四第課考

1. Indicate three ways of expressing the Passive Voice. How would you say, 'I have been injured by him'; 'I have been favoured by him;' 'I have been taught by him'?

Illustrate three uses of 罷 in as many sentences.

Which words indicate 'end', or 'purpose'? Give two examples.

Shew in four sentences the difference in usage between 在外 and 另外.

Give two sentences which denote simultaneous action, and three expressions which denote regular sequence without the use of 第.

How is the effect of an action briefly indicated by an adjective? Give two examples.

What expressions are used to indicate Relationship? And what to indicate the absence of it? Give three examples of each.

Explain meanings, use, and position of 所.

Shew three meanings of 當 in as many sentences.

Illustrate two uses of 跟, and give three sentences containing 費.

How does 自己 differ in use from 親 and 本? Give three examples.

Give the rule for saying 'either or'; 'neither nor', and illustrate it in two sentences.

Which words are used to indicate Supposition or Condition? Shew their use in four sentences.

What correlatives do 雖 and 旣 take? Give three sentences to illustrate their use.

Give two meanings of 倒 and shew their use in as many sentences.

Illustrate 必, 連 . . 帶, and 旁 in two sentences each.

How are Probability, Approximation, Certainty, and Uncertainty expressed? Give two sentences to illustrate each.

Give four sentences shewing the use of 以.

Illustrate the use of 隔 in three sentences.

Shew the use of 其 and 豈 in three sentences each.

Translate Reading Lessons XVII. XVIII. XIX.

Give N A. of wall, bridge, street, temple, idol, flower, goods, and tablet.

2. Give sound, tone, and meaning of the following:—

奇傷應德狠虎弄議燒通干隨彼被與犯己已恐饒碑略惜晉容仗丈財村材.

**3. Correct** if needful the following sentences, and state reasons **for correction :—**

我蒙了他的苦頂大。他領了罪不輕。他遭了恩不少。他來了已經兩會。他城內頭使我去。你給他四兩洋錢一分另外。在外送他綢子一丈一寸。他上鄉下去找人另外。第一來、他沒工夫第二來、他沒錢。這事相干不與你甚麽。你的便隨你去罷。我們的錢所用的在這裏。他的東西所有的是他的。到當鋪子他去我的當贖了。你的心爲我費了。我親的眼看見了。我告訴你若看見他。他還若是來可以。他是個壞人雖然他有錢。叫他作定爲我一張棹子。這個碗茶滿了差不多。他上下三十歲。他以不爲有錯自己。有一道海隔着了。我們跟他學豈可以呢。

4. Write in Chinese character :—

He may come, or he may not; wait awhile and see. I have already promised him between 300 and 400 cash. Who was that who came yesterday and sat there for half a day? I don't know; ask Mr. Ch'ien. What is his name? You had better ask him. He and I have already crossed the sea together. Bring that square thing to me over here. Divide a half and give it to him, and afterward refund Mr. Chang the money you changed yesterday. The teacher that he engaged has not yet come; I don't know where he has gone; perhaps he has some affairs at home? He said something pleasant both when he rose up and when he sat down. He is really a capable man. Count over your money and see how much you have. He himself is unable to move it; you try and move it. He calculated to go yesterday, but he had some trifles (to attend to), and therefore could not go.

# 英華合璧卷叁

增補

# MANDARIN PRIMER

## PART III

## SUPPLEMENTARY

## LESSON XXI. 課一十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 香$^{1}$ | *hsiang*$^{6.21}$ | Incense; fragrant. |
| 血$^{3}$ | *hs* } *üeh*<br>*ieh* | Blood. |
| 憐$^{2}$ | *lien* | To pity. |
| 酒$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *iu* | Wine; spirits. |
| 湖$^{2}$ | *hu* | A lake. |
| 瞎$^{1}$ | *hsiah* | Blind. Reckless; rash. |
| 聾$^{2}$ | *long* | Deaf. |
| 疼$^{2}$ | *t'eng* | To pain; to ache. |
| 瘸$^{2}$ | *ch'*<br>*k* } *üeh* | Lame. |
| 腿$^{3}$ | *t'ui* | A leg; the thigh. |
| 非$^{1}$ | *fei* | Not; a negative. Wrong. |
| 並$^{4}$ | *ping* | And; also. Altogether. |
| 賞$^{3}$ | *shang* | To reward; to grant. Rewards. |
| 賜$^{4}$ | *ts'ï*<br>*sï* } | To bestow; to confer on an inferior. |
| 災$^{1}$ | *tsai* | Calamity; misery; evil. |
| 閒$^{2}$ | *hsien* | Leisure; idleness; unoccupied. |
| 課$^{4}$ | *k'o* | A lesson; a task. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 耕$^{1}$ | *k* } *eng*<br>*ing* | To plough; to till. |
| 喊$^{3}$ | *han* | To call; to halloo. |
| 除$^{2}$ | *ch'u* | To remove; to do away with. To deduct; to subtract. |
| 田$^{2}$ | *t'ien*$^{2}$ | Fields; land. |
| 種$^{3}$ | *chong*$^{50}$ | Seed; grain. Read *chong*$^{4}$. To sow. |
| 莊$^{1}$ | *chuang* | Serious. A farm. |
| 斗$^{3}$ | *teo* | A measure of 10 升; a bushel. |
| 升$^{1}$ | *sheng* | To ascend; to promote. A pint. |
| 架$^{4}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ia*$^{1}$ | A frame; a rack. |
| 犁$^{2}$ | *li*$^{5}$ | A plough. To plough. |
| 土$^{3}$ | *t'u*$^{2}$ | Earth; soil; land; ground. |
| 啞$^{3}$ 吧$^{1}$ | *ia-pa*$^{1}$ | A dumb person; dumb. |
| 可$^{3}$ 憐$^{2}$ | *k'o-lien* | To pity; pitiable. |
| 女$^{3}$ 兒$^{2}$ | *nü-rï*$^{1}$ | A daughter. |
| 莊$^{1}$ 稼$^{4}$ | *chuang-chia* | Crops; growing grain. |

In Lessons I. to XX. only the commonest forms and uses of words contained in the Vocabularies were dealt with. In this and the following Lessons additional meanings and usages will be given and illustrated, with a view to aid the student to a more thorough and comprehensive grasp of the language. The introduction of this matter at an earlier stage would have had a tendency to bewilder rather than to help; but at this point it should enlarge the vocabulary and increase a knowledge of different idioms. The number of the Lesson dealt with follows the word "Supplementary."

### *Fei* 非 and its Uses.

1. *Fei* 非 as a negative is stronger than 不 *puh* and is strictly a character belonging to the book style. But like many similar

---

熟 能 生 巧 *Skill is begotten of proficiency.*

words it has passed into colloquial, and in certain connections is freely used; *e.g.*,

Right and wrong; negative and positive; failings—of people, etc.; *shï fei* 是非.

To get into or provoke trouble; *rœ* ***ch'uh*** *shï fei lai* 惹出是非來.

Used with 不可 *puh-k'o* or 不行 *puh-hsing*, it indicates that something is indispensable; *e.g.*,

One cannot get on without money; *fei ch'ien puh-hsing* 非錢不行.

It will never do not to invite him; *fei ch'ing t'a puh-k'o* 非請他不可.

Joined to 除 *ch'u* it forms a phrase which may be variously translated by 'except'; 'unless'; etc.; *e.g.*,

Unless Mr. Li goes he will not get back the baggage; *ch'u-fei Li hsien-seng ch'ü, t'a chiu iao puh* ***ch'uh*** *hsing-li lai* 除非李先生去, 他就要不出行李來.

Only in case of his not coming will I fail to ask him for the money. *ch'u-fei t'a puh lai, o puh ken t'a iao ch'ien* 除非他不來、我不跟他要錢.

This is the only way; only by this . . . . ; ***ch'u-fei*** *chœ-ko ts'ai hsing* 除非這個纔行.

### *Ch'u* 除 and its Uses.

2. *Ch'u* 除 is used in two senses—its ordinary one 'To remove; to exclude'; and also with 了 *liao* and 以外 *i-uai* in the sense of 'Besides; none but; with the exception of'; etc. In documentary correspondence it usually takes 外 *uai* alone, and indicates that the writer will do all that is said between 除 *ch'u* and 外 *uai*; *e.g.*,

Deducting the tare . . . . ; *ch'u-liao p'i* 除了皮.

With the exception of Mr. Ma, no one can get the better of him in argument; *ch'u-liao Ma hsien-seng i-uai, u ren neng shoh ko t'a* 除了馬先生以外, 無人能說過他.

There is no other name but the Saviour's that we may trust in in order to be saved; *ch'u-liao Chiu-chu i-uai, muh iu pieh-tih ming k'o-i k'ao-choh teh-chiu* 除了救主以外, 沒有別的名可靠着得救.

### Successive Action.

3. Successive Action is expressed in English either by a special word or phrase; as, 'repeatedly'; 'once more'; or by the use of the same word; as, 'day by day,' etc. This latter form closely corresponds to Chinese idiom, in which, while special words and phrases are sometimes used, it is more common to repeat a word. The following expressions are constantly so used: *shï-shï* 時時, *shï-k'eh* 時刻, and *uang-uang* 往往. *Iu* 又 prefixed to a verb accomplishes the same purpose; as does *tong puh tong* 動不動 'always'; *e.g.*,

Here he is again; *t'a iu lai-liao* 他又來了.

That cock crows all the time; *na-ko kong-chi shï-shï-tih chiao* 那個公雞時時的叫.

The day he was ill he prayed incessantly; *t'a hai-ping tih na-ih t'ien, shï-shï-k'eh-k'eh-tih ch'iu* 他害病的那一天, 時時刻刻的求.

It is so on every occasion; *uang-uang shï chœ-iang* 往往是這樣.

They have met together once more; *t'a men iu chü-huei* 他們又聚會 p. 261.

He strikes people on every occasion; *t'a tong puh tong, chiu ta ren* 他動不動就打人.

## Supplementary: Lesson I.

**4.** The following pronouns are in colloquial use in different parts of the Mandarin-speaking area:—

咱$^{2}$ *tsa.* We; us; *e.g.*, We two; *tsa men liang-ko* 咱們兩個.

納$^{4}$ *nah.* To give. To receive. Used in Peking with 你 *ni*, as, 你納 *ni-nah*, You, sir;—conveying the idea of respect.

俺$^{2,3}$ *an.* I; we; us. Largely used in Shantung and Chihli.

儂$^{2}$ *nong.* I; me; thou; you. Used only in the South.

*Ni-men* 你們 is in some parts used as a polite expression in speaking directly to a single person.

*T'a* 他 is used alone for the plural of inanimate things.

*Tih* 的 as a Relative Pronoun often stands for a noun understood; e.g., in English we may say, 'His food was locusts and wild honey'; or, 'What he ate was locusts and wild honey.' The translation of this passage in Matt. iii. 4 runs as follows: 'Ate that which was locusts and wild honey.' 'That which,' is rendered by *tih* 的 immediately following the verb. *Tih* 的 thus used = 'what'; 'that which'; or a noun; *e.g.*,

What he wears are straw shoes; or, He wears straw shoes; *t'a ch'uan-tih shï ts'ao hsiai* 他穿的是草鞋.

I do not know what he says; *puh hsiao-teh t'a shoh tih shï shen-mo* 不曉得他說的是甚麼.

*Chœ* 這 and 那 *na* following a personal pronoun may be used to indicate contempt; though in some connections they may merely denote a protest; *e.g.*,

That fellow has no gumption; *t'a na-ko ren hao puh tong sï* 他那個人好不懂事.

You are an unreasonable fellow; *ni chœ-ko ren puh chiang li* 你這個人不講理.

*Shï* 是 is at times repeated in giving assent, and at times has *tih* 的 added to it. In the former case it may express impatience = 'Yes, yes, I know all about that'; or may be the equivalent of such phrases as, 'Very well; well and good; let it be so;' etc.

*Shui*; *na*; 誰, 那 and 甚麽 *shen-mo* are repeated as the equivalents of ‘whoever’; ‘whichever’; ‘whatever’; *e.g.*,

Buy whichever one you want; *iao na-ih-ko chiu mai na-ih-ko* 要那一個就買那一個.

Whoever wants it may come and take it; *shui iao, shui kʻo-i lai na* 誰要誰可以來拿.

We have whatever you want; *iao shen-mo iu shen-mo* 要甚麽有甚麽.

Eat whatever there is; *iu shen-mo chʻih shen-mo* 有甚麽吃甚麽.

*Shih* 什$^{2}$ Ten. Sundry; often takes the place of 甚 *shen* in 甚麽 *shen-mo* with no appreciable difference of meaning.

*Ma* 嗎 is used constantly as a sign of the interrogative instead of 麽 *mo* in colloquial; but most teachers prefer to write *mo* 麽.

*Tong-hsi* 東西 is used in Chinese as in English to denote “a worthless fellow;” *e.g.*,

His son is a bad character; *tʻa-tih ri-tsï shï-ko huai tong-hsi* 他的兒子是個壞東西.

*Shen-mo* 甚麽 is often the equivalent of ‘All sorts of’; *e.g.*,

There are all kinds of people; *shen-mo ren tu iu* 甚麽人都有.

The phrase 沒有甚麽 *muh iu shen-mo* means ‘Not much’; with 多少 *to-shao* added ‘Not many’; *e.g.*,

He has not much money; *tʻa muh iu shen-mo chʻien* 他沒有甚麽錢.

It is not of much importance; *muh iu shen-mo iao-chin* 沒有甚麽要緊.

He has not many nails; *tʻa muh iu shen-mo to-shao ting-tsï*, 他沒有甚麽多少釘子.

*Puh-iao* 不要 used in a prohibitive sense, ‘Do not’, is in many parts superseded by the following characters:—

別$^{2}$ *pieh*. To distinguish. To part. Other; another. **Do not.**
莫$^{4}$ *moh*. A negative; not.

Don’t talk; *ni-men pieh shoh hua* 你們別說話.

Do not covet; *moh tong tʻan-hsin* 莫動貪心.

*Seng* 生 and 熟 *shuh* are opposites, and as applied to persons include the ideas of ‘Being versed in; familiar with; acquainted with,’ and their opposites; *e.g.*,

He is a raw hand; *tʻa shï ko seng sheo* 他是個生手.

He is afraid of meeting strangers; *tʻa pʻa chien seng ren* 他怕見生人.

They are quite familiar with this; *chœ-ko sï tʻa-men hen shuh* 這個事他們很熟.

As applied to language *seng* 生 is used in the sense of ‘Unwarranted by usage’; *e.g.*

These two characters are used in an out-of-the-way sense: *chœ liang-ko tsï hen seng* 這兩個字很生.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十一課雜句

瞎子, 聾子, 啞吧很可憐

那個房子閒着

我的頭疼得要命

春種秋割

把他喊回來

喊一聲我就來

十升一斗

江, 河, 湖, 海

米賣五十個錢一升

他們在菩薩面前燒香

上帝可憐人, 打發救主來

主叫瞎子看見, 聾子聽見

## NOTES.

All negative particles such as 不 *puh*; 無 *u*; 未 *uei*; 非 *fei*; etc., may be reinforced by the addition of certain words, which need not be translated except where emphasis is required, in which case they correspond to English 'By no means'; 'Not at all;' etc. The following words and expressions are often so used:—

千 *Ch'ien*; 萬 *uan*; 千萬 *ch'ien-uan*; 並 *ping*; 切 *ch'ieh* and others; *e.g.*,

Certainly it was not he that did it; *ping puh shï t'a tso-tih* 並不是他作的.

You must not do it on any account; *uan puh k'o tso* 萬不可做.

*Na-ko* 那個 is used colloquially in reference to either persons or things that are evil or undesirable, but about whom or which the speaker does not care to speak openly. To say of a person that he is 太那個 is to mean that he is 'unspeakable', and the same expression applied to a place indicates that it is bad beyond words. So also diseases are ascribed to 那個 when it is not thought prudent to enter into detail for fear of the consequences, *e.g.*, if a demon were to hear his name, it might be bad for the person who 'gave him away'!

---

NOTES.—*a*. *Tsi* 子 is added to 瞎 *hsiah*, 聾 *long*, and 瘸 *ch'üeh* to indicate the person afflicted; as.

A deaf person; *long-tsï* 聾子.
A cripple; *ch'üeh-tsï* 瘸子.
A blind person; *hsiah-tsï* 瞎子.

*b*. *Mi* 米 and *meh* 麥 are spoken of as 'large' and small; as,

Rice; *ta-mi* 大米.
Millet; *hsiao-mi* 小米.
Barley; *ta-meh* 大麥.
Wheat; *hsiao-meh* 小麥.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

The blind, the deaf and the dumb, are much to be pitied, *hsiah-tsï*, *long-tsï*, *ia-pa*, *hen k'o-lien*.

That house is unoccupied; *na-ko fang-tsï hsien-choh*.

My head aches terribly; *o-tih t'eo t'eng teh iao ming*.

Sow in the Spring and reap in the Autumn; *ch'uen chong ch'iu koh*.

Call him back; *pa t'a han huei-lai*.

Give me a call, and I'll be there; *han ih-sheng*, *o chiu lai*.

Ten *sheng* make one *teo*; *shïh sheng ih teo*.

Rivers, streams, lakes and seas; *chiang*, *ho*, *hu*, *hai*.

Rice is fifty cash a pint; *mi mai u-shïh-ko ch'ien ih sheng*.

They burn incense before the idol; *t'a-men tsai p'u-sah mien-ch'ien shao hsiang*.

God pitied men and sent the Saviour; *Shang-ti k'o-lien ren*, *ta-fah Chiu-chu lai*.

The Lord caused the blind to see and the deaf to hear; *Chu chiao hsiah-tsi k'an-chien*, *long-tsi t'ing-chien*.

*Translate*:—That man is very pitiable; would it not be a good thing to give him a few cash? The daughter of that deaf man is blind; she cannot see to do her hair. Have you mastered this lesson? I have already done so. He decided to cross the lake and go home: he said, It will never do not to go and see my father. We cannot dispense with the plough in ploughing the fields. If people do what does not please that boy, he constantly gets angry; nothing will do but to give him a beating. With the exception of Mr. 莊 no one can manage that affair. If the fields are not sown, from whence shall we get food to eat? Miss 封 is now eighteen years old From the time she was four years old she was dumb; she could not speak a sentence. Her father took her to the School for Deaf Mutes, and in less than six years she understands peoples' meaning. Is it not a great wonder? This trouble certainly was not caused by Mr. 許. Northerners cannot get on apart from a wheaten diet, and southerners cannot get on apart from a rice diet. The soldier struck him two blows with a sword. The sun comes out by day, the moon by night. I dreamed last night, and in my dream saw a black man. What is the meaning of this? There is not much meaning in it. God is both wise and merciful. If He had not devised a plan, no one could obtain salvation. With the exception of the Saviour He sent, there is no other who could redeem us from sin. If we desire to enter Heaven, it is indispensable that we trust Him.

Writing Exercise:—別 該 告 訴 因 爲 再 若 着 慢 走 R. 156; 行 R. 144.

---

## READING LESSON XXI. 輯要第二十一

### A City Ramble III.

### 黜虛崇正

那位先生說完了話、就把聖書打開、高聲念[1]道、神是要萬人得救、明白眞道、只有一位眞神、在神面前只有一位中人、就是基督耶穌、念完了就開[2]講說、大槪先生們聽這眞神兩個字、就不知道是誰、我要細細的說給你們聽、這位神、不是人手造的、是萬福的根本、天、地、海、江、河、湖、和

---

[1] *Nien tao* 念道 Read, saying . . .

[2] *K'ai chiang* 開講 Began to explain.

其中的各樣東西、沒有一樣不是他造的、一年有四季、春、夏、秋、冬、都是他[1]定的、太陽、月亮、也是他造的、世界所有的東西、[2]像馬、牛、羊、雞、獅子、狼、老虎、也是他所造的、[3]再是地上一切與我們有益處的、都是從[4]他那裏來的、像甚麼[5]藥草、麥子、和別的東西。比方、我們秋後下鄉去、看見作莊稼的種麥子、心裏細想、誰能叫他[6]發長呢、若是冬天不下雪、春天不下雨、不是乾死了嗎、我們有甚麼法子得麵吃呢、但[7]那叫天下雨下雪的、就是這位眞神、世上一切的事都在他手中、都是他管着、非蒙他的大恩、你我就沒有吃的了。可惜人大半不懂這些事、就在[8]收割以後去謝謝甚麼土地、菩薩、好像張家的兒子得了父母的[9]教養、倒跑到李家門上去行孝、這不是[10]大不合理、算不得行孝麼。我們上廟裏去、是謝錯了神、那該謝的神就是這位愛我們的眞神、若是拿假的當做眞的、豈不是自己[11]惹禍、使神叫天不下雨、人人都

---

[1] *Ting* 定 here = To appoint.

[2] *Hsiang* 像 is often used before an enumeration of things in the sense of 'Such as' . . . .

[3] *Tsai shi ti-shang ih-ch'ieh ü o-men iu ih-ch'u tih* 再是地上一切與我們有益處的 Note the construction—再 further, 一切 all 是 that is 與我們有益處的 of benefit to us 在地上 on the earth.

[4] *T'a na-li*: 那裏 *na-li* is here used idiomatically and does not need to be translated 從他那裏來的 Have come from Him.

[5] *Ioh ts'ao* 藥草 Medicinal herbs.

[6] *Fah chang* 發長 To grow up.

[7] *Na . . . tih* 那 . . . 的 He who . . . the 那 prepares the way for the 的 below.

[8] *Sheo-koh* 收割 To harvest ; to reap.

[9] *Chiao iang* 教養 To be taught and reared—to be brought up.

[10] *Ta puh hoh li* 大不合理 Very unseemly ; perfectly unreasonable.

[11] *Ræ ho* 惹禍 To provoke calamity ; to cause trouble.

要[1]受罪麼。再說、這位神並不是住在廟裏、靠人抬來抬去、也不是要人在他面前燒香、拿東西給他吃、給他用、因爲他不但是不要人把東西給他、他倒要把東西賜給人、他既是靈、就不是金、銀、銅、鐵、木頭、做的、他也不能住在甚麼一定的地方、因他本是[2]無所不在、[3]無所不知、[4]無所不能、沒有不知道的事、沒有辦不了的事、也不是我們眼睛所能看得見的、[5]我這一說、想必你們要問我說、既不能看見他、也不能[6]當面和他說話、怎麼得知道敬他拜他呢、這話也問的不錯、我略略的把[7]敬拜他的事講出來。一來、我們都知道神比人高、二來、我們也知道人是靠神、不是神靠人、所以各人都該心裏想、人手所造的定然不能比人高、造他們的人豈不是比他們靈、比他們高得多麼、[8]這樣說來、人本當用靈心敬拜眞神、不當用香紙與別的東西、白費心、白費錢。再說、這位神知道我們難找眞路、所以早就打發他的兒子來、告訴我們眞道。要知道他兒子是誰、是多偺來的、行了甚麼事、看下課就知道了。

---

[1] *Sheo tsui* 受罪 To suffer. Note how sin and suffering go together.

[2] *U-so-puh-tsai* 無所不在 Omnipresent.

[3] *U-so-puh-chï* 無所不知 Omniscient.

[4] *U-so-puh-neng* 無所不能 Almighty.

[5] *O chæ ih shoh* 我這一說 These remarks of mine.

[6] *Tang-mien* 當面 Face to face; in the presence of.

[7] *Ching-pai* 敬拜 To worship with reverence.

[8] *Chæ-iang shoh lai* 這樣說來 From which statement we see ...

# LESSON XXII. 課二十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 賸$^4$ | *sheng* | Remainder; overplus. |
| 果$^3$ | *k* { *o*, *uo* | Fruit. Certainly; surely. |
| 勝$^4$ | *sheng* | To overcome. To excel. Superior. |
| 科$^1$ | *k‘* { *o*, *uo* | A class; a series. Medical treatment. |
| 飛$^1$ | *fei* | To fly. Quick. |
| 交$^1$ | *ch*, *k* } *iao* | To commit to; to hand to. |
| 之$^1$ | *chï* | He; she; it; etc. Corresponds in some uses to 的. |
| 結$^2$ | *ch*, *k* } *ieh* | To contract. To form, as fruit. A knot. To settle an account. |
| 夥$^3$ | *ho* | Numerous. A company. An assistant. |
| 計$^4$ | *ch*, *k* } *i* | A plan; a device. To reckon. All told. |
| 嘗$^2$ | *ch‘ang* | To taste; to experience. Sign of past tense. |
| 揀$^3$ | *ch*, *k* } *ien* | To select. To pick up. |
| 敗$^4$ | *pai* | To ruin. Defeat; to be defeated. |
| 降$^4$ | *ch*, *k* } *iang* | To descend. Read *hsiang*$^2$. To submit; to surrender. |
| 示$^4$ | *shï* | An omen. To proclaim. |
| 師$^1$ | *s*, *sh* } *ï* | A teacher; an instructor. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 俗$^2$ | *suh* | Vulgar; common. |
| 猶$^2$ | *iu* | Like. Undecided. |
| 托$^1$ | *t‘oh* | To support with the hand. To commission. |
| 矩$^3$ | *ch*, *k* } *ü* | A custom. Usage. |
| 內$^4$ 科$^1$ | *nui-k‘o* | Medicine, as opposed to surgery. |
| 外$^4$ 科$^1$ | *uai-k‘o* | Surgery, as opposed to medicine. |
| 夥$^3$ 計$^4$ | *ho-chi*$^1$ | An assistant. |
| 年$^2$ 成$^2$ | *nien-ch‘eng* | The harvest. |
| 天$^1$ 文$^2$ | *t‘ien-uen* | Astronomy. |
| 頭$^2$ 髮$^3$ | *t‘eo-fah*$^{21}$ | Hair on the human head. |
| 猶$^2$ 太$^4$ | *iu-t‘ai* | Judæa. |
| 規$^1$ 矩$^3$ | *kuei-chü* | Propriety; usage |
| 風$^1$ 俗$^2$ | *feng-suh* | Customs; manners. |
| 告$^4$ 示$^4$ | *kao-shï*$^{5.27}$ | An official proclamation. |
| 雀$^3$ 鳥$^3$ | *ch‘ioh-niao*$^1$ | Birds. |
| 師$^1$ { 母$^3$, 娘$^2$ | *sï* { *mu*, *niang* | Wife of a person of the middle class. |
| 力$^4$ 量$^2$ | *lih-liang* | Strength; power. |
| 得$^2$ 罪$^4$ | *teh-tsui* | To offend. To apologize. |

### *T‘eo* 頭 as a Suffix, and as the Equivalent of *Ti* 第.

1. The word ‘head’ is used in English to indicate a category or class; hence we speak of things falling under such and such a

---

事大事小見面就了 *Great and small matters are soon settled by a personal interview.*

'head.' This may serve as a rough analogy to a use of 頭 *t'eo* in Chinese, in which it indicates some quality, or places some action under a certain 'head;' the quality being indicated by the word to which it is affixed. Take for example the word 聽 *t'ing* to hear; 頭 *t'eo* added to it denotes that what is listened to has some quality which makes it worth hearing; *e.g.*, There is something very interesting in what Mr. Chang says; *Chang Hsien-seng shoh-hua hen iu t'ing-t'eo* 章先生說話很有聽頭.

The following words which have occurred in the previous Lessons, take 頭 *t'eo*:—

Something worth saying; *shoh-t'eo* 說頭.
Harvests; *nien-t'eo* 年頭.
Palatable; toothsome; *ch'ih-t'eo* 吃頭.
Fit to drink; *hoh-t'eo* 喝頭.
Something or somebody to lean on; *k'ao-t'eo* 靠頭.
Pleasing to the eye; *k'an-t'eo* 看頭.
Something to laugh at; *hsiao-t'eo* 笑頭.
Thoughts; *nien-t'eo* 念頭.
Object of desire; *hsiang-t'eo* 想頭.
The aspect of a coming event; *lai-t'eo* 來頭.
That fellow is unspeakable; *na-ko ren muh iu shoh-t'eo* 那個人沒有說頭.
What is there to laugh at? *iu shen-mo hsiao-t'eo ni?* 有甚麽笑頭呢.

*T'eo* 頭 often takes the place of *ti* 第 in speaking of the first [illegible] of a series; *e.g.*,

The first few chapters; *t'eo chi chang* 頭幾章.
The first two days; *t'eo liang t'ien* 頭兩天.

### *Liao* 了 as a Principal Verb.

2. *Liao* 了 is not only a sign of the Past Tense, Lesson III. Section 8, but also a principal and auxiliary verb; *e.g.*,

The matter is already finished; *sï-ch'ing i-ching liao lo* 事情已經了了.

There is no settling this affair; *chœ-ko sï liao puh liao* 這個事了不了.

If you speak too rapidly, it is impossible to avoid mistakes; *shoh-hua t'ai k'uai chiu mien puh liao iu ts'o* 說話太快就免不了有錯.

That affair of A. insulting B. was settled up long ago; *Chang-chia teh-tsui Li-chia tih sï tsao-i liao chieh* 張家得罪李家的事早已了結.

### Supplementary: Lessons II. and III.

3. *Ren* 人 when used in contrast, is often the equivalent of 'others,' and needs the addition of no special word; *e.g.*,

On no account fight with others; *puh k'o ho ren ta-chia* 不可和人打架.

*Liang* 兩 and 三 *san* are often abbreviated to *lia* and *sa* in the North; *e.g.*,

Three cash for two; *sa ch‘ien lia* 三錢兩.

Numerical categories are very common in Chinese, and the apt use of them adds a good deal to the style of a speaker. Some are used in a sense different from the meaning suggested by the characters themselves; *e.g.*,

Eighty or a hundred; *ih peh pah shïh* 一百八十.
Three or four; *san u ko* 三五個.
Between 900 and 1,000; *shang-ch‘ien* 上千.
About 10,000; *shang uan* 上萬.
Nearly 100 cash; *peh shïh ko ch‘ien* 百十個錢.

In addition there are many combinations which are almost proverbial in their use; *e.g.*,

Too many cooks spoil the broth; *ch‘ih sheo pah chioh* 七手八脚.
All sorts and sizes; *ch‘ih ta pah hsiao* 七大八小.

In the South ‘One or two’; or, ‘About one’; is expressed by *pa* 把; *e.g.*,

An hour or two; *tien pa liang tien chong* 點把兩點鐘.
About a dollar; *k‘uai pa iang-ch‘ien* 塊把洋錢.
One or two garments; *chien pa liang chien i-shang* 件把兩件衣裳. This idiom is not used in the North.

*Ren* 認 is sometimes used as the equivalent of ‘to be responsible for,’ especially when money is in the question; *e.g.*,

I will be responsible for $2.00; *o k‘o-i ren liang-k‘uai ch‘ien* 我可以認兩塊錢.
To acknowledge an account or debt; *ren-chang* 認賬.
To disavow responsibility; *puh ren chang* 不認賬.

*Mai* 買 is the general word for ‘to buy’, and is the one usually employed by foreigners; but the Chinese use several different words according to the article they wish to purchase. These probably vary in different districts, but the following list will at least be a guide:—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 扯$^{3}$ | *ch‘œ.* | To pull apart; to haul. |
| 截$^{2}$ | $\left.\begin{array}{l}ch\\ts\end{array}\right\}$ *ieh.* | To cut off; to intercept. |
| 挖$^{1}$ | *uah.* | To scoop out; to dig out. |
| 糴$^{2}$ | *tih.* | To lay in grain. |
| 稱$^{1.4}$ | *ch‘eng.* | To style. To weigh. A steelyard. |
| 醋$^{4}$ | *ts‘u.* | Vinegar. |
| 油$^{2}$ | *iu.* | Oil; grease; paint. |

Buy three feet of calico; *ch‘œ* (or *chieh*) *san ch‘ih pu* 扯 (or 截) 三尺布.
He has gone to buy grain; *t‘a ch‘ü tih-liang* 他去糴糧.

Buy a bushel of rice; *ua ih-teo mi* 挖一斗米.

Tell him to buy three lbs. of mutton; *chiao t‘a koh san chin iang-ruh lai* 叫他割三斤羊肉來.

He has just purchased two lbs. of bread; *t‘a ts‘ai ch‘eng liang chin man-t‘eo lai* 他纔稱兩斤饅頭來.

How much vinegar shall I buy? Ten cash worth; *o k‘o-i ta to-shao ch‘ien tih ts‘u lai? k‘o-i ta shih-ko ch‘ien tih lai* 我可以打多少錢的醋來, 可以打十個錢的來.

Buy four ounces of oil; *ta sï liang iu lai* 打四兩油來.

I want to buy six ounces of wine; *o iao chuang luh liang chiu* 我要裝六兩酒.

*Chi* 幾 or 多少 *to-shao* repeated, forms such phrases as, ‘However many or much’; ‘As many as’; *e.g.*,

Give him as many as he wants; *t‘a iao chi-ko chih t‘a chi-ko* 他要幾個給他幾個.

Reckon them all, whatever the number; *iu to-shao suan to-shao* 有多少算多少.

## Lesson III.

4. *Ch‘ih* 吃 as applied to a vessel means the amount she ‘draws,’ her ‘draught’; *e.g.*,

That vessel draws more than four feet of water; *na-t‘iao ch‘uan ch‘ih sï ch‘ih to shui* 那條船吃四尺多水.

*Ch‘ih-fan* 吃飯 in addition to its ordinary use, is often the equivalent of, ‘to get a living by’; *e.g.*,

He lives by the sea—he is a sailor; *t‘a ch‘ih ch‘uan-shang tih fan* 他吃船上的飯.

Every man lives by his own calling; *k‘ao shan ch‘ih shan, k‘ao shui ch‘ih shui* 靠山吃山, 靠水吃水

糧$^2$ *liang* Grain; rations; provisions, is similarly used; as,

That man is a soldier; *na-ko ren ch‘ih liang* 那個人吃糧.

*Iu* 有 is often repeated with compound words; sometimes for the sake of emphasis, sometimes for the sake of euphony; *e.g.*,

To have a good foundation; *iu ken iu chi* 有根有基.

Where in English we use ‘is’ to indicate a condition or quality, as ‘This is reasonable’; or, ‘He is wealthy,’ Chinese often uses 有 *iu*, followed by a noun, instead as with us, an adjective or an adverb; *e.g.*,

That statement is reasonable; *na-chü hua iu li* 那句話有理.

He is well-to-do; *t‘a iu ch‘ien* 他有錢.

Used idiomatically 有 *iu* frequently has the meaning of ‘plenty,’ as applied to time or things; *e.g.*,

Do you want any more? I have plenty; *hai iao mo? iu lo iu lo* 還要嗎, 有了有了.

He was there a long time; *t‘a tsai-na-li iu rïh-tsï* 他在那裏有日子

*Ch‘ing* 請 used to a person on leaving, is equal to ‘Good-bye’; as is also 再會 *tsai-huei.* On entering a room 請 *ch‘ing* addressed to one going in means, ‘After you.’

The following list gives most of the prepositions and adverbs of place in constant use:—

In the midst; among; *tsai-chong-chien* 在中間.
In the middle; *tsai-tang-chong* 在當中.
Behind; *tsai-heo-t‘eo* 在後頭.
右⁴ *iu.* The right; that which is on the right.
左³ *tso.* The left side.
On the right side; *tsai-iu-pien* 在右邊.
On the left side; *tsai-tso-pien* 在左邊.
In front; *tsai-ch‘ien-t‘eo* 在前頭.
Here; *tsai-chœ-k‘uai* 在這塊.
There; *tsai-na-k‘uai* 在那塊.
Above; *tsai-kao-t‘eo* 在高頭.
In this place; *tsai-ts‘i-ti* 在此地.
} Used principally in the South.

*Na-li* 那裏 repeated = ‘wherever’; *e.g.,*

Wherever one looked there were people; *na-li k‘an na-li iu ren* 那裏看那裏有人.

到那裏說那裏的話. Speak the dialect of the place where you are.

*Puh-teh-puh* 不得不 or 不能不 *puh-neng-puh* preceding a verb denotes necessity, and may be translated by ‘cannot but . . . .’; etc; *e.g.,*

I cannot but go; *o puh-teh-puh ch‘ü* 我不得不去.
He is bound to come; *t‘a puh-neng-puh lai* 他不能不來.

*Huei* 回, *pien* 徧, or similar words repeated with verbs may be translated ‘whenever’; ‘as often as’; etc; *e.g.,*

Wash it every time you use it; *iong ih-huei hsi ih-huei* 用一回洗一回.

We will reckon accounts as often as you make purchases; *mai ih-huei tong-hsi suan ih-huei chang* 買一回東西, 算一回賬.

*Lai* 來 and 去 *ch‘ü* repeated or separated by a verb denote ‘repetition’; *e.g.,*

They talked back and forth and have settled nothing; *t‘a-men shoh-lai-shoh-ch‘ü hai shï muh iu shoh ting* 他們說來說去還是沒有說定.

Great numbers went to and fro; *lai lai ch‘ü ch‘ü tih ren to* 來來去去的人多.

*Tui* 對 is used as a verb, ‘To check; to compare,’ as accounts or writings; ‘A pair or brace’; and for ‘Adding to fluids’; *e.g.,*

Let us check the accounts; *k‘o-i pa chang tui-ih-tui* 可以把賬對一對.

A pair of flower vases; *ih-tui hua-p‘ing* 一對花餅.
Add a little hot water; *tui ih-tien k‘ai shui* 對一點開水.

NOTES.—*a.* *Ko* 果 usually takes *tsï* when not preceded by any descriptive word.

*b.* *Chï* 之 though a book word, is continually used in ready-made phrases, and so used is understood everywhere.

*c.* *Sheng* 賸 frequently takes 下 *hsia* with no difference in meaning.

*d.* *Chang* 張 and 李 *li* as used in Section 2, stand for two hypothetical persons, and are used as 'A.' and 'B.' in English.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

They were victorious every time ; *t'a-men ta ih-chang sheng ih-chang.*
He understands surgery, but not pathology ; *t'a tong uai-k'o, puh tong nui-k'o.*
There is no such custom ; *muh iu chæ kuei-chü.*
That teacher is very unmannerly ; *na-ko hsien-seng ih-tien kuei-chü tu muh iu.*
Taste and see if it is good ; *ch'ang ch'ang hao puh hao.*
Select two large ones ; *chien liang-ko ta tih.*
I will commission you to do a little affair for me ; *o t'oh ni t'i o pan ih-chien hsiao sï.*
How many are left over? *sheng* (or *sheng-hsia*) *to-shao?*
The Prefect issued a proclamation yesterday ; *Chï-fu tsoh-t'ien ch'uh kao-shï.*
Each place has its own customs ; *ih-ko ti-fang iu ih-ko ti-fang-tih kuei-chü.*
We have all sinned against God ; *o-men tu teh-tsui Shang-ti.*
Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners ; *Chi-tuh Ie-su chiang shï uei iao chiu tsui-ren.*

*Translate* :—The bird he gave me sings constantly ; alas ! it has just flown away. The harvest this year is not so good as last. That large tree bears fruit once a year. He has gone to Peking to study astronomy; there is no one here competent to teach him. Where is the food that was left over from yesterday? If two nations go to war, it is uncertain which will conquer and which will be defeated. How much have you over of that 3,000 cash I gave you yesterday? Not only is there nothing over ; it was not enough. The proprietor of the shoe shop on the main street has engaged an additional assistant. That coolie is very strong ; he was able to lift that large stone tablet by himself. The hairs of your head are all numbered. Mrs. 莊 constantly speaks of the failings of others, and provokes people to anger. I beg your pardon. I hand this copy of the New Testament to you ; on no account make it dirty. I want to go on the street to-day to buy a few pints of rice : very well, buy and bring back with you two lbs. of pork and one lb. of fish. The Gospels say that Jesus came to earth in the West, in Judæa. He grew up in His father's house, and for thirty years was a carpenter. When He was thirty years old, He left His father's home and travelled all over Judæa, from north to south, from east to west. He both preached and healed. When He saw a blind man, He gave Him sight ; when He met a dumb man, He enabled him to speak. He performed all kinds of miracles.

Writing Exercise :—道 差 被 彼 知 底 進 卻 罷 錯 吃 力 R. 19.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十二課雜句

他們打一仗,勝一仗
他懂外科,不懂內科
沒有這規矩
那個先生,一點規矩都沒有
嘗嘗好不好
揀兩個大的
我托你替我辦一件小事
賸(賸下)多少
知府昨天出告示
一個地方,有一個地方的規矩
我們都得罪上帝
基督耶穌降世,爲要救罪人

## NOTES.

# READING LESSON XXII. 輯要第二十二

---

## A City Ramble IV.

### 赦罪妙法

先生又說、兒子兩個字、是借[1]用、並不是說神有妻子、不過是把親[2]愛貴[3]重的意思發[4]明、就是了、所以這一位降[5]生在猶太國的耶穌、成[6]了人身和我們一樣、能對我們說話、滿有恩惠住在我們中間、一面說神是靈、人也是被他造的、所以本當用靈心拜他、一面說人有一[7]身的罪、因爲該行的並沒去行、不該行的倒去行了、說話行事沒有一樣不犯罪的。又說、善[8]有善報、惡有惡報、這惡報怕你我眞當[9]不起、就是自己做好事、要補[10]從前所有的過、也補不起、罪還是在我們的身上、無法脫[11]離、但蒙了這位的大恩、他在世上有三十三年、走徧猶太國、到處行好事、可憐人、用神[12]能醫治各樣的病、並不用藥、光

---

[1] *Chie-iong* 借用 Used in an accommodated sense.

[2] *Ch'in-ai* 親愛 Intimate; to love dearly.

[3] *Kuei-chong* 貴重 Honourable.

[4] *Fah ming* 發明 To manifest clearly; to make clear.

[5] *Chiang-seng* 降生 To descend and be born; to come down to the world.

[6] *Ch'eng liao ren shen* 成了人身 To become incarnate; to become a man.

[7] *Ih shen tih tsui* 一身的罪 Entirely sinful; full of sin.

[8] *Shan iu shan pao, oh iu oh pao* 善有善報, 惡有惡報 Good has a good reward, evil an evil recompense.

[9] *Tang puh ch'i* 當不起 Unable to endure.

[10] *Pu* 補 To make amends for.

[11] *T'oh-li* 脫離 To escape from—as evil habits, etc.

[12] *Shen neng* 神能 Divine power.

說幾句話、就叫瞎子能看見、聾子能聽見、啞吧能說話、連死人也叫他能復活、好叫人明明白白的曉得他又是人又是神、無論甚麽人都可以到他面前來、得身體的好處、得靈魂的好處。他也揀出幾個人來作他的門徒、在他升天以後、可以把他所[1]行所爲的一切事、都記[2]在書上、傳給後世的人都可以知道。他又說、是替天行事傳道、聽他就是聽眞神、看見他所行的、就是看見神所行的。他滿了三十三年、就把愛人的心越發表[3]明。怎[4]見得呢、因爲他行完了事、就爲天下各國的人捨了命、釘死在十字架上、和犯法的人一樣。這並不是說他自己有罪、因他一點罪都沒有、沒有犯一回法、沒有行一件壞事、沒有說半句壞話、不論說話行事、沒有一點錯[5]處、神也看不出錯來、人也看不出甚麽不是來。論到他自己本不該死、但是他知道他不死、我們要受大苦、到不了天堂、享不到眞福、所以他以自己的死爲贖[6]價、把我們的老賬都還了、使你我可以免罪得福。現在蒙了

---

[1] *So hsing so uei* 所行所爲 That which he did ; actions.

[2] *Chi*$^4$ 記 To record ; to put on record.

[3] *Piao*$^3$*-ming*$^2$ 表明 To manifest ; to make clear.

[4] *Tsen chien-teh ni* 怎見得呢 How may that be seen, or known?

[5] *Ts'o-ch'u* 錯處 Wrong.

[6] *Shuh-chia* 贖價 Ransom ; price of redemption.

神的恩惠、赦免我們的重罪、得[1]以與他和[2]好、以後可以去見他的聖面、這豈不是好嗎。先生們要領這麼大的好處、也不用花錢、這一切的福、都是神滿心要白白的賜給你們。[3]比方風雨罷、這能買麼、大財[4]主出幾千萬銀子買一點雨、也買不下來、船上的老板出幾萬吊錢買北風、也是買不到手、神既是把這些東西白白的賜給萬人、他豈肯要我們多花錢得了赦罪的福嗎、必無此理、有話說、豈有兒子跟父求餅、倒要給他石頭呢、神豈是趕不上人麼、我們求他救我們、他不肯麼。不說旁的、光說我一個人的事罷、以前我也不曉得這道理、也是上廟燒香、費了無數的錢[5]財、還是無用、但我一信這書上的話、靠了這位救主耶穌、我就蒙了恩、算是作了一個新人、舊事已經過去了、心裏成了一個小天堂、所以勸男女老少都來敬拜眞神、信靠他打發來的恩[6]主、你我就一[7]直往上行、雖在地便如在天一樣、豈不是好麼、

---

1. *Teh-i* 得 以 So that.
2. *Ho-hao* 和 好 On good terms with; reconciled.
3. *Pi-fang feng ü pa* 比 方 風 雨 罷 Let us take the wind and the rain as an illustration.
4. *Ts'ai-chu* 財 主 A wealthy person.
5. *Ch'ien-ts'ai* 錢 財 Money; wealth.
6. *En-chu* 恩 主 A benefactor.
7. *Ih-chih uang shang hsing* 一 直 往 上 行 To go steadily upward.

# LESSON XXIII. 第二十三課

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 流$^{2}$ | *liu* | To flow; to drift. A class. Abandoned. |
| 慣$^{1}$ | *kuan* | Accustomed to. Practised in. |
| 掉$^{1}$ | *tiao* | To fall down or into. To lose. To change. |
| 鑼$^{2}$ | *lo*$^{37}$ | A gong. |
| ✓ 破$^{1}$ | *p'o* | Broken. To break. To solve. |
| 跪$^{4}$ | *kuei* | To kneel; to bow down to. |
| 而$^{2}$ | *ri* | And; also; but. |
| 星$^{1}$ | $\left.\begin{smallmatrix}hs\\ s\end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ *ing* | Stars; planets. A spark. |
| ✓ 園$^{2}$ | *üen* | A garden; an orchard. |
| ✓ 永$^{3}$ | *iong* | Eternal; perpetual. |
| ✓ 答$^{2}$ | *tah* | To reply; to respond to. |
| 撒$^{1,3}$ | *sah* | To scatter; to sow; to let loose. |
| ✓ 謊$^{3}$ | *huang* | To talk wildly; to lie. Lies. |
| ✓ 武$^{3}$ | *u* | Military; warlike. |
| 頓$^{4}$ | *t* $\left\{\begin{smallmatrix}uen\\ en\end{smallmatrix}\right.$ | A time; a turn. A meal. |
| ✓ 剃$^{1}$ | *t'i* | To shave. |
| 清$^{1}$ | $\left.\begin{smallmatrix}ch'\\ ts\end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ *ing* | Clear; pure. Correct, as an account. |
| 藍$^{2}$ | *lan* | Blue. Indigo. |
| 包$^{1}$ | *pao*$^{1}$ | A parcel. To wrap. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 性$^{4}$ | $\left.\begin{smallmatrix}hs\\ s\end{smallmatrix}\right\}$ *ing* | Nature; disposition. A quality. |
| ✓ 日$^{4}$ 本$^{3}$ | *rih-pen* | Japan; Japanese. |
| ✓ 仍$^{2}$ 舊$^{4}$ | *reng-chiu* | Still; as before. |
| ✓ 傢$^{1}$ 伙$^{3}$ | *chia-ho* | Tools; utensils; furniture. |
| 生$^{1}$ 意$^{4}$ | *seng-i* | Trade. |
| ✓ 答$^{2}$ 應$^{4}$ | *tah-ing* | To respond; to accede to. |
| 本$^{3}$ 來$^{2}$ | *pen-lai* | Originally; at first. |
| 小$^{3}$ 心$^{1}$ | *hsiao-hsin* | Careful; cautious. |
| ✓ 撒$^{3}$ 謊$^{3}$ | *sah-huang* | To lie. |
| 過$^{1}$ 年$^{2}$ | *ko-nien* | New Year's time; next year. |
| ✓ 包$^{1}$ 袱$^{2}$ | *pao-fuh*$^{1}$ | A square cloth for tying up bundles; a bundle when so tied up. |
| 永$^{3}$ 遠$^{3}$ | *iong-üen* | Perpetually; eternally. |
| ✓ 應$^{1}$ 許$^{3}$ | *ing-hsü* | To promise; a promise. |
| 記$^{1}$ 性$^{4}$ | *chi-hsing* | Memory. |
| 自$^{4}$ 來$^{2}$ 火$^{3}$ | *tsï-lai-ho* | Gas. |
| ✓ 切$^{1}$ 切$^{1}$ 的$^{1}$ | *ch'ieh-ch'ieh-tih* | Earnestly; urgently. |
| ✓ 一$^{1}$ 朵$^{3}$ 雲$^{2}$ | *ih-to üin* | A cloud. |

### *Tiao* 掉 as a Principal and Auxiliary Verb.

1. *Tiao* 掉 is used both as principal and an auxiliary verb. As an auxiliary it is heard much more frequently in the South than in the North. It is used with the verbs illustrated in the following sentences, and also with 打 *ta*; 起 *ch'i*; 弄 *long*; and 洗 *hsi*.

---

玉不琢不成器 *Gems unwrought form nothing useful.*

My pencil has dropped on the floor; *o-tih pih tiao tsai-ti-hsia* 我的筆掉在地下.

He cannot sell that salt; *na-ko ien t'a mai puh-tiao* 那個鹽他賣不掉.

You can remove it with a knife; *iong tao-tsï k'o-i ch'ü teh-tiao* 用刀子可以去得掉.

Turn this paper end for end; *pa chœ-ko chï tiao ko t'eo lai* 把這個紙掉過頭來.

Turn to the south; *uang nan tiao* 往南掉.

It will not wash out if hot water is used; *iong reh shui chiu hsi puh tiao* 用熱水就洗不掉.

### *K'o* 可 as an Interrogative and a Suffix.

**2.** *K'o* 可 often forms part of interrogative sentences; as,

Is it so or not? *k'o shï chœ-ko iang-tsï?* 可是這個樣子.

Before certain verbs it roughly corresponds to the word 'able' as a suffix in English, denoting that certain things may be loved, hated, as 'loveable,' etc.: it has been already so used in a few Lessons. It may be prefixed to the following words which have occurred in earlier Vocabularies:—

Evident; it may be seen that . . . . *k'o-chien* 可見.
Loveable; *k'o-ai* 可愛.
It may be known; which proves . . . . *k'o-chï* 可知.
Allowable; *k'o-hsing* 可行.
Worthy of respect; *k'o-ching* 可敬.
Abominable; detestable; *k'o-u* 可惡.
Terrible; that which may be feared; *k'o-p'a* 可怕.
Worthy of death; *k'o-shah* 可殺.

### *Ih* 一 indicating Totality and Uniformity.

**3.** *Ih* 一 is prefixed to many words to convey the idea of sameness or uniformity, and also to denote totality—the summing up of parts into one whole; it may be prefixed to the following words which have already occurred:—

Of one heart, or mind; *ih-hsin* 一心.
Of one mind; *ih-i* 一意.
Of the same variety; *ih-chong* 一種.
The whole; *ih-kai* 一概.
Together with; *ih-t'ong* 一同.
All together; *ih-k'uai-rï* 一塊兒.
Continuously; *ih-lien* 一連.
Of the same way, or quality, or company; *ih-lu* 一路.
The whole family; *ih-chia* 一家.
The whole body; the whole of; *ih-t'i* 一體.

Also, 'The sum total; the whole of'; *ih-kong;* 一共 From 共ʻ *kong.* In all; to sum up. With. Together.

All; all at once; *ih-ch'i* 一齊 From 齊$^2$*ch'i, tsi* Even; uniform. All.

## Supplementary: Lesson IV.

4. *Chien* 見 is used in certain connections in the sense of, 'To expose to; to come in contact with,' and as a sign of the Passive; *e.g.*,

Chinese paper must not come in contact with water; *Chong-kueh chï chien puh-teh shui* 中國紙見不得水.

Thatched houses must not be exposed to fire; *tsʻao fang-tsï chien puh-teh ho* 草房子見不得火.

As soon as it came into contact with fire it was burned; *ih chien ho chiu shao-liao* 一見火就燒了.

His disease is no better; *tʻa-tih ping puh chien hao* 他的病不見好.

Don't be offended; *puh iao chien kuai* 不要見怪.

His malady is a little lighter to-day; *chin-tʻien tʻa-tih ping chien chʻing ih-tien* 今天他的病見輕一點.

Teachers are divided as to whether 見 *chien*; or 經 *ching*; or 禁 *chin*$^{4}$ To prohibit; to restrain; should be used in the sense of 'lasting,' 'enduring' as material, etc.; Southern teachers usually prefer 經 *ching*.

That thing will not stand use; *na-ko tong-hsi puh chin* (or *chien*) *iong* 那個東西不禁 (or 見) 用.

This garment stands wear; *chœ-chien i-shang chin* (or *chien*) *chʻuan* 這件衣裳禁 (or 見) 穿.

*Tsai* 在 is often the equivalent of 'To rest with'—as of power; responsibility; etc.; and 'To consist in'; as,

Wealth and honour rest with Heaven; *fu kuei tsai tʻien* 富貴在天.

I take the responsibility of that matter; *na-chien sï tsai o* 那件事在我.

The practice of goodness consists in motives not in words; *hsing shan puh tsai tsui, tsai hsin* 行善不在嘴, 在心.

*Shang* 上 is employed as a verb 'To enter'—as an item in an account; as,

Put it to my account; *kʻo-i shang o-tih chang* 可以上我的賬.

As applied to a stream it denotes against the current, as 下 *hsia* denotes to go with it; *e.g.*,

It is easy to go down stream; difficult to go up; *hsia shui iong-i, shang shui nan* 下水容易上水難.

Joined with 以 *i* it is used for 'next' as applied to the order of verses, chapters, books, etc.; *e.g.*,

Matthew is next to, or comes before Mark; *Ma-tʻai tsai Ma-kʻo i-shang* 馬太在馬可以上.

Luke comes after Mark; *Lu-chia tsai Ma-kʻo i-hsia* 路加在馬可以下.

Above the tenth verse; *tsai ti-shïh chieh i-shang* 在第十節以上.

*Sï* 事 as used with 有 *iu* may either mean, 'To be engaged'; or, 'To be in difficulties'; as,

The shopkeeper is in trouble; *pʻu-hu iu liao sï* 舖戶有了事.

I am engaged now, and have no time; *o hsien-tsai iu sï muh iu kong-fu* 我現在有事沒有工夫.

*K‘an* 看 is applied to reading; to thinking; and, read in the 1st tone, to watching; *e.g.*,

He is there reading; *t‘a tsai-na-li k‘an shu* 他在那裏看書.

I think he is an upright official; *o k‘an t‘a shï ko ch‘ing kuan* 我看他是個清官.

The barber is at home keeping house; *t‘i-t‘eo-tih tsai chia li k‘an-men* 剃頭的在家裏看門.

In idiomatic usage 看 *k‘an* also means ‘As circumstances require’; or ‘It depends on’; or it indicates direction; *e.g.*,

Act according to circumstances; *k‘an sï hsing sï* 看事行事

Adapt your conversation to your company; *k‘an ren shoh-hua* 看人說話.

It depends on the price; *k‘an chia-ch‘ien kao ti* 看價錢高低.

In which direction does England lie? in the West; *Ing-kueh k‘an na-ih fang? k‘an hsi-fang* 英國看那一方, 看西方.

*Chiu* 就 is a word, the force and usage of which must be acquired by practice and observation. A few examples may, however, help to an understanding of its commoner uses:—

The Japanese caught at the expression and said . . . . ; *Rï-pen ren chiu-choh t‘a-tih hua shoh* 日本人就着他的話說.

People came to him from every quarter; *ren ts‘ong sï-fang chiu-liao t‘a lai* 人從四方就了他來.

That military official comes and goes without any notice; *na-ko u kuan shoh lai chiu lai, shoh ch‘ü chiu ch‘ü* 那個武官說來就來, 說去就去.

Buy a box of matches while you are about it; *chiu-sheo chih o mai ih-hoh-tsï iang-ho* 就手給我買一盒子洋火.

Note the idiom in the third sentence—‘Said come, then came, said go, then went.’ *Chiu* 就 so used after verbs repeated, conveys the meaning that the action took place either without delay or without notice; as,

No sooner said ‘kill’ than he was killed; *shoh shah chiu shah* 說殺就殺.

*Tao* 到 joined to 說 *shoh*; 講 *chiang*; 論 *luen*; and 談 *t‘an*, forms part of such prepositional phrases as, ‘With reference to’; ‘As regards’; ‘As to’; etc.; *e.g.*,

As to his son’s disease, I fear it cannot be cured; *luen-tao t‘a rï-tsï-tih ping, o p‘a chï puh liao* 論到他兒子的病我怕治不了.

I made no reference to Mr. Li’s affairs; *o muh iu shoh-tao Li chia tih sï* 我沒有說到李家的事.

I will speak about this affair for you; *chœ-chien sï o k‘o-i chih ni shoh-tao liao* 這件事我可以給你說到了.

*Hao* 好 is used in some connections in an ironical sense in which case the emphasis is on *hao*. It is also used in the sense of ‘easily’ and also as a superlative; *e.g.*, 23.

Very easy indeed!—meaning that it was not easy, *hao iong-* 好 容 易.

A very heavy rain; *hao ta ü* 好 大 雨.

That man is easily gulled; *na-ko ren hao hong* 那 個 人 好 哄.

---

NOTES.—*a*. Japan is also called 東洋 *tong-iang*. A 'Rickshaw' is called a 東 洋 車 *tong-iang ch'œ* because it was first devised in Japan by a missionary. It was originally called a 'Man's strength carriage;' hence the word Jinrickshaw 人力車, the Japanese name for it.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Sun, moon and stars; *ri üeh hsing san kuang*.
The carpenter uses all sorts of tools; *muh-chiang iong koh iang tih chia-no.*
Outside the city there are both flower and vegetable gardens; *tsai ch'eng uai hua-üen ts'ai-üen tu iu.*
Be careful not to break the gong; *hsiao-sin, puh iao ta p'o liao lo.*
I will not consent to this; *chœ-si o puh tah-ing.*
Question and answer; *ih uen ih tah.*
Beat him first and then see; *hsien ta t'a ih-tuen, tsai shoh.*
Originally I had two fans; *o pen-lai iu liang-pa shan-tsï.*
All the accounts are settled up; *ih-ch'ieh-tih chang tu suan ch'ing.*
Some people have two meals and some three meals a day; *iu ih-t'ien ch'ïh liang-tuen tih, iu ih-t'ien ch'ïh san-tuen tih.*
He knelt down and earnestly besought God to have mercy on him; *t'a kuei-hsia, ch'ieh-ch'ieh-tih ch'iu Shang-ti k'o-lien t'a.*
Heaven is a place where eternal happines is enjoyed; *t'ien-t'ang shi iong-iüen hsiang fuh tih ti-fang.*

*Translate*:—The small bottle has fallen down; pick it up at once. Although he is wealthy, he still lives in a broken-down house. The ancients used oil lamps, but now, generally speaking, all countries use gas and electric light. The day the hospital was opened, both civil and military officials were there; in all between twenty and thirty. The Yellow River flows east right into the North Sea. That river is very unreliable; it rises without any warning, rising more than ten feet in one night; it is something to be afraid of. Which do you think is better, to wear blue or red? It depends on the person; it is better for a child to wear red and a grown-up person blue. Do not lie on any account; liars both injure themselves and others also. Don't be offended with me if I tell you the truth. That pupil's memory is very bad; I teach him a character and he at once forgets it. The pity of it is that the child is spoilt by his mother. His money is insufficient at New Year's time; he cannot clear up his accounts. He is upstairs reading the newspaper The seed you sowed last year has not yet grown up. When I went to the church I saw them all kneeling When they had finished praying, a middle-aged man went into the pulpit and said, Let us sing hymn No. 102. All the congregation at once opened their hymn books and began to sing; in all they sang five verses. They all then sat down and listened to him preach; he said, All God's promises are trustworthy.

Writing Exercise:—借 身 飯 法 姓 靠 受 貴 教 封 費 口 R. 30.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十三課雜句

日,月,星,三光
木匠用各樣的傢伙
在城外,花園,菜園,都有
小心,不要打破了鑼
這事我不答應
一問一答
先打他一頓,再說
我本來有兩把扇子
一切的賬都算清
有一天吃兩頓的,有一天吃三頓的
他跪下切切的求上帝可憐他
天堂是永遠享福的地方

### NOTES.

# READING LESSON XXIII. 輯要第二十三

---

## The Astute Miss Feng I.

### 慧心姑娘

早幾百年前、有個封姑娘、他父親在外做大官、隔兩三年來家一回、又因沒有兒子把他一切的[1]家務托在這位姑娘的手裏、知道他又有本事、又有聰明、能[2]管賬、[3]能用人、能辦事、所以父親出遠門在外、[4]十分放心、姑娘也常親手寫信、把家中一切的事細細的告訴他。但世事不能都[5]隨心意、姑娘已經有二十幾歲、又富又貴、就[6]難免人想要娶他爲妻、但是他[7]全不打算出閣、光[8]以他父親的事爲念、本城有個少年人姓過、也是二十歲上下、[9]爲人不好、常[10]結交壞

1. *Chia¹-u⁴* 家務 Family affairs.
2. *Kuan-chang* 管賬 To look after accounts.
3. *Nen iong ren* 能用人 Was able to handle men.
4. *Shïh-fen fang-hsin* 十分放心 Mind completely at rest.
5. *Sui hsin i* 隨心意 To be to one's liking.
6. *Nan mien* 難免 Unavoidable; difficult to avoid.
7. *Ch'üen puh ta-suan ch'uh-koh* 全不打算出閣 Had not the slightest intention of getting married.
8. *I . . . uei nien* 以 . . . 爲念 To give attention to; to regard as the chief thing.
9. *Uei⁴ ren²* 爲人 As a man: 爲人不好 was a bad man.
10. *Chieh²-chiao¹* 結交 To form association with; to have intercourse with.

人、雖有錢卻自己[1]不値錢、他心裏想娶封姑娘、但封姑娘萬不肯、雖他托人給他[2]一連多少回數說些好話、姑娘還是不肯、眞叫他生氣、想法子要[3]強娶他。再說、離城十二三里地、有個[4]村莊叫南莊、四外的地都是封家的、莊裏的人給他[5]耕種、秋後收割了、姑娘下去一躺、看看、算算賬、[6]發錢、把該辦的事辦明白、就回來、年年是這樣行。那姓過的早已知道這事、暗暗的與別人一同商量、想出法子來、要等他從南莊回來、就打發人把他坐的那乘轎子抬回他家裏去、[7]不管怎麼樣要[8]仗他父親有錢有力強娶他。當那一天姑娘因知道路遠、就[9]清早起來、收拾東西、坐一乘有門的大轎、[10]頭前走、有他家裏的四個[11]丫頭、都坐四乘小轎跟在後頭、還有四個家人、都騎着馬在後面[12]隨行、這樣到太

---

1. *Puh chïh ch'ien* 不値錢 Worthless.
2. *Ih-lien to-shao huei su* 一連多少回數 For several times in succession.
3. *Ch'iang³-ch'ü³* 強娶 To compel to marry.
4. *Ts'uen¹-chuang¹* 村莊 Hamlet; village.
5. *Keng-chong* 耕種 To cultivate.
6. *Fah ch'ien* 發錢 To disburse monies; to make payments.
7. *Puh kuan tsen-mo-iang* 不管怎麼樣 Come what may; no matter what happens.
8. *Chang . . . iu ch'ien iu lih* 仗 . . . 有錢有力 Presuming (on the fact) that—had both wealth and power, or influence.
9. *Ch'ing-tsao* 清早 Very early in the morning.
10. *T'eo-ch'ien tseo* 頭前走 Went on ahead. L. 24.
11. *Ia-t'eo* 丫頭 Serving maids; slave girls.
12. *Sui-hsing* 隨行 Following on.

陽纔出來、城門一開、他們都出城、直往南莊跑。到了、莊[1]戶把大門開了、使轎子進去纔放下、姑娘進了門、仍舊把門關上、那四個跟隨的都在莊外下[2]了馬、姑娘一坐下、就有人送上茶來、吃完了茶、便到後邊去、在他母親墳上燒了香、哭[3]了一塲、又燒了些紙錢、燒了以後、就回到莊西一間高樓、四下看花、往下一看、見樓下滿地鋪金、花開的眞好看、叫人動[4]情、那時正是秋[5]成之時、收的收、割的割、鄉下人跑來跑去。他再[6]看一徧、就看見兩個閒[7]人站在一間草[8]房下邊、又往西一看、就看見三個閒人坐在草地上、姑娘見此光[9]景、就心[10]下明白、但半句話都不說、光下來吃飯、吃完了、就把莊田的事一一辦明、把莊戶一概都打發走了、以後叫一個丫頭倒[11]出一個大皮箱來、就揀了許多碎石塊放在皮箱裏、又用包袱包起、抬

1. *Chuang-hu* 莊戶 The farmers ; people about the village.
2. *Hsia ma* 下馬 To alight from a horse.
3. *K'uh-liao ih-ch'ang* 哭了一塲 Had a good cry.
4. *Tong ch'ing* 動情 To move the emotions ; to be affected.
5. *Ch'iu ch'eng chï shï* 秋成之時 The time when the harvest was ripe
6. *Tsai k'an ih-pien* 再看一徧 Gave one more look round.
7. *Hsien ren* 閒人 Idlers ; loafers.
8. *Ts'ao fang* 草房 Thatched cottage.
9. *Kuang*$^1$*-ching*$^3$ 光景 A situation ; outlook.
10. *Hsin hsia ming-peh* 心下明白 Took in the situation.
11. *Tao ch'uh* 倒出 To empty out.

到大轎裏頭、放在坐[1]板以下、又叫丫頭找一大塊石頭、用包袱包了、放在坐板以上、以後把轎門關上、又把轎上的圍[2]子放下、再叫家[8]人進來把話說清、使他們一齊明白、都點[4]頭說、是是、既然都領[5]了命、姑娘自己就換了一件藍衣裳、坐在四乘小轎之[6]內、叫一個丫頭等在南莊、不跟他一同回城裏去、叫莊戶慢慢的另外找小轎子送他進城、收拾好了、就開了門大聲喊轎[7]夫快來、姑娘就上了小轎、轎夫正在外頭等着、聽得叫、便一齊進去、各認各轎、抬了出來、纔離南莊不到一里地、東邊兩個、西邊三個、一[8]刻就有一二十個脚[9]夫出來、有幾個拉住大轎不放、要知道後事看下課就曉得了。

---

1. *Tso pan* 坐 板 The seat.
2. *Uei$^2$-tsi$^3$* 圍 子 The curtain that hangs round a chair ; a screen.
3. *Chia ren* 家 人 Retainers ; servants.
4. *Tien t'eo* 點 頭 To nod the head.
5. *Ling liao ming* 領 了 命 Received instructions or commands.
6. *Chï nei* 之 內 Inside ; within. Never used alone, and slightly bookish
7. *Chiao-fu* 轎 夫 Chair bearers. Also called 抬 轎 的.
8. *Ih-k'eh* 一 刻 In no time ; in a short time.
9. *Chioh-fu* 脚 夫 Coolies.

# LESSON XXIV. 課 四 十 二 第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 盡$^{4}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *in* | All; entirely. To use or supply to the utmost. |
| 渴$^{3}$ | *k'oh* | To thirst. Thirsty. |
| 邪$^{2}$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *ie* | Vicious; depraved. Heterodox. |
| 停$^{2}$ | *t'ing* | To stop; to delay. Suitable. |
| 肩$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ien* | The shoulder. |
| 願$^{4}$ | *üen* | To be willing; to be desirous of. A vow. |
| 將$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *iang* | To take; to hold. Sign of the future. Used as 把 *pa*. Read *chiang*$^{4}$. A general. |
| 待$^{4}$ | *tai* | To treat. To wait for. |
| 刑$^{2}$ | *hsing* | To punish; punishment. |
| 罰$^{2}$ | *fah* | To fine. To punish; punishment. |
| 迷$^{2}$ | *mi* | To deceive; to delude. To lead or go astray. |
| 惑$^{4}$ | *hu* { *h*<br>*eh* | To mislead. Doubt. |
| 望$^{4}$ | *uang* | To expect; to hope. To look towards. 15th of the month. |
| 急$^{2}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ih* | Anxious; hurried; urgent. |
| 歇$^{1}$ | *hsieh* | To rest; to stop. To desist. |
| 甜$^{2}$ | *t'ien* | Sweet; pleasant. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 酸$^{1}$ | *suan* | Sour; acid. Grieved. |
| 抹$^{3}$ | *m* { *oh*<br>*ah* | To smear; to rub over; to wipe. |
| 鎖$^{3}$ | *so*$^{8}$ | A lock; to lock. |
| 搶$^{3}$ | *ch'*<br>*ts* } *iang* | To take openly by force. To snatch; to rob. |
| 甘$^{1}$ | *kan* | Sweet. Willing; voluntarily. |
| 接$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *ieh* | To receive; to meet. To accept. To connect. |
| 高$^{1}$ 麗$^{4}$ | *kao-li* | Korea. |
| 願$^{4}$ 意$^{4}$ | *üen-i* | Willing. |
| 停$^{2}$ 當$^{4}$ | *t'ing-tang* | Satisfactorily settled. |
| 簾$^{2}$ 子$^{3}$ | *lien-tsï* | Blinds; curtains. |
| 忽$^{1}$ 然$^{2}$ | *huh-ran* | Suddenly; all at once. |
| 着$^{2}$ 急$^{2}$ | *choh-chih* | Impatient; anxious. |
| 丫$^{1}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *ia-t'eo*$^{1}$ | Slave girl; waiting maid. |
| 甘$^{1}$ 心$^{1}$ | *kan-hsin* | Willing; contented. |
| 吩$^{1}$ 咐$^{4}$ | *fen-fu*$^{1}$ | To command; a command. |
| 迷$^{2}$ 惑$^{4}$ | *mi-huh* | Error; to deceive. |
| 將$^{1}$ 來$^{2}$ | *chiang-lai* | In the future. |
| 刑$^{2}$ 罰$^{2}$ | *hsing-fah* | To punish; punishment. |

### *Chin* 盡: Various uses of.

1. *Chin* 盡 is a word, the force of which must be learnt from examples and practice. The general idea is that of 'entirely,' but no one English word conveys all the meaning. The following examples shew its use with nouns, and also before and after verbs :—

四海之內皆兄弟 *All within the four seas are brothers.*

To do one's duty as a man; *chin ren sï* 盡人事.
The uttermost; the extreme limit; *chin-t'eo* 盡頭.
With all one's mind and strength; *chin-lih chin-i* 盡力盡意.
Use up all the material you have; *chin liao tso* 盡料作.
Most excellent; entirely good; *chin mei chin shan* 盡美盡善.
Entirely; *chin-hsing* 盡行.
He says nothing but evil, *t'a chin shoh huai hua* 他盡說壞話.
There is more than can be spoken; *hua to shoh puh chin* 話多說不盡.
He has inexhaustible wealth; *t'a iu iong-puh-chin-tih ch'ien* 他有用不盡的錢.

### *Chiang* 將 and its Uses.

2. *Chiang* 將 is the word commonly used in books as the equivalent of 把 *pa* as a sign of the Object. In addition, it indicates proximate future, in which case it is usually followed by 要 *iao;* but 將來 *chiang-lai* may be applied to both the immediate and distant future as the connection may demand, *e.g.,*

He is nearly forty years old; *t'a chiang-chin sï-shïh sui* 他將近四十歲.
In time to come, all nations shall worship God; *chiang-lai koh kueh tu iao pai Shang-ti* 將來各國都要拜上帝.
As he was about to enter the city . . . .; *chiang iao chin ch'eng* 將要進城.

### Supplementary: Lesson V.

3. The following list gives the words commonly used in referring to time:—

In speaking of days, 日 *rïh* may be substituted for 天 *t'ien;* in Nanking, Peking and some other places, *ko* is frequently added; as,

To-day; *chin-rïh* 今日 or *chin-rïh-ko* 今日過.
To-morrow; *ming-rïh* 明日 or *ming-rïh-ko* 明日過, etc.
Day after to-morrow; *heo-t'ien,* or *heo-rïh*; 後天 or 後日.

Months are termed 大 *ta* or 小 *hsiao,* as they have 29 or 30 days; as,

This month has thirty days; *chœ-ko üeh ta* 這個月大.

*Nien* 年 may take a N. A. when an adjective is used; *e.g.,*

Seven years of famine; *ch'ih-ko huang nien* 七個荒年 (荒$^1$ *huang.* Barren; drought. Reckless; false.)

The first year of a ruler's reign is known as 元年 *uen nien.* (From 元$^2$ *üen.* The first; the chief.)

上 *shang* and 下 *hsia* are applied to years as well as to months; *e.g.,*

Last year; *shang-nien* 上年.
Next year; *hsia-nien,* or *lai-nien* 下年 or 來年.
Year after next; *heo-nien* 後年.

*Tsao* 早 is used in many places as the equivalent of ‘Good morning’. It frequently takes 前 *ch‘ien* as a correlative; as,

A few years ago; *tsao chi nien ch‘ien* 早 幾 年 前.

*Ta* 大 is prefixed to certain designations of time; as,

The day preceding the day before yesterday; *ta-ch‘ien t‘ien* 大 前 天.
The year preceding the year before last; *ta-ch‘ien-nien* 大 前 年.
The day following the day after to-morrow; *ta-heo-t‘ien* 大後天.
The week before last; *ta-shang li-pai* 大 上 禮 拜.
The week after next; *ta-hsia li-pai* 大 下 禮 拜.
The year following the year after next; *ta-heo-nien* 大 後 年.

*Ko* 過 as applied to time is used in the sense of ‘To observe; or keep’; as,

To observe a birthday; *ko seng-rïh* 過 生 日.
To keep holiday; *ko-chieh* 過 節.
To observe the holidays of the 5th and 8th months; *ko u üeh chieh; ko pah üeh chieh* 過 五 月 節, 過 八 月 節.
Now; at the present time; *hsien-chin; ru-chin; ts‘i-k‘eh;* 現 今, 如 今, 此 刻.
At this time; *chœ huei-rï* 這 會 兒.
Afterwards; *ran-heo; ko-heo* 然 後, 過 後.
Some other day; *kai-rïh* 改 日.
From henceforth; from now onward; *ts‘ong chin i-heo* 從 今 以 後.
This life and the life to come; *chin-seng, lai-seng* 今 生, 來 生.
Ancient and modern; *ku chin* 古 今.
Sooner or later; at some time or other; *tsao uan* 早 晚.
Formerly; heretofore; *ts‘ong-lai; hsiang-lai; su-lai* 從 來, 向 來, 素 來.
Some time ago; on ahead; *t‘eo-li* or *t‘eo-ch‘ien* 頭 裏, 頭 前.
In bygone times; formerly; *hsien-ch‘ien; ch‘i-hsien* 先 前, 起 先.
In former years; *uang-nien; tsao-nien* 往 年, 早 年.
In former days; *uang-rïh* 往 日.
In time to come; *uang-hsia* 往 下.
Previously; a long time ago; *tsao-hsien* 早 先.
At the start; in the beginning; *k‘ai-t‘eo-rï* 開 頭 兒
In the beginning; *t‘ai-ts‘u; ch‘i-ts‘u* 太 初, 起 初.
Primeval times; *t‘ai-ku* 太 古.
Olden times; *shang-ku* 上 古.
Mediæval times; *chong-ku* 中 古.

The Chinese divide up time into periods of two weeks called 節 氣 *chieh-ch‘i*. In the country, farming operations are regulated by them, and many local events are fixed in relation to them. Their names and approximate dates are as follows:—

立 春 *lih-ch‘uen,* Spring begins. February 5.
雨 水 *ü-shui,* Rain water. February 19.
驚 蟄 *ching-chïh,* Excited insects. March 5.
春 分 *ch‘uen-fen,* Vernal equinox. March 20.
淸 明 *ch‘ing-ming,* Clear and bright. April 5.
穀 雨 *kuh-ü,* Grain rains. April 20.
立 夏 *lih-hsia,* Summer begins. May 5.
小 滿 *hsiao-man,* Grain fills. May 21.
芒 種 *mang-chong,* Grain in ear. June 6.
夏 至 *hsia-chï,* Summer solstice. June 21.
小 暑 *hsiao-shu,* Slight heat. July 7.
大 暑 *ta-shu,* Great heat. July 23.
立 秋 *lih-ch‘iu,* Autumn begins. August 7.
處 暑 *ch‘u-shu,* Limit of heat. August 23.
白 露 *peh-lu,* White dew. September 8.
秋 分 *ch‘iu-fen,* Autumnal equinox. September 23.
寒 露 *han-lu,* Cold dew. October 8.
霜 降 *shuang-chiang,* Hoar frost descends. October 23.
立 冬 *lih-tong,* Winter begins. November 7.
小 雪 *hsiao-süeh,* Little snow. November 22.
大 雪 *ta-süeh,* Heavy snow. December 7.
冬 至 *tong-chï,* Winter solstice. December 22.
小 寒 *hsiao-han,* Little cold. January 6.
大 寒 *ta-han,* Severe cold. January 21.

*Hsia* 下 is applied to individuals when two people are in question, and is the equivalent of the English word ‘party’; *e.g.,*

Both parties came to an understanding; *liang hsia pa sï-ch‘ing shoh ming-peh* 兩 下 把 事 情 說 明 白.

It also indicates the beginning of an action and its discontinuance: as applied to animals it means ‘To beget’; *e.g.,*

To begin to write; to write; *hsia-pih* 下 筆.
To commence operations; *hsia-sheo* 下 手.
To discontinue going to school; *hsia-hsioh* 下 學.
To dismiss an employé; *hsia-kong* 下 工.
To get off a horse; *hsia-ma* 下 馬.
To lay an egg; *hsia-tan* 下 蛋.
Horses and asses beget foals; *lü ma hsia chü* 驢 馬 下 駒. (駒¹ *chü.* A foal; a colt.)

*Chih* 給 as a sign of the Indirect Object is largely superseded by 替 *t‘i* in Southern Mandarin; *e.g.,*

I will buy you a lock; *o t‘i ni mai ih-pa so* 我 替 你 買 一 把 鎖.

There are many words used in Chinese to intensify the thought, and which roughly correspond to descriptive clauses in English; *e.g.,*

The steamer goes like the wind; *ho-luen-ch‘uan tseo-tih feng k‘uai* 火 輪 船 走 的 風 快.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十四課雜句

你願意學, 不願意學, 不願意

行李收拾停當

百事要以禮待人

羊走迷了路

他受了過先生的迷惑

不要着急

那個孩子急死人

他遠遠的望見城

高麗人, 把他的東西搶得乾淨

犯天法的人, 免不了受刑罰

上帝待人有恩

### NOTES.

The soldier's sword is as sharp as a spear; *ping-tih tao chen shï feng k'uai* 兵的刀眞是鋒快. (鋒¹ *feng*. A sharp point; tip of a lance.)

Hurry up and do it; *kan-k'uai* (or *chin*) *tso* 趕快 (or 緊) 作.

No sooner was the chair on their shoulders than they flew along with it; *chiao-tsï ih shang-liao chien, t'a-men chiu t'ai tih fei p'ao* 轎子一上了肩, 他們就抬的飛跑.

The student should make note of similar words that he may meet with in his reading, or in his intercourse with the people. To be able to use them aptly is one mark of a good speaker.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

Are you willing to study? No; *ni üen-i hsioh, puh üen-i hsioh? puh üen-i.*
The luggage is all ready; *hsing-li sheo-shih t'ing-tang.*
In all things we must treat men courteously; *peh sï iao i li tai ren.*
The sheep has gone astray; *iang tseo mi liao lu.*
He was deceived by Mr. Ko; *t'a sheo liao Ko Hsien-seng-tih mi-huh.*
Don't be anxious; *puh iao choh-chih.*
That child is most aggravating; *na-ko hai-tsi chih-si ren.*
He saw the city in the distance; *t'a üen-üen-tih uang-chien ch'eng.*
The Koreans robbed him of everything; *Kao-li ren pa t'a-tih tong-hsi ch'iang teh kan-ching.*
Men who break the laws of heaven cannot escape punishment; *fan t'ien fah tih ren mien puh liao sheo hsing-fah.*
God treats men graciously; *Shang-ti tai ren iu en.*

*Translate*:—That person originally had a depraved mind, and walked in evil ways; his father and mother exhorted him a good many times, but still he would not listen. Later on he broke the laws of the country and was taken to the official, who first beat him 100 blows, fined him Tls. 50, and said that if he were brought before him again he would punish him more severely. In all probability he was deceived by evil men. For three weeks in succession it did not rain, so the inhabitants of the place became anxious and carried the idol out and set him by the roadside; now they are on the look out for rain, but so far it has not come. Vinegar is sour and bread is sweet; to say that two people have drunk vinegar, is a figure of speech. The carpenters stopped work at 12 o'clock and resumed work at 2 o'clock. The weather is hot and the road is bad; rest awhile. He treated me as a child. Mrs. 章 told her slave girl to let down the blind and lock up the front door. Are you thirsty? there is water here; drink as much as you like. The clock has stopped. Wipe the table clean, and then dust the legs of the large chairs. I have used up all my money; lend me a dollar or two. In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. All men know that if they break the law they fear punishment, but if they break the law of God they regard it as of no moment. Why is this? For the most part because they do not receive punishment at the present time, and think it uncertain whether there is any punishment in the future. It is very lamentable that they should be so deceived. Men reap what they sow, that is a moral certainty.

Writing Exercise:—敢領收正恐怕萬塊第年想書.

## READING LESSON XXIV. 輯要第二十四

### The Astute Miss Feng II.

### 弄巧反拙

話[1]說、那些人把轎子拉住、要搶抬走、大聲喝[2]道、這[3]地方是我們的生意、你們怎麼來抬、就動[4]手把轎夫打[5]了一頓、叫他們快快的放手、但後面騎馬的家人看見、就趕上前去、喊[6]叫說、這是城中封家的姑娘、你們怎[7]敢搶抬呢、那抬轎的聽見說是封姑娘、就越發跑的快、後面家人的馬將[8]近趕上、便看見過家帶[9]領人馬、迎[10]上前來、說、你家姑娘已經是我娶了、你們還[11]趕甚麼、家人聽見那話、就說、罷了罷了、這[12]事在你、我們不趕了、恐怕明日姑娘見了我們的怪、話說完了、過家的人就上前趕頭裏的大轎、家人等後邊的小轎上來、就跟着回家去了、過家倒歡歡喜喜的跟着大轎。到了城、便吩咐轎夫一直抬到家裏頭來、在家裏

1. *Hua shoh* 話說 "As the story goes"—the words with which Chinese novels usually begin.
2. *Hoh tao* 喝道 Bawled out.
3. *Chæ ti-fang shï o-men-tih seng-i* 這地方是我們的生意 The business of this place belongs to us. Certain sections; *e.g.*, by the river side, are worked by separate lots of coolies.
4. *Tong-sheo* 動手 To begin; to commence operations.
5. *Ta-liao ih-tuen* 打了一頓 To give a beating to.
6. *Han-chiao* 喊叫 To call out.
7. *Tsen-kan* 怎敢 How do you dare to?
8. *Chiang-chin* 將近 Close up to; getting close to.
9. *Tai-ling* 帶領 Leading; bringing with.
10. *Ing-shang ch'ien-lai* 迎上前來 Coming forward from the opposite direction.
11. *Huan kan shen-mo* 還趕甚麼 Why do you continue to follow?
12. *Chæ si tsai ni* 這事在你 The responsibility of this affair rests with you.

有他請的許多朋友、有知府、知縣、也在其中、都等他把姑娘娶來家、使人看出他的大本事來。轎夫把轎子放下、既放下、過家就叫幾個丫頭上來說、快把姑娘攙[1]扶出來、丫頭就上前掀[2]開轎圍、見轎門有小鎖鎖着、無法可開、就叫過家來開、他便上前將小鎖扭[3]去、丫頭這纔把門開了、一看、就彼[4]此相觀、站住不動、惹得過家生氣說、等甚麼、快點攙扶姑娘出轎、丫頭說轎中並沒有甚麼姑娘、要攙扶出那一個呢、過家聽說沒有姑娘、就着[5]了急、走到轎前一看、光看見一個黃包袱、和一皮箱碎[6]石頭、就氣得話不能說、待一會兒便罵天罵地、叫衆人一齊都上前看看、看見空轎、又看見石頭、就都拿[7]這事作個笑談、一面笑過家白費心[8]計、光把空籠[9]帶回家、雀鳥卻已經飛去、就笑個不了、一面暗地裏稱封姑娘爲古今第一個大本事的女子、但因是過家請的客、也不敢明明的笑他、就假裝說了些好話、正是、猫[9a]哭[10]老鼠假慈悲、知府知縣[11]雖然[12]不好

---

1. *Ch'an$^{1}$-fu$^{2}$* 攙扶 To support; the bride is usually helped out of the sedan chair.
2. *Hsien$^{1}$ k'ai$^{1}$* 掀開 To lift aside—as a curtain, etc.
3. *Niu-ch'ü* 扭去 To wrench off.
4. *Pi-ts'i hsiang-kuan* 彼此相觀 Looked at each other.
5. *Choh liao chih* 着了急 Was excited and impatient.
6. *Sui$^{4}$ shïh-t'eo* 碎石頭 Odds and ends of stone.
7. *Na chœ sï tsoh ko hsiao t'an* 拿這事作個笑談 Regarded the affair as a joke.
8. *Hsin$^{1}$-chi$^{4}$* 心計 Plan; device.
9. *Long$^{2}$* 籠 A cage. 9a. *Mao* 猫$^{2}$ A cat.
10. *Lao$^{3}$-shü$^{3}$* 老鼠 A rat; a mouse.
11. *Sui-ran . . . ch'ioh* 雖然 . . . 卻 Note the 'turn' of the sentence—although—still . . .
12. *Puh hao to shoh-hua* 不好多說話 Didn't like to say much.

多說話、因他父親也是在京城做大官、卻也不得不勸他可以死[1]了這個念頭、既然已經有了一個正[2]妻、爲甚麼還要再娶呢、只怕有了一個妻再有一個妾[3]、兩個人同住要常常吵[4]鬧、弄得一家的人不和、又與他談了些不相干的話、吃完茶、就上轎各回各的衙門去了。論到封姑娘、自己用計脫了南莊之禍、到了家裏、心中本可放下、家人騎馬跟着回去、也都滿心快活、一來過家的事東[5]不成西不就、二來姑娘心中有那麼靈、能想出法子來、又平平安安回到家中、眞叫一家的人稱姑娘爲可敬可愛、往下若他再有[6]了事、他們無論是丫頭、是家人、都爲他死也甘[7]心、願意爲他[8]把心用盡了救他出壞人的手。可見、[9]人心正不怕雷打、淸心的人是有福的、雖世事是論不定的、卻早晚有算賬的日子、就是現在、[10]近報也在己身、心不[11]光明還可以點甚麼燈呢。

---

[1] *Si liao chæ-ko nien-t'eo* 死了這個念頭 Give up thought of it; let the affair die out of his mind.

[2] *Cheng ch'i* 正妻 A principal wife.

[3] *Ch'ieh*⁴ 妾 A concubine.

[4] *Ch'ao*³*-nao*⁴ 吵鬧 To quarrel. L. 25.

[5] *Tong puh ch'eng hsi puh chiu* 東不成西不就 Nothing accomplished.

[6] *Iu liao si* 有了事 To be in trouble, or difficulty.

[7] *Kan-hsin* 甘心 Willing; content to . . .

[8] *Pa hsin iong chin liao* 把心用盡了 To exert to the uttermost; to give the whole mind to.

[9] *Ren hsin cheng puh p'a lui ta* 人心正不怕雷打 Upright people are not afraid of being struck by lightning.

[10] *Chin pao* 近報 A present recompense.

[11] *Kuang-ming* 光明 Bright; brilliant.

# LESSON XXV. 課五十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 印$^4$ | *in* | To print; to stamp. An official seal; a stamp. |
| 鬼$^3$ | *kuei*$^1$ | Demons; devils. |
| 立$^4$ | *lih* | To stand up; to establish. To draw up, as a deed. |
| 灰$^1$ | *huei* | Ashes; dust; lime. |
| 才$^2$ | *tsʻai* | Talent; ability. |
| 帮$^1$ | *pang* | To help. A class; a guild. |
| 忙$^2$ | *mang* | Hurried; in haste; busy. |
| 助$^4$ | *ts* / *ch* } *u* | To aid; to help. |
| 畫$^4$ | *hua*$^1$ | To draw. A drawing; a picture. |
| 賤$^4$ | *ch* / *ts* } *ien* | Cheap. Mean; worthless. |
| 飽$^3$ | *pao* | To eat to the full. Satiated. |
| 功$^1$ | *kong* | Merit; efficacy; good results. |
| 勞$^2$ | *lao* | To toil; to suffer. Weary. |
| 鼓$^3$ | *ku*$^1$ | A drum. To drum. To arouse. |
| 傘$^3$ | *san*$^3$ | An umbrella; a parasol. |
| 腫$^3$ | *chong* | To swell; a swelling. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 吵$^3$ | *chʻao* | To quarrel; to dispute. |
| 閙$^4$ | *nao* | To make a disturbance. Bustle; noise. |
| 雜$^2$ | *tsah* | Mixed; confused. |
| 尙$^4$ | *shang* | Still; yet. To honour. |
| 印$^4$ 度$^4$ | *in-tu* | India. |
| 立$^4$ 時$^2$ | *lih-shï* | At once; immediately. |
| 百$^3$ 姓$^4$ | *peh-hsing* | The people. |
| 洋$^2$ 火$^3$ | *iang-ho* | Matches. |
| 吵$^3$ 閙$^4$ | *chʻao-nao* | To quarrel. |
| 和$^2$ 尙$^4$ | *ho-shang* | Buddhist priests. |
| 道$^4$ 士$^4$ | *tao-sï* | Taoist priests. |
| 熱$^1$ 閙$^4$ | *reh-nao* | Bustling; busy; interesting. |
| 功$^1$ 勞$^2$ | *kong-lao* | Merit. |
| 到$^4$ 底$^3$ | *tao-ti* | After all; in the end. |
| 老$^3$ 實$^2$ | *lao-shïh* | Honest; well-disposed. |
| 本$^3$ 分$^4$ | *pen-fen* | Duty; obligation. |
| 姐$^3$ 姐$^3$ | *chie-chie*$^1$ | Elder sister. |
| 妹$^4$ 妹$^4$ | *mei-mei*$^1$ | Younger sister. |

## *Chiu* 就 joined to other words to indicate Promptitude.

1. In Lesson IV. Section 6 就 *chiu* is used to indicate sequence, and also to denote that one action follows immediately on another. Thus used it may either stand alone, or be reinforced by other words to indicate that an act should be done without delay The commoner words so used are as follows:—

Instantly; forthwith; no sooner said than done; 立刻 *lih-kʻeh;* 隨時 *sui-shï;* 馬上 *ma-shang;* 隨卽 *sui-chih,* from 卽$^2$ *chih* Immediately; forthwith. Then. Indicates supposition.

I want that thing at once; *na-ko-tong-hsi o-lih-kʻeh chiu iao* 那個東西我立刻就要.

---

知過必改 *When a fault is known it should be amended.*

It cannot be got immediately; *lih-shï-tih teh-puh liao* 立時的得不了.

They applied for it forthwith; *t‘a-men sui-chih ken-choh iao* 他們隨即跟着要.

His foot swelled as soon as it was struck; *t‘a-tih chioh ih ta ma-shang chiu chong ch‘i-lai* 他的脚一打馬上就腫起來.

### *Tao-ti* 到底 and other Phrases indicating Conclusion.

2. The phrase 到底 *tao-ti,* ‘To the bottom,’ is used in the sense of the English phrase ‘to come to the end of’—*i.e.,* after all is said and done, a certain conclusion or final stage is arrived at—we arrive at the ‘end,’ the Chinese arrive at the ‘bottom.’ Let a story illustrate its use and force. Years ago a lady living in an inland city brought some cheese from the coast and gave special instructions to the servant to put it in a safe place, as rats were fond of it. To which he replied, after smelling it, that while it might be true that foreign rats would eat it, *Chinese* rats at any rate would not touch such stuff. Consequently he left it in an exposed place, with the result that in the morning it was clean gone. His only confession and apology was, 到底吃了 *tao-ti ch‘ih liao*—eaten it after all!—notwithstanding my high opinion of them.

The following characters and phrases are of the same import as 到底 *tao-ti*:—

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 究$^1$ *ch*/*k* } *iu* | To examine into. Finally; in the end. | 終$^1$ *chong* | The end; finally. After all; still. The whole of. |
| 竟$^4$ *ch*/*k* } *ing* | The end; finally. | 久$^3$ *ch*/*k* } *iu* | Finally. A long time. |
| 歸$^1$ *kuei* | To return to; to go back. To belong to. To divide, as in arithmetic. | 始$^3$ *shï* | The beginning. To start. |
| 期$^2$ *ch‘*/*k* } *i* | A period; a limit of time. | 末$^4$ *moh* | The end; finally. Mean. A negative. |

From these are derived the following combinations:—

Finally; after all; in the end; etc.; 究竟 *chiu-ching*; 歸期 *kuei-ch‘i*; 終久 *chong-chiu*; 始終 *shï-chong*; 歸根 *kuei-ken*; 末了 *moh-liao*; 末末了 *moh-moh-liao*; 末後 *moh-heo.*

### Supplementary: Vocabulary I.

3. *Kan* 乾 is colloquially applied to a few articles in the sense of ‘unadulterated’; meat, wine, milk and vinegar are said to be ‘dry’ when no water has been added to them. It is quite common for meat to be blown up with water to add to the weight; this is spoken of as *kuan shui* 灌水; *kuan* 灌$^4$ To water, *e.g.,*

‘Dry’ meat is high priced; *kan ruh chia-ch‘ien ta* 乾肉價錢大.

‘Dry’ milk strengthens the bones and sinews; *kan nai chuang ching kuh* 乾奶壯筋骨, (*chuang* 壯$^4$ Strong; *chin* 筋$^1$ Sinews).

Unadulterated vinegar never goes bad; *kan ts'u iong puh huai* 乾醋永不壞.

Unadulterated wine easily makes men drunk; *kan chiu k'en tsui ren* 乾酒肯醉人.

*Tai* 帶, a belt, has the same figurative use in Chinese as in English; as 'a belt of country'; 'a zone'; etc. It is also coloquially employed to indicate a manner or style, as Milton says of the devil, he was "girded with snaky wiles;" *e.g.*,

He has an exasperating way with him; *t'a tai ch'i-ren tih iang-tsï* 他帶氣人的樣子.

They are outsiders, and speak with a Shanghai accent; *t'a-men shï uai-lu ren, tai Shanghai k'eo-in* 他們是外路人,帶上海口音.

## Lesson VI.

4. *Cheng* 正 is the opposite of *hsie* 邪; the one the equivalent of 'upright'; 'orthodox'; the other of 'depraved'; 'heterodox'; etc. It is also the opposite of 反 *fan* To turn over; to turn back. Contrary. The one may be translated by 'positive'; 'the right side'; the other by 'negative'; 'the wrong side'.

As applied to time 正 *cheng* means 'Just; at that time; during,' and so roughly corresponds to the present participle. Read *cheng*$^3$ it denotes an exact sum, and is added to numeral expressions to prevent unauthorized additions being made; *e.g.*,

The whole day; *cheng t'ien chia* 正天家.

300 taels only; *san-peh liang cheng* 三百兩正.

Due west; *cheng-hsi* 正西.

Exactly in the centre; *cheng-chong* 正中.

Just as he was speaking; *cheng tsai shoh hua chï chien* 正在說話之間.

Orthodox; correct; respectable; proper; *cheng-ching* 正經.

This is the right side, that is the wrong; *chœ-shï cheng mien, na shï fan mien* 這是正面,那是反面.

The reverse of each other; *ih fan ih cheng* 一反一正.

*K'ai* 開 in some cases is repeated and does duty as both principal and auxiliary. It is also used with many verbs which indicate 'to divide;' 'to begin'; 'to open'; *e.g.*,

There is no opening this door; *chœ-ko men k'ai puh k'ai* 這個門開不開.

Open this box; *pa chœ-ko hsiang-tsï ta-k'ai* 把這個箱子打開.

The things are too numerous, there is no room to place them; *tong-hsi t'ai to, pai puh k'ai* 東西太多,擺不開.

Wind up the clock; *pa chong k'ai ih k'ai* 把鐘開一開.

Make out a receipt; *k'ai ko sheo-t'iao* 開個收條.

It is used with the following verbs that have already occurred in these Lessons:—走 *tseo*; 切 *ch'ieh*; 颳 *kuah*; 張 *chang*; 住 *chu*; 坐 *tso*; 放 *fang*.

In addition to 多偺 *to-tsan*, and 多會兒 *to-huei-ri*; 麼會兒 *mo-huei-ri*; and 幾時 *chi-shï* are used for 'When?' as.

It is ready whenever you want it; *to-huei-ri iao to-huei-ri iu* 多會兒要多會有.

When was this brought? *chœ shï chi-shï song lai tih?* 這是幾時送來的.

When did you arrive? *ni mo-huei-rï tao tih?* 你麼會到的.

*Chong* 重 denotes emphasis, as in reading; esteem in the treatment of others; etc.; it is the opposite of 輕 *ch‘ing* in most of its meanings; *e.g.*,

Emphasize this sentence; *nien chong chœ ih-chü* 念重這一句.

How is it you speak without discrimination? *tsen-mo shoh-hua puh chï ch‘ing chong ni?* 怎麼說話不知輕重呢.

To make no difference between important and unimportant; *puh fen ch‘ing chong* 不分輕重.

To esteem one and despise the other; *chong-k‘an chœ-ko, ch‘ing-k‘an na-ko* 重看這個, 輕看那個.

The meaning of the same word in English may vary very much in different sentences. Thus in using the word ‘strike,’ we ‘strike a person’, or ‘an idea strikes us’, or ‘we strike the right path’; while a band ‘strikes up’, or workmen ‘strike.’ These various uses, which must be very confusing to a foreigner, can only be understood by observation and practice. Similarly the word *ta* 打 is used with a large number of words, some of which have been already given; others are added below:—

To strike a match; *ta* (or *la*) *iang-ho* 打 (or 拉) 洋火.
To be victorious; *ta-sheng*; or *ta-sheng-chang* 打勝 or 打勝仗
To be defeated; *ta-pai*; or *ta-pai-chang* 打敗 or 打敗仗.
Victorious every time; *ta ih chang, sheng ih chang* 打一仗勝一仗.
Defeated every time; *ta ih chang, pai ih chang* 打一仗敗一仗.
To arrange; to set in order; *ta-tien* 打點.
To fish; *ta-ü* 打魚.
To estimate; to consider; *ta-liang* 打量.
To put up an umbrella; *ta-san* 打傘.
To fight; *ta-chang*, or *ta-chia* 打仗 or 打架.
To yawn; *ta ha-ch‘ien* 打呵欠.
To plait the queue; *ta pien-tsï* 打辮子.
To determine; to intend; *ta-suan* 打算.
To draw water; *ta-shui* 打水.
To trouble; to annoy; *ta-chiao* 打攪; (攪 to annoy).
To sit in contemplation, as Buddhists do; *ta-tso* 打坐.
To make a rough draft; *ta ts‘ao-kao* 打草稿. (稿 An original copy.)
To make enquiries; *ta-t‘ing* 打聽.
To get (one's clothes) wet; *ta shïh liao* 打濕了.
Go by way of Ts‘ing-kiang; *ta Ch‘ing-chiang tseo* 打清江走.

An elder brother is spoken of as 老大 *lao ta*, and his brothers are referred to in order as 老二 *lao rï*, the second brother; 老三 *lao san*, the third brother, and so on. The order of birth is indicated by 行 *hang*, A row; as,

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十五課雜句

這是個熱鬧碼頭
我們要彼此相帮
這把傘很賤
這個畫畫的好
請你來帮我的忙
兩國立了約
這本書是上海印的
有口才的和尚不多
吃飯要吃飽
那雜貨舖的老板是頂老實
主將他的功, 補我們的過
基督在世上的時候, 常常趕鬼

NOTES.

What is your place in order of birth? *ni hang chi?* 你 行 幾.
I am the fourth (brother); *o hang sï* 我 行 四.

---

NOTES.—*a.* *Ch'ao-nao* 吵 鬧 is confined to verbal altercation.

*b.* To help with extra work; to 'lend a hand' is 幇 忙 *pang-mang;* to help with money, food or clothing is 幇 補 *pang-pu;* while to assist in a general way is 幇 助 *pang-tsu.*

*c.* *Chien* 賤 while understood in the South is not so common as 公道 *kong-tao,* or 便 宜 *p'ien-i;* the former term also means 'fair'; 'just'.

*d.* *Peh-hsing* 百 姓 refers to the people as a whole, as members of the State. To speak of the people in the house as 百 姓 *peh-hsing* is incorrect.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

This is a busy mart; *chæ shï ko reh-nao ma-t'eo.*
We must be mutually helpful; *o-men iao pi-ts'ï hsiang pang.*
This umbrella is very cheap; *chæ-pa san hen chien.*
This picture is drawn well; *chæ-ko hua hua tih hao.*
Lend me a hand; *ch'ing ni lai pang o-tih mang.*
A treaty was drawn up between the two countries; *liang kueh lih-liao ioh.*
This book was printed in Shanghai; *chæ-pen shu shï Shang-hai in tïh.*
Eloquent Buddhist priests are very few; *iu k'eo-ts'ai tih ho-shang puh to.*
When you eat, eat sufficient; *ch'ïh fan iao ch'ïh pao.*
The proprietor of that general store is very honest; *na tsah-ho-p'u-tih lao-pan shï ting lao-shïh.*
The Lord makes amends by His merit for our demerit; *Chu chiang t'a-tih Kong pu o-men-tih ko.*
When Christ was on earth, He continually cast out demons; *Chi-tuh tsai shï-shang tih shï-heo ch'ang-ch'ang kan kuei.*

*Translate* :—India is a very large country; it is nearly as large as the eighteen provinces of China. Don't be in a hurry; he will return immediately. Locks, umbrellas, blue cloth, matches, wine, incense and rice, may all be bought at the general store. Where are matches produced? in Japan. Formerly they came from the West, but afterwards the Japanese made them in large quantities and sold them cheap, so that foreigners could not carry on that line of business. It is impossible to build houses without lime. The day he invited me to a meal there was neither enough rice nor vegetables, so that I was not half satisfied. The watchman beats his drum every night. My books are too many to put on the table. I must call a carpenter to make me a bookcase. Although his disease was serious (重) and the doctor had written him a prescription, after all he would not take the medicine. That basket seller is honest and tells the truth. Every man must do his duty. When the Saviour was on earth He divided five loaves and a few small fishes, and gave them to 5,000 people, besides women and children. They all ate to the full; and there was as much as they wanted Both Buddhist and Taoist priests are willing to chant for people, but money is indispensable; therefore everybody says: "If you have money you may live; if you have none you must die."

Writing Exercise :—哥 兒 賤 豈 父 母 兄 弟 間 零 寫 緊

## READING LESSON XXV. 輯要第二十五課

### A Bookselling Trip.

### 散賣聖經

戴先生包先生二位先在江口把道理傳徧了、[1]隨即[2]開船過江要往狼山去、在那裏碰見幾千好佛的[3]香客、便對他們講道理賣書、然後[4]動身要進[5]通州城裏去、當日[6]天陰下雨、船離城有二十多里路、有他們帶來的兩位先生[7]苦口勸他們萬不可進城、說是到了[8]虎口邊、一定要[9]送命、這話他們[10]拿當旁耳風、左耳進去、右耳出來、全[11]不在意、光說、就是一個人有兩條命、也願意爲主送上、[12]不以爲有功、不過算是[13]分內之事了。但世事本是論不定的、所以叫那兩位先生等在船上、若當夜不回來、他們可以往上海去[14]報信、又吩咐船老板把船靠在江邊、事情既一一說明、他們就

---

1. *Sui$^2$ chih$^2$* 隨即 Immediately.
2. *K'ai ch'uan* 開船 To cast off from a ship's moorings.
3. *Hsiang k'eh* 香客 Pilgrims who go to famous shrines to burn incense.
4. *Tong-shen* 動身 To start.
5. *T'ong ch'eng* 通城 A large city on the Yangtze.
6. *T'ien in* 天陰 A cloudy day.
7. *K'u k'eo* 苦口 Earnestly.
8. *Hu k'eo pien* 虎口邊 By the side of the tiger's mouth—a place of great danger.
9. *Song ming* 送命 To lose one's life.
10. *Na tang p'ang ri feng* 拿當旁耳風 Regarded it as a wind blowing.
11. *Puh tsai i* 不在意 To pay no attention to.
12. *Puh i-uei iu kong* 不以爲有功 Would not regard it as an act of merit.
13. *Fen nui chi si* 分內之事 A plain matter of duty.
14. *Pao hsin* 報信 To give information; to carry the news.

坐小車、拿着一口[1]袋書、和勸世文、把一切的事托在主的手中、就往城那裏跑、跟他們拿書的人、因聽人說、此地的兵不講理、就不敢上前、光求他們回船上去、說文人碰着兵、有理講不淸、他們聽他這麼說、本不要他一同受罪、就打發他趕快回去、他們自己郤往前直走、推車的忽然好像心掉在一盆冷水似的、管[2]怎麼樣也不肯推到城裏去、叫他們另僱車、這也不難、既換了車、就從大道上西、到了西[3]關他們就下車、手裏拿着書袋、上西關大街去、誰[4]也不難[5]爲他們、光有些無禮的人喊黑鬼子使人好笑。再上前走、就遇見幾個兵在街上閒站、郤不理他們、但還沒有到城門、有個兵身量高大、上前來把包先生拉住、死[6]也不放手、又等一刻戴先生也被十幾個壞人圍[7]住、內中有人將他一[8]把抓住、就一齊飛跑的、叫他們往城門走、手裏拿的那袋書、越走越難拿、也無法換手、只得隨着他們去、走出一身的汗[9]來、說要見官講[10]理、那些人便開

---

[1] *K'eo$^3$-tai$^4$* 口袋 A bag; a sack.
[2] *Kuan tsen-mo-iang* 管怎麼樣 Come what may; on no account.
[3] *Hsi kuan* 西關 Western suburb. 關 is only so used in the North.
[4] *Shui ie puh* 誰也不 Nobody whatever; not a single person . . .
[5] *Nan-uei* 難爲 To trouble; to annoy; "I have troubled you."
[6] *Sï ie puh fang sheo* 死也不放手 Held on with a death grip.
[7] *Uei$^2$-chu$^4$* 圍住 Surrounded. L. 26.
[8] *Ih pa chua-chu* 一把抓住 Took a grip; laid firm hold.
[9] *Han$^4$* 汗 Perspiration.
[10] *Chiang-li* 講理 To talk reason; to discuss the merits of a case.

口大罵說、像你這等該死的材料、還想要見官麽、要隨[1]我們罷。拿包先生的那個兵、將他撒[2]了、又把[3]手一翻、倒把戴先生抓住、像提大棍[4]一樣、又把他頭髮揪[5]住、用手掐[6]他的肩[7]頭、叫肉發黑發紅、使他差不多昏[8]過去了。兩個人受那麽大的苦、眞可憐、通[9]身是汗、腿也站不住、口也乾得很、舌[10]頭也腫[11]大、問人要茶喝、也要不着一小碗、要椅子坐也不肯給他們、使他們說、若不僱兩乘轎子送見州官、死也不走、慢慢的有人把轎子抬來、上了轎一直往州衙門抬、先走了幾條長街、就到了一個大門、把頭一抬、看見一個大橫[12]匾[13]、上邊寫的是民[14]之父母、四個大金字、這就知道已經進了州衙門了。

---

1. *Sui o-men pa* 隨我們罷 Must do as we wish.
2. *Sah liao* 撒了 Let go; 'dropped' him.
3. *Pa sheo ih fan*$^1$ 把手一翻 Gave his hand a turn.
4. *Kuen*$^4$ 棍 A stick.
5. *Chiu*$^1$ 揪 To lay hold of—specially used of the hair of the head and the queue.
6. *Ch'ia*$^1$ 掐 To pinch; to dig the nails into.
7. *Chien*$^1$*-t'eo*$^2$ 肩頭 The shoulder.
8. *Huen*$^1$ *ko ch'ü* 昏過去 To faint away
9. *T'ong-shen* 通身 The whole body 通身是汗 bathed in perspiration. L. 28.
10. *Sheh*$^2$*-t'eo*$^2$ 舌頭 The tongue.
11. *Chong*$^3$ 腫 To swell.
12. *Huen*$^2$ 橫 Horizontal.
13. *Pien*$^3$ 匾 Tablet; sign board.
14. *Min*$^2$ *chï*$^1$ *fu*$^4$ *mu*$^3$ 民之父母 'Father and mother of the people;' the family is the model on which the Chinese government has been framed up till now.

## VOCABULARY V. 五 第 彙 字

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 晒$^{4}$ | *shai* | To dry in the sun. To get a sunstroke. |
| 恨$^{4}$ | *hen* | To hate; to dislike. An expression of desire. |
| 稀$^{1}$ | *hsi* | Open; loose, of textures. Thin, of liquids. |
| 拆$^{1}$ | *ts‘eh* | To break open; to unrip. To tear down. |
| 逃$^{2}$ | *t‘ao* | To escape; to flee. |
| 爛$^{4}$ | *lan* | Rotten. Ragged. Smashed. |
| 陳$^{2}$ | *ch‘en* | To state to a superior. Stale, as bread, eggs, etc. |
| 戲$^{4}$ | *hsi* | A play. To play; to jest. |
| 剝$^{1}$ | *poh* | To flay; to peel; to strip. |
| 丢$^{1}$ | *tiu* | To lose. To cast away. |
| 忍$^{3}$ | *ren* | To endure; to bear. |
| 晴$^{2}$ | *ch‘*<br>*ts* } *ing* | A clear sky; fair weather. |
| 跳$^{4}$ | *t‘iao* | To jump; to leap. To climb over. |
| 場$^{2}$ | *ch‘ang* | An open space. A place. A spell; a job. |
| 捐$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *üen* | To contribute; to subscribe. |
| 凍$^{4}$ | *tong* | To freeze; icy; cold. |
| 運$^{4}$ | *üin* | To transport, as goods. Luck. |
| 倉$^{1}$ | *ts‘ang* | A granary; a bin. Hurried. |
| 嶺$^{3}$ | *ling*$^{27}$ | A range of hills. |
| 拉$^{1}$ | *la* | To drag; to pull. To draw a bow. |
| 化$^{4}$ | *hua* | To smelt. To transform; to influence. |
| 練$^{1}$ | *lien* | To practise. To drill. |
| 井$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*ts* } *ing*$^{23}$ | A well; a pit. |
| 馱$^{2}$ | *t‘o* | To carry on the back. Read *to*$^{4}$. The load of a beast of burden. |
| 餓$^{4}$ | *o* | Hungry; starved. |
| 飢$^{1}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *i* | Hunger; dearth; famine. |
| 充$^{1}$ | *ch‘ong* | To fill up; to satisfy. To act in place of. |
| 爺$^{2}$ | *ie* | A father. A term of respect; a gentleman. |
| 備$^{4}$ | *pei* | To prepare; to provide. Perfection. |
| 旱$^{4}$ | *han* | Dry weather; drought. Dry land as opposed to water. |
| 骨$^{2}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *kuh-t‘eo*$^{21}$ | Bone. |
| 婦$^{1}$ 人$^{2}$ | *fu-ren*$^{1}$ | A married woman. |
| 牲$^{1}$ 口$^{3}$ | *seng-k‘eo*$^{1}$ | Animals; cattle. |
| 駱$^{4}$ 駝$^{2}$ | *loh-t‘o*$^{1}$ | The camel. |
| 預$^{4}$ 備$^{4}$ | *ü-pei* | To prepare; to make ready. |
| 媳$^{2}$ 婦$^{4}$ | *hsih-fu*$^{1}$ | A daughter-in-law; a wife. |
| 巴$^{1}$ 不$^{1}$ 得$^{2}$ | *pa-puh-teh* | An expression of desire—oh that! |
| 俄$^{2}$ 羅$^{2}$ 斯$^{1}$ | *o-lo-sï* | Russia; Russian. |
| 要$^{1}$ 不$^{1}$ 得$^{2}$ | *iao-puh-teh* | Bad; evil. |
| 要$^{4}$ 飯$^{4}$ 的$^{1}$ | *iao-fan-tih* | A beggar. |

NOTES.—*a.* *Tiu* 丢 is applied to the loss of children by death; *e.g.*, He has lost two children; *t‘a tiu liang-ko hai-tsi* 他 丢 兩 個 孩 子.

*b.* *Chi* 飢 is also written 饑.

## READING LESSON XXVa. 次輯要第二十五課

### The Horrors of Famine.

### 遭遇饑荒

光緒二年間、山東、河南、山西三省、都遭荒年、[1]自光緒二年直到光緒七年、雨水[2]稀少、天旱地乾、種地地[3]不靈、[4]五穀爛種不能[5]發生、初遭這荒年還能[6]得過、因爲有開倉[7]糶陳糧的、窮人雖苦還能[8]養生、所以鄉下城裏的人、都[9]心想眼望、天降大雨、就有糧食好糶了。[10]誰知到第二年還是旱得天如銅、地如鐵、滿天[11]發晴、[12]一片薄雲也沒有、三省之中、[13]惟有山西頂苦、一來山地多平地少、二來離海[14]約有一千里地、[15]船糧很難往下運、再是要運到省界、必從幾道山嶺經過、那[16]山嶺名爲四大天門、要車裝牲口拉[17]呢、很不容易、駱駝驢子馱呢、又是

---

1. *Tsï . . . chih tao* 自 . . . 直到 From . . . until . . .
2. *Hsi*$^1$ *shao*$^3$ 稀少 Extremely rare.
3. *Ti puh ling* 地不靈 The ground unresponsive—to cultivation.
4. *U*$^3$ *kuh*$^3$ 五穀 The Five Grains—all grains.
5. *Fah seng* 發生 To grow—of plants.
6. *Teh ko* 得過 To manage.
7. *T‘iao*$^4$ 糶 To sell grain. Used principally in the North.
8. *Iang seng* 養生 To support life; to live.
9. *Hsin hsiang ien uang* 心想眼望 Waited expectantly.
10. *Shui chï* 誰知 But who would have thought that?
11. *Fah ch‘ing*$^2$ 發晴 Clear; cloudless.
12. *Ih*$^1$*-p‘ien*$^4$ *poh*$^2$ *üin*$^2$ 一片薄雲 A light cloud. A thick cloud is 厚雲.
13. *Uei*$^2$ *iu*$^3$ 惟有 But; but it was only . . . .
14. *Ioh*$^1$ *iu*$^3$ 約有 About; nearly.
15. *Ch‘uan liang hen nan uang hsia üin* 船糧很難往下運 It was extremely difficult to transport the grain brought by the steamers.
16. *Shan*$^1$ *ling*$^3$ 山嶺 A mountain range.
17. *Ni* 呢 at the end of a short sentence such as this=And what if? supposing that? as to . . See below 逃呢；糶糧呢.

更費事、又是[1]脚價太大、一運到省[2]非富家就糴不起、又因東南西南[3]搭界的兩省裏、也都是荒年、出外糴糧、又無處可去、所以那年冬天餓死的人很多、[4]及到第三年全省[5]苦得無法可說了。[6]先是人把黃土和在麵裏[7]充饑、後是把樹皮剝下來當飯吃、又挖出樹根來煮着吃、家中有傢伙的、有箱子的、有綢衣裳的、也都往各城裏去賣、以後拆房子賣材料的也不少、直到賤賣東西並無人要買、有錢的人[8]尙能糴糧吃飽、[9]雖比荒年以前的年間[10]長價、卻還有塲去糴、但是鄉間的人受了[11]千苦萬難、逃呢、無處可逃、糴糧呢、無錢可糴、就[12]忍飢受餓、在家等死[13]而已。也有跳井的、也有殺孩子吃的、就是有人要出門、也必得三五個在一塊兒、身上帶刀[14]纔敢齊往外走、[15]不然、怕碰見忍餓的

---

1. *Chioh$^{2}$-chia$^{4}$* 脚價 Porterage; coolie hire.
2. *Fei fu-chia chiu t'iao puh ch'i* 非富家就糴不起 None but the wealthy could afford to buy.
3. *Tah$^{1}$ kiai$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ liang$^{3}$ seng$^{3}$* 搭界的兩省 Th. two provinces on the frontier.
4. *Chih$^{2}$ tao$^{4}$* 及到 When it came to . . .
5. *K'u teh u fah k'o shoh liao* 苦得無法可說了 Distressful beyond expression.
6. *Hsien shi* 先是 At first it was . . . See below *heo shi* 後是 after it was . . .=at first they . . . and then . . .
7. *Ch'ong$^{1}$ chi$^{1}$* 充饑 To satisfy hunger.
8. *Shang* 尙 Were still . . . .
9. *Sui . . . ch'ioh huan . . . tan shi . . .* 雖 . . . 卻還 . . . 但是 . . . Note the relation—though . . . still . . . but . . .
10. *Chang chia* 長價 To rise in price.
11. *Ch'ien k'u uan nan* 千苦萬難 Manifold ills.
12. *Ren chi sheo o* 忍饑受餓 Characters are often separated from each other, as here, for rhetorical effect; they could be as well written 忍受饑餓
13. *Ri$^{2}$-i$^{3}$* 而已 A final phrase=and nothing more.
14. *Ts'ai$^{2}$ kan$^{3}$* 纔敢 Before they dared to . . .
15. *Puh$^{1}$ ran$^{2}$* 不然 Otherwise; or else.

人、把他殺了吃了。眞可憐的就是那些逃[1]難在路上餓死的、也有被狼吃的、大路以上盡是骨頭、叫人頭不敢抬、血[2]淚下流。初遭這大災難的時候、人到處起[3]會求雨、家家門口燒香、有上廟求菩薩免這災難的、也有上井求龍[4]王快降大雨的、可惜空費心事、一點益處都沒有。以後百姓們着急唱[5]神戲、把佛[6]爺抬出來、對着戲[7]臺、以爲佛爺看見戲、就是有鐵石的心、也能化[8]開、誰知佛爺看[9]飽了戲、心仍是不動、沒降大雨、叫人生氣把他丢在外邊直[10]晒、看他自己晒的難[11]受不難受、那[12]知人手所造的、大不如人、並[13]不知疼癢、豈能管人的禍[14]福呢、眞是不可敬的了。當時南方人聽見這信、就極[15]力捐錢往北發、北方的各府州縣、雖然把各城的南[16]門關了、又把些錢發給窮人、但是窮人過多、凍的凍死、餓的餓死、村中就有一大半成[17]了荒塲的了、

---

1. *T‘ao nan* 逃難 To flee from trouble; 逃難的 refugees.
2. *Hsüeh lui hsia liu* 血淚下流 To weep tears of blood.
3. *Ch‘i huei* 起會 Formed associations.
4. *Long*$^{2}$ *uang*$^{2}$ 龍王 The Dragon King, who is supposed to have all water under his control.
5. *Ch‘ang*$^{4}$ *shen*$^{2}$ *hsi*$^{4}$ 唱神戲 To have a theatrical performance before the gods. This usually takes place outside a temple.
6. *Fuh-ie* 佛爺 Buddha.
7. *Hsi*$^{4}$*-t‘ai*$^{2}$ 戲臺 A stage.
8. *Hua k‘ai* 化開 Melted.
9. *K‘an pao-liao* 看飽了 Looked till be had enough.
10. *Chïh shai* 直晒 Kept him drying in the sun.
11. *Nan sheo* 難受 Hard to bear.
12. *Na chï* 那知 But don't you know? ignorant of the fact that . . .
13. *Ping puh chï t‘eng-iang* 並不知疼癢 Quite uncouscious of.
14. *Ho fuh* 禍福 Calamity and happiness; the vicissitudes of life.
15. *Chih*$^{2}$ *lih*$^{4}$ 極力 Put forth every effort; strenuously to exert. I. 27.
16. *Nan men kuan-liao* 南門關了 To shut the south gate. This is usually done in the time of drought, since heat comes from the South.
17. *Ch‘eng liao huang ch‘ang* 成了荒塲 Became a desolation.

## REVIEW: LESSONS XXI-XXV. 考課第五

1. Give three sentences containing 非 and two containing 除非. Illustrate 除了 . . . . 以外 in three sentences.

Write three sentences containing 那, 誰, 甚麼, as the equivalent of 'whoever'; 'whichever'; 'whatever.'

What characters are employed to reinforce negative particles?

Write three sentences to illustrate 頭 as indicating quality.

Give an example of 了 as a principal verb.

Translate:—That vessel draws three feet of water. 那個人吃糧.

Give four different words meaning 'To purchase.'

Translate:—He exhorted him every time he went. He paid him each time he brought a load of goods.

How is Successive Action indicated? Give three examples.

Write two sentences containing 掉 as a principal and an auxiliary verb.

What is the force of 可 before a verb?

Indicate three uses of 見; four meanings of 上 and 下; and two of 看.

Translate:—The next chapter. Mark comes next to Matthew.

What is the function of 到 after 說, 談, and 論?

Give two sentences containing 盡 and 將.

What are 節氣? Give the names of four of them.

What is the force of 風, 鋒, and similar words before adjectives?

Write two sentences shewing how 就 may be strengthened.

Shew in two sentences the use of 到底 and 究竟.

Shew three uses of 正; two of 開; two of 輕重 together, and two of each alone.

Illustrate the literal and figurative use of 帶 in two sentences.

What is the difference between 帮助; 帮補 and 帮忙?

Translate Reading Lessons XXIII and XXIV.

2. Give sound tone and meaning of the following:—

犁 瘸 耕 吧 科 嘗 托 夥 答 頓 剃 慣 捐 撒 籃 藍 惑 甜 肩 背 渴 喝 歇 急 勞 鬧 傘 印 雜 剝.

3. Correct, if need be, the following sentences, and state reason for correction:—

馬先生除以外誰也不能管他誰要可以誰好拿。不可萬說那些話。我打發他去打一尺布羅三斤饅頭截四兩猪肉稱五兩醋。你買一回東西一回算賬。這個茶不熱可以倒一點開水。中國紙不得見水。他要來將來送人來道光第一年有三荒年。那個婦人下個小孩子馬昨天生了一個駒、他就立刻來到了。女人不肯到底跟他去。

4. Write the following in Chinese characters :—

His parents said, ‘It is of no great importance.’ After all, it is a matter between those two brothers. Very well, very well, say no more about it. He has travelled in a large number of places; he came back this year in the 1st month. The second time I lent him $4.00 odd. I took the dollars to him, and he was unwilling to receive them, so I had my trouble for nothing. I don’t know whether he has started or not; you had better go across and enquire. Beyond the sea there are several millions of people; I think of going later on with my elder brother to see. I fear he is not willing to sell that large piece of land; at first he wanted more than Tls. 100, but he afterwards said he would take Tls. 4 less. We will talk the matter over when you come again. Your honourable name? He reckoned back and forth, and after all reckoned it wrong. Send that man 錢 with this letter.

## LESSON XXVI. 課六十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 守$^{3}$ | *sheo* | To guard. To observe. To maintain. |
| 擔$^{4}$ | *tan* | A burden; a load. Read *tan*$^{1}$. To take responsibility; to undertake. |
| 試$^{4}$ | *shï* | To try; to attempt. To examine. |
| 圍$^{2}$ | *uei* | To surround; to besiege. |
| 跌$^{1}$ | *tieh* | To stumble; to slip; to fall. |
| 特$^{1}$ | *t‘eh* | On purpose; special. |
| 砲$^{1}$ | *p‘ao*[25] | A cannon; a gun. |
| 槍$^{1}$ | *ch‘* / *ts* } *iang* | A spear. A gun; a pistol. (N.A. 杆 *Kan*) |
| 何$^{2}$ | *ho* | How? Why? What? |
| 箭$^{1}$ | *ch* / *ts* } *ien*[9,14] | An arrow. |
| 矮$^{3}$ | *ai* | Low in height. To lower. |
| 顯$^{3}$ | *hsien* | To manifest; to show forth. |
| 剪$^{3}$ | *ch* / *ts* } *ien*[8] | Scissors. To cut with scissors. |
| 租$^{1}$ | *tsu* | To rent; to lease. |
| 淚$^{3}$ | *l* } *ui* / *ei* | Tears. To weep. |
| 背$^{1}$ | *pei* | To carry on the back. To repeat a lesson Read *pei*$^{4}$. The back; the back side. |
| 枕$^{3}$ | *chen* | A pillow. To use as a pillow. |
| 散$^{4}$ | *san* | To scatter; to disperse; to break up. Read *san*$^{3}$. A medicinal powder. |
| 弓$^{1}$ | *kong* | A bow.[9] A land measure of 5 feet. |
| 島$^{3}$ | *tao*[1] | An island. |
| 凡$^{2}$ | *fan* | All; common. Mortal |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 水$^{3}$ 雷$^{2}$ | *shui-lui* | A torpedo. |
| 誠$^{2}$ 實$^{2}$ | *ch'eng-shïh* | Genuine; real; truly. |
| 祖$^{3}$ 宗$^{1}$ | *tsu-tsong*$^{1}$ | Ancestors. |
| 文$^{2}$ 書$^{1}$ | *uen-shu*$^{13}$ | An official dispatch. |
| 兵$^{1}$ 船$^{2}$ | *ping-ch'uan*$^{14}$ | A war vessel. |
| 糊$^{2}$ 塗$^{2}$ | *hu-t'u* | Stupid; dense. |
| 俗$^{2}$ 話$^{4}$ | *suh-hua*$^{16}$ | A proverb. |
| 洗$^{3}$ 禮$^{3}$ | *hsi-li* | Baptism. |
| 魔$^{2}$ 鬼$^{3}$ | *mo-kuei* | The devil. |
| 褲$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *k'u-tsï*$^{14}$ | Trousers; drawers. |
| 褂$^{4}$ 子$^{3}$ | *kua-tsï*$^{4}$ | An outer garment; a coat. |
| 相$^{1}$ 貌$^{4}$ | *hsiang-mao* | Appearance. |
| 捨$^{3}$ 不$^{1}$ 得$^{2}$ | *shœ-puh-teh* | To be loath to. |

## ***Ho*** 何: **Various Uses of.**

1. Attention has been called already to the use of certain words, which, though properly belonging to the book style, have filtered through into common speech. Such words usually form part of set expressions, and if used separately by beginners are generally misunderstood. For example in Lesson XVII. Section 3, the sentence 這事與我無干 occurs. This is quite intelligible as it stands, but 無干 used alone would mean little or nothing. Similarly the Interrogative Pronoun 何 *ho* should be used with other words, as follows:—

What is the need for . . . ? Why must you . . . ? *ho-pih?* 何必.
Why must you act so? *ho-pih chœ iang hsing ni?* 何必這樣行呢.
What concern or business? *ho-kan?* 何干.
What is it to do with him? *chœ ü t'a iu ho kan?* 這與他有何干.
Why? *uei-ho?* 爲何.
Why take the trouble? Why? *ho-k'u?* 何苦.

What sort or degree; *ho-teng* 何等—usually followed by some qualifying word, as, 'great'; 'much'; etc.; *e.g.*,

How great a degree of happiness! *ho-teng ta tih fuh-ch'i!* 何等大的福氣.
How? What? *ru-ho?* 如何.
How about? *ho-ru?* 何如.
By what means? wherefore? *ho-i?* 何以.
What harm or objection is there? *ho-fang* 何妨. (From 妨$^{1}$ *fang* To hinder; to oppose. An obstacle).

How much more . . . . . or less . . . . . 何況 *ho-k'uang*; *i.e.*, an hypothesis being granted 何況 *ho-k'uang* is used to introduce and emphasize the logical deduction; *e.g.*,

If even you cannot do it, how much less can I? *chiu-shï ni ie puh neng hsing, ho-k'uang o ni?* 就是你也不能行, 何況我呢

---

半途而廢 *To go half way and stop.*

### *T'eh* 特 and other words indicating Purpose.

**2.** *T'eh* 特 which indicates purpose is not often used alone in colloquial, but usually takes either 意 *i;* or 爲 *uei.* Design, intent, etc., are also denoted by the following :—

故$^4$ *ku.* A reason ; a cause. Intentional.
偏$^1$ *p'ien.* Inclined to one side. Partial.

*P'ien* 偏 is commonly employed in a bad sense = "obstinately and perversely determined" ; or when used to introduce sentence = "but, alas :" it is often repeated.

But you are bent on discovering my faults ; *ni p'ien chien ch'uh o-tih ts'o lai* 你偏見出我的錯來.

Expressly ; specially ; purposely ; of set purpose ; *ku-i* 故意; *iu-i* 有意; *iu-hsin* 有心; *ch'u-hsin* 處心; *p'ien-p'ien* 偏偏; *e.g.*,

He sinned of set purpose ; *t'a ming chï ku fan* 他明知故犯.

We have come on purpose to worship him ; *o men t'eh-i lai pai t'a* 我們特意來拜他.

That person does evil purposely ; *na-ko ren ch'u-hsin tso oh* 那個人處心作惡.

### *Fan* 凡 : its Position and Use.

**3.** *Fan* 凡 precedes the noun and is often related to 的 *tih*, from which it may be separated by a word or clause ; in such cases *fan* 凡 and *tih* 的 may be translated by 'Those who' ; 'that which,' etc. ; *e.g.*

All those under two years old, *fan liang sui i-li tih* 凡兩歲以裏的.

Whoever hears my words and does them ; *fan t'ing-chien o chœ hua ch'ü hsing tih* 凡聽見我這話去行的.

Whosoever confesses me before men ; *fan tsai ren mien-ch'ien ren o tih* 凡在人面前認我的.

### Supplementary : Lesson VII.

**4.** *Ie* 也 often has the force of an emphatic particle ; as,

He was quite willing to die ; *t'a sï ie kan hsin* 他死也甘心.

Not a single person would go ; *shui ie puh ch'ü* 誰也不去.

*Hai* 還 often conveys the idea of remonstrance or expostulation ; *e.g.*,

The idea of such a thing ! Can this be allowed ; *chœ hai liao teh!* 這還了得.

What is there against saying it ? *na hai iu shen-mo shoh puh teh ni?* 那還有甚麼說不得呢.

*To-shao* 多少 in some connections may be translated by 'More or less' ; or by 'More' alone ; *e.g.*,

Give him a few more ; *to-shao chih t'a chi-ko* 多少給他幾個.

He knows more or less English ; *t'a to-shao ren-teh chi-ko Ing-kueh tsï* 他多少認得幾個英國字.

That girl is more or less proficient ; *na-ko ku-niang to-shao huei ih-tien* 那個姑娘多少會一點.

Among so polite a people as the Chinese, there are necessarily a good many polite phrases in common use. Many sound stilted and unreal to the ears of a foreigner, but they are used conventionally, and must not be taken too literally any more than similar terms in English. It goes without saying that they are used more freely among educated people, hence discrimination is needed in their use; to address high-flown language to a coolie is to cast pearls before swine. At the same time, as the proverb has it, "No one blames you for being too polite;" *li to ren puh kuai* 禮 多 人 不 怪, and it is better to err on the side of excess than defect in this matter, especially as so many of the rising generation have no manners to speak of, natural or acquired.

No attempt is made to give an exhaustive list of such expressions as relate to age, place of birth, etc.; most of them gather round the characters and combinations given below:—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 屬$^{3}$ | *shuh* | To belong to; to be subject to. |
| 壽$^{4}$ | *sheo* | Old age; long life. |
| 令$^{4}$ | *ling* | To command. To cause. A term of respect. |
| 號$^{4}$ | *hao* | A mark; a sign. A number. A name or 'style.' |
| 嚴$^{2}$ | *ien* | Stern; dignified. |
| 舍$^{4}$ | *shœ* | A cottage. In speaking of one's junior relatives=my. |
| 閣$^{2}$ | *koh* | A screen. |
| 愚$^{2}$ | *ü* | Stupid; simple. |
| 台$^{2}$ | *t'ai* | Eminent; exalted. |
| 寶$^{3}$ | *pao* | Precious; valuable. Treasure. |
| 仰$^{3}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}i\\li\end{matrix}\right\}$ *ang* | To look up to. To rely on. |
| 違$^{2}$ | *uei* | To disobey; to oppose. |
| 犬$^{3}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch'\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *üen* | A dog. |
| 支$^{1}$ | *chï* | A branch. To pay; to advance money. |
| 甲$^{3}$ | $\left.\begin{matrix}ch\\k\end{matrix}\right\}$ *iah* | Armour. Finger nails. |
| 甫$^{3}$ | *fu* | A 'style,' or name. |

I have long wished to know you; *chiu-liang* 久 仰.

I have not seen you for a long time; *chiu-uei* 久 違.

I have been wanting in respect; *shïh-ching* 失 敬.

I have not had the pleasure—used in answer to queries as to one's name; *muh ling-chiao* 沒 領 敎.

What is your name (*hao* 號)? *t'ai-fu?* 台 甫.

My unworthy name is *Ta-ch'eng; ts'ao tsï Ta-ch'eng* 草字大成.

*Kuei* 貴 precedes enquiries relating to country, city and residence; *e.g.*,

Which is your honourable country? *Kuei kueh?* or *Kuei kueh shï na-ih kueh?* 貴 國 or 貴 國 是 那 一 國.

I am a native of England; *pi kueh Ing kueh* 敝 國 英 國.

*Ling* 令 precedes enquiries as to father, mother, son and daughter; as,

How many daughters have you? *chi-uei ling-ai?* 幾 位 令 愛.

Your worthy mother; *ling-t'ang* 令 堂.

Your worthy father; *ling-tsuen* 令 尊.

*Chia* 家 and *shœ* 舍 are the equivalent of 'my' as used below :—

Both my elder and younger brother are at home; *chia hsiong shœ ti tu tsai chia* 家兄舍弟都在家.

Your exalted age?—said to people over fifty years old; *kao sheo?* 高壽.

You sir—more complimentary than *hsien-seng* 先生; *koh-hsia* 閣下.

Your honourable place in the Cycle? *kuei chiah-tsï?* 貴甲子.

What animal presided over the year of your birth, Sir? *Hsien-seng shuh shen-mo tih?* 先生屬甚麼的.

## The Sixty Years Cycle.

The Chinese employ two sets of characters to form a Cycle of sixty years. They are used for casting horoscopes, telling ages, etc., and are spoken of as The Heavenly Stems and The Earthly Branches :—

### TEN HEAVENLY STEMS.

十天干 *shïh t'ien-kan.*

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 甲$^{3}$ | *chiah* | First heavenly stem; the year 1904. | | | 己$^{3}$ | *chi* | Sixth heavenly stem | |
| 乙$^{1}$ | *ih* | Second | ,, | ,, | 庚$^{1}$ | *keng* | Seventh | ,, ,, |
| 丙$^{3}$ | *ping* | Third | ,, | ,, | 辛$^{1}$ | *hsin* | Eighth | ,, ,, |
| 丁$^{1}$ | *ting* | Fourth | ,, | ,, | 壬$^{2}$ | *ren* | Ninth | ,, ,, |
| 戊$^{4}$ | *u* | Fifth | ,, | ,, | 癸$^{3}$ | *kuei* | Tenth | ,, ,, |

### TWELVE EARTHLY BRANCHES.

十二地支 *shïh-rï ti-chï.*

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | 子$^{3}$ | *tsï* | 11 p.m. to 1 a.m. | 1. | 鼠$^{4}$ *shu*$^{1}$ | Rat. |
| 2. | 丑$^{3}$ | *ch'eo* | 1-3 a.m. | 2. | 牛$^{2}$ *niu*$^{14}$ | Ox. |
| 3. | 寅$^{2}$ | *in* | 3-5 a.m. | 3. | 虎$^{3}$ *hu*$^{9}$ | Tiger. |
| 4. | 卯$^{4}$ | *mao* | 5-7 a.m. | 4. | 兎$^{4}$ *t'u*$^{1}$ | Hare. |
| 5. | 辰$^{2}$ | *ch'en* | 7-9 a.m. | 5. | 龍$^{2}$ *long*$^{14}$ | Dragon. |
| 6. | 巳$^{4}$ | *sï* | 9-11 a.m. | 6. | 蛇$^{2}$ *shœ*$^{14}$ | Snake. |
| 7. | 午$^{4}$ | *u* | 11 a.m. to 1. p.m. The year 1894. | 7. | 馬$^{3}$ *ma*$^{11}$ | Horse. |
| 8. | 未$^{4}$ | *uei* | 1-3 p.m. | 8. | 羊$^{2}$ *iang*$^{9}$ | Sheep. |
| 9. | 申$^{1}$ | *shen* | 3-5 p.m. | 9. | 猴$^{2}$ *heo*$^{1}$ | Monkey. |
| 10. | 酉$^{3}$ | *iu* | 5-7 p.m. | 10. | 雞$^{1}$ *chi*$^{9}$ | Fowl. |
| 11. | 戌$^{1}$ | *hsüh* | 7-9 p.m. | 11. | 犬$^{3}$ *ch'üen*$^{14}$ | Dog. |
| 12. | 亥$^{4}$ | *hai* | 9-11 p.m. | 12. | 猪$^{1}$ *chu*$^{23}$ | Pig. |

The Chinese use these Twelve Branches for a number of purposes. Most people can say them off in order, and it is worth while for us to learn them off too. They are used to denote :—

1. The 12 hours of the day as indicated above; being equal to two English hours;
2. The months, the first month being *in* 寅;
3. The signs of the zodiac, Aries being *tsï* 子;
4. The 12 points of the Chinese compass, North being *tsï* 子;
5. Cycles of 12 years, also cycles of 12 days.

The corresponding symbolical animals similarly preside over years and days, and every Chinaman knows the animal that presided over (*shuh* 屬), the year in which he was born. He often quotes his age by mentioning the animal, and on hearing the animal he can rapidly calculate the corresponding age.

The Stems and Branches are combined to form a curious Cycle of Sixty Years, *hua chiah tsï* 花甲子. The mode of combination is as follows:—The present cycle began in 1864 and that year was *chiah-tsï* 甲子, the first stem and first branch; 1865 was *ih-ch‘eo* 乙丑, the second stem and second branch; and so on. In 1874, the stems being exhausted, the first was used again with the eleventh branch, forming *chiah-hsüh* 甲戌; 1875 was *ih-hai* 乙亥, the second stem and the twelfth branch; while in 1876 the branches being exhausted the third stem was used with the first branch forming *ping-tsï* 丙子; and so on. It is obvious that in sixty years the ten stems will have been used six times and the twelve branches five times, so that the sixtieth year 1923 will be the last in both lists, viz., *kuei-hai* 癸亥; and in the following year the Cycle will begin again. The combination which marks the year is known as *sui ts‘ï* 歲次 the order of the year—according to the cyclic characters.

This, and the still more inconvenient system of quoting the year of an Emperor's reign, are the only methods the Chinese have had up till recently of computing dates.

The "*pah-ko tsï*" 八個字 are four sets of stems and branches, and indicate the year, the month, the day and the hour of a Chinaman's birth. In the case of a contemplated matrimonial engagement the two sets of "*pah-ko tsï*" 八個字 are submitted (by the parents of the parties, of course) to a competent astrological authority, who compares the two (*p‘ai pah-tsï* 排八字) and predicts without hesitation whether or not the marriage will turn out fortunate. The formal exchange of the "*pah-ko tsï*" constitutes an engagement.

NOTE.—The Chinese way of reckoning age is quite different from ours. Instead of reckoning a child one year old on the first anniversary of its birth, they reckon it one year old at any point of the year in which it was born. The following year (beginning from their New Year's day) they reckon it 2 years old; so that in Chinese reckoning a child may be two years old before in English reckoning it is fully one. From this it will be seen that the age of a person, according to the Chinese mode of reckoning, is at least one and often two years more than according to ours. The commencement of the

Chinese New Year varies between the 21st of January and the 19th of February. From this time to our next birthday we are reckoned by the Chinese to be two years older than we reckon ourselves to be; while from our birthday to the following Chinese New Year they reckon us one year older than we reckon ourselves. Of course the few weeks at the beginning of our year before their year commences have the same *chiah-tsï* as the previous year.

NOTES.—*a.* Scissors are called *chien-tsï* 剪 子 in the South, *chiao-tsï* 鉸 子 in the North, and *chien-tao* 剪 刀 in the West; 剪 *chien* and 鉸 *chiao* are both used as verbs.

*b.* *Ch'iang* 槍 is also written 鎗.

*c.* *T'eo* 頭 is added to *chen* 枕 in colloquial.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

I am loath for you to go; *o shæ-puh-teh ni tseo.*
That child is repeating his lesson; *na-ko hai-tsï pei-shu.*
This load is very heavy; *chæ tan tong-hsi chong teh-hen.*
The rent of that two storied building is $20.00 a month; *na-ko leo-fang tsu rï-shïh-k'uai ch'ien ih-ko üeh.*
Four men surrounded him; *sï-ko ren pa t'a uei-chu liao.*
The meeting then broke up; *huei chiu san liao.*
Tears covered the girl's face; *na-ko ku-niang man mien liu lei.*
Chinese shave their heads; foreigners cut their hair; *Chong-kueh ren t'i t'eo; Uai-kueh ren chien t'eo-fah.*
A coat and pair of trousers; *ih-chien kua-tsï ih-t'iao k'u-tsï.*
All should observe the Lord's Day; *ren-ren tu kai sheo li-pai.*
Four men were baptized on the 6th; *ts'u-luh iu sï-ko ren sheo-hsi.*
The devil does nothing but injure people; *mo-kuei chin hai ren.*

*Translate*:—What business is it of yours? What objection is there to sleeping on a foreign pillow? I have come on purpose to see you. The soldiers of ancient times used bows and arrows; soldiers of the present day use guns and cannon. Tell him to saddle the horse. Forty men surrounded him all armed with rifles, and though he was mounted on a good horse, he could not escape. I am hungry; I have not yet had food. It has rained heavily these last few days, but it has cleared up to-day. Some were starved to death, others frozen to death; beggars all died of starvation. Though he was poor, still he contributed $3.00, and was desirous of contributing more. Soldiers have ability developed by practice. He broke one of his legs by a fall. This thing has been drying in the sun two days, and it is still not dry. The appearance of a Russian is very different from the appearance of a Japanese; the one is tall, the other is short. Does he understand German? Yes, more or less. All who believe in Christ may be baptized. It is most important to observe Sunday. Men err in worshipping their ancestors; the One they should worship is God. The Saviour chose twelve disciples, and kept them with Him to prepare them to go and preach everywhere.

Writing Exercise:—親 散 論 跟 件 實 講 站 倒 放 叉 R. 29; 高 R. 189.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十六課雜句

我捨不得你走
那個孩子背書
這擔東西重得很
那個樓房,租二十塊錢一個月
四個人把他圍住了
會就散了
那個姑娘滿面流淚
中國人剃頭,外國人剪頭髮
一件褂子,一條褲子
人人都該守禮拜
初六,有四個人受洗
魔鬼盡害人

### NOTES.

## READING LESSON XXVI. 輯要第二十六

The Development of Japan.

### 日本漸興

如今中國二十幾省、都有日本人、早年間除了靠海的幾省以外、別的省中找不着一個、就是現在有許多沒有出過門的中國人、看見他們還是認他爲別省的中國人、這也難怪、何以呢、因他相貌和本地人相似[1]、眼睛頭髮都是黑的、身量也矮、他們也學了一口中國話。若問人、他們的國看那一方、十個有八九個必然說、不知道看那一方、其實這國離中國不遠、不過隔一道海、至多有兩三天就到了。這幾十年日本國比先前大[2]不相同、皇上、臣子、早年間打發許多年輕的學生到各國去學、無論是文的武的、是生意買賣塲中、凡與本國有益的事、都要學熟了、回來教別人學、所以現在東洋[3]雖是沒有多大、不過是幾千海島連成[4]一大海島的、還是有火車、電綫、電車、電氣燈、火輪船、兵船、並有各樣外國學來的本事。不說旁的、光說他打仗

---

1. *Hsiang-sï* 相似 Resembling; like.
2. *Ta puh hsiang-t‘ong* 大不相同 Greatly different from.
3. *Tong-iang* 東洋 Another name for Japan.
4. *Lien-ch‘eng* 連成 Connected together and become.

的本事、跟造兵船的本事、就可以看得出來。不到十年前、他與俄羅斯[2]失了和、兩國就[3]打起來、俄羅斯人本是[4]看不起日本人、以爲他們不知道打仗、也沒有[5]學會了[6]兵法、但日本人從多年就暗暗的預備好了、買了鎗砲、練了兵、學會打仗的新法、不用弓箭、早已打發武官往德國去、[7]假作不知[8]擺陣、不懂兵法的樣子、故意[9]裝呆哄人、口是甜的、心是苦的。又跑到英國去、請了些兵船上的官來帮忙、教他們下[10]水雷、造些風快的[11]魚雷船、與厚鐵身子的兵船、這船上的砲又大又靈、一開[12]砲子就能飛幾十里地、所以俄羅斯人和他們[13]交戰、不管是在水面上、是在旱地上、就[14]打了敗仗、叫日本人[15]打一仗勝一仗、末末了把俄羅斯人打到北邊去、以後兩國[16]打彀了、就彼此商量、可以[17]立和約、再不

---

1. *Ken* 跟 Together with.
2. *Shĭh ho* 失和 Lost harmony—ceased to be on friendly terms.
3. *Ta ch'i-lai* 打起來 Commenced hostilities.
4. *K'an puh ch'i* 看不起 Looked down upon; despised.
5. *Hsioh huei liao* 學會了 To become proficient in by study.
6. *Ping fah* 兵法 Military tactics.
7. *Chia tsoh . . . tih iang-tsï* 假作...的樣子 To put on a..... manner; to act as though . . . . .
8. *Pai$^3$ chen$^4$* 擺陣 Disposition of troops for battle.
9. *Chuang$^1$ tai$^1$* 裝呆 Pretended to be simpletons.
10. *Shui$^3$ lui$^2$* 水雷 Water thunder—torpedoes. 下水雷 To discharge torpedoes.
11. *Ü lui ch'uan* 魚雷船 Torpedo boats.
12. *P'ao-tsï* 砲子 Cannon shot.
13. *Chiao chang* 交戰 To join battle.
14. *Ta liao pai chang* 打了敗仗 Fought a losing battle; were defeated.
15. *Ta ih chang sheng ih chang* 打一仗勝一仗 Won every battle they fought.
16. *Ta keo liao* 打彀了 Had enough of fighting.
17. *Lih ho-ioh* 立和約 To draw up a treaty of peace.

打了、講定了、就打發大官上美國去、在那裏把事情[1]說好了、所以現今[2]兩下就如兄如弟、[3]我買你的貨、你買我的貨、你在我這邊做生意、我在你那裏做買賣。但高麗人吃了他們兩國的苦、先是因有多少兵從他那裏過、[4]軍裝[5]兵餉都[6]得給他們[7]搬運、有車裝的、有馬馱的、也有小車推的、把他的莊稼就弄的[8]不像個樣子了。就是現在高麗人也要聽東洋人的吩咐、他們的皇上成了有名無實、國裏一切的事、都[9]在東洋人的手下、像甚麼郵政局的信票、凡所用的都是日本印的、火車站都是日本人管的、各衙門也是[10]歸他們管、大概用不了幾年高麗就要成爲日本的一個小屬國了、卻有一樣、自從日本人上他們那裏去住[12]下、各買賣比早年大得好幾百倍了、眞是、一朶黑雲其中也有好雨、樣樣事都是[13]苦盡甜來、

---

1. *Shoh hao liao* 說好了 To come to satisfactory terms.
2. *Liang hsia* 兩下 Both parties.
3. *O . . . ni* 我 . . . 你 A mode of speaking of two parties, neither pronoun has any reference to the speaker.
4. *Chüin$^{1}$-chuang$^{1}$* 軍裝 Military accoutrements.
5. *Ping$^{1}$-hsiang$^{3}$* 兵餉 Rations for troops.
6. *Teh* 得 Here=must; were bound to.
7. *Pan üin* 搬運 To transport.
8. *Puh hsiang ko iang-tsi* 不像個樣子 Different from its normal appearance in an inferior sense.
9. *Tsai . . . sheo hsia* 在 . . . 手下 Beneath the hand—under the control of.
10. *Kuei t'a-men kuan* 歸他們管 Is governed by them.
11. *Shuh$^{3}$ kueh$^{3}$* 屬國 A tributary kingdom; a dependency.
12. *Chu-hsia* 住下 To settle down; to dwell.
13. *K'u chin t'ien lai* 苦盡甜來 Sweet after bitter; "the sweet bye-and-bye."

# LESSON XXVII. 課七十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 保$^{2}$ | *pao* | To warrant; to insure. To guarantee. To protect. |
| 阿$^{4}$ | *a* | A final particle. |
| 碎$^{4}$ | *sui* | Fragments. Broken. |
| 巡$^{2}$ | *hs*<br>*s* } *üin* | To go on circuit. To patrol. |
| 掌$^{3}$ | *chang* | The palm of the hand; the sole of the foot. To manage; to control. |
| 警$^{3}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ing* | To warn; to admonish. |
| 岡$^{1}$ | *kang* | A mound. |
| 野$^{3}$ | *ie* | Wild; rustic; savage. A wilderness. |
| 嚇$^{4}$ | *heh*<br>*hsiah* | To scare; to intimidate. |
| 彩$^{3}$ | *ts'ai* | Ornamented; gay. A prize. |
| 顏$^{2}$ | *ien* | Colour. The face. |
| 色$^{4}$ | *seh* | Colour. Lust. Sort; kind. |
| 監$^{1.4}$ | *ch*<br>*k* } *ien* | To inspect; to oversee. A jail. |
| 牢$^{2}$ | *lao* | A prison. Firmly; secure. |
| 瑟$^{4}$ | *seh*$^{1}$ | A large guitar. |
| 販$^{4}$ | *fan* | To traffic; to deal in. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 憂$^{1}$ | *iu* | Grief; sad. Mournful |
| 悶$^{4}$ | *men* | Sorrowful; melancholy. |
| 獸$^{4}$ | *sheo*$^{9}$ | Brutes; wild beasts. |
| 染$^{3}$ | *ran* | To dye. To infect. To 'catch,' as a disease. |
| 捆$^{3}$ | *k'uen* | To bind; to tie up. |
| 瞞$^{2}$ | *man* | To hoodwink; to blind. |
| 嫌$^{2}$ | *hsien* | To dislike. To object to. Suspicion. |
| 撕$^{1}$ | *sï* | To tear; to rend. |
| 稍$^{1}$ 微$^{2}$ | *shao-uei* | Slightly; a little. |
| 珠$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *chu-tsï*$^{35}$ | Pearls. |
| 葡$^{2}$ 萄$^{2}$ | *p'u-t'ao* | Grapes. |
| 點$^{3}$ 心$^{1}$ | *tien-hsin* | Sweetmeats; confectionery. |
| 監$^{1}$ 牢$^{2}$ | *chien-lao*$^{1,13}$ | A prison. |
| 憂$^{1}$ 悶$^{4}$ | *iu-men* | Mournful; sorrowful. |
| 顏$^{2}$ 色$^{4}$ | *ien-seh* | Colour. |
| 自$^{4}$ 然$^{2}$ | *tsï-ran* | Of course; naturally. |
| 巡$^{2}$ 警$^{3}$ 局$^{2}$ | *hsüin-ching-chüh* | A police station. |
| 站$^{4}$ 岡$^{1}$ 的$^{1}$ | *chan-kang-tih* | A policeman. |

### Assent: how emphasized.

1. Simple affirmation and denial, assent and dissent are expressed by 是 *shï* and 不是 *puh-shï*. But when to this is added emphasis, and the thought that something must be so in the nature of the case, these are insufficient. This is expressed in the following manner:—

Of course; you are right; *k'o-puh-shï* 可不是.
You bet! no mistake about that! *kan-tsï* 敢自.
Why ask that? Of course not; *na hai uen?* 那還問.
What are you talking about? *na lai-tih hua?* 那來的話.
That is certain; *na shï ih-ting-tih* 那是一定的.

---

謀事在人, 成事在天 *Man proposes, Heaven disposes.*

it is needless to speak of that; *na shï puh-iong shoh-tih* 那是不用說的.

That goes without saying; *na shï puh-iong chiang-tih* 那是不用講的

## Final Particles.

2. The Chinese use a good many final particles in ordinary conversation, the commonest of which is *a* 阿. Beginners should use it sparingly until they have observed how and when the people round them use it, as if misplaced, it has a tendency to make the speaker look ridiculous. There are other particles such as 喇 *la*; 哩 *li*; and 哪 *na*; the latter commonly following a word which ends with ‘*n*’.

## Supplementary: Lessons VIII and IX.

3. *K‘en* 肯 is employed colloquially in the sense of ‘Readily; rapidly; easily;’ *e.g.*,

Horses easily fall sick; *ma k‘en seng ping* 馬肯生病.

My child is growing rapidly; his won’t grow; *o-tih hai-tsï k‘en chang; t‘a-tih hai-tsï puh k‘en chang* 我的孩子肯長, 他的孩子不肯長.

This ground dries up rapidly; *chœ-ko ti k‘en kan* 這個地肯乾.

*Chia* 家 is added to many words; sometimes to indicate ‘a class’ and at other times to denote ‘an individual’; *e.g.*,

People; individuals; *ren-chia* 人家.

State; country; *kueh-chia* 國家.

Women; females; *fu-tao-chia* 婦道家

An elderly person; *lao-ren-chia* 老人家

Officials; *kuan-chia* 官家.

Merchants; business men; *shang-chia* 商家.

Shopkeepers; *p‘u-chia* 舖家.

At home with the mother—of a woman; *tsai niang-chia* 在娘家.

I have come to look for a person named Li; *o lai chao Li chia* 我來找李家.

A steward; *kuan-chia* 管家.

*T‘ai* 太 is employed indiscriminately in the South, but in the North it is often replaced by 忒 *t‘eh* when anything of an unsatisfactory nature is in question; *e.g.*,

A string of cash is too little; *ih-tiao ch‘ien t‘eh shao* 一吊錢忒少.

*Ko* 過 ‘To pass over’, is also used to denote a going beyond the mark; it may be used alone or take either 逾$^{2}$ *ü*; To pass over; to exceed; or 於$^{2}$ *ü* In; on; or 分 *fen*; *e.g.*,

His language is beyond all bounds; *t‘a shoh-hua t‘ai ko liao fen* 他說話太過了分

There is no need to be excessively grieved; *puh-pih ko-ü shang-sin* 不必過於傷心

*Ting* 頂 in some districts as a superlative is aspirated (*tʻing*). Other common words and phrases which denote the highest degree are :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 極$^{2}$ | *ch*, *k* } *ih* | The ridge-pole of a house. The utmost point. Very. |
| 最$^{4}$ | *tsui* | Exceedingly ; most. |
| 儘$^{4}$ | *ch*, *ts* } *in* | All. The utmost ; the extreme. |
| 得 荒 | *teh-huang* | Used in the North in connection with anything unpleasant or painful. |
| 着 實 | *choh-shïh* | Thoroughly ; indeed and in truth. |
| 到 家 | *tao-chia* | Fully; thoroughly. ‘At home’ at anything. |
| 極 其 | *chih-chʻi* | A strengthened form of 極. |
| 甚 | *shen* | Any. Very. |
| 十 分 | *shïh-fen* | Ten-tenths ; perfectly ; entirely. |

Detestable in the extreme ; *chih-chʻi kʻo-u* 極 其 可 惡.

Extremely low-spirited ; *men teh-huang* 悶 得 荒.

The very last ; *chin moh-moh-liao* 儘 末 末 了.

The innermost room ; *chin-li-pien-tih na-ko fang-tsï* 儘 裏 邊 的 那 個 房 子.

He is not yet quite at home at it ; *tʻa hai muh iu shïh-fen tao-chia* 他 還 沒 有 十 分 到 家.

He has now thoroughly repented ; *tʻa hsien-tsai choh-shïh-tih huei-kai* 他 現 在 着 實 的 悔 改.

He is thoroughly at home in Chinese ; *Chong-kueh hua tʻa i-ching hsioh tao-chia* 中 國 話 他 已 經 學 到 家.

*Tsʻo* 錯 is joined to 過 *ko* and used in the same sense as 除 了 *chʻu-liao*, ‘with the exception of’ ; *e.g.*,

With the exception of Mr. Pien, who would dare to reprove him ? *tsʻo-ko Pien hsien-seng shui kan shoh tʻa ?* 錯 過 邊 先 生 誰 敢 說 他.

Apart from him there is no one able to manage it ; *tsʻo-ko tʻa muh iu neng pan tih* 錯 過 他 沒 有 能 辦 的.

So far, in these Lessons 但 *tan* and 光 *kuang* have been used for ‘only’ ; other words in common use denoting limitation are :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 只$^{3}$ | *chï* | Only ; but. |
| 單$^{1}$ | *tan* | Single ; alone. An account ; a bill. Unlined. |
| 專$^{1}$ | *chuan* | Only ; specially ; solely. |
| 獨$^{2}$ | *tuh* | Single ; alone ; solitary. |
| 寡$^{3}$ | *kua* | Few ; little. Friendless. Used colloquially largely in Southern Mandarin. |
| 專 門 | *chuan-men* | Solely ; entirely. |
| 味$^{4}$ | *uei* | Flavour ; taste. |
| 一 味 的 | *ih-uei-tih* | Devoted to ; uniformly. |
| 只 得 | *chï-teh* or 只 能 *chï-neng* | The only thing possible was to . . . . |

Jesus gave Himself up to doing good and healing the sick ; *Ie-su chuan-men tso hao sï, i ping-ren* 耶 穌 專 門 做 好 事, 醫 病 人.

He does nothing but injure us ; *tʻa ih-uei-tih hai o-men* 他 一 味 的 害 我 們.

Only the one establishment; *chï ts'i ih chia* 只此一家.

He only was left; *tan sheng-hsia t'a ih ko ren* 單賸下他一個人.

He does not devote himself to the business at all; *tsoh sï ih-tien-rï puh chuan hsin* 作事一點兒不專心.

He says he will come; he has no intention of doing so; *t'a kua shoh lai, t'a ping puh lai* 他寡說來, 他並不來.

## Money and Exchange.

In addition to the Vocabulary in Lesson IX, the following terms relating to money are in constant use:—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 値$^{4}$ | *chïh* | To be worth; value. |
| 賺$^{4}$ | *chuan* | To make money; to earn. |
| 折$^{2}$ | *cheh* | To discount; to abate. |
| 賒$^{1}$ | *shœ* | To buy or sell on credit. |
| 欠$^{4}$ | *ch'ien* | To owe; deficient. |
| 利$^{4}$ | *li* | Profit. |
| 押$^{1}$ | *iah* | To detain in custody; to suppress. |
| 搭$^{1}$ | *tah* | To add to. |
| 扣$^{4}$ | *k'eo* | To deduct; to discount. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 鷹$^{1}$ 洋$^{2}$ | *ing-iang* | Mexican dollars. |
| 本$^{3}$ 洋$^{2}$ | *pen-iang* | Spanish dollars. |
| 長$^{3}$ 價$^{4}$ | *chang-chia* | To rise in price. |
| 跌$^{1}$ 價$^{4}$ | *tieh-chia* | To fall in price. |
| 成$^{2}$ 色$^{4}$ | *ch'eng-seh* | Fineness, 'touch,' or purity of silver. |
| 捨$^{3}$ 本$^{3}$ | *shœ-pen* | To fail in business. |
| 賒$^{1}$ 賬$^{4}$ | *shœ-chang* | Credit; to run up a score. |
| 戥$^{3}$ 子$^{3}$ | *teng-tsï* | A small balance used in weighing silver. |
| 扣$^{1}$ 頭$^{2}$ | *k'eo-t'eo* | Discount. |

The dollar is at .72; *iang-ch'ien tsoh ch'ih ch'ien rï* 洋錢作七錢二.

To-day a Mexican dollar is worth .71 (of a tael); *chin-t'ien ing-iang hoh ch'ih ch'ien ih fen in-tsï* 今天鷹洋合七錢一分銀子.

The value of a Spanish dollar is Tls. .75; *pen-iang tsoh ch'ih ch'ien u* 本洋作七錢五.

How many cash to a dollar? *hoh to-shao ch'ien ih-k'uai?* 合多少錢一塊.

How much silver is a dollar worth? *ih-k'uai iang-ch'ien hoh to-shao in-tsï?* 一塊洋錢合多少銀子.

Three taels plus five hundred cash; *san liang in-tsï tah u peh ko ch'ien* 三兩銀子搭五百個錢.

Take the average (between two or more amounts); *ih la-rï suan* 一拉兒算.

How much in all? *ih-tsong iu to-shao?* 一總有多少.

Add it up; *shah ko tsong-rï* 殺個總兒.

Pay a half, and leave a half unpaid; *kuei ih pan iah ih pan* 歸一半押一半.

Less than it cost; under cost price; *puh keo pen* 不殼本.

Worthless; *puh chïh ch'ien* 不値錢.

Enquire the market price; *ta-t'ing hang-shï* 打聽行市.

Unable to change (money) for the full price; *huan puh tao hang-shï* 換不到行市.

In ordinary cases amounts are reckoned to two places of decimals, but bankers and others extend their calculations to five places of decimals, as shown in the following Table:—

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | *huh* | 忽¹ | an atom | =1 | *sï* | 絲 | a filament. |
| 10 | *sï* | 絲¹ | | =1 | *kao* | 毫 | a hair. |
| 10 | *hao* | 毫² | | =1 | *li* | 釐 | a grain. |
| 10 | *li* | 釐² | | =1 | *fen* | 分 | a hundredth. |

One of the first things the beginner needs to know about is Exchange; he may perhaps find some of his difficulties on the subject lightened by considering the following:—

Dollars and taels are exchanged, or sold, for cash. To find the value of either the whole or part of a dollar or a tael, all that is needed is to multiply the amount by the rate; *e.g.*,

What is the value in cash of \$30.69 @ 1,120 cash a dollar?

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \$30 \text{ @ } 1{,}120 = 1{,}120 \times 30 = 336{,}000 \\ +\$\frac{69}{100} \text{ @ } 1{,}120 = \frac{1{,}120}{1} \times \frac{69}{100} = 772\frac{4}{5} \end{array}\right\} = 34{,}372\tfrac{4}{5} \text{ cash. } \textit{Ans.}$$

Or more simply, to multiply decimally—\$30.69 × 1,120 = 34,373 cash: Answer. It should be noticed that this answer is slightly larger than the one given above. The rule in such cases is to add 1 when the remainder is over a half.

How many cash is Tls. .36 worth @ 1,560 cash per tael? 1,560 × .36 = 562 cash. *Ans.*

It follows that to convert cash into dollars or taels all that is needed is to reverse the above process; *e.g.*,

How many dollars should I receive for 189,645 cash @ 1,040 per \$1? 189,645 ÷ 1,040 = \$182.35. *Ans.*

How many taels will 2,650 cash realize if silver changes @ 1,520 cash per Tl. 1? 2,650 ÷ 1,520 = Tls. 1.74. *Ans.*

The conversion of dollars into taels, or taels into dollars proceeds as above; *e.g.*,

*a.* What is the value in taels of \$4, the dollar being at .72?

100 dollar cents = tael cents 72
∴ 1 „ „ = „ „ $\frac{72}{100}$
Hence 400 „ „ = „ „ $\frac{72 \times 400}{100}$ = Tls. 2.88. *Ans.*

Or, more simply, \$1 is worth .72 tael cents, ∴ \$4 × .72 = required answer in taels. *Ans.* Tls. 2.88.

*b.* What is the value in taels of \$8.65, the dollar being at .73?

\$1 is worth .73 tael cents ∴ \$8.65 × .73 = required answer in taels. *Ans.* Tls. 6.31.

*c.* What is the value in dollars of Tls. 5, the dollar being at .71?

Value of 71 tael cents = 100 dollar cents.
∴ „ „ 1 „ „ = $\frac{1}{71}$ of 100 dollar cents = $\frac{100}{71}$.
Hence „ „ 500 „ „ = $\frac{100 \times 500}{71}$ = \$7.04. *Ans.*

Or, more simply, Tl. 1 = 100 cents ∴ Tls. 5 = 500 cents; hence 500 ÷ .71 = required answer in dollars. *Ans.* \$7.04.

*d.* What is the value in dollars of Tls. 86.92, the dollar being at 73 tael cents? Tls. 86.92÷.73=$119.07. *Ans.*

All the cases which arise in dealing with taels and dollars may be summed up in the following brief rules:—

1. To find taels, when the rate is given *in taels*, *multiply* the given number of dollars by the rate; *e.g.*,

How many taels are in $150 @ .73?

According to the rule the answer is 150×.73=Taels 109.50. *Ans.*

2. To find taels, when the rate is given *in dollars*, *divide* the given dollars by the rate; *e.g.*,

How many taels are in $63.75 @ $1.37 per tael?

63.75÷1.37=Taels 46.53. *Ans.*

3. To find dollars, when the rate is given *in taels*, *divide* the given taels by the rate; *e.g.*,

How many dollars are in taels 100 @ .725 taels?

100÷.725=$137.93. *Ans.*

4. To find dollars, when the rate is given *in dollars*, *multiply* the given taels by the rate; *e.g.*,

How many dollars in Taels 112.15 @ $1.37?

112.15×1.37=$153.64. *Ans.*

N.B.—In all cases there must be more dollars than taels; fewer taels than dollars.

In a country where silver is largely used in an uncoined state, and passes from one person to another as the equivalent of so many ounces, it is evident there must be some standard by which to test its quality. In some large centres there is a Valuation Bureau called *Kong-ku chüh* 公估局, where silver in local use is tested and stamped; its quality in relation to the standard being thus officially certified. This standard of fineness or purity, technically termed 'touch,' is known as *ch‘eng-seh* 成色, 'perfect colour,' owing to the fact that impure silver is detected by (among other things) discolouration. *Ch‘eng-seh* thus expresses the standard quality of pure silver and roughly corresponds to the English 'Par' or 100. The actual quality of silver is stated in relation to this standard, but the manner of stating it is the opposite of the English method. For instance we speak of five out of a hundred as 5 per cent., of two and a half out of a hundred as 2½ per cent., etc., but the Chinese express the same by stating what is left when the percentage is removed. This obtains in speaking of *cash*, *discount*, and *percentage*; *e.g.*,

Silver at 5 per cent; *chiu u in-tsï* 九五銀子 The ten (*shih* 十) in such cases is understood, not expressed.

Silver at 3½ per cent; *chiu luh u in-tsï* 九六五銀子.

Note that 'a half' is expressed decimally=.5.

This cash is 2 per cent. short; *chœ shï chiu pah ch‘ien* 這是九八錢,

He deducts 3 per cent.; *t'a k'eo san fen ch'ien* 他扣三分錢

No discount is allowed in buying odds and ends; *mai ling-sui tong-hsi muh iu k'eo-t'eo* 買零碎東西沒有扣頭.

If an account is reckoned at 20 per cent., a thousand cash only equals 800; *chao pah cheh suan chang, ih tiao ch'ien chï suan pah peh* 照八折算賬,一吊錢只算八百.

In many places money is forwarded from place to place by means of drafts procured at native banks. The percentage charged varies according to circumstances, but whatever the sum total may be it is usually distributed over some or all of the following heads :—

Difference of scale; *hsiao p'ing* 小平.

Discount; *k'eo-shui* 扣水.

Depreciation of silver; *mao-seh* 毛色.

Commission; *huei-shui* 匯水 (*huei* 匯$^4$ To converge).

The standard in such cases is the one which prevails in the place where the draft is issued, and it is customary to keep all accounts according to that standard rather than in local currency. If, say, money is sent from Shanghai to Chongking, it is better to keep accounts in Shanghai taels, and enter the local values in a separate column. Care must, however, be taken in converting them from one value to the other. For instance, money sent from Shanghai to Hankow is subject to a percentage, say, of 3 per cent., and in forwarding from there to Chongking a further percentage of say, $3\frac{1}{4}$ (expressed decimally as 3.25) may have to be paid on the draft obtained at the native bank. Let us suppose a cheque for Shanghai Taels 100 is forwarded to Chongking by way of Hankow. At Hankow it realizes @ 3 per cent. Tls. 97. This sum is forwarded to Chongking at the rate of $3\frac{1}{4}$ per cent and realizes Chongking Taels 93.85. In converting this amount into Shanghai taels it will not do to calculate it at $6\frac{1}{4}$, owing to the calculation being made on 93.85, as this gives 99.71 only. The true percentage for reconversion is found as follows :—

Chongking taels 93.85 = Shanghai taels 100.

∴ „ „ 1 = „ „ $\frac{100}{93.85}$

Hence „ „ 100 = „ „ $\frac{100\times100}{93.85}$ = 106.55. *Ans.*

The percentage is therefore 6.55. And the true percentage for reconversion between Chongking and Hankow is found by the same process to be not 3.25, but 3.35.

Interest is reckoned by *fen* 分 or hundredths. Half per cent. interest is expressed by *pan* 半, half, instead of decimally, as above. The common custom is to reckon by the month, and not, as with us, by the year.

Interest must not be charged above 3 per cent.; *ch'ü li puh-k'o ko san fen* 取利不可過三分.

He only wants $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.; *t'a chï iao rï fen pan li* 他只要二分半利.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

1. What is the value of $865.29 in taels, the dollar being at 71? *Ans.* Tls. 614.36.

2. What is the value in taels of $47.653 if the tael is worth $1.37. *Ans.* Tls. 34.78.

3. Hankow Tls. 200 = Chongking Tls. 193, what is the percentage for reconversion? *Ans.* 3.63 per cent.

4. If the tael changes for 1,560 cash, and the dollar is at .71, how many cash should I receive for 36 dollar cents? *Ans.* 399 cash.

5. What is the value in taels of $97.304, if the dollar is worth Tls. .73? *Ans.* Tls. 71.0319.

6. A Spanish dollar being worth $1.25 Mexican, what is the value in Mexican dollars of $71.823 Spanish? *Ans.* $89.78.

7. What is the value in dollars of Tls. 86.29, the dollar being at .735? *Ans.* $117.40.

8. What is the value in full cash (*tsuh-ch‘ien* 足 錢) of 476,345 cash at 95? *Ans.* 452,528 cash.

9. A person changed Tls. 54.63 of *chiu-pah in-tsï* 九 八 銀 子 for pure silver; how much did he receive? *Ans.* Tls. 53.54.

10. How many cash should be obtained for Tls. 865,241, if the tael changed at 1,654 an ounce? and how many cash short would there be in the sum total if the cash used was *chiu u* 九 五? *Ans.* Amount obtained 1,431,109 cash; amount short 71,555 cash.

11. How many dollars are there in Tls. 489.6, if the dollar is worth Tls. .74? *Ans.* $661.62.

12. A dollar being worth 1,063 cash, what is the value ot $76.43? *Ans.* 81,245 cash.

13. If 80 cents (Spanish) will buy one Mexican dollar, how many Spanish dollars shall I receive for $92 (Mexican)? *Ans.* $73.60.

14. If Tls. 46 Hankow are equal to Tls. 50 Shanghai, how many Shanghai taels shall I receive for Hankow Taels 872.36? *Ans.* Tls. 948.22.

15. How many dollars should you obtain for Tls. 3,562.201 the dollar being at .691? *Ans.* $5,155.14.

16. A person remits Tls. 564.41 of pure silver from Ta-li Fu to Hankow where *chiu ch‘ih in-tsï* 九 七 銀 子 is used, and pays 5.5 per cent. commission. What is the draft worth in Hankow taels? *Ans.* Tls. 549.86.

17. A cheque for Shanghai Tls. 356.25 is sent to Kai-feng Fu by way of Hankow. It is cashed in Hankow and forwarded by draft obtained from a Chinese bank. When it arrives in Kai-feng Fu it is found to be worth Kai-feng Fu Tls. 323.99, or Hankow Tls 344.67. How much per cent. was charged in Hankow on the Shanghai cheque, how much on the draft, and what is the percentage for reconversion into Shanghai taels? *Ans.* On Shanghai cheque 3.25 per cent.; on draft 6 per cent.; percentage for reconversion 9.96 per cent.

NOTES.—*a.* In many places 巡捕 *hsüin-pu* is the common term for 'policeman.' For a policeman to go on and off duty is 上岡 *shang-kang* and 下岡 *hsia-kang*.

*b. Seh-ch'i* 色氣 is also used for 'colour.'

*c. Shïh* 十 and *shïh-fen* 十分 are employed to express percentage; *e.g.*, Eighty per cent. are bad; *shïh-ko iu pah-ko puh-hao* 十個有八個不好.

I understood thirty per cent of what he said; *shïh-chü o tong-teh san-chü* 十句我懂得三句.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

His disease is slightly better to-day; *t'a-tih ping chin-t'ien shao-uei hao ih-tien.*

He cannot protect himself, much less others! *t'a pao puh chu tsï-chi, ch'i neng pao teh chu ren ni!*

The official in charge of the police-station is named Chang; *hsüin-ching-chüh tih kuan, hsing Chang.*

He superintends this business; *chæ shï t'a chang-kuan tih sï.*

He objected that there was too much to do; *t'a hsien sï-ch'ing t'ai to.*

Flowers and grass are of all sorts of colours; *hua ts'ao, shen-mo ien-seh tu iu.*

Will you have it dyed red or black? *shï iao ran hong-tih, shï iao ran heh tih ni?*

Will this colour fade? *chæ tiao seh puh tiao seh?*

I hear that his eldest son is put in prison; *o t'ing shoh t'a-tih ta rï-tsï hsia-liao chien.*

Retain this firmly in your memory; *iao lao chi puh uang.*

He has gone into the country to purchase horses; *t'a hsia hsiang fan ma ch'ü liao.*

It is possible to deceive men, but not the gods; *man teh ko ren man puh ko shen.*

The Kingdom of heaven is like a merchant seeking goodly pearls; *t'ien-kueh hao hsiang mai-mai-ren chao hao chu-tsï.*

*Translate:*—When you have done up the bedding go and call a coolie to take it to the jetty. There are four policemen in the street: two at the east end and two at the west end, and there is also another standing at the door of the police station. What are you sad about? I have just heard that my mother is dead. He broke the jug to pieces on purpose; this I saw with my own eyes. He regarded his son like a pearl in the palm of the hand. He hoodwinked his father and went to Peking. If you only give him 500 cash, of course he will not be willing to come; he objects to the wages as being too low. The eldest brother was pretty good, but both the second and third brothers were given to lust, wine and covetousness. Tear up this piece of paper. The two men began to fight and tore their clothes to pieces. He has the face (面) of a man, but the heart of a beast. The lion is the king of beasts. There is any colour you like—there are both red, yellow and white. The Saviour wept over the capital of Judæa because the sins of the people of the city were great. His heart was sad because He knew that in the future they would suffer. Judas (猶大), when he sold Christ, thought he had deceived Him, but as a matter of fact he could not do so. Is it possible to deceive the omniscient God? of course not Sooner or later men's sins will be made manifest; this is a matter of common knowledge.

Writing Exercise:—古左苦友接難容安相輕重立 R. 117.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十七課雜句

他的病今天少微好一點
他保不住自己,豈能保得住人呢
巡警局的官,姓張
這是他掌管的事
他嫌事情太多
花草,甚麽顏色都有
是要染紅的,是要染黑的呢
這掉色,不掉色
我聽說他的大兒子下了監
要牢記不忘
他下鄉,販馬去了
瞞得過人,瞞不過神
天國好像買賣人找好珠子

### NOTES.

## READING LESSON XXVII. 輯要第二十七

---

### The Younger Brother I.

### 小弟受屈

古時候在西邊的猶太國、有個老年人、可算是財主家、有駱駝、驢子、牛、羊、還生了十 個兒子、都從小在家和他同住、專門在鄉下放[1]羊、他到了年紀老[2]邁、又生一個兒子、給他起[3]名叫約[4]瑟、看他正如心上的肉、掌上的明[5]珠一樣、給他做了一件彩[6]色的長[7]褂、在他身上肯費大事、他哥哥們看見、以爲他父親是溺[8]愛不明、重看約瑟、輕看他們、因[9]此就恨約瑟、罵約瑟、與他不和、心中又怪父親不公道。更[10]有一件奇事、就是約瑟好做[11]夢、有一回他告訴哥哥們說、我夢見我們在田間割麥子、捆[12]成捆、我的捆起來站着、你們

1. *Fang iang* 放羊 Look after sheep.
2. *Lao*$^3$*-mai*$^4$ 老邁 Very old.
3. *Ch'i ming* 起名 To name.
4. *Ioh*$^1$*-seh*$^4$ 約瑟 Joseph.
5. *Ming chu* 明珠 A brilliant gem.
6. *Ts'ai seh* 彩色 Many coloured.
7. *Ch'ang kua* 長褂 A long unlined gown.
8. *Nih*$^4$ *ai*$^4$ *puh*$^1$ *ming*$^2$ 溺愛不明 To love foolishly; to shew foolish preference.
9. *In-ts'i* 因此 On this account; hence. V. 6.
10. *Keng iu ih chien ch'i si* 更有一件奇事 There was also another strange thing.
11. *Tso*$^4$ *meng*$^4$ 做夢 To dream.
12. *K'uen ch'eng k'uen* 捆成捆 To bind into sheaves.

的捆圍着我的捆[1]下拜。以後又說、我做了一夢、夢見日月十一個星對我下拜、哥哥們聽了這兩個夢、就越發恨他、說、豈是我們將來都要[2]拜你爲大嗎。往下他哥哥們常瞞父親行些不正經的事、約瑟卻知道、就告訴了他父親、氣得他哥哥們想法子要害他、卻在父親面前不好下手。那時[3]正遇天旱相近之地草很稀少、所以他們一連多日往遠處去放羊、他父親因多日沒聽見他們的信、就心內着急、打發約瑟去打聽、卻不曉得他們心中有意要殺約瑟。約瑟本是個孝子、雖知道哥哥們恨他、卻肯聽父命就去了、但因路不熟[4]走迷了、究竟把哥哥們找到了。他哥哥們遠遠的看見他、就彼此商量、定規等他到時要殺他、[5]獨有大哥不肯、說、不可下手殺他、[6]不如把他丟在這口乾井裏好、他們都答應說可以、[7]待約瑟來到都說、做夢的阿你來了麽、[8]來罷、我們看你的夢後來如何、

---

1. *Hsia-pai* 下拜 To do obeisance.

2. *Pai ni uei ta* 拜你爲大 To defer to you as a superior.

3. *Cheng ü* 正遇 It just happened that . . .

4. *Tseo mi liao* 走迷了 To lose one's way; to go astray.

5. *Tuh iu ta-ko puh k'en* 獨有大哥不肯 His eldest brother only was unwilling.

6. *Puh ru . . . hao* 不如 . . . 好 The best thing to do is to . . .

7. *Tai* 待 Waited until . . .

8. *Lai pa* 來罷 Come on! Often used as a challenge=come on and do your best

一面說一面把他緊緊的拿住、剝去他的彩衣、就把他丟在井中了、[1]不管他死活、他們便都坐下吃飯。[2]一頓飯還沒有吃完、抬頭一[3]望、就望見一[4]帮販子、是從北方騎着駱駝往南方去、賣[5]甚麼[6]藥材、[7]香料的、哥哥們忽然又[8]生一計、說、這孩子本是我們的[9]骨肉、若瞞着人殺他、有甚麼益處呢、何不把他賣給這些人、又可以賺錢、又可以省事、話纔說完、商家已經來到了、滿心願意[10]販賣人口、[11]大家[12]說來說去、末末了講定給三十兩銀子、哥哥們就從井裏拉上他來、交給商家把他帶走了、眞眞可憐。他走後哥哥們就殺了一隻羊、把血流在盆裏、又拿那件彩衣來染紅了、慢慢的拿回家去、送給父親看、說、請認一認、是不是你小兒子的衣裳、老父親一看見就認識、嚇得說、哎呀、好兒子不在了、

---

1. *Puh kuan t'a sï hoh* 不管他死活 Did not care whether he lived or died.
2. *Ih-tuen fan* 一頓飯 A meal.
3. *Uang* 望 is usually applied to objects at a distance.
4. *Ih-pang* 一帮 A company.
5. *Shen-mo* 甚麼 All kinds of ; such things as.
6. *Ioh-ts'ai* 藥材 Drugs ; medicines.
7. *Hsiang liao* 香料 Spices.
8. *Seng ih-chi* 生一計 Thought of a plan.
9. *Kuh ruh* 骨肉 Bones and flesh—a near relation.
10. *Fan mai ren k'eo* 販賣人口 To deal in human beings.
11. *Ta-chia* 大家 The whole of them. L. 28.
12. *Shoh lai shoh ch'ü* 說來說去 To talk a thing over ; to discuss in all its bearings.

必是野獸把他[1]撕碎了、吃了、我要憂憂悶悶的下墳墓去了。約瑟騎駱駝往外走、又流淚、又[2]想家、卻也是白想了、[3]白日太陽晒、[4]黑夜睡不着、受了[5]千辛萬苦、直往南行、東邊是[6]紅海、西邊是[7]地中海、從兩海中間的地經過、就到了古時有名之大國、叫[8]埃及國、那裏[9]人烟稠密、[10]大城小店、[11]水碼頭、[12]旱碼頭、[13]四鄉八境的人都有。販子把他帶到賣人市、賣給一個本國的武官、武官看他[14]才貌雙全、人也老實、帶他到家中、把[15]雜事給他作、試試他。要知道他後來行事如何、有何等的禍福、請看下課便知道了、

---

[1] *Sï-suï* 撕碎 Torn in pieces.

[2] *Hsiang-chia* 想家 Homesick.

[3] *Peh-rïh* 白日 In the daytime.

[4] *Heh-ie* 黑夜 Through the night ; in the night time.

[5] *Ch'ien hsin uan k'u* 千辛萬苦 Varied hardships.

[6] *Hong hai* 紅海 The Red Sea.

[7] *Ti-chong hai* 地中海 The Mediterranean Sea.

[8] *Iai*$^2$*-chih*$^2$ 埃及 Egypt.

[9] *Ren*$^3$ *ien*$^1$ *ch'eo*$^2$*-mih*$^4$ 人烟稠密 Densely populated.

[10] *Ta ch'eng hsiao tien* 大城小店 Large and small centres of population.

[11] *Shui ma-t'eo* 水碼頭 A place of traffic situated on a waterway ; e.g., London.

[12] *Han ma-t'eo* 旱碼頭 A place of traffic away from a waterway.

[13] *Sï hsiang pah ching*$^4$ *tih ren* 四鄉八境的人 Men from all parts.

[14] *Ts'ai mao shuang ch'üen* 才貌雙全 Both talented and handsome.

[15] *Tsah sï* 雜事 Odds and ends of jobs.

# LESSON XXVIII. 課八十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 照$^4$ | *chao* | As; according to. To enlighten. |
| 變$^1$ | *pien* | To change; to alter. |
| 解$^1$ | k { *iai*; *chieh* <br> *ai* | To loosen; to untie. To explain. |
| 筐$^1$ | *k'uang*$^1$ | A basket. |
| 宰$^3$ | *tsai* | A chief minister in a State. To kill animals. |
| 私$^1$ | *sï* | Private; personal. Selfish; secret. |
| 宮$^1$ | *kong*$^{1,23}$ | A palace; a temple. |
| 原$^2$ | *üen* | A source. Natural; proper to. |
| 或$^4$ | h { *ueh* <br> *oh* | Perhaps; if; whether. |
| 派$^4$ | *p'ai* | To depute; to send. A clan. |
| 興$^1$ | *hsing* | To prosper; to increase. |
| 衰$^1$ | *shuai* | To decrease; to decline. |
| 提$^2$ | *t'i* | To lift: to raise. To mention; to bring forward |
| 憑$^2$ | *p'ing* | According to. Evidence. |
| 據$^4$ | *ch* <br> *k* } *ü* | Whereas; according to. Evidence. |
| 賴$^4$ | *lai* | To trust to. To accuse falsely. |
| 仇$^2$ | *ch'eo* | An enemy. Enmity. |
| 引$^3$ | *in* | To lead; to guide. To entice. To quote from a book. |
| 指$^3$ | *chï* | A finger; a toe. To point; to indicate. |
| 憑$^2$ 據$^4$ | *p'ing-chü* | Evidence; proof |
| 家$^1$ 人$^2$ | *chia-ren*$^1$ | Domestic servants. |
| 榮$^2$ 耀$^4$ | *iong-iao* | Glory; splendour. |
| 疑$^2$ 惑$^4$ | *i-huh* | Doubt; to doubt; to suspect. |
| 宰$^3$ 相$^4$ | *tsai-hsiang*$^1$ | A prime minister. |
| 公$^1$ 事$^4$ | *kong-sï* | Public business. |
| 衙$^2$ 門$^2$ | *ia-men*$^{1,13}$ | A magistrate's office; a court of justice. |
| 朝$^2$ 廷$^2$ | *ch'ao-t'ing* | The Court. |
| 做$^4$ 主$^3$ | *tso-chu* | To take responsibility. |
| 保$^3$ 護$^4$ | *pao-hu* | To protect; to preserve. |
| 枝$^1$ 子$^3$ | *chï-tsï*$^{21}$ | Branches. |
| 機$^1$ 會$^4$ | *chi-huei* | An opportunity |
| 引$^3$ 誘$^3$ | *in-iu* | To entice; to induce. |
| 平$^2$ 安$^1$ | *p'ing-an* | Peace; peaceful. |
| 指$^3$ 頭$^2$ | *chï-t'eo*$^1$ | Fingers; toes. |

### Beginning or Origin.

1. In the examples already given of the use of 本 *pen* and 本來 *pen-lai,* the prominent idea is that of a root sending forth branches. *Üen* 原 which is often used for 源 *üen*, 'A fountain,' in like manner indicates the source from whence events flow or have their rise. Thus, by a natural transition of thought they both denote commencement or starting-point, and usually carry with them the suggestion that so it should be in the nature of the case.

---

飲水思源 *When you drink water think of the fountain—be mindful of the source of your benefits.*

The following expressions are in common use in this connection :—

At first; primarily; originally; as a matter of fact; etc.; 原先 *üen-hsien* ; 原來 *üen-lai* ; 起頭 *chʻi-tʻeo* ; 從根 *tsʻong-ken.*

### Alternatives expressed by *hueh* 或.

**2.** It has already been shewn that an alternative—"either . . . . or"—is denoted by placing one sentence over against the other, no words answering to "either . . . . or" being needed. In books, however, and in some colloquial forms 或 *hueh*, either alone, or joined to 者 *chœ*, A pronoun, or 是 *shï* is employed as a more formal method of saying the same thing. The beginner should use it sparingly.

Either this way or that; *hueh-shï chœ iang hueh-shï na iang* 或是這樣或是那樣.

It is not certain whether he can do it or not; *hueh-chœ tʻa neng ie uei-kʻo-chï* 或者他能也未可知.

### Supplementary: Lessons X-XIII.

**3.** *Tsʻai* 纔 is employed to introduce the second half of a conditional statement, and denotes that after certain things are done certain consequences will follow. In this it approximates to *chiu* 就, but with the difference that while 就 *chiu* shews the natural order or connection 纔 *tsʻai* indicates that (*a*), it is then and *not before* in temporal sequence; and (*b*), *thus* and *only thus* in moral sequence; *e.g.*,

Wait until he has finished eating and drinking and then go and eat and drink yourself; *teng tʻa chʻih hoh uan-liao, ni tsʻai kʻo-i chʻü chʻih hoh* 等他吃喝完了, 你纔可以去吃喝.

I am what I am simply by the grace of God; *o hsien-tsai chʻeng-liao ho-teng ren, shï meng Shang-ti tih en tsʻai chʻeng tih* 我現在成了何等人, 是蒙上帝的恩纔成的.

Sometimes it is preceded by such words as 獨 *tuh* ; 只 *chï* ; etc.; which point out that when people are spoken of, those referred to stand by themselves, or when two classes are spoken of, that one and *one only* is under consideration; *e.g.*,

People who are not sick do not need a doctor; sick people only need one; *muh iu ping tih ren iong puh choh i-seng* ; *chï iu ping tih ren tsʻai iong teh choh* 沒有病的人用不着醫生, 只有病的人纔用得着.

Followed by 是 *shï* or 好 *hao* and preceded by 這 *chœ* or 那 *na*, it places a matter beyond question; *e.g.*,

This doubtless is the right way to do it; *chœ-iang tso tsʻai shï puh tsʻo* 這樣作纔是不錯.

That is first class! *na tsʻai hao ni!* 那纔好呢.

*Puh-ko* 不過 is largely used as a superlative in Southern Mandarin; after verbs it denotes inability; *e.g.*,

That countryman is exceedingly simple; *na-ko hsiang-hsia-ren lao-shïh puh-ko* 那個鄉下人老實不過.

I cannot overcome him in argument; *o shoh puh-ko t'a* 我說不過他.

The following characters and combinations are used in addition to 各 *koh*, for 'each'; 'severally;' etc.:—

每$^3$ *mei* Each; every.

On the 15th of every month; *mei üeh shïh-u* 每月十五.

逢$^2$ *feng* To meet with; whenever.

Letters are forwarded on the 3rd and 8th; *feng san pah fah hsin* 逢三八發信.

每逢 *mei-feng* On every occasion.

To observe Sunday once every seventh day; *mei-feng ch'ih t'ien sheo li-pai* 每逢七天守禮拜.

各自 *koh-tsï* Each one severally.

Each went to his own home; *koh-tsï kuei chia* 各自歸家.

*Tu* 都 as representing 'all' sums up what goes before; other words expressing totality are 統$^3$ *t'ong* All; the whole. To govern; to rule. 衆$^4$ *chong* A multitude; the whole of; all. All; the whole; 通統 *t'ong-t'ong*; 通身 *t'ong-shen*; 大家 *ta-chia*; 大衆 *ta-chong*. Both *ta-chia* 大家 and *ta-chong* 大衆 commonly follow pronouns; as,

They all consulted about it; *t'a-men ta-chia tu shang-liang* 他們大家都商量.

This garment is badly made throughout; *chœ-chien i-shang t'ong-shen tso tih puh hao* 這件衣裳通身做的不好.

## Lesson XI.

Different words are used for building. Both 造 *tsao* and 修 *hsiu* are used for building a bridge; 造 *tsao* is employed for building a vessel; 砌 *ch'i* and 立 *lih* for a wall, and 修 *hsiu* for a city wall.

*Puh-ru* 不如 is the equivalent of, 'Cannot do better than;' *e.g.*,

The best thing is to go to the yamên and see the official; *puh ru shang ia-men chien kuan* 不如上衙門見官.

You cannot do better than not go; *puh ru puh ch'ü* 不如不去.

As an auxiliary 住 *chu* is not joined to all verbs, but it may be to the following which have already occurred:—

*Sheo* 守; *ting* 釘; *ch'ih* 吃; *ch'i* 騎; *tso* 坐; *chan* 站; *k'ao* 靠; *kuan* 管; *tui* 對; *na* 拿; *t'ieh* 貼; *ren* 忍; *hsien* 閒; *ting* 定; *chï* 止; *chi* 記; *pao* 保; *tien* 點; *sheo* 受.

## Lesson XII.

*Li* 離 joined to 了 *liao* is of the same import as 除了 *ch'u-liao* and 錯了 *ts'o-liao*—'Apart from; with the exception of'; *e.g.*,

Apart from this way of doing it, how can we act? *li-liao chœ-mo pan, tsen-mo huei hsing ni?* 離了這麼辦, 怎麼會行呢.

## Lesson XIII.

The advent of the newspaper has pressed many terms into new moulds and given them fresh applications. If the suggestion bear fruit that the government should issue a Standard Dictionary of

Terms and appoint a body of men corresponding to the French Academy, there may then be some uniformity in the terminology employed to represent new terms introduced with foreign arts and crafts. Meanwhile we must employ such terms as are in common use; some connected with newspapers are as follows:—

Editor-in-chief; *tsong chu-pih* 總 主 筆.
Editor; *chu-pih* 主 筆.
Compositors; *pai-tsï-tih* 擺 字 的.
Reporters; *fang-sï ren* 訪 事 人.
Moveable type; *hoh tsï pan* 活 字 板.
Newspaper article; *luen*, or *luen-shoh* 論 or 論 說.
News; *hsin-uen* 新 聞.
Advertisement; *kao-peh* 告 白.

訪$^3$ *fang* To enquire about.

器$^4$ *ch‘* *k* } *i* A vessel; a utensil.

登$^1$ *teng* To rise. To record.

總$^3$ *tsong* All. The chief. An emphatic particle.

聞$^2$ *uen* To hear. To smell.

機$^1$ *ch* *k* } *i* A loom. A machine. An opportunity.

館$^3$ *kuan* A public office. A tavern; an eating house; etc. A private dwelling.

Newspaper office; *pao-kuan* 報 館.
To insert an article; *teng-pao* 登 報.
Printing machine; *in shu chi-ch‘i* 印 書 機 器.

*T‘ieh* 貼 is used figuratively to attach oneself to a person, and also in the sense of to make good—to pay out to make up a deficiency; *e.g.*,

To pay out money—as for a loss, etc.; *t‘ieh ch‘ien* 貼 錢.

To pay the difference in the quality or ‘touch’ of silver; *t‘ieh shui* 貼 水.

To be attached to, as friends or clothing; *t‘ieh shen* 貼 身.

Intimate; *t‘ieh-hsin* 貼 心.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

He was so scared that his face changed colour; *t‘a heh teh lien tu pien-liao ien-seh.*
To transact public business; *pan kong-si.*
There's no undoing this; *kiai puh k‘ai.*
There is abundant evidence; *iu p‘ing iu chü.*
Flourishing and declining by turns; *ih hsing ih shuai.*
I cannot take responsibility; *o tso puh teh chu.*
This underling was sent by the Prefect; *chæ shī chī-fu p‘ai tih ch‘ai.*
I will explain it to you; *o k‘o-i kiai-shoh chih ni t‘ing.*
He has changed his mind; *t‘a pien-liao hsin.*
I will go when I have an opportunity; *teh chi-huei o chiu ch‘ü.*
To forget how to write a character when one wants to; *t‘i pih uang tsï.*
The God of peace; *ts‘ï p‘ing-an-tih Shang-ti.*
Heaven is a glorious place; *T‘ien-t‘ang shī ko iu iong-iao tih ti-fang.*

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十八課雜句

他嚇的臉都變了顏色
辦公事
解不開
有憑有據
一興一衰
我作不得主
這是知府派的差
我可以解說給你聽
他變了心
得機會我就去
提筆忘字
賜平安的上帝
天堂是個有榮耀的地方

## NOTES.

*Translate*:—The branches of the vine can only bring forth fruit; they are useless for anything else. They went according to his commandment and loosed the ass. In the province of Shantong there are a good many vineyards. A yamên is a place for the transaction of public business. My own private affairs are of little importance. This in all probability is a private grudge. At the Court there are prime ministers and statesmen, all managing government business. He took up the basket and went off to the street to buy things. Don't doubt him; he tells the truth; his statements are by no means without proof. I had a dream last night and cannot explain its meaning. That man 章 first enticed him into vicious courses, and afterwards got all his money by false accusations; it really is enough to make an iron man shed tears. He wrote a newspaper article yesterday and sent it to the editor to-day, asking him to insert it in the paper. Reporters go all over the city making enquiries about all sorts of things, and afterwards go to the newspaper office and write them up. The peace which God gives is deeper than the sea; men have this peace after their sins are forgiven. The Lord commanded His disciples to go to the village and unloose the colt of an ass and bring (拉) it to Him. The devil leads people astray to commit sin.

Writing Exercise:—邊 或 殼 角 朋 反 長 短 使 衆 懂 便.

---

## READING LESSON XXVIII. 輯要第二十八

### The Younger Brother II.

#### 出監見君

約瑟在武官家中、辦事甚是[1]用心、早起晚睡、見[2]天往[3]前進步、叫武官看重他、把些大事託他辦、他既然樣樣辦得十分好、武官就提[4]拔他、升他做管家、家中一切的事、沒有一樣不交在他手中、家人也都在他手下、武官所有吃穿用[5]度全不掛[6]心、因約瑟本是最靠[7]得住的、專[8]心拿[9]他主人的事當事辦、原先人都看不起他、以後卻看他是可敬可愛

1. *Shen shï iong hsin* 甚是用心 With great diligence.
2. *Chien t'ien* 見天 Daily.
3. *Uang ch'ien chin pu* 往前進步 Made strides forward.
4. *T'i$^2$-pah$^2$* 提拔 To promote; to advance.
5. *Iong$^4$-tu$^4$* 用度 Expenditure.
6. *Kua-hsin* 掛心 To be anxious about.
7. *K'ao teh chu tih* 靠得住的 Trustworthy.
8. *Chuan-hsin* 專心 With one mind.
9. *Na . . . si tang si pan* 拿 . . . 事當事辦 To give attention to the matter in hand.

的、連武官的[1]夫人也是這樣看他、[2]無奈這夫人[3]放縱情慾、[4]起了壞意、要約瑟[5]隨從、只是約瑟[6]始終不肯、夫人知道自己看錯了人、甚[7]覺無臉、就[8]因羞成仇、竟把他在武官面前賴了、[9]捏造[10]謊言、說約瑟是[11]人面獸心、外面裝好人、心裏[12]存壞意。武官[13]輕信了妻子的話、就[14]動氣立時把約瑟[15]下了監給他苦吃、但世事雖是[16]興衰不一、卻還是上帝做主、所以約瑟到了監裏、蒙了主的大恩、叫[17]禁卒喜歡他、派他管衆[18]囚犯的事。有一天[19]差人送兩個上等人來坐監、一個是在[20]皇宮爲皇上[21]斟酒的、一個是爲皇上做點心的、不知道做了甚麼事、得罪着皇上、兩個就都下在監裏了、[22]有一回約瑟送飯去、看他們兩個人[23]悶悶不樂、便問他們憂悶甚麼、他們說是做了怪夢、無法可解、約瑟說、告訴我

---

1. *Fu-ren* 夫人 Wife of a high official.
2. *U-nai* 無奈 But alas!
3. *Fang$^4$ tsong$^1$ ch'ing$^2$ iuh$^4$* 放縱情慾 To give rein to passion.
4. *Ch'i liao huai i* 起了壞意 Conceived an evil purpose.
5. *Sui-ts'ong* 隨從 To comply with.
6. *Shi chong* 始終 From first to last.
7. *Chioh u-lien* 覺無臉 Was conscious of the fact that her character was gone.
8. *In hsiu ch'eng ch'eo* 因羞成仇 Became his enemy because of chagrin.
9. *Nieh$^1$-tsao$^4$* 捏造 To fabricate.
10. *Huang$^3$-ien$^2$* 謊言 Lies; a trumped-up story.
11. *Ren mien sheo hsin* 人面獸心 The face of a man, the heart of a beast.
12. *Ts'uen$^2$* 存 To conceal; to hide.
13. *Ch'ing hsin* 輕信 Readily believed.
14. *Tong ch'i* 動氣 Was moved with anger; to be angry.
15. *Hsia$^4$ chien$^1$* 下監 To put in prison.
16. *Hsing$^1$ shuai$^4$ puh$^1$ ih$^1$* 興衰不一 Flourish and decline with no uniformity.
17. *Chin$^4$-tsuh$^2$* 禁卒 A jailor.
18. *Ch'iu$^2$-fan$^4$* 囚犯 Prisoners.
19. *Ch'ai-ren* 差人 Yamên runner.
20. *Huang$^2$-kong$^1$* 皇宮 The palace.
21. *Chen$^1$* 斟 To pour out.
22. *Iu ih-huei* 有一回 On one occasion; once upon a time.
23. *Men men puh loh* 悶悶不樂 Dejected.

有[1]何妨呢、我給你們解解看看。管酒的說、我夢見有一棵葡萄樹、樹上有三個枝子、皇上的杯在我手中、我便把葡萄的汁[2]漿擠[3]在杯中、將杯奉[4]在皇上的手中。約瑟說、這三個枝子是三天、三日之內你還要回宮裏去、仍舊給皇上斟酒。做點心的聽得約瑟解的好、就說、我夢見我頭上頂[5]着三個白筐、儘上邊的有皇上吃的各樣好點心、忽然有雀鳥飛來吃了。約瑟說、這三個筐子也是三天、三日之內皇上要斬[6]你的頭、掛在樹上、雀鳥要飛來吃你身上的肉。過了三天、皇上過生日、果[7]然照[8]約瑟的話行、叫管酒的出監、仍上宮裏去斟酒、又把做點心的掛在樹上、有雀鳥來吃他的肉。管酒的走的那一天、約瑟託他把他的事在皇上面前提[9]一提、求他千[10]萬不要忘記、管酒的滿[11]口答應、說、這是在我、管[12]保錯不了、誰知他一進了宮、辦[13]理公事、偏把約瑟全忘了。可惜這飲[14]水不思源的人、是世上常有的、從[15]此以後、約

---

[1] *Iu ho fang ni.* 有何妨呢 What would be the harm in . . . ?

[2] *Chïh²-chiang¹* 汁漿 Juice; sap.

[3] *Chi³* 擠 To press; to squeeze.

[4] *Feng⁴* 奉 To present with both hands.

[5] *Ting-choh* 頂着 To carry on the head.

[6] *Chan³* 斬 To behead.

[7] *Ko³ ran²* 果然 Sure enough; certainly.

[8] *Chao . . . hsing* 照 . . . 行 To act in accordance with.

[9] *T'i ih t'i* 提一提 Bring to the notice of; to mention.

[10] *Ch'ien uan* 千萬 On no account.

[11] *Man k'eo tah-ing* 滿口答應 Was full of protestations that he would do so.

[12] *Kuan-pao* 管保 To assure; take my word for it.

[13] *Pan-li* 辦理 To transact.

[14] *In³ shui³ si¹ üen²* 飲水思源 To drink water and think of the fountain; to be mindful of the source of a benefit.

[15] *Ts'ong ts'i i-heo* 從此以後 Henceforward.

瑟還是在監裏[1]盡本分、[2]守規矩、[3]一天好似一天。那時皇宮裏的人都着了急、爲何着急呢、因皇上一夜做了兩個怪夢、叫宰相臣子解、也都解不了、使皇上心裏眞難受、忽然管酒的在皇上面前跪下、說我想起我的罪來、早兩年我在監裏、遇見一個會解夢的少年人、解的[4]恰對、一點也不差、皇上就趕緊差人去叫約瑟來、禁卒一聽這信、就喊剃頭的來給約瑟剃頭、又拿一大盆熱水來叫他[5]洗澡、因爲人身上髒本是見不得皇上、又拿出一件好褂子、一條好褲子、和一雙[6]朝鞋給他穿上、坐一乘大轎、四個人把他一直抬了去見皇上、眞是出了死地走到[8]一條活路上來了、好像[9]死而復活一樣。可見人待人、公道不公道、[10]自有天知道、到了時候善惡必要分清、[11]一點不偏、終久還是[12]善有善報、因爲上帝無所不在、無論是管酒的在監裏做夢、是皇上在皇宮裏做夢、也還是上帝做主了。不知道皇上做了甚麼夢、約瑟怎樣解、其中有何等大的[13]關係、看下課就可以曉得了、

---

1. *Chin pen-fen* 盡本分 To do one's duty.
2. *Sheo kuei-chü* 守規矩 To behave oneself properly.
3. *Ih t'ien hao sï ih t'ien* 一天好似一天 Better every day
4. *Ch'iah*$^4$*-tui*$^4$ 恰對 Exactly right.
5. *Hsi*$^3$*-tsao*$^3$ 洗澡 To bathe.
6. *Ch'ao*$^2$ *hsiai*$^2$ 朝鞋 Court boots; dress shoes.
7. *Ch'uh liao sï ti* 出了死地 To emerge from a place of death—from a position of misery.
8. *Ih t'iao hoh lu* 一條活路 A road of life—a path of prosperity.
9. *Sï rï fuh-hoh* 死而復活 Resurrection
10. *Tsï* 自 As a matter of course.
11. *Ih-tien puh p'ien* 一點不偏 Without the least partiality.
12. *Shan iu shan pao* 善有善報 To good there is a good recompense.
13. *Kuan*$^1$*-hsi*$^4$ 關係 Consequences.

## LESSON XXIX. 課九十二第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 留$^{2}$ | *liu* | To detain; to leave behind. |
| 軟$^{3}$ | *ruan* | Soft; flexible; weak. |
| 硬$^{4}$ | *ing / eng* | Hard; stiff; firm. |
| 坑$^{1}$ | *k'eng* | A pit. To entrap. |
| 積$^{1}$ | *ch / ts ih* | To amass; to store up. |
| 市$^{4}$ | *shï* | A market. |
| 轉$^{3}$ | *chuan* | To turn; to revolve. To pass on. |
| 吞$^{1}$ | *t' uen / en* | To swallow; to bolt. |
| 瘦$^{4}$ | *seo* | Lean; thin; emaciated. |
| 淹$^{1}$ | *ien* | To drown; to overflow. Submerged. |
| 透$^{3}$ | *t'eo* | To pass through; to penetrate. To understand. |
| 服$^{2}$ | *fuh* | To serve; to submit. Clothes. A dose of medicine. |
| 驗$^{4}$ | *ien* | To verify; to fulfil. To examine. |
| 吹$^{1}$ | *ch'ui* | To blow; to breathe. |
| 焦$^{1}$ | *ch / ts iao* | Scorched; burned. Vexed. |
| 清$^{1}$ 楚$^{3}$ | *ch'ing-ts'u* | Clear. |
| 肥$^{2}$ | *fei* | Fat; plump—of animals. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 緣$^{2}$ 故$^{4}$ | *üen-ku* | Reason; cause. |
| 地$^{1}$ 獄$^{4}$ | *ti ü / iuh* | Hell; a prison. |
| 指$^{3}$ 望$^{4}$ | *chï-uang* | To expect; to hope; hope. |
| 服$^{2}$ 事$^{4}$ | *fuh-sï* | To serve. |
| 牧$^{1}$ 師$^{1}$ | *muh-sï* | A pastor. |
| 謠$^{2}$ 言$^{2}$ | *iao-ien* | Unfounded stories. |
| 拉$^{1}$ 倒$^{3}$ | *la-tao* | To desist. To be all over with. |
| 戒$^{4}$ 指$^{3}$ | *kiai-chï* | A finger-ring. |
| 果$^{3}$ 然$^{2}$ | *ko-ran* | Assuredly; certainly. |
| 言$^{2}$ 語$^{3}$ | *ien-ü* | Words. To speak. |
| 應$^{4}$ 驗$^{4}$ | *ing-ien* | To fulfil; fulfilled. |
| 遇$^{4}$ 見$^{4}$ | *ü-chien* | To meet; to happen. |
| 穗$^{1}$ 子$^{3}$ | *sui-tsï* | An ear of grain. |
| 蘆$^{2}$ 葦$^{2}$ | *lu-uei* | Reeds. |
| 茂$^{4}$ 盛$^{4}$ | *m eo / ao -sheng* | Flourishing—as vegetation. |
| 壯$^{1}$ 實$^{2}$ | *chuang-shïh* | Vigorous; strong. |
| 將$^{1}$ 將$^{1}$ 的$^{1}$ | *chiang-chiang-tih* | Just the thing; just as . . . |

### Inference: Phrases used to express.

1. In deducing a conclusion from a line of argument, we may employ either a word or a phrase. Certain things being so, we infer certain conclusions. Words like 'therefore,' 'whence,' 'since,' etc., generally introduce these conclusions; or we may employ such phrases as, 'In consideration of,' 'This being so,' etc. Chinese colloquial usually prefers this latter style; the single words being more generally employed in books. The following gives some of the phrases in common use, which may be introduced by either *chœ* 這, or *na* 那—*chœ-iang-k'an-lai* 這樣看來; *chœ-iang shoh-lai* 這樣說來; *k'an-chœ-ko-iang-tsï* 看這個樣子; *e.g.*,

---

始終如一 *The same from beginning to end.*

Since this is so, the dog is not his; *chœ-iang-k'an-lai, keo puh shï t'a-tih* 這樣看來, 狗不是他的.

If this be the case we should all love God; *chœ-iang-shoh-lai, o-men tu kai-tang ai Shang-ti* 這樣說來, 我們都該當愛上帝.

Finally; in conclusion; to sum up; *tsong-rï-ien-chï* 總而言之.

Looked at from this point of view; *ts'ong* (or *ru*) *ts'ï k'an-lai* 從 (or 如) 此看來.

2. One peculiar Chinese construction, to which little more than allusion can here be made, is the stringing together of four characters to form a phrase. Such phrases are very common, and the student is advised to learn them and to use them freely. There are five kinds which we will notice in order:—

1. Repetition of *ih* 一.

Intercourse; coming and going; *ih lai ih uang* 一來一往.

Coming and going; *ih-lai ih-ch'ü* 一來一去.

2. The second character repeated with *tih* 的 at the end; such phrases are descriptive.

With earnest desire; *ien-pa-pa-tih* 眼巴巴的.

Perfectly white; *peh-seng-seng-tih* 白生生的.

3. The first and third, or second and fourth the same, or in correspondence.

Foolish; stupid; *hu-li-hu-t'u* 糊裏糊塗.

Well intentioned; *hao-sin hao-i* 好心好意.

4. The first and third opposites, or in correspondence.

Hypocritical; *k'eo-shï hsin-fei* 口是心非.

Early and late; *ch'ï tsao shui uan* 起早睡晚.

5. Numerical.

Differing in size; *ch'ih ta pah hsiao* 七大八小.

Neither the one thing nor the other; *puh san puh sï* 不三不四.

### Supplementary: Lessons XIV to XVII.

3. Other adverbial numerals in common use are:—

次$^4$ *ts'ï* The next in order. A time. A series.

陣$^4$ *chen* A file of soldiers. A battle. A time; a short space.

番$^1$ *fan* Foreign. A time; a turn.

Also 徧 *pien*; 遭 *tsao*; 場 *ch'ang*.

*Fah* 發 may be used with the following words which occur in these Lessons:—

To grow rich; to become wealthy; *fah ts'ai* 發財.

To become light; to shine; *fah liang* 發亮.

To become dim of sight; *fah hua* 發花.

To become vicious; to develop vicious tendencies; *fah huai* 發壞.

To be sad; melancholy; *fah men* 發悶.

To become weak; *fah ruan* 發軟.

To shew hardness ; to become stiff ; *fah ing* 發 硬.
To manifest ; *fah hsien* 發 現.
To become sour ; *fah suan* 發 酸.
To shew mercy ; *fah ts‘i-pei* 發 慈 悲.
To be proud ; arrogance ; *fah chiao-ao* 發 驕 傲. (L. 30.)
To shew stupidity ; to be stupid ; *fah hu-t‘u* 發 糊 塗.
To be stiff ; *fah pan* 發 板.
To shew authority ; to put on a semblance of anger ; *fah* 威' *uei* Severe ; stern ; 發 威.
Feverish ; *fah-shao* 發 燒.

*Ch‘u* 處 may be added to the following words :—

Greatness ; that which is important ; *ta-ch‘u* 大 處.
Smallness ; that which is unimportant ; *hsiao-ch‘u* 小 處.
Height ; preëminence ; *kao-ch‘u* 高 處.
Everywhere ; *tao-ch‘u* 到 處.
A meeting-place ; *chü-ch‘u* 聚 處.
Bitterness ; suffering ; *k‘u-ch‘u* 苦 處.
The extremity ; extremes ; *chih-ch‘u* 極 處.
An inn ; a low place ; *hsia-ch‘u* 下 處.
In the open ; publicly ; *ming-ch‘u* 明 處.
In secret ; in the dark ; *an-ch‘u* 暗 處.
In every place ; *koh-ch‘u* 各 處.

In addition to the characters already given, the following take 人 *ren* as a suffix :—

*Hai* 害 ; *ch‘iu* 求 ; *iong* 用 ; *pang-tsu* 幫 助 ; *kan-tong* 感 動 ; *fuh* 服 ; *lai* 賴 ; *p‘ai* 派 ; *ai* 愛.

## Lesson XV.

The word 界 *kiai* furnishes an interesting illustration of the way in which the Chinese language is being adapted to express foreign ideas. It is now employed to translate ‘world’ as applied to any special occupation or province, as of knowledge ; etc. ; a distinctive word immediately precedes it ; *e.g.*

The commercial world ; *shang-kiai* 商 界.
The official world ; *kuan-kiai* 官 界.
The world of learning ; *hsioh-kiai* 學 界.

## Lesson XVI.

Another word which forms the passive is 捱 *ai, iai.* To delay. Side by side. Near ; next. This is most commonly used in connection with suffering or anything undesirable ; *e.g.*,

To suffer from cold ; *ai leng sheo tong* 捱 冷 受 凍.
To be cursed and beaten ; *ai ma ai ta* 捱 罵 捱 打.

## Lesson XVII.

Other words to express lack of relation or interest are :—

任$^4$ *ren* To allow; to tolerate. An official position.

拘$^1$ *chü; kü* To grasp. To adhere to, as an opinion.

As you like; no matter; etc.; *ren-p‘ing* 任憑; *chï-kuan* 只管; *puh-chü* 不拘; *puh-kuan* 不管; *e.g.*,

Not matter who it is, he must act reasonably; *puh chü ho ren, iao chao li hsing sï* 不拘何人, 要照理行事.

Merely attend to matters of present interest; *hsien-chin chï kuan hsien-chin sï* 現今只管現今事.

Further meanings and uses of 當 *tang* are as follows :—

1. In the presence of; *e.g.*,

To confess his sin in the presence of all; *tang chong-ren mien-ch‘ien ren tsui* 當衆人面前認罪.

2. To bear; to endure; *e.g.*,

My punishment is greater than I can bear; *o-tih tsui t‘ai chong, tan-tang puh ch‘i* 我的罪太重, 擔當不起.

Unable to bear responsibility; unworthy — used in self-depreciation; *puh kan-tang* 不敢當.

I cannot bear such a heavy burden; *chœ-mo chong tih tan-tsï o tang puh ch‘i* 這麼重的擔子我當不起.

*Mien* 面 is also employed to denote social status; reputation; etc.; *e.g.*,

He has a great reputation—for managing affairs; *t‘a hen iu mien-tsï* 他很有面子.

Let him off for my sake; *k‘an o-tih poh mien rao-shu t‘a pa* 看我的薄面饒恕他罷.

Shameless; *mien-p‘i heo* 面皮厚.

---

NOTES.—*a*. In the North 葦子 *uei-tsï* is used for ‘reeds.’

*b*. *Chiao* 焦 is used as a superlative before some words; *e.g.*, Very dry; *chiao-kan* 焦乾. Curiously enough, in the West it is used before ‘wet,’ as, Very wet; *chiao shïh* 焦濕.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句雜

Evil reports circulate everywhere; *tao-ch‘u tsao iao-ien.*
The money was just enough; *ch‘ien chiang-chiang-tih keo liao.*
I do not accept this principle; *o puh fuh chœ-ko li.*
Without cause or reason; *u üen u ku.*
That child is impatient of restraint; *na-ko hai-tsï puh fuh kuan.*
Keep it here; *liu tsai chœ-li.*
If you are unwilling, there's an end of it; *puh üen-i chiu la-tao.*
You speak Mandarin very clearly; *ni shoh kuan-hua hen ch‘ing-ts‘u.*
He doesn't see through my meaning; *t‘a k‘an puh t‘eo o-tih i-sï.*
The wheat is overripe; *meh-tsï shai chiao-liao.*
It is not easy to be a pastor; *tang muh-sï puh iong-i.*
Hell is a place of suffering; *ti-iuh shï sheo k‘u tih ti-fang*

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第二十九課雜句

到處造謠言
錢將將的彀了
我不服這個理
無緣無故
那個孩子不服管
畱在這裏
不願意就拉倒
你說官話很清楚
他看不透我的意思
麥子曬焦了
當牧師不容易
地獄是受苦的地方

### NOTES.

又夢見一棵麥子、長了七個穗子、又[1]飽滿、又[2]肥美、隨後又長了七個穗子、很[3]淡薄、被東風吹[4]焦了、這些淡薄的穗子、吞了那七個肥美的穗子、我將這夢告訴衆宰相臣子、他們都不能解。約瑟說、兩個夢總[5]歸爲一、上帝[6]將要行的事已經[7]指示皇上知道了。七隻肥牛是七個[8]豐年、七個肥美的穗子也是七個豐年、那七隻瘦牛是七個荒年、七個淡薄的穗子也是七個荒年、埃及徧地必先有七個大豐年、以後必有七個大荒年、叫[9]人地兩苦、[10]甚至忘記了起先的豐年、皇上做的這兩個夢、其中有[11]定準的意思、必要應驗、所以[12]據我的愚見、皇上不如揀一個有聰明能辦事的官、派他在這七個豐年之中、走徧埃及[13]通國、在各府州縣[14]積收莊稼中[15]五分之一、積在倉裏、預備將要來的七個大荒年、這樣可以救一國人的命、皇上聽了[16]這一番話、說、解的

---

1. *Pao-man* 飽滿 Full.
2. *Fei-mei* 肥美 In good condition.
3. *Tan*$^4$ *poh*$^2$ 淡薄 Poor; indifferent.
4. *Chiao* 焦 Dried up by the wind.
5. *Kuei uei ih* 歸爲一 Both in the same category.
6. *Chiang-iao* 將要 About to; on the point of.
7. *Chï-shï* 指示 To point out; to indicate.
8. *Feng*$^1$ *nien*$^2$ 豐年 Plenteous years.
9. *Ren ti liang k'u* 人地兩苦 Both the land and men will suffer.
10. *Shen-chï* 甚至 So that. L. 30.
11. *Ting*$^4$ *chuen*$^3$ 定准 Certain; assured.
12. *Chü*$^4$ *o*$^3$*-tih*$^1$ *ü*$^2$ *chien*$^4$ 據我的愚見 In my humble opinion.
13. *T'ong*$^1$*-kueh*$^2$ 通國 The whole kingdom.
14. *Chih*$^1$*-sheo*$^1$ 積收 To store up.
15. *U fen chï i* 五分之一 One-fifth. In any fractional statement the number before *fen* 分 may be regarded as the denominator; the number following *chï* 之 as the numerator; as above 五分之一 or 1 *fen* [illegible] *fen*, or $\frac{1}{1} \times \frac{1}{5} = \frac{1}{5}$. Any fractional number can be expressed in this way.
16. *Chœ ih-fan hua* 這一番話 This speech.

好、又對臣子說、像這樣的聰明人、眞正難得、何不派他去管這些事呢、就轉過來對約瑟說、神既然賜你這聰明、我現今封[1]你做宰相、管本國的百姓。話一說完、就摘[2]下戒指戴在約瑟的指頭上、又給他換上一[3]套官衣、又把金鍊[4]子戴在他頸[5]項上、叫人跪下拜他、就派他管[6]理全地了。約瑟領了命出去、在各到各處趁[7]着七個豐年、收了無數的糧、積在各處的倉裏頭、眞比海沙[8]更多了。以後皇上越發看重他、叫他娶了一個大德的女[9]子爲妻、給他生了兩個兒子、叫他享多大的福氣、得多大的榮耀、要是和他先前在哥哥們和販子與武官夫人手裏所受的苦比起來、眞是有天[10]淵之別了、[11]轉禍爲福、地獄變了一個小天堂、使人可以知道上帝早晚總肯給服事他的人開[12]一條出路、不過先要試[13]煉他們的德[14]行、然後纔[15]成全他們今生來生的事。

---

1. *Feng*$^1$ 封 To appoint to office.
2. *Tseh*$^4$ 摘 To take off,—of a ring, hat or spectacles.
3. *Ih*$^1$ *t'ao*$^4$ *kuan*$^1$ *i*$^1$ 一套官衣 A complete outfit of official dress.
4. *Lien*$^4$ *tsi*$^3$ 鍊子 A chain.
5. *Ching*$^3$*-hsiang*$^4$ 頸項 The neck. In the North *poh*$^2$ *tsi*$^3$ 脖子 is used.
6. *Kuan-li* 管理 To rule; to superintend.
7. *Ch'en*$^1$*-choh*$^4$ 趁着 To avail of; to take advantage of.
8. *Sha*$^1$ 沙 Sand.
9. *Nü-tsi* 女子 A young woman.
10. *T'ien*$^1$ *üen*$^1$ *chi*$^1$ *pieh*$^2$ 天淵之別 The difference between heaven and the abyss.
11. *Chuan ho uei fuh* 轉禍爲福 Calamity changed into blessing.
12. *K'ai ih-t'iao ch'uh lu* 開一條出路 To open a way of escape.
13. *Shi*$^4$ *lien*$^4$ 試煉 To test; to put to proof.
14. *Teh*$^2$ *hsing*$^4$ 德行 Virtue.
15. *Ch'eng-ch'üen* 成全 To complete; to bring to perfection.

約瑟憑[1]良心辦事、不隨壞人的引誘、顯出一[2]片誠心、正是眞[3]金不怕火煉。過了那七個豐年、荒年就來到、旱的是天如銅、地如鐵、耕地無用、撒種不發、就是菜園、葡萄園、若離河邊遠些的、也都晒焦了、叫通國變成一片荒地。埃及四圍的國、也都是這樣、若[4]不是約瑟先把夢解的好、埃及國也要和這些國受一樣的大苦。頭兩三年還[5]罷了、有錢的還可以糴糧、但日後只得往埃及國去糴、因早已聽見有個能人把一國救活了。當時約瑟的老父親、和他的哥哥們還在猶太國、那裏也是乾[6]荒、他們過日子也很艱[7]難、只[8]因聽見在埃及那裏有糧可糴、他父親就叫他哥哥們備[9]驢、預備銀子、趕緊下去糴、免[10]得他們全家餓死、哥哥們就把家事安[11]排妥當、辭[12]別了老人家、動身往南方去了、也是從約瑟早年經過的路走。要知道他們在埃及國遭遇何事、怎照約瑟起先做的夢行、看下課就曉得了。

[1] *P'ing$^2$ liang$^2$-hsin$^1$* 憑良心 To act conscientiously.
[2] *Ih-p'ien ch'eng hsin* 一片誠心 A true or faithful heart.
[3] *Chen chin puh p'a ho lien* 眞金不怕火煉 Genuine metals are not afraid of being tested by fire.
[4] *Roh puh shï* 若不是 If it had not been that . . .
[5] *Huan pa liao* 還罷了 Fairly well ; passable.
[6] *Kan huang* 乾荒 Drought.
[7] *Chien$^1$-nan$^4$* 艱難 Difficult ; straits.
[8] *Chï$^4$ in$^1$* 只因 But.
[9] *Pei* 備 Here=To saddle an animal.
[10] *Mien-teh* 免得 To avoid ; lest.
[11] *An$^1$-p'ai$^2$* 安排 To arrange ; to set in order.
[12] *Ts'i$^2$-pieh$^2$* 辭別 To take leave of relatives or friends.

# LESSON XXX. 課十三第

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 損$^{3}$ | *suen* | To injure; to spoil. Injury. |
| 聚$^{4}$ | *chü*<br>*tsü* | To assemble; to collect. |
| 低$^{1}$ | *ti* | To lower. Low; beneath. |
| 猜$^{1}$ | *ts‘ai* | To guess; to surmise. |
| 誡$^{4}$ | *kiai*<br>*chieh* | To warn. A precept; a commandment. |
| 捎$^{1}$ | *shao* | To take. To carry. |
| 向$^{4}$ | *hsiang* | Towards; to or from; facing. |
| 偷$^{1}$ | *t‘eo* | To steal. Stealthily. |
| 改$^{3}$ | *kai* | To alter; to change. To repent. |
| 配$^{4}$ | *p‘ei* | Worthy. To match. |
| 排$^{2}$ | *p‘ai* | A line; a row. To dispose. |
| 賊$^{2}$ | *tseh*<br>*tsei* | A thief; a robber. A rebel. |
| 追$^{1}$ | *chui* | To pursue. To reflect upon. |
| 過$^{1}$ 犯$^{4}$ | *ko-fan* | Transgression; fault. |
| 至$^{1}$ 於$^{2}$ | *chï-ü* | As to; to come to. . . . |
| 寧$^{2}$ 可$^{3}$ | *ning-k‘o* | Rather. |
| 逼$^{1}$ 迫$^{4}$ | *pih-p‘eh* | To persecute; to harass. |
| 甚$^{4}$ 至$^{4}$ | *shen-chï* | Up to the point of; inasmuch. |
| 聚$^{4}$ 會$^{4}$ | *chü-huei* | To gather together; to assemble. |
| 辛$^{1}$ 苦$^{3}$ | *hsin-k‘u* | Tired; suffering; hardship. |
| 威$^{1}$ 武$^{3}$ | *uei-u* | Majestic; imposing. |
| 驕$^{1}$ 傲$^{4}$ | *chiao-ao* | Proud; haughty. |
| 親$^{1}$ 戚$^{4}$ | *ch‘in-ch‘ih* | Relatives not of the same surname. |
| 關$^{1}$ 係$^{4}$ | *kuan-hsi* | Consequences; responsibilities. |
| 體$^{3}$ 面$^{4}$ | *t‘i-mien* | Good-looking; respectable. |
| 回$^{2}$ 答$^{2}$ | *huei-tah* | To answer; to reply. |
| 詳$^{2}$ 細$^{4}$ | *ch‘iang-hsi* | In detail; minutely. |
| 良$^{2}$ 心$^{1}$ | *liang-hsin* | Conscience. |
| 如$^{2}$ 此$^{3}$ | *ru* *ts‘ï*<br>*ü* *ts‘ï* | Thus; so; like this. |
| 恭$^{1}$ 敬$^{4}$ | *kong-ching* | Respectful. To reverence. |
| 安$^{1}$ 排$^{2}$ | *an-p‘ai* | To arrange; to dispose. |
| 見$^{4}$ 證$^{4}$ | *chien-cheng* | To testify; testimony. |
| 十$^{1}$ 條$^{2}$ 誡$^{4}$ | *shïh-t‘iao-kiai* | The Ten Commandments. |
| 忘$^{2}$ 恩$^{1}$ 負$^{4}$ 義$^{4}$ | *uang-en-fu-i* | Ungrateful. |

### *Ning-k‘o* 寗 可 and its Correlatives.

**1.** Where in English we should say ‘It is better to die than to sin,’ Chinese would say ‘It is better to die and not to sin’—expressing ‘than’ by a negative, ‘not.’ *Ning-k‘o* 寗 可 or *k‘en* 肯 is the

---

從來好事必經多磨 *Never was a good work done without much trouble.*

equivalent of 'It is better to. . . .'; or 'Rather than . . .;' they precede one or other of the following expressions:—*puh* 不; *ie-puh* 也 不; *puh-k'o* 不 可; *puh-k'en* 不 肯; *e.g.*,

Rather die than steal; *ning-k'o sï puh tso tseh* 甯 可 死 不 做 賊·

Better to recompense kindness than to be unthankful for it; *ning k'o pao en puh k'o uang-en-fu-i* 甯 可 報 恩 不 可 忘 恩 負 義·

It is better to be cursed and beaten than to lie; *ning-k'o ai ma sheo ta, puh k'o sah-huang* 甯 可 挨 駡 受 打, 不 可 撒 謊·

Rather endure persecution than follow depraved courses; *ning-k'o sheo pih-p'eh puh k'o hsing hsie-lu* 甯 可 受 逼 迫 不 可 行 邪 路

### Sequence, as expressed by *shen-chï* 甚 至 and *chï-ü* 至 於.

2. *Shen-chï* 甚 至 is employed to denote logical sequence—matters have reached the point at which some results are to be manifested. *Chï-ü* 至 於 is used in a similar way; or as a prepositional phrase introducing a subject; *e.g.*,

His sickness is not unto death; *t'a-tih ping puh chï-ü sï* 他 的 病 不 至 於 死·

The two men quarrelled till they began to fight; *liang-ko ren ch'ao-nao, shen-chï ta ch'i chia lai* 兩 個 人 吵 鬧, 甚 至 打 起 架 來·

### Supplementary: Lessons XVIII to XX.

**3.** While 若 *roh* and 要 *iao* are the words most commonly used to express supposition, there are others which are constantly used in books and in the conversation of educated people. They furnish the same variety as such English words as 'supposing'; 'provided that'; 'in the event of;' etc., but context and usage must determine the translation:—

If; in the case of; granting; etc.; *t'ang* 倘; *t'ang-roh* 倘 若; *sheh-roh* 設 若, *chia-roh* 假 若·

*Tao* 倒 is often strengthened by the addition of *fan* 反, which in some districts precedes it, in others follows it. Another adversative particle in books and in a high style of talk is 乃$^3$ *nai.* But; if; namely. Joined to 是 *shï* it is often used as a correlative of 不 是 *puh-shï*; *e.g.*,

It is not the scholar, but the teacher that is bad; *puh shï hsioh-seng puh-hao, nai-shï hsien-seng puh-hao* 不 是 學 生 不 好, 乃 是 先 生 不 好·

Do not seek your own profit, but the profit of others; *fei ch'iu li chi, nai ch'iu li ren* 非 求 利 己, 乃 求 利 人·

In addition to 必 *pih*, the following words and combinations are employed to express 'necessity'·—

務$^4$ *u* To devote attention to. Duty; business. Must.
須$^1$ *hsü* Necessary; must.

Must; it is necessary to; etc.; 務必 *u-pih*; 務要 *u-iao*; 總 *tsong*; 總要 *tsong-iao*; 總得 *tsong-teh*; 必須 *pih-hsü*.

Men must practise goodness; *ren u-iao hsing-shan* 人務要行善.

He will surely return; *t‘a tsong-teh iao huei-lai* 他總得要囘來.

*Ch‘a* 差 is a word round which gather many expressions denoting approximation, such as ‘nearly’; ‘almost’; etc. The following list includes those most commonly in use:—

A little different; not quite the thing; *ch‘a ih-tien* 差一點.

Nearly right; almost the thing; *ch‘a-puh-to* or *ch‘a-puh-li* 差不多 or 差不離.

Quite beside the mark; Widely different; *ch‘a teh-to* 差得多 or *ch‘a teh-üen* 差得遠.

Just a little out; Not much beside the mark; *ch‘a, ie ch‘a puh-to* 差, 也差不多.

*Ch‘ioh* 卻 forms part of a few phrases which introduce something additional, generally in the way of protest, or taking exception to something already stated. In the North it is colloquially pronounced *k‘eh*, and some teachers write 可 *k‘o* for it, but it is probably 卻 *ch‘ioh* read as *k‘eh*; *e.g.*,

But there is something else . . . . ; *ch‘ioh iu ih-chien* 卻有一件.

## Lesson XIX.

Other phrases of similar import to 大概 *ta-kai*; 上下 *shang-hsia*; etc., are 大約 *ta-ioh*; 約有 *ioh-iu*; 光景 *kuang-ching*; 將近 *chiang-chin*; 前後 *ch‘ien-heo*; as,

About three years ago; *tsao san nien tih kuang-ching* 早三年的光景.

Nearly 6,000 people; *ioh iu luh ch‘ien ren* 約有六千人.

He is nearly fifty years old; *t‘a chiang-chin u-shïh sui* 他近五十歲.

## Lesson XX.

Two other interrogatives besides 豈 *ch‘i* are in constant use, viz., 焉 *ien* and 難道 *nan-tao*. *Ien* 焉 while used largely in books is not infrequent in colloquial. *Nan-tao* 難道 is more common in the North than in the South, and is frequently followed by 不成 *puh-ch‘eng*, which takes the place of 麽 *mo* or 呢 *ni*, used after 豈 *ch‘i*, and conveys the idea of ‘expostulation’ or ‘remonstrance’; *e.g.*,

How can such things be possible? *ien neng iu chœ iang tih sï ni?* 焉能有這樣的事呢.

If he should make a mistake in reading, can it be that it shall not be pointed out to him? *nan-tao t‘a nien ts‘o-liao chiu puh chï-chiao t‘a mo?* 難道他念錯了就不指敎他麽.

Sequence of events as well as of time is frequently shewn by repetition; *e.g.*,

Kill each one as he comes; *lai ih-ko shah ih-ko* 來一個殺一個.

Use sentences as you learn them; *hsioh ih-chü iong ih-chü* 學一句用一句.

Send the sheets away as they are printed; *in chi-chang fah chi chang* 印幾張發幾張.

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES. 句 雜

Tientsin is a place where many people gather together; *T'ien-chin shi ko ta chü-ch'u.*

The thief stole my watch; *na-ko tseh t'eo-liao o-tih piao.*

Ten in a row; *ih-p'ai shïh-ko.*

To injure others and benefit oneself; *suen ren li chi.*

This colour does not match; *chæ-ko puh p'ei* (or *tui*) *seh.*

He told the matter in detail; *t'a pa sï-ch'ing ch'iang-hsi shoh-liao ih-pien.*

I cannot guess your meaning; *o ts'ai puh choh ni-tih i-si.*

They met together every Sunday at 10 o'clock; *t'a-men mei-feng li-pai-t'ien. shïh tien chong chü-huei.*

The Ten Commandments were given by God; *shïh-t'iao-kiai shi Shang-ti ch'uen hsia lai tih.*

We should worship God with all reverence; *o-men kai kong-kong-ching-ching-tih pai Shang-ti.*

The Saviour is willing to forgive all our offences; *Chiu-chu üen-i shæ-mien o-men ih-ch'ieh tih ko-fan.*

***Translate:***—I spent a good deal of money and trouble over him, and in the end he spoke ill of me; was not this ungrateful? May I trouble you to take (捎) this letter to my home? He is a respectable person, and he has also grown up good-looking. A thief came last night and stole a pair of trousers and a coat; I got up and followed him, but did not overtake him. If a man acts conscientiously it is unavoidable that he will be persecuted. Don't speak in too low a voice, I can't hear what you say. Two men came as witnesses, but their witness did not agree. Everybody dislikes a person who exhibits pride; it is the same principle both in China and abroad. That child answered his father altogether too rudely. This is a matter that concerns you. This affair was arranged by one of his relatives. Sooner or later the Saviour will return, and all men must assemble before Him. He is loth that any should not be saved; therefore He exhorts men to repent, believe and trust in Him. Whenever a man repents and believes, he is saved. Should we not all repent and trust Him? God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him, might not perish but have eternal life.

Writing Exercise:—初 更 掉 但 既 改 服 帝 只 理 破 向.

## Miscellaneous Examples. 第三十課雜句

天津是個大聚處
那個賊,偷了我的表
一排十個
損人利己
這個不配(對)色
他把事情詳細說了一遍
我猜不着你的意思
他們每逢禮拜天十點鐘聚會
十條誡是上帝傳下來的
我們該恭恭敬敬的拜上帝
救主願意赦免我們一切的過犯

## NOTES.

## READING LESSON XXX. 輯要第三十課

## The Younger Brother IV.

### 見弟受驚

埃及國糴糧的章程是要凡外路來糴糧的、都上約瑟那裏去糴、所以哥哥們到了京城就去見他、一見就跪下給他磕[1]頭、隔了十幾年、那裏還認識他呢。他既是穿一身的官衣、就是他的親[2]母親、也認不到了、卻[3]有一樣就是約瑟認識他們、故意發威問他們是那裏來的、有弟兄幾個、父親還在不在、又說你們並不[4]係好人、他們回答說、有一個小兄弟留在家中、因爲父親不准帶來、約瑟說、這話是眞的、是假的、也未可知、我總要留下你們內中的一個人、其餘的可以回家去、把小兄弟帶來爲憑據、約瑟就吩咐人把他們的口袋裝滿了糧、再加上路上用的糧、又把原[5]銀仍放在口袋中、對哥哥們說、你們快去把小兄弟送來做見證、他們聽見這話、就良[6]心發現、彼此說、遭[7]罪了、這是我

---

1. *K'oh*$^1$ *t'eo*$^2$ 磕頭 To knock the head on the ground; the *kow-tow*.
2. *Ch'in mu-ch'in* 親母親 His own mother.
3. *Ch'ioh iu ih iang* 卻有一樣 But there was one thing.
4. *Puh*$^1$ *hsi*$^1$ 不係 Are not; do not belong to—a book phrase.
5. *Üen in* 原銀 The original money—the money they brought with them.
6. *Liang hsin fah hsien* 良心發現 To be convicted by one's own conscience.
7. *Tsao tsui liao* 遭罪了 We have met with retribution.

們苦待小兄弟的報應了。約瑟聽了這話都懂、他們卻不知道、因爲約瑟用了個[2]通事給他[3]繙話。他們到了家、就[4]卸下口袋、[5]不料各口袋中有一包銀子、叫他們[6]面面相觀、[7]嚇個不了。過了[8]一期、糧快吃盡了、他們還想再去糴、也要把小兄弟一路帶去、但父親一定不肯、叫他們只得少等些日子再說。後來老三說、我可以[9]做保罷、倘若我不把小兄弟送回來、這罪可以[10]歸在我身上。父親聽了這話便答應了、預備些[11]禮物、又把[12]雙分銀子放在口袋中、打發他們去了。他們進了衙門見約瑟、就向他下拜、說原銀子帶回來、小兄弟也一同帶來了。約瑟一見小兄弟就放了心、叫管家擺飯給他們吃、以後暗暗的吩咐管家把口袋裝滿了、又拿原銀子仍放在裏頭、又把他的銀杯放在小兄弟的口袋裏、打發他們去。[13]天一發亮他們就走出城去、離城沒

---

1. *K'u tai* 苦待 To treat harshly.
2. *T'ong-sï* 通事 An interpreter.
3. *Fan hua* 繙話 To translate.
4. *Hsie*⁴ 卸 To unload; to drop—as a burden.
5. *Puh liao* 不料 But lo and behold!
6. *Mien mien hsiang kuan* 面面相觀 Looked blankly at each other.
7. *Heh ko puh liao* 嚇個不了 Scared to no end.
8. *Ih-ch'i* 一期 A period; some time.
9. *Tso pao* 做保 To be surety; to undertake responsibility.
10. *Kuei tsai o shen sheng* 歸在我身上 Fall upon me.
11. *Li*³*-uh*⁴ 禮物 Presents; gifts.
12. *Shuang fen* 雙分 A double portion.
13. *T'ien ih liang* 天一亮 As soon as it was light.

有多遠、約瑟吩咐管家去[1]追趕他們、問他們、爲何偷主人的銀杯呢。管家照這話去追他們、[2]追上就說、你們是忘恩負義、大人待你們有厚恩、怎麼把他的銀杯偷了來呢。他們聽見這話、說[3]這是甚麼話、口袋在這裏、你[4]搜搜罷、在誰的口袋中搜出來、誰可以做你的[5]僕人。管家就從老大的口袋搜起、直搜到小弟的口袋爲止、果然搜出銀杯來了。大家便把口袋再裝好、叫牲口馱回城裏去。到了衙門看見約瑟等着他們、就都跪在地下不敢抬頭。約瑟說、你們這做的是甚麼惡事呢、這豈不是[6]以惡報善嗎、難道你們還瞞我不成、我待你們不錯、你們怎麼行事[7]不要良心呢、原先我不是說你們是壞人麼、我這話說的是、我要把小兄弟留在我這裏、至於你們要快回本家去罷。老三就近到約瑟面前說、大人[8]明見、只求准我說幾句話、要知道他說甚麼話、約瑟聽了以後把他的事安排如何、看下課就曉得了。

---

1. *Chui kan* 追 趕 To follow after ; to pursue.
2. *Chui shang* 追 上 To overtake.
3. *Chæ shï shen-mo hua* 這 是 甚 麼 話 What do you mean by such talk ?
4. *Seo*¹ 搜 To search.
5. *P'uh ren* 僕 人 A slave.
6. *I oh pao shan* 以 惡 報 善 To return good for evil.
7. *Puh iao liang hsin* 不 要 良 心 To dispense with conscience.
8. *Ming chien* 明 見 Of clear perception ; intelligent.

## VOCABULARY VI. 六第彙字

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 淡$^4$ | *tan* | Insipid. Weak, as liquid. Light, as colour. |
| 球$^2$ | *ch‘* / *k* } *iu*$^1$ | A ball; a sphere. |
| 討$^3$ | *t‘ao* | To beg; to demand. |
| 退$^4$ | *t‘ui* | To retire; to withdraw. |
| 考$^3$ | *k‘ao* | To examine; to test. |
| 醉$^4$ | *tsui* | Drunk; intoxicated. |
| 咬$^3$ | *iao* | To bite; to gnaw. |
| 伸$^1$ | *shen* | To stretch out. To redress. |
| 搬$^1$ | *pan* | To remove; to transport. |
| 寄$^4$ | *ch* / *k* } *i* | To send. To lodge at. |
| 賠$^2$ | *p‘ei* | To make good; to indemnify. |
| 袋$^4$ | *tai* | A bag; a pocket; a sack. |
| 卸$^4$ | *hs* / *s* } *ie* | To unload; to get rid of. |
| 臨$^2$ | *lin* | To descend. Near to; on the point of. |
| 爭$^1$ | *ts* / *ch* } *eng* | To wrangle; to strive. |
| 搜$^1$ | *seo* | To search for. |
| 釅$^4$ | *ien* | Strong, of liquids. |
| 舌$^2$ 頭$^2$ | *sheh-t‘eo*$^1$ | The tongue. |
| 天$^1$ 分$^4$ | *t‘ien-fen* | Natural endowments. |
| 鼻$^4$ 子$^3$ | *pi-tsï*$^1$ | The nose. |
| 伺$^4$ 候$^4$ | *ts‘ï-heo* | To wait upon; to serve. |
| 失$^1$ 火$^3$ | *shïh-ho* | To catch fire. |
| 手$^3$ 藝$^4$ | *sheo-i* | A craft; an art. Skill in doing. |
| 接$^1$ 待$^4$ | *chieh-tai* | To receive; to welcome. |
| 棺$^1$ 材$^2$ | *kuan-ts‘ai*$^{23}$ | A coffin. |
| 不$^1$ 料$^4$ | *puh-liao* | Unexpectedly. |
| 趕$^3$ 集$^2$ | *kan-chih* | To go to market. |
| 並$^4$ 且$^3$ | *ping-ch‘ie* | And; also. |
| 因$^1$ 此$^3$ | *in-ts‘ï* | On this account. |
| 定$^1$ 錢$^2$ | *ting-ch‘ien* | Earnest money. |
| 太$^1$ 平$^2$ | *t‘ai-p‘ing* | Peaceful. |
| 強$^2$ 盜$^4$ | *ch‘iang-tao* | A robber. |
| 肚$^3$ 子$^3$ | *tu-tsï*$^1$ | The belly. |
| 隣$^2$ 居$^1$ | *lin-chü*$^1$ | A neighbour. |
| 厭$^4$ 煩$^2$ | *ien-fan* | To dislike; to loathe. |
| 智$^4$ 識$^4$ | *chï-shïh* | Knowledge. |
| 章$^1$ 程$^2$ | *chang-ch‘eng* | A plan; procedure. |
| 櫃$^4$ 子$^3$ | *kuei-tsï*$^1$ | A cupboard; a press. |
| 結$^2$ 實$^2$ | *chieh-shïh* | Strong; tough. |
| 蓆$^2$ 子$^3$ | *hsih-tsï*$^{49,45}$ | A mat; matting. |
| 擺$^3$ 弄$^4$ | *pai-long* | To do; to manage. |
| 忍$^3$ 耐$^4$ | *ren-nai* | Patience. To forbear. |
| 磕$^1$ 頭$^2$ | *k‘oh-t‘eo* | The ceremony of the *kotow*; "many thanks." |
| 通$^1$ 事$^4$ | *t‘ong-sï*$^1$ | An interpreter. |
| 招$^1$ 牌$^2$ | *chao-p‘ai*$^1$ | A signboard. |
| 掌$^3$ 櫃$^4$ 的$^1$ | *chang-kuei-tih*$^1$ | Proprietor; manager; headman. |

NOTES.—*a*. In some districts *kan-ch‘ang* 趕場 takes the place of *kan-chih* 趕集.

## READING LESSON XXXa. 第三十課

### The Younger Brother V

老三說、[1]小的[2]初次來時、大人就問、你們有父親、有弟兄沒有、小的說、有老父親還在、小兄弟常在他身旁、離不開、大人就吩咐把小兄弟一同帶來、除非同來不得見大人的面。我們回到家中就將這話告訴老父親、他卻不准小兄弟來、說他母親早死了、他[3]胞兄也被野獸撕碎了、只還[4]撇下他一個人、倘若他再遭了害、我就必然[5]悲悲慘慘的下[6]陰間去了、[7]死也不肯叫他去、但以後大家[8]被饑荒所逼、無法[9]度日、只得[10]商妥[11]讓他和我們一同下來、現今他若不跟我們回去、父親的一條老命算送了、他要[12]悲悲傷傷的下陰間去、就是小的、既然做保、不但無臉見父親、還要[13]永遠擔罪、因此求大人[14]開

---

1. *Hsiao tih* 小的 'The small one'—a depreciatory term used in addressing superiors.
2. *Ts'u ts'i* 初次 On the first occasion.
3. *Pao$^1$ hsiong$^4$* 胞兄 Brother by the same mother.
4. *P'ieh$^1$-hsia$^4$* 撇下 To leave; to forsake.
5. *Pei$^1$ pei$^1$ ts'an$^3$ ts'an$^3$ tih$^1$* 悲悲慘慘的 Mournfully.
6. *In$^1$-chien$^1$* 陰間 The nether world; the world of darkness.
7. *Sï ie puh k'en chiao t'a ch'ü* 死也不肯叫他去 He would die before he would let him go.
8. *Pei$^4$ chi$^1$-huang$^1$ so$^3$ pih$^1$* 被饑荒所逼 Were compelled by the famine
9. *Tu$^4$ rih$^4$* 度日 To pass the days; to live.
10. *Shang t'o* 商妥 To come to a satisfactory understanding.
11. *Rang$^4$* 讓 To suffer; to allow.
12. *Pei pei shang shang tih* 悲悲傷傷的 Grieved in spirit.
13. *Iong-üen tan tsui* 永遠擔罪 Bear the blame for ever.
14. *K'ai en* 開恩 To shew favour; to be gracious.

恩、[1]給小的點薄面子、放他與我們同回家去、我們總[2]不忘記大人的好處、並且也要給大人[3]傳名。老三把這一番話說完、眞叫約瑟[4]動心、就吩咐差人都退去、對哥哥們說、我就是約瑟、你們的兄弟、你們還不認識我麼。哥哥們聽見這話、便[5]嚇掉了魂、臉上發紅、[6]渾身[7]發抖、怕的是約瑟要立時[8]報早年的仇、不料約瑟倒說、[9]謀事在人成事在天、起先我到埃及來、是上帝打發我來的、要救活這一國的人、你們快回去罷、告訴老父親說、約瑟還在、並且在埃及做宰相、請快來一同享福。話一說完、就[10]抱着哥哥們的頸項、大家都哭了一場、隨後送他們銀子、糧食、和幾套好衣裳、還[11]套上了幾輛車、叫他們坐車回去、又另外預備些[12]厚禮、叫驢子一馱一馱的馱給老父親、又[13]囑咐哥哥們一句話、說路上不可[14]爭鬧、就打發他們走了。到了家、父親看見禮物、又看見車馬、聽了他們的[15]回報、就

---

[1] *Chih hsiao-tih tien poh mien tsi* 給小的點薄面子 Suffer me not to be put to shame.

[2] *Puh uang-chi . . . hao-ch'u* 不忘記 . . . 好處 We will not forget the benefits—conferred by you.

[3] *Ch'uan ming* 傳名 To spread abroad the fame of.

[4] *Tong hsin* 動心 To be moved.

[5] *Heh tiao liao huen* 嚇掉了魂 Scared out of their wits.

[6] *Huen$^2$ shen$^1$* 渾身 The whole body.

[7] *Fah$^3$ teo$^3$* 發抖 To tremble.

[8] *Pao$^4$ . . . ch'eo$^2$* 報 . . . 仇 To avenge.

[9] *Meo$^2$ si tsai ren, ch'eng si tsai t'ien* 謀事在人，成事在天 Man proposes, Heaven disposes.

[10] *Pao$^3$* 抱 To embrace.

[11] *T'ao$^4$* 套 To harness.

[12] *Heo li* 厚禮 A substantial present.

[13] *Chuh$^3$-fu$^4$* 囑咐 To charge.

[14] *Tseng$^1$-nao$^4$* 爭鬧 To quarrel.

[15] *Huei pao* 回報 'Return message'—report.

一面喜歡、一面希奇、說、罷了罷了、約瑟還在、這眞是天[1]上掉下來的福氣、是意[2]外的好處。以後他一家的人、連牛、羊、牲口、小孩子、和所有的傢伙、一齊都向埃及國搬運、約瑟也坐車出到境[3]界、來迎[4]接、見了父親行[5]禮、父親看見兒子、兩下喜的是鼻[6]酸淚下、又哭又笑、父親說、感謝上帝莫[7]大的恩典、使我再見你的面、如今我死也甘心。後來蒙皇上的大恩、派他們都住在多有青[8]草的縣[9]分之內、呌他們在那裏可以放羊、使他們男女老少、都享太平的福。這以上的事、說的很略、因爲話長紙短、若要知詳細、請看舊約書頭一卷[10]、從第三十七章起、到第五十章爲止。卻有一樣、就是世事據人看、雖是好像一[11]盤棋、或是好像一[12]團麻、誰也摸不着頭[13]緒、到底還是上帝做主、半[14]點不由人、因上帝是無所不知、未來的事也沒有不知道的、早已爲信服他的人把一切的事安排妥當、呌凡事與愛他的人有益、人所論不定的

---

1. *T'ien shang tiao hsia lai tih* 天上掉下來的 Unexpected.
2. *I uai* 意外 Beyond thought.
3. *Ching$^4$-kiai$^4$* 境界 The boundary; the border
4. *Ing$^2$-chieh$^1$* 迎接 To welcome; to meet.
5. *Hsing li* 行禮 Saluted; observed the appropriate ceremonies.
6. *Pi$^4$ suan$^1$ lui$^4$ hsia$^4$* 鼻酸淚下 Snivelled and wept.
7. *Moh ta tih en-tien* 莫大的恩典 Exceeding great grace.
8. *Ch'ing$^1$ ts'ao$^3$* 青草 Green grass; pasture.
9. *Hsien-fen* 縣分 A District.
10. *Chüen$^4$* 卷 A book; a document.
11. *Ih$^1$ p'an$^2$ ch'i$^2$* 一盤棋 A game of chess.
12. *Ih$^1$ t'uan$^2$ ma$^2$* 一團麻 A ball of hemp.
13. *T'eo$^2$-hsü$^4$* 頭緒 A clue.
14. *Pan tien puh iu$^2$ ren* 半點不由人 Nothing whatever is left to man.

禍福、都在他手中、正像父母在孩子還小、早爲他們打算、叫他們長大成人、得享雙[1]親早先預備的好處。這樣看來、人因信靠救主得稱爲天父的兒女、就得全能的大神爲父、他們一生一世的事、都蒙他爲他們辦的一點不差、使他們行完了今生的路[2]程、就可以得到那[3]無災無病的美地、享那享不盡的永福、這豈不是極好麽。

---

1. *Shuang ch'in* 雙親 Parents.
2. *Lu*$^4$ *ch'eng*$^2$ 路程 Journey; road.
3. *U tsai u ping* 無災無病; Free from calamity and sickness.

## REVIEW: LESSONS XXVI-XXX. 六第課考

1. Give three sentences to illustrate the use of 何.

Shew in two sentences how 偏 differs from 特.

Write two sentences containing 凡 and 的 in correlation.

Translate 他多少認識幾個德國字. I have long wished to see you. My unworthy name is 晚成. I am a native of America.

Give two uses of 舍 and 令.

What are 天干 and 地支? Explain 屬甚麽的.

Shew two uses of 肯 in as many sentences.

Write two sentences illustrating two uses of 家.

State the difference between 太 and 忒? 得很 and 得 (or 的) 荒?

Translate 成色; 本洋; 賒賬; 扣頭.

Give terms used in carrying accounts to five places of decimals.

Translate Reading Lesson XXVI.

Illustrate three uses of 纔.

Give four words used for 'building.'

Shew use of 住 as an auxiliary with four different verbs.

Write six terms connected with newspapers.

Define 總而言之 and shew how it is used in a sentence.

Give four adverbial numerals; three expressions containing 發; and four containing 處.

Illustrate the use of 界, 挨, 任, 拘; and shew three different uses of 當 in as many sentences.

How are 寧可, 甚至, and 至於 used?

Give two sentences containing 差 and 卻.

Translate Reading Lesson XXXa.

2. Give sound, tone and meaning to the following characters :—

持 島 矮 擔 舍 違 偏 牢 講 撕 罔 碎 仇 派 指 積 肥 驗
透 焦 改 配 追 損 捐 捎 搜 瘦 賠 倍.

3. Write the following in Chinese character :—These two books are not very heavy. Put this food here for them to eat ; it is nearly enough for three people. This is much larger than that ; I knew that as soon as I looked at it. You do as I tell you, and it will be just right. It is easy to write, but not easy to talk. His mother came back last year on the 3rd of the 4th month. When did he bring these two newspapers ? I do not know ; go and ask him. I told him to go three times, but he was unwilling to do so. Since this place is bad, why not go to a higher place ? Speak a little slower and I shall understand. They all walked two stages, and could walk no farther ; so they stayed in the house of Mr. 萬. They all scattered—some went to the east, others to the west. This ten-cent piece is only half as heavy as that twenty-cent piece. The man who sells tea is an unreasonable fellow ; he broke my brother's head open. His friends are many, but he has not much money. This was made to order. It has fallen to the bottom ; go and fetch it for me. It is unimportant whether you do it or not. Men have sin, but God has grace. Alter this for me ; it is too light. The man who sits at the door opposite is like one of the ancients ; go across and invite him to come over here. It is easy to understand the meaning of this book, but difficult to act according to what it says. All in good time ; ask your teacher to explain it to you a sentence at a time, and then you will understand all kinds of expressions.

## ADDITIONAL WORDS FOR EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION.

The numbers refer to List of Numerary Adjuncts.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ability, | *neng-kan* | 能$^{2}$幹$^{4}$ |
| Abuse; destroy, | *tsao-t'ah* | 蹧$^{1}$蹋$^{4}$ |
| Acclimatized, | *fuh-shui-t'u* | 服$^{2}$水$^{3}$土$^{3}$ |
| Accompany, | *p'ei* | 陪$^{2}$ |
| Ague, | *p'i-han* | 脾$^{2}$寒$^{2}$ |
| All the world, | *uan-kueh-chiu-cheo* | 萬$^{4}$國$^{2}$九$^{3}$州$^{1}$ |
| Alter, | *keng-kai* | 更$^{1}$改$^{3}$ |
| Answer back, to, | *huan-k'eo* | 還$^{2}$口$^{3}$ |
| Ant, | *ma-i*$^{1}$ | 螞$^{3}$蟻$^{2}$ |
| Antecedents, | *lai-lih* | 來$^{2}$歷$^{4}$ |
| Anxious about, to be, | *ts'ao-hsin* | 操$^{1}$心$^{1}$ |
| Apologize to, | *p'ei-li; p'ei puh-shï* | 賠$^{2}$禮$^{3}$, 賠$^{2}$不$^{1}$是$^{4}$ |
| Apples, | *p'ing-ko* | 蘋$^{2}$果$^{3}$ |
| Apprentice, an, | *t'u-ti* | 徒$^{2}$弟$^{4}$ |
| Arm, | *pang-tsï*$^{1}$; *keh-poh* | 膀$^{3}$子$^{3}$, 胳 膊 |
| Arrowroot, | *eo-fen* | 藕$^{3}$粉$^{3}$ |
| Assistant; employé, | *ho-chi* | 夥$^{3}$計$^{4}$ |
| Attention, to pay, | *liu-i* | 留$^{2}$意$^{4}$ |
| Axe, | *fu-tsï*$^{8}$ | 斧$^{3}$子$^{3}$ |
| Bag, | *k'eo-tai* | 口$^{3}$袋$^{4}$ |
| Bake; roast, | *k'ao* | 烤$^{3}$ |
| Balustrade; trimming, | *lan-kan* | 欄$^{2}$杆$^{1}$ |
| Bamboo-worker, | *mieh-chiang*$^{1}$ | 篾$^{4}$匠$^{4}$ |
| Bannermen, Tartars, | *ch'i-ren* | 旗$^{2}$人$^{2}$ |
| Bar across a door, | *shuan* | 閂$^{1}$ |
| Barometer, | *feng-ü-piao*$^{1}$ | 風$^{1}$雨$^{3}$表$^{3}$ |
| Bath-tub, | *hsi-tsao-p'en*$^{1}$ | 洗$^{3}$澡$^{3}$盆$^{2}$ |
| Bee, | *mih-feng-tsï*$^{1}$ | 蜜$^{4}$蜂$^{1}$子$^{3}$ |
| Beggar, a, | *hua-tsï* | 花$^{1}$子$^{3}$ |
| Behind the back; privately, | *pei-heo* | 背$^{4}$後$^{4}$ |
| Bell, a small, | *ling-tang* | 鈴$^{2}$鐺$^{1}$ |
| Bellows, | *feng-hsiang* | 風$^{1}$箱$^{1}$ |
| Blame, to, | *tseh-pei* | 責$^{2}$備$^{4}$ |
| Blow, to, | *ch'ui* | 吹$^{1}$ |
| Blow, (of wind), | *kuah-feng* | 颳$^{1}$風$^{1}$ |
| Blood; circulation of blood, | *hsüeh-meh* | 血$^{4}$脉$^{4}$ |
| Boastful manner, | *ta mo ta iang* | 大$^{4}$模$^{2}$大$^{4}$樣$^{4}$ |
| Book-case, | *shu-chia-tsï*$^{1}$ | 書$^{1}$架$^{4}$子$^{3}$ |
| Brassfinisher, | *t'ong-chiang*$^{1}$ | 銅$^{2}$匠$^{4}$ |
| Breast, | *hsiong-k'eo*$^{1}$ | 胸$^{1}$口$^{3}$ |
| Bricklayer, | *ua-chiang*$^{1}$ | 瓦$^{3}$匠$^{4}$ |
| Broom, | *sao-cheo*$^{8}$ | 掃$^{3}$箒$^{3}$ |
| Brush, | *shuah-tsï*$^{8}$ | 刷$^{1}$子$^{3}$ |
| Brush, small, used to wash dishes, | *shua-cheo*; *ch'ui-cheo* | 刷$^{1}$箒$^{3}$, 炊$^{1}$箒$^{3}$ |
| Buddhism, | *fuh-chiao* | 佛$^{2}$敎$^{4}$ |
| Bucket, | *t'ong* | 桶$^{3}$ |
| Buffalo, | *shui-niu*$^{14}$ | 水$^{3}$牛$^{2}$ |
| Bugs, | *ch'eo-ch'ong* | 臭$^{4}$蟲$^{2}$ |
| Burial; funeral, | *sang-sï* | 喪$^{1}$事$^{4}$ |
| Burst, to; to fly in pieces, | *chah* | 炸$^{4}$ |
| But I'm afraid . . . | *chï-p'a* | 只$^{4}$怕$^{4}$ |
| Butterfly, | *hu-tieh* | 蝴$^{2}$蝶$^{4}$ |
| Call upon, | *pai-uang* | 拜$^{4}$望$^{4}$ |
| Candle, | *lah-chuh*$^{9}$ | 臘$^{4}$燭$^{2}$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Careful, | *tsï-hsi* | 仔$^3$細$^4$ |
| Carry on the shoulder, | *k‘ang* | 扛$^2$ |
| Cash-strings, | *ch‘ien-ch‘uan-tsï*$^{21}$ | 錢$^2$串$^4$子$^3$ |
| Cat, | *mao*$^1$ | 猫$^2$ |
| Caterpillar, | *mao-ch‘ong*$^1$ | 毛$^2$蟲$^2$ |
| Cemetery, | *ing-ti* | 塋$^2$地$^4$ |
| Centipedes, | *u-kong*$^1$ | 蜈$^2$蚣$^1$ |
| Certain, | *tih-ch‘ioh* | 的$^4$確$^4$ |
| Chance; luck, | *üin-ch‘i* | 運$^4$氣$^4$ |
| Character, | *p‘in-hsing* | 品$^3$行$^4$ |
| Cheat, | *ch‘i-fu* | 欺$^1$負$^4$ |
| Chess, to play, | *hsia-ch‘i* | 下$^4$棋$^2$ |
| Chinese, as distinguished from Tartars, | *han-ren* | 漢$^4$人$^2$ |
| Chisel, | *tsoh-tsï*$^8$ | 鑿$^4$子$^3$ |
| Cholera, | *hoh-luan ping*;<br>*chiao-ch‘ang sha* | 霍$^4$亂$^4$病$^4$,<br>絞$^1$腸$^2$痧$^1$ |
| Chopsticks, | *k‘uai-tsï*$^{9,21}$ | 筷$^4$子$^3$ |
| Climate, | *shui-t‘u* | 水$^3$土$^3$ |
| Cook, a, | *ta-sï-fu* | 大$^4$師$^1$傅$^4$ |
| Cold, to take, | *shang-feng* | 傷$^1$風$^1$ |
| Comfort, to, | *an-uei* | 安$^1$慰$^4$ |
| Comfortable, | *shuang-k‘uai*;<br>*shu-fuh* | 爽$^3$快$^4$,<br>舒$^1$服$^4$ |
| Commit to, to, | *chiao-fu* | 交$^1$付$^4$ |
| Compare, to, | *pi-chiao* | 比$^3$較$^3$ |
| Compel; constrain, to, | *mien-ch‘iang* | 勉$^3$强$^3$ |
| Complete, | *uan-ch‘üen* | 完$^2$全$^2$ |
| Confusion, all in, | *luan ch‘ih pah-tsao* | 亂$^4$七$^1$八$^1$蹧$^1$ |
| Consider, to, | *sï-hsiang* | 思$^1$想$^3$ |
| Cool; cold, | *liang* | 涼$^2$ |
| Copy, to make a clean, | *t‘eng-ch‘ing* | 謄$^2$清$^1$ |
| Cotton-wadding, | *mien-hua* | 綿$^2$花$^1$ |
| Cough, to, | *k‘eh-so* | 咳$^2$嗽$^4$ |
| Countenance; looks, | *mien-mao* | 面$^4$貌$^4$ |
| Courtyard, a, | *t‘ien-ching* | 天$^1$井$^3$ |
| Crawl, to, | *p‘u* | 爬$^2$ |
| Crosswise; aslant, | *huen; heng* | 橫$^2$ |
| Crow, a, | *lao-ia*$^1$ | 老$^3$鴉$^1$ |
| Cruel, | *ts‘an-ren* | 殘$^2$忍$^3$ |
| Cucumber, | *huang-kua*$^{1,14}$ | 黃$^2$瓜$^1$ |
| Cup, | *pei-tsï*$^1$ | 杯$^1$子$^3$ |
| Cupboard, | *kuei-tsï*$^{1,23}$ | 櫃$^4$子$^3$ |
| Curtains, a set of, | *ih-ch‘uang-chang-tsï* | 一$^1$牀$^1$帳$^1$子$^3$ |
| Customer, a, | *chu-ku* | 主$^3$顧$^4$ |
| Cover, a, | *kai-tsï*$^1$ | 蓋$^4$子$^3$ |
| Coverlet, | *pei-o*$^{45}$ | 被$^4$窩$^1$ |
| Dangerous, | *uei-hsien* | 危$^2$險$^3$ |
| Dash against, to; to steep, | *ch‘ong* | 冲$^1$ |
| Daylight, | *t‘ien-liang* | 天$^1$亮$^4$ |
| Debate; discuss, | *pien-luen* | 辯$^4$論$^4$ |
| Debt, to contract hopeless, | *la-chi-huang* | 拉$^1$飢$^1$荒$^1$ |
| Decay, | *shuai-pai* | 衰$^1$敗$^4$ |
| Deceive, to, | *hong-p‘ien* | 哄$^3$騙$^4$ |
| Defame, to, | *huei-pang* | 毀$^3$謗$^4$ |
| Delay, | *tan-koh* | 躭$^1$擱$^1$ |
| Determination; will, | *chï-ch‘i* | 志$^4$氣$^4$ |
| Dew, | *lu-shui* | 露$^4$水$^3$ |
| Different, | *liang-iang*;<br>*puh-t‘ong* | 兩$^3$樣$^4$,<br>不$^1$同$^2$ |
| Diligent, | *ch‘in-chin* | 勤$^2$謹$^3$ |
| Dining room, | *ch‘ih-fan-t‘ang* | 吃$^1$飯$^4$堂$^2$ |
| Disagreeable, | *t‘ao-ien* | 討$^3$厭$^4$ |
| Disheartened, | *huei-hsin* | 灰$^1$心$^1$ |
| Disposition; temperament, | *p‘i-ch‘i* | 脾$^2$氣$^4$ |
| Dispute, to, | *pieh tsï-ien* | 別$^2$字$^4$眼$^3$ |
| Distinguish, | *fen-pieh* | 分$^1$別$^2$ |
| Divine, to, | *chan-kua* | 占$^1$卦$^4$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Divulge, | *tsoh-sheng* | 作$^1$聲$^1$ |
| Doze, to, | *ta-tuen* | 打$^3$盹$^3$ |
| Draft, rough, | *ts‘ao-kao* | 草$^3$稿$^3$ |
| Drain, | *shui-keo*$^1$ | 水$^3$溝$^1$ |
| Drawer, | *ch‘eo-t‘i*$^1$ | 抽$^1$屜$^4$ |
| Drill, to, | *ts‘ao-ien* | 操$^1$演$^3$ |
| Drunk, to get, | *hoh-tsui* | 喝$^1$醉$^3$ |
| Duck, a, | *iah-tsï*$^9$ | 鴨$^1$子$^3$ |
| Duster, | *mah-pu*$^2$ | 抹$^3$布$^4$ |
| Dyer, | *ran-chiang*$^1$ | 染$^3$匠$^4$ |
| Eloquence, | *k‘eo-ts‘ai* | 口$^3$才$^2$ |
| Employ, to, | *shï-huan* | 使$^3$喚$^4$ |
| Enemy, an, | *üen-chia* | 寃$^1$家$^1$ |
| Enter a religion, | *ruh-chiao* | 入$^4$敎$^4$ |
| Escape from, | *to-pi* | 躲$^3$避$^4$ |
| Estimate, to, | *ku* | 估$^1$ |
| Even; uniform, | *chüin-üin* | 均$^1$勻$^2$ |
| Example, an, | *pang-iang* | 榜$^3$樣$^4$ |
| Exert strength, to, | *ch‘uh-lih* | 出$^1$力$^4$ |
| Extort, to, | *leh-soh* | 勒$^1$索$^1$ |
| Eyebrows, | *mei-mao* | 眉$^2$毛$^2$ |
| Face, to lose, | *tiu-lien* | 丟$^1$臉$^3$ |
| Fair; just, | *kong-p‘ing* | 公$^1$平$^2$ |
| Faithful; loyal, | *chong; chong-hsin* | 忠$^1$, 忠$^1$心$^1$ |
| Fame, | *ming-sheng* | 名$^2$聲$^1$ |
| Family, one's own, | *pen-chia* | 本$^3$家$^1$ |
| Father's elder brother, | *peh-peh*$^1$ | 伯$^4$伯$^4$ |
| Father-in-law, | *chang-ren* | 丈$^4$人$^2$ |
| Father's younger brother, | *shuh-shuh*$^1$ | 叔$^2$叔$^2$ |
| Fault; offence, | *ko-ts‘o* | 過$^4$錯$^4$ |
| Favour, to shew, | *k‘ai-en* | 開$^1$恩$^1$ |
| Fierce, | *hsiong-meng* | 兇$^1$猛$^3$ |
| Fight, to, | *tseng-teo* | 爭$^1$鬥$^4$ |
| Fill up, to, | *t‘ien* | 填$^2$ |
| Find fault with; publish shortcomings, | *chieh-tuan* | 揭$^1$短$^3$ |
| Finished; complete, | *ch‘eng-kong* | 成$^2$功$^1$ |
| Fir tree, | *song-shu*$^{21}$ | 松$^1$樹$^4$ |
| Firing, | *ch‘ai-ho* | 柴$^2$火$^3$ |
| Firm; stable, | *chien-ku* | 堅$^1$固$^4$ |
| Flatter, to, | *ch‘an-mei* | 諂$^3$媚$^4$ |
| Flea, | *keh-tsao*$^1$ | 虼$^2$蚤$^4$ |
| Floor-boards, | *ti-pan*$^2$ | 地$^4$板$^3$ |
| Flour, | *huei-mien* | 灰$^1$麵$^4$ |
| Flow, to, | *t‘ang* | 淌$^4$ |
| Fly, a, | *ts‘ang-ing*$^1$ | 蒼$^1$蠅$^1$ |
| Follow, to, | *ken-sui* | 跟$^1$隨$^2$ |
| Fork, a, | *ch‘a-tsï*$^3$ | 叉$^1$子$^3$ |
| Fortune; wealth, | *chia-tang;*<br>*chia-sï* | 家$^1$當$^4$,<br>家$^1$私$^1$ |
| Fortunes; to tell, | *suan-ming* | 算$^4$命$^4$ |
| Foundation, | *ken-chi*$^1$ | 根$^1$基$^1$ |
| Frog, | *ha-ma*$^1$ | 蛤$^2$蟆$^4$ |
| Funeral, to have a, | *ch‘uh-pin* | 出$^1$殯$^4$ |
| Gamble, | *tu* | 賭$^3$ |
| Generous; broad-minded, | *k‘uan-hong* | 寬$^1$宏$^2$ |
| Gentleman; Sir, | *lao-ie*$^1$ | 老$^3$爺$^2$ |
| Genuine; true, | *ch‘eng-shïh* | 誠$^2$實$^2$ |
| Ginger, | *seng-chiang*$^2$ | 生$^1$薑$^1$ |
| Glass, | *po-li*$^2$ | 玻$^1$璃$^2$ |
| Glue, | *chiao* | 膠$^1$ |
| Go to law, | *ta-kuan-sï* | 打$^3$官$^1$司$^1$ |
| Goat, | *shan-iang*$^9$ | 山$^1$羊$^2$ |
| Good deeds, | *hao sï* | 好$^3$事$^4$ |
| Governor-general, a, | *tsong-tuh* | 總$^3$督$^1$ |
| Governor of a province, | *hsüin-fu* | 巡$^2$撫$^3$ |
| Guard, to, | *pa-sheo* | 把$^3$守$^3$ |
| Guest room, | *k‘eh-t‘ang* | 客$^4$堂$^2$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ham, | *ho-t‘ui*$^9$ | 火$^3$腿$^3$ |
| Hand to, to, | *ti* | 遞$^4$ |
| Handicraft, | *sheo-i* | 手$^3$藝$^4$ |
| Hate, to, | *huai-hen* | 懷$^2$恨$^4$ |
| Head, top of, | *t‘eo-tìng* | 頭$^2$頂$^3$ |
| Heretofore, | *su-lai* | 素$^4$來$^2$ |
| Hinder, | *tsu-tang* | 阻$^3$擋$^3$ |
| Hinder; impede, | *ai-sï* | 礙$^4$事$^4$ |
| Honour parents, | *hsiao-shuen fu-mu* | 孝$^4$順$^4$父$^4$母$^4$ |
| If; supposing, | *roh-shï* | 若$^4$是$^4$ |
| Immortality, | *iong-seng* | 永$^3$生$^1$ |
| Implore, | *k‘en-ch‘iu* | 懇$^3$求$^2$ |
| Indefinite, | *han-hu* | 含$^2$糊$^2$ |
| Indifferent, | *leng-tan* | 冷$^3$淡$^4$ |
| Intercalary month, | *ruen-üeh*$^1$ | 閏$^4$月$^4$ |
| Investigate, to, | *chui-chiu* | 追$^1$究$^1$ |
| Irritable; worried, | *chih-tsao* | 急$^2$躁$^4$ |
| Jugglery, | *hsi-fah* | 戲$^1$法$^3$ |
| Kerosene, | *ho-iu* | 火$^3$油$^2$ |
| Kindness; benevolence, | *ren-i* | 仁$^2$義$^4$ |
| Kitchen, | *ch‘u-fang*$^1$ | 廚$^2$房$^2$ |
| Kitchen range, | *tsao* | 灶$^4$ |
| Knot; boil, a, | *keh-tah* | 疙$^1$瘩$^1$ |
| Ladder, | *t‘i-tsï*$^8$ | 梯$^1$子$^3$ |
| Lady, | *t‘ai-t‘ai*$^7$ | 太$^4$太$^4$ |
| Lady, young, | *hsiao-chie*$^1$ | 小$^3$姐$^3$ |
| Lamp-stand, | *teng-t‘ai* | 燈$^1$台$^2$ |
| Lantern, | *teng-long*$^1$ | 燈$^4$籠$^2$ |
| Law, | *lüh-fah* | 律$^1$法$^3$ |
| Lazy, | *lan-to* | 懶 惰$^1$ |
| Lead, to, | *ling* | 領$^3$ |
| Leak, | *leo* | 漏$^4$ |
| Learning, | *hsioh-uen* | 學$^2$問$^4$ |
| Leather worker, | *p‘i-chiang*$^1$ | 皮$^2$匠$^4$ |
| Leave, | *li-k‘ai* | 離$^2$開$^1$ |
| Lenient, to be, | *k‘uan-iong* | 寬$^1$容$^1$ |
| Letter carrier, | *p‘ao-sin-tih* | 跑$^2$信$^4$的$^1$ |
| Library, | *shu-fang*$^1$ | 書$^1$房$^2$ |
| Lice, | *seh-tsï*$^1$; *shï-tsï* | 虱$^1$子$^3$ |
| Life, | *hsing-ming* | 性$^4$命$^4$ |
| Light a fire, | *tien-ho* | 點$^3$火$^3$ |
| Like; as if, | *ru-t‘ong* | 如$^2$同$^2$ |
| Live, | *ko-rïh-tsï* | 過$^4$日$^4$子$^3$ |
| Live separately, | *fen-chia* | 分$^1$家$^1$ |
| Locust, the, | *huang-ch‘ong* | 蝗$^2$蟲$^2$ |
| Look after, | *chao-ing* | 照$^1$應 |
| Loose; lax, | *song* | 鬆$^1$ |
| Lord’s Supper, | *sheng-t‘san* | 聖$^4$餐$^1$ |
| Lose, to, | *shïh-loh* | 失$^1$落$^4$ |
| Mad person, | *feng-tsï*$^1$ | 瘋$^1$子$^3$ |
| Magpie, | *hsi-ch‘ioh*$^9$ | 喜$^3$鵲$^3$ |
| Make allowance for, | *chiang-chiu* | 將$^1$就$^4$ |
| Man, | *nan-tsï-han* | 男$^2$子 漢$^4$ |
| Man, the ideal, | *chüin-tsï* | 君$^1$子$^3$ |
| Manifest, | *piao-ming* | 表 明$^2$ |
| Marking-line, | *meh teo-tsï*$^1$ | 墨$^4$斗$^3$子$^3$ |
| Mattress, | *ruh-tsï*$^{45}$ | 褥$^4$子$^3$ |
| Meal, to serve up a, | *k‘ai-fan* | 開$^1$飯$^4$ |
| Midnight, | *pan-ie* | 半$^4$夜$^4$ |
| Milk, | *nai* | 奶 |
| Mix, to, | *t‘iao-ho* | 調$^2$和$^2$ |
| Mosquito, | *uen-tsï*$^1$ | 蚊$^2$子$^3$ |
| Moth, | *o-tsï*$^1$ | 蛾$^2$子$^3$ |
| Move, a household, | *pan-chia* | 搬$^1$家$^1$ |
| Mud, | *ni-pa* | 泥$^2$巴$^1$ |
| Mule litter, | *t‘o-chiao* | 駝$^2$轎$^4$ |
| Murderer, | *hsiong-sheo* | 兇$^1$手$^3$ |
| Murmur at, | *man (mai) üen* | 埋$^2$怨$^4$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Neat, | *ch‘i-cheng* | 齊$^{2}$整$^{3}$ |
| Niggardly, | *hsiao-ch‘i* | 小$^{3}$器$^{4}$ |
| Noon, | *chong-shang* | 中$^{1}$上$^{4}$ |
| Nostrils, | *pi-k‘ong* | 鼻$^{4}$孔$^{3}$ |
| Number, | *su-muh* | 數$^{4}$目$^{4}$ |
| Occupation; trade, | *ing-seng* | 營$^{2}$生$^{1}$ |
| Odds and ends, | *ling-sui* | 零$^{2}$碎$^{4}$ |
| Opinion, | *i-chien* | 意$^{4}$見$^{4}$ |
| Opium, | *ta-ien* | 大$^{4}$烟$^{1}$ |
| Oranges, | *chüh-tsï*$^{1}$,<br>*kan-tsï* | 橘$^{2}$子$^{3}$,<br>柑$^{1}$子$^{3}$ |
| Overcome, | *teh sheng* | 得$^{2}$勝$^{4}$ |
| Painter, | *ch‘ih-chiang* | 漆$^{1}$匠$^{4}$ |
| Paper, toilet, | *ts‘ao-chï*$^{5}$ | 草$^{3}$紙$^{3}$ |
| Partition wall, | *pih-tsï*$^{1}$ | 壁$^{1}$子$^{3}$ |
| Paste, | *chiang-tsï*;<br>*mien-hu* | 糨$^{4}$子$^{3}$,<br>麵$^{4}$糊$^{2}$ |
| Patois, | *t‘u-hua* | 土$^{3}$話$^{4}$ |
| Peaceful, | *t‘ai-p‘ing* | 太$^{4}$平$^{2}$ |
| Peaches, | *t‘ao-tsï*$^{1}$ | 桃$^{2}$子$^{3}$ |
| Pepper, | *hu-chiao* | 胡$^{2}$椒$^{1}$ |
| Period of two hours, | *shï-ch‘en*$^{1}$ | 時$^{2}$辰$^{2}$ |
| Perspire, | *ch‘uh-han* | 出$^{1}$汗$^{4}$ |
| Perverse, | *tiao* | 刁$^{1}$ |
| Physical vigour, | *hsüeh-ch‘i* | 血$^{4}$氣$^{4}$ |
| Pile up, | *tui* | 堆$^{1}$ |
| Pincers, | *ch‘ien-tsï*$^{3}$ | 鉗$^{2}$子$^{3}$ |
| Plane, | *pao-tsï*$^{3}$ | 鉋$^{4}$子$^{3}$ |
| Plough, | *li-tsï*$^{22}$ | 犁$^{2}$子$^{3}$ |
| Plums, | *li-tsï*$^{1}$ | 李$^{3}$子$^{3}$ |
| Point to, | *chï-tien* | 指$^{3}$點$^{3}$ |
| Politeness, | *k‘eh-ch‘i* | 客$^{4}$氣$^{4}$ |
| Poor, | *p‘in-ch‘iong* | 貧$^{2}$窮$^{2}$ |
| Pork, | *chu-ruh*$^{2}$ (ro) | 猪$^{1}$肉$^{4}$ |
| Potatoes, | *shan-ü*;<br>*ti-tan* | 山$^{1}$芋$^{4}$,<br>地$^{4}$蛋$^{4}$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pour into, to, | *kuan* | 灌$^{4}$ |
| Pour over, | *chiao* | 澆$^{1}$ |
| Preach, to, | *chiang-shu* | 講$^{3}$書$^{1}$ |
| Precious, | *pao-pei* | 寶$^{3}$貝$^{4}$ |
| Present, the; before one's eyes, | *ien-ch‘ien* | 眼$^{3}$前$^{2}$ |
| Private; illicit, | *sï-hsia* | 私$^{1}$下$^{4}$ |
| Prophet, | *hsien-chï* | 先$^{1}$知$^{1}$ |
| Pump; fire engine, | *shui-long* | 水$^{3}$龍$^{2}$ |
| Rail at, | *ruh-ma* | 辱$^{4}$罵$^{4}$ |
| Raise the head, | *t‘ai-t‘eo* | 抬$^{2}$頭$^{2}$ |
| Reach up to, | *keo* | 搆$^{1}$ |
| Ready money, | *hsien-ch‘ien* | 現$^{4}$錢$^{2}$ |
| Reason, | *ch‘ing-li* | 情$^{2}$理$^{3}$ |
| Rebel, | *tsao-fan* | 造$^{4}$反$^{3}$ |
| Regret, to, | *ao-huei* | 懊$^{4}$悔$^{3}$ |
| Repeatedly, | *lei* (*lü*) *ts‘ï* | 屢$^{3}$次$^{4}$ |
| Repent, | *huei-hsin-chuan-i* | 回$^{2}$心$^{1}$轉$^{3}$意$^{4}$ |
| Repudiate, to, | *fan-huei* | 返$^{3}$悔$^{3}$ |
| Resembling; as though, | *fang-fuh* | 彷$^{3}$彿$^{2}$ |
| Residence; public office, | *kong-kuan* | 公$^{1}$館$^{3}$ |
| Retain, | *ts‘uen* | 存$^{2}$ |
| Retribution, present, | *hsien-pao* | 現$^{4}$報$^{4}$ |
| Rice basin, | *fan-uan*$^{1}$ | 飯$^{4}$碗$^{3}$ |
| Road, fork in the, | *ch‘a* | 岔$^{4}$ |
| Roll up, | *chüen* | 捲$^{3}$ |
| Rumour, | *feng-sheng* | 風$^{1}$聲$^{1}$ |
| Run away, to, | *t‘ao-tseo* | 逃$^{2}$走$^{3}$ |
| Rummage; turn over, | *fan-t‘eng* | 翻$^{1}$騰$^{2}$ |
| Sabbath, the, | *an-hsih-rïh* | 安$^{1}$息$^{2}$日$^{4}$ |
| Sacrifice, to, | *hsien-chi* | 獻$^{4}$祭$^{4}$ |
| Sage, a, | *sheng-ren* | 聖$^{4}$人$^{2}$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sand, gravel, | *sha* | 沙$^1$ |
| Saucer, | *tieh-tsï*$^1$ | 碟$^2$子$^3$ |
| Saw, | *chü-tsï*$^8$ | 鋸$^4$子$^3$ |
| Scandal, | *k'eo-sheh* | 口$^3$舌$^2$ |
| Scorpion, | *hsieh-tsï*$^1$ | 蠍$^1$子$^3$ |
| Search into, | *k'ao-chiu* | 考$^3$究$^4$ |
| Security, a, | *pao-ren* | 保$^3$人$^2$ |
| Sensible of, | *chioh-teh* | 覺$^2$得$^2$ |
| Separate, to, | *fen-sheo* | 分$^1$手$^3$ |
| Severe; stern, | *li-hai* | 利$^4$害$^4$ |
| Shed; stable, | *p'eng* | 棚$^2$ |
| Sheep, | *mien-iang*$^9$ | 綿$^2$羊$^2$ |
| Sign; mark, | *chi-hao* | 記$^4$號$^4$ |
| Sin, to, | *fan-tsui* | 犯$^4$罪$^4$ |
| Skill, | *sheo-tuan* | 手$^3$段$^4$ |
| Sleeves, | *hsiu-tsï* | 袖$^4$子$^3$ |
| Slightly, | *shao-uei* | 稍$^3$微$^2$ |
| Small-pox, | *t'ien-hua*;<br>*t'ien-hsi* | 天$^1$花$^1$,<br>天$^1$喜$^3$ |
| Snapped; broken, | *tuan* | 斷$^4$ |
| Snatch, | *toh* | 奪$^2$ |
| So that; in order to, | *shï-teh* | 使$^4$得$^2$ |
| Soap, | *fei-tsao*$^2$;<br>*i-tsï* | 肥$^2$皂$^4$,<br>胰$^2$子$^3$ |
| Sore, a, | *ch'uang*$^1$ | 瘡$^1$ |
| Soup, | *t'ang* | 湯$^1$ |
| Spade, | *hsien*$^8$ | 杴$^1$ |
| Sparrow, | *ma-ch'ioh*$^1$;<br>*chia-ch'ioh* | 麻$^2$雀$^3$,<br>家$^1$雀$^3$ |
| Spectacles, | *ien-ching*$^{22}$ | 眼$^3$鏡$^4$ |
| Spider, | *chï-chu*$^1$ | 蜘$^1$蛛$^1$ |
| Spoon, | *t'iao-keng*$^1$;<br>*ch'i-tsï* | 調$^2$羹$^1$,<br>匙$^2$子$^3$ |
| Sprinkle, | *sa* | 洒$^3$ |
| Stalks of grain, | *kai*; *chieh* | 稭$^1$ |
| Stinking; offensive, | *ch'eo* | 臭$^4$ |
| Stop up, | *seh*; *sai* | 塞$^4$ |
| Storm, a, | *k'uang-feng* | 狂$^2$風$^1$ |
| Stove, | *lu-tsï* | 爐$^2$子$^3$ |
| Strength, | *lih-liang*;<br>*lih-ch'i* | 力$^4$量$^4$,<br>力$^4$氣$^4$ |
| Strong—of fluids, | *nong*, *heo*, *ien* | 濃$^2$, 厚$^4$, 釅$^4$ |
| Stupid; dense, | *ch'uen-pen* | 蠢$^3$笨$^3$ |
| Style, to; to address, | *ch'eng-hu* | 稱$^1$呼$^1$ |
| Subject; theme; text, | *t'i-muh* | 題$^2$目$^4$ |
| Suffer loss, | *ch'ih k'uei* | 吃$^1$虧$^1$ |
| Sugar, | *t'ang* | 糖$^2$ |
| Suitable, fitting, | *tui-ching* | 對$^4$勁$^1$ |
| Take leave, | *ts'i-hsing* | 辭$^1$行$^1$ |
| Taxes, | *ch'ien-liang* | 錢$^2$糧$^2$ |
| Tea (in leaf), | *ch'a-ieh* | 茶$^2$葉$^4$ |
| Tea-table, | *ch'a-chi*$^1$ | 茶$^2$几$^3$ |
| Teeth, | *ia-ch'i*$^1$ | 牙$^2$齒$^3$ |
| Temporarily, | *chan-shï* | 暫$^4$時$^2$ |
| Ten Commandments, the, | *shïh-t'iao-kiai* | 十$^2$條$^2$誡$^4$ |
| Testimony, | *k'eo-kong* | 口$^3$供$^1$ |
| Thermometer, | *leng-reh-piao*$^1$ | 冷$^3$熱$^4$表$^3$ |
| Throat, | *heo-long* | 喉$^2$嚨$^1$ |
| Thumb, | *ta mu chï-t'eo* | 大$^4$拇$^3$指$^3$頭$^2$ |
| Tiles, | *ua*$^2$ | 瓦$^3$ |
| Tooth-brush, | *ia shuah-tsï*$^8$ | 牙$^2$刷$^1$子$^3$ |
| Travelling expenses, | *p'an-ch'an*;<br>*p'an-fei* | 盤$^2$纏$^2$,<br>盤$^2$費$^4$ |
| Treat, a disease, | *t'iao-chï* | 調$^2$治$^3$ |
| Treat, meanly, | *k'eh-poh* | 刻$^1$薄$^2$ |
| Trouble, to be in, | *tsoh-nan* | 作$^4$難$^2$ |
| Troublesome, | *fan-soh* | 煩$^2$數$^2$ |
| Trust, to, | *i-k'ao* | 倚$^3$靠$^4$ |
| Turnips, | *lo-po*$^1$ | 蘿$^2$蔔$^1$ |
| Twist with the fingers, | *nien* | 撚$^3$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Unconsciously, | *puh chï puh chioh* | 不$^{1}$知$^{1}$不$^{1}$覺$^{4}$ |
| Unendurable ; unbearable, | *iao-ming* | 要$^{4}$命$^{4}$ |
| Unlucky, | *tao-üin* | 倒$^{3}$運$^{4}$ |
| Unrestrained, | *fang-sï* | 放$^{4}$肆$^{1}$ |
| Upright, | *cheng-chïh* | 正$^{4}$直$^{2}$ |
| Urge, | *ts'ui* | 催$^{1}$ |
| Vaccine, | *niu-teo* | 牛$^{2}$痘$^{4}$ |
| Vegetables, | *su-ts'ai* | 蔬$^{1}$菜$^{4}$ |
| Vow, to, | *hsü-üen* | 許$^{3}$愿$^{4}$ |
| Wander, to, | *p'iao-liu* | 漂$^{1}$流$^{2}$ |
| Warm, | *nuan-ho* | 煖$^{3}$和$^{2}$ |
| Wash-hand basin, [face,] | *hsi-lien p'en*$^{1}$ | 洗$^{3}$臉$^{3}$盆$^{2}$ |
| Watch over, | *k'an-sheo* | 看$^{1}$守$^{3}$ |
| Wax, | *lah* | 蠟$^{4}$ |
| Weak, | *ruan-ron* | 軟$^{3}$弱$^{4}$ |
| Weave, | *chïh* | 織$^{1}$ |
| Weep, | *liu-lei* | 流$^{2}$淚$^{4}$ |
| Well off; well-to-do, | *fu-kuei* | 富$^{4}$貴$^{4}$ |
| Wet nurse, | *nai-ma* | 奶$^{3}$媽$^{1}$ |
| Whole ; entire, | *huh-luen* | 囫$^{2}$圇$^{2}$ |
| Wife ; wife and children, | *chia-li* | 家$^{1}$裏$^{3}$ |
| Wife, to take a, | *ch'ü-ch'in* | 娶$^{3}$親$^{1}$ |
| Will, the, | *chu-i* | 主$^{3}$意$^{2}$ |
| Willing, | *ch'ing-üen* | 情$^{2}$愿$^{4}$ |
| Willow tree, | *liu-shu*$^{21}$ | 柳$^{3}$樹$^{4}$ |
| Win, | *ing* | 贏$^{2}$ |
| Woman; women, | *nai-nai*$^{1}$;<br>*fu-nü* | 奶$^{3}$奶$^{3}$,<br>婦$^{4}$女$^{3}$ |
| Wonder, no, | *kuai-puh-teh* | 怪$^{4}$不$^{1}$得$^{2}$ |

# A LIST OF NUMERARY ADJUNCTS.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | 個$^4$ | *ko* | An individual. |
| 2. | 塊$^4$ | *kʻuai* | A piece of. |
| 3. | 本$^3$ | *pen* | A root. |
| 4. | 件$^4$ | *chien* | To divide. |
| 5. | 張$^1$ | *chang* | To extend. |
| 6. | 枝$^1$ | *chï* | A branch. |
| 7. | 位$^4$ | *uei* | A throne. |
| 8. | 把$^3$ | *pa* | To grasp. |
| 9. | 隻$^1$ | *chï* | One of a pair. |
| 10. | 盞$^3$ | *chan* | A lamp-bowl. |
| 11. | 匹$^3$ | *pʻih* | A mate. |
| 12. | 篇$^1$ | *pʻien* | A tablet of bamboo. |
| 13. | 座$^4$ | *tso* | A seat. |
| 14. | 條$^2$ | *tʻiao* | A length. |
| 15. | 封$^1$ | *feng* | To seal. |
| 16. | 句$^4$ | *chü* | A sentence. |
| 17. | 頂$^3$ | *ting* | The top. |
| 18. | 角$^2$ | *chioh* | A corner. |
| 19. | 吊$^4$ | *tiao* | To hang. |
| 20. | 間$^1$ | *chien* | A space between. |
| 21. | 根$^1$ | *ken* | A root. |
| 22. | 副$^4$ | *fu* | A second. |
| 23. | 口$^3$ | *kʻeo* | An opening. |
| 24. | 扇$^4$ | *shan* | A fan. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 25. | 尊$^1$ | *tsuen* | Honourable. |
| 26. | 乘$^2$ | *ch‘eng* | A carriage. |
| 27. | 道$^4$ | *tao* | A road. |
| 28. | 雙$^1$ | *shuang* | A pair. |
| 29. | 疋$^3$ | *p‘ih* | A roll. |
| 30. | 層$^2$ | *ts‘eng* | A layer. |
| 31. | 餐$^1$ | *ts‘an* | A meal. |
| 32. | 科$^1$ | *k‘o* | A class. |
| 33. | 首$^3$ | *sheo* | The head. |
| 34. | 朶$^3$ | *to* | A cluster. |
| 35. | 顆$^1$ | *k‘o* | A kernel. |
| 36. | 頭$^2$ | *t‘eo* | The head. |
| 37. | 面$^4$ | *mien* | A surface. |
| 38. | 尾$^3$ | *uei* | A tail. |
| 39. | 掛$^4$ | *kua* | To hang up. |
| 40. | 管$^3$ | *kuan* | A tube. |
| 41. | 輛$^4$ | *liang* | A pair of wheels. |
| 42. | 樁$^1$ | *chuang* | A stake |
| 43. | 筆$^3$ | *pih* | A pen ; a pencil. |
| 44. | 文$^2$ | *uen* | Literature. |
| 45. | 床$^2$ | *ch‘uang* | A bed. |
| 46. | 所$^3$ | *so* | A place. |
| 47. | 棵$^1$ | *k‘o* | A Numerary Adjunct. |
| 48. | 統$^3$ | *t‘ong* | To govern. |
| 49. | 領$^3$ | *ling* | To lead. |
| 50. | 粒$^4$ | *lih* | A grain. |

# 英華合璧卷肆

# 大全

# MANDARIN PRIMER

## PART IV

## MISCELLANEOUS

## A SELECTION OF MORAL AND RELIGIOUS TERMS.

### I. Moral. 義禮

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Affable ; amiable, | *ho$^2$-p‘ing$^2$* | 和平 |
| Arrogant, | *k‘uang$^2$ ao$^4$* | 狂傲 |
| Ardent, | *hsüeh$^3$-hsing$^4$* | 血性 |
| Anxiety, | *iu$^1$-lü$^4$* | 憂慮 |
| Annoyance, unable to stand, | *puh$^1$ nai$^3$ fan$^2$* | 不耐煩 |
| After regrets, | *heo$^4$-huei$^3$* | 後悔 |
| Anger, | *nao$^3$-nu$^4$* | 惱怒 |
| Anger, to abate one's, | *hsiao$^1$ hsiao$^1$ ch‘i$^4$* | 消消氣 |
| Affection, mutual, | *pi$^3$-ts‘ï$^3$ hsiang$^1$ ch‘in$^1$ hsiang$^1$ ai$^4$* | 彼此相親相愛 |
| Advantage, to take, | *ch‘i$^1$-fu$^4$* | 欺負 |
| Airs, to put on, | *pai$^3$ k‘ong$^1$ chia$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 擺空架子 |
| Antecedents, of questionable, | *lai$^2$ lu$^4$ puh$^1$ ming$^2$* | 來路不明 |
| Auspicious, | *chih$^2$-li$^4$* | 吉利 |
| Admonish ; caution, | *ch‘üen$^4$-kiai$^4$* | 勸戒 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Bashful, | *lien$^3$ p‘i$^2$ poh$^4$* | 臉皮薄 |
| Boastful (of wealth), | *k‘ua$^1$ fu$^4$* | 誇富 |
| Bad humour, in a, | *fan$^4$ liao$^3$ p‘i$^2$-ch‘i$^4$* | 犯了脾氣 |
| Banish sorrow, dispel gloom, | *hsiao$^1$ ts‘eo$^2$ kiai$^4$-men$^4$* | 消愁解悶 |
| Besotted, | *tiao$^4$ tsai$^4$ mi$^2$ huen$^2$ chen$^4$ li$^3$* | 掉在迷魂陣裏 |
| Believe in, | *hsin$^4$-fuh$^4$* | 信服 |
| Blackguard, | *hsia$^4$-chien$^4$ ren$^2$* | 下賤人 |
| Brag, | *k‘ua$^1$ hai$^3$ k‘eo$^3$* | 誇海口 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Coarse ; vulgar, | *ts‘u$^1$-lu$^3$* | 粗魯 |
| Conservative. | *ku$^3$-pan$^3$* | 古板 |
| Contrary, | *sah$^3$-lai$^4$* | 撒賴 |
| Cunning, | *kuai$^1$-ch‘iao$^3$* | 乖巧 |
| Compassionate, | *ts‘ï$^2$-pei$^1$* | 慈悲 |
| Comfort, to, | *an$^1$-uei$^4$* | 安慰 |

---

錢財如糞土·仁義值千金· *Wealth is as dross, righteousness is worth untold gold.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Courageous to a degree, | *huen$^2$ shen$^1$ shï$^4$ tan$^3$* | 渾身是膽 |
| Conscience, not to violate, | *puh$^1$ tsoh$^4$ k‘uei$^1$ hsin$^1$ sï$^4$* | 不作虧心事 |
| Confidence in, to have, | *p‘ei$^4$-fuh$^4$* | 佩服 |
| Charity, the door of, is hard to open, | *shan$^4$ men$^2$ nan$^2$ k‘ai$^1$* | 善門難開 |
| Conscience, never to act against one's, | *seng$^1$-p‘ing$^2$ puh$^1$ tsoh$^4$ k‘uei$^1$ hsin$^1$ sï$^4$* | 生平不作虧心事 |
| Contented, | *an$^1$ fen$^4$ sheo$^3$ chi$^3$* | 安夃守己 |
| Covetous, insatiably, | *t‘an$^1$ teh$^2$ u$^2$ ien$^4$ tih$^1$* | 貪得無厭的 |
| Caste, to lose, | *shïh$^1$ liao$^3$ t‘i$^2$-tong$^3$* | 失了體統 |
| Correct; upright, | *tuan$^1$-cheng$^4$* | 端正 |
| Courage, | *tan$^3$-liang$^4$* | 膽量 |
| Corruption; fraud, | *sï$^1$-pi$^4$* | 私弊 |
| Customary; proper, | *tsoh$^4$-hsing$^2$* | 作行 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Difficult to get on with, | *nan$^2$ ch‘an$^2$* | 難纏 |
| Do as one likes, | *ren$^4$-choh$^2$ hsing$^4$* | 任着性 |
| Delighted, | *kao$^1$-hsing$^4$* | 高興 |
| Disheartened, | *huei$^1$-hsin$^1$* | 灰心 |
| Dejected, | *men$^4$ men$^4$ puh$^1$ loh$^1$* | 悶悶不樂 |
| Desire, earnestly, to, | *k‘oh$^3$ hsiang$^3$* | 渴想 |
| Deny oneself, | *k‘eh$^4$ chi$^3$* | 克己 |
| Detest, | *ien$^4$-u$^4$* | 厭惡 |
| Deteriorate, to; remiss, | *hsiai$^4$-tai$^4$* | 懈怠 |
| Deceitful, | *huang$^3$-cha$^4$* | 謊詐 |
| Dissipated, | *feng$^1$-liu$^2$* | 風流 |
| Darkness, moral, | *an$^4$-mei$^2$ puh$^1$ ming$^2$* | 暗昧不明 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Eccentric, | *ku$^3$-kuai$^4$ p‘i$^2$-ch‘i$^4$* | 古怪脾氣 |
| Emotions, the seven, *ch‘ih$^1$ ch‘ing$^2$* 七情, viz., joy; anger; grief; fear; love; hatred, and desire, | *hsi$^3$, nu$^4$, ai$^1$, chü$^4$, ai$^4$, u$^4$, iuh$^4$ (ü$^4$)* | 喜，怒，哀，懼，愛，惡，欲 |
| Endure, unable to, | *ren$^3$-nai$^4$ puh$^1$ chu$^4$* | 忍耐不住 |
| Excitement and alarm, in a state of, | *ta$^4$ ching$^1$ hsiao$^3$ kuai$^4$* | 大驚小怪 |
| Expect; hope, to, | *p‘an$^4$-uang$^4$; chï$^3$-uang$^4$* | 盼望，指望 |
| Enmity, to cherish, | *chi$^4$ ch‘eo$^2$* | 記仇 |
| Evil, to eschew, and embrace good, | *ch‘i$^4$ hsie$^2$ kuei$^1$ cheng$^4$* | 棄邪歸正 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Eating, fond of, and averse to work, | *hao$^4$ ch‘ïh$^1$ lan$^3$ tsoh$^4$* | 好吃懶作 |
| Evil habits, to be contaminated by, | *chan$^1$-ran$^3$ oh$^1$ suh$^2$* | 沾染惡俗 |
| Evil; vicious, | *hsiong$^1$ oh$^4$* | 兇惡 |
| Extort, | *leh$^1$-soh$^1$* | 勒索 |
| Excitable, | *chih$^2$ hsing$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 急性子 |
| Evil, root of, | *ho$^4$-ken$^1$* | 禍根 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fearing nothing, | *t‘ien$^1$ puh$^1$ p‘a$^4$, ti$^4$ puh$^1$ p‘a$^4$* | 天不怕,地不怕 |
| Fright, to get a great, | *sheo$^4$ liao$^3$ ih$^1$ ta$^4$ ching$^1$* | 受了一大驚 |
| Fear, to allay, | *iah$^4$ iah$^4$ ching$^1$* | 壓壓驚 |
| Faithful; honest, | *chong$^1$-hsin$^1$* | 忠心 |
| Favour, to unduly, | *hsüin$^2$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 徇情 |
| Friendship, | *chiao$^1$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 交情 |
| Feelings; the heart, | *hsin$^1$-ch‘ang$^2$* | 心腸 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gentle; yielding, | *reo$^3$-ho$^2$; uen$^1$-ho$^2$* | 柔和, 温和 |
| Grief; sadness, | *pei$^1$-shang$^1$* | 悲傷 |
| Grateful for, | *kan$^3$-chih$^4$* | 感激 |
| Grateful, extremely, | *shïh$^2$ fen$^4$ kan$^3$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 十分感情 |
| Grieve, to, | *tan$^1$-iu$^1$* | 擔憂 |
| Gay; fashionable, | *fan$^2$-hụa$^2$* | 繁華 |
| Good, | *liang$^2$-shan$^4$* | 良善 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Hypocritical, | *chia$^3$ lao$^3$-shïh$^2$* | 假老實 |
| Hollow; false, | *hsü$^1$-chia$^3$* | 虛假 |
| Hatred, profound, | *hen$^4$ teh$^2$ ruh$^4$ kuh$^2$-sui$^3$* | 恨得入骨髓 |
| Hate, to cease to, | *kiai$^4$ hen$^4$* | 解恨 |
| Hoodwink, | *man$^2$-hong$^3$* | 瞞哄 |
| Honour, to, | *ching$^4$-ai$^4$* | 敬愛 |
| Harass, to, | *cheh$^2$-mo$^2$* | 折磨 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Idle and unwilling to work, | *iu$^2$ sheo$^3$ hao$^4$ hsien$^2$* | 游手好閑 |
| Injure others for one's own gain, | *suen$^1$ ren$^2$ li$^4$ chi$^3$* | 損人利己 |
| Incorrigible, | *tsui$^4$-oh$^4$-t‘ao$^1$ t‘ien$^1$* | 罪惡滔天 |
| Indolent, | *hao$^4$ hsien$^2$* | 好閑 |
| Injury, | *ho$^4$-hai$^4$* | 禍害 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Kindness; grace, | *en$^1$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 恩情 |
| Kindness, to repay a, | *pao$^4$-en$^1$* | 報恩 |
| Keep back what is due, | *leh$^1$-k‘en$^3$* | 勒掯 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Lethargic, | *man$^4$ hsing$^4$-tsi$^3$* | 慢性子 |
| Light ; frivolous, | *fu$^2$-tsao$^4$* | 浮躁 |
| Lonely, | *leng$^3$-ch‘ing$^1$* | 冷淸 |
| Loath to part with, | *shæ$^3$ puh$^1$ teh$^2$ li$^2$ k‘ai$^1$ t‘a$^4$* | 捨不得離開他 |
| Lenient, to be, | *pao$^1$-han$^2$* | 包含 (or 涵) |
| Low ; mean, | *hsia$^4$-chien$^4$* | 下賤 |
| Lies, | *huang$^3$-hua$^4$* | 謊話 |
| Love ardently, | *t‘eng$^2$-ai$^4$* | 疼愛 |
| Law, toils of, | *fah$^3$-uang$^3$* | 法網 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Modest ; humble, | *ch‘ien$^1$-hsü$^1$; ch‘ien$^1$-pei$^4$* | 謙虛, 謙卑 |
| Make allowance for, | *pao$^1$-iong$^2$; chiang$^1$ chiu$^4$* | 包容, 將就 |
| Meaning, to take in a, | *huei$^4$-i$^4$* | 會意 |
| Matter that does not concern one, | *hsien$^2$ sï$^4$* | 閑事 |
| Mistake ; error, | *ko$^4$-shïh$^1$* | 過失 |
| Maltreat, | *k‘u$^3$-tai$^4$* | 苦待 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nature ; disposition, | *hsing$^4$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 性情 |
| Narrow-minded, | *tu$^4$-liang$^2$ hsiao$^3$* | 度量小 |
| Niggardly, | *k‘eh$^4$-poh$^2$* | 刻薄 |
| Natural feeling ; goodwill, | *ren$^2$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 人情 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Outspoken, | *k‘eo$^3$ k‘uai$^4$ hsin$^1$ chih$^1$ tih$^1$* | 口快心直的 |
| Obtuse ; obstinate, | *chü$^1$-ni$^2$* | 拘泥 |
| Oppress others, to, | *ch‘i$^1$-iah$^4$ ren$^2$* | 欺壓人 |
| Occupation, no fixed, | *iu$^2$ iu$^2$ tang$^4$ tang$^4$ tih$^1$* | 游游蕩蕩的 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Patient, | *nai$^3$-hsing$^4$* | 耐性 |
| Persevering, | *heng$^2$-hsin$^1$* | 恒心 |
| Provoking, | *ræ$^3$ ren$^2$ hsien$^2$* | 惹人嫌 |
| Perverse, | *kuai$^1$-p‘ih$^4$* | 乖僻 |
| Public-spirited, | *i$^4$-ch‘i$^4$ ; kong$^1$-hsin$^4$* | 義氣, 公心 |
| Petulant, | *chih$^2$-tsao$^4$* | 急躁 |
| Pleasure, | *hsi$^3$-loh$^1$* | 喜樂 |
| Poverty ; straits, | *k‘uen$^4$-k‘u$^3$* | 困苦 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Rage, in a great, | *tsai$^4$ ch‘i$^4$ t‘eo$^2$ shang$^4$* | 在氣頭上 |
| Relations, the Five Cardinal, | *u$^3$ luen$^2$* | 五倫 |
| Rash, | *huang$^1$-t‘ang$^2$* | 荒唐 |
| Reward, | *chiang$^3$-shang$^3$* | 奬賞 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Retribution, to meet with, | *tsao$^1$ iang$^1$* | 遭殃 |
| Retract (of testimony), | *fan$^1$-kong$^1$* | 翻供 |
| Rescue; to save, | *tah$^1$-chiu$^4$* | 搭救 |
| Rob, | *t‘eo$^1$-tao$^4$* | 偷盜 |
| | | |
| Shameless, | *lien$^3$ p‘i$^2$ heo$^4$* | 臉皮厚 |
| Straightforward, | *keng$^3$-chïh$^2$* | 耿直 |
| Self-opinionated, | *tsï$^4$-shï$^4$* | 自是 |
| Self-important, | *tsï$^4$-ta$^4$* | 自大 |
| Scare, to, | *heh$^4$-hu$^1$* | 嚇唬 |
| Self-satisfied, | *iang$^2$ iang$^2$ teh$^2$ i$^4$* | 揚揚得意 |
| Shameless rascal, | *u$^2$ ch‘i$^3$ chï$^1$ t‘u$^2$* | 無恥之徒 |
| Shameful; ugly, | *ch‘eo$^3$* | 醜 |
| Shame; ashamed, | *hsiu$^1$-ch‘i$^3$* | 羞恥 |
| Sympathize, | *t‘i$^3$-t‘ieh$^2$* | 體貼 |
| Sorrowful, | *ch‘i$^1$-ts‘an$^3$* | 悽慘 |
| Sin; the results of sin, | *tsui$^4$-nieh$^4$* | 罪孽 |
| Sad; troubled, | *nan$^2$-ko$^4$; nan$^2$-sheo$^4$* | 難過, 難受 |
| Sin, to do away with, | *hsiao$^1$ tsui$^4$* | 消罪 |
| Sincere, | *ch‘eng$^2$-hsin$^1$* | 誠心 |
| | | |
| Temperament, | *hsing$^4$-keh$^2$* | 性格 |
| Temper, uncertain, | *muh$^2$ chuen$^3$ p‘i$^2$-ch‘i$^4$* | 沒准脾氣 |
| Troublesome; involved, | *lo$^2$-so$^1$* | 囉唆 |
| Timid, | *tan$^3$ ch‘ieh$^4$* | 膽怯 |
| Trouble, to stir up, | *rœ$^3$ ho$^4$* | 惹禍 |
| Tribulation, | *huan$^4$-nan$^4$* | 患難 |
| | | |
| Unaffected person, | *pen$^3$ seh$^4$ ren$^2$* | 本色人 |
| Undecided, | *muh$^2$ iu$^3$ chüeh$^2$-tuan$^4$* | 沒有決斷 |
| Unable to give up, | *lien$^4$ lien$^4$ puh$^1$ shœ$^3$* | 戀戀不捨 |
| Ungrateful to others, | *ku$^1$-fu$^4$ ren$^2$ tih$^4$ en$^1$-ch‘ing$^2$* | 辜負人的恩情 |
| Useless individual, | *puh$^1$ ch‘eng$^2$ ch‘i$^4$ tih$^1$ tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* | 不成器的東西 |
| Unprofitable, | *u$^2$-ih$^2$* | 無益 |
| Understanding, the, | *hsin$^1$-ch‘iao$^4$* | 心竅 |
| | | |
| Violent, | *pao$^4$-tsao$^4$* | 暴躁 |
| Virtue, | *teh$^2$-hsing$^4$* | 德行 |
| Virtues, the Five Constant, | *u$^3$ ch‘ang$^2$* | 五常 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Vagabonds, | *fei$^3$ lei$^4$* | 匪類 |
| Virtue, to practise, | *hsiu$^1$ hsing$^4$* | 修行 |
| Vicious ; worthless, | *huen$^4$-chang$^4$* | 混賬 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Whimsical, | *fan$^3$ fuh$^2$ puh$^1$ ting$^4$* | 返覆不定 |
| Wrong, to confess, | *ren$^4$ ts'o$^4$* | 認錯 |
| Word, to break one's, | *shïh$^1$ hsin$^4$* | 失信 |
| Worried, | *hsin$^1$-chiao$^1$* | 心焦 |
| Wrong, to do knowingly, | *sang$^4$-hsin$^1$* | 喪心 |

---

## II. Theological. 界 道

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Almighty, | *u$^2$-so$^3$-puh$^1$-neng$^2$* | 無所不能 |
| Atone for sin, | *shuh$^2$-tsui$^4$* | 贖罪 |
| Angel, | *t'ien$^1$-shï$^3$* | 天使 |
| Apostle, | *shï$^3$-t'u$^2$* | 使徒 |
| Assembly, | *kong$^1$-huei$^4$* | 公會 |
| Astray, to be led, | *sheo$^4$-mi$^2$-huh$^4$* | 受迷惑 |
| Authority and position, having, | *iu$^3$ ch'üen$^2$ iu$^3$ uei$^4$* | 有權有位 |
| Avenge a private grudge, | *pao$^4$ sï$^1$ ch'eo$^2$* | 報私仇 |
| Astray, to go, | *tseo$^3$ ch'a$^4$ lu$^4$ ; tseo$^3$-mi$^2$-lu$^4$* | 走岔路, 走迷路 |
| Act shamefully, | *tso$^4$ tiu$^1$ lien$^3$ tih$^1$ sï$^4$* | 作丟臉的事 |
| Altered for the worse, | *pien$^4$ huai$^4$ liao$^3$* | 變壞了 |
| Assembly, a deliberative, | *i$^4$ huei$^4$* | 議會 |
| Assembly, general, | *tsong$^3$ huei$^4$* | 總會 |
| Arrange the order of thought, | *p'u$^1$-p'ai$^2$ ts'eng$^2$-ts'ï$^4$* | 鋪排層次 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Backslide, | *pei$^4$-chiao$^4$ ; t'ui$^4$-pu$^4$* | 背敎, 退步 |
| Baptism, terms used for, | *hsi$^3$-li$^3$ ; chin$^4$-li$^3$* | 洗禮, 浸禮 |
| Baptism, to receive, | *sheo$^4$-hsi$^3$-li$^3$* | 受洗禮 |
| Baptismal pool, | *sheo$^4$-hsi$^3$ ch'ï$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 受洗池子 |
| Believe ; have faith in, | *hsiang$^1$-hsin$^4$* | 相信 |
| Bible-reading, | *nien$^4$-sheng$^4$-shu$^1$ li$^3$-pai$^4$* | 念聖書禮拜 |
| Bishop, | *chien$^1$-tuh$^1$; chu$^3$-chiao$^4$* | 監督, 主敎 |
| Burdened by sin, | *tsui$^4$-oh$^4$ iah$^4$ shen$^1$* | 罪惡壓身 |

---

苦海無邊, 回頭是岸. *The sea of trouble is boundless ; repent and there is the shore.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Bible, an itinerary of the heavenly road, | sheng$^4$-shu$^1$shï$^4$shang$^4$ t‘ien$^1$tih$^1$ lu$^4$ ch‘eng$^2$ tan$^1$-tsï$^3$ | 聖書是上天的路程單子 |
| Benefit, not the slightest, | ih$^1$ tien$^3$ ih$^4$-ch‘u$^4$ tu$^1$ muh$^4$ iu$^3$ | 一點益處都沒有 |
| Bible class, | ch‘a$^2$ ching$^1$ huei$^4$ | 查經會 |
| Beseech, | ai$^1$-ch‘iu$^2$ | 哀求 |
| Bring before one by means of speech, | shoh$^1$ tao$^4$ ien$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$ lai$^2$ | 說到眼前來 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Catechumen, | hsioh$^2$-tao$^4$-tih$^4$ | 學道的 |
| Chapel, church, | chiao$^4$-t‘ang$^2$ | 敎堂 |
| Christ, | Chi$^1$-tuh$^1$ | 基督 |
| Christian religion; Christianity, | Ie$^1$-su$^1$-chiao$^4$; Chi$^1$-tuh$^1$ chiao$^4$ | 耶穌敎, 基督敎 |
| Church, the, | chiao$^4$-huei$^4$ | 敎會 |
| Church, join the, | chin$^4$-chiao$^4$; feng$^4$ chiao$^4$ | 進敎, 奉敎 |
| Church rules, | chiao$^4$ - huei$^4$ - tih$^4$ t‘iao$^2$-kuei$^1$ | 敎會的條規 |
| Colporteur, | mai$^4$-shu$^1$-tih$^4$ | 賣書的 |
| Calamity, to avert, and escape the punishment of sin, | hsiao$^1$ tsai$^1$ mien$^3$ tsuï$^4$ | 消災免罪 |
| Customs, evil, | oh$^4$ feng$^1$ oh$^4$ suh$^2$ | 惡風惡俗 |
| Certain, absolutely, | uan$^4$ u$^2$ ih$^1$ shïh$^1$ | 萬無一失 |
| Cupidity, to excite, | tong$^4$ t‘an$^1$-hsin$^1$ | 動貪心 |
| Contribute money to, | chüen$^1$ ch‘ien$^2$ | 捐錢 |
| Crucified with Christ, | ho$^2$ Chi$^1$-tuh$^1$ t‘ong$^2$ ting$^4$ shïh$^2$-tsï$^4$-chia$^4$ | 和基督同釘十字架 |
| Curse, to, | cheo$^3$-ma$^4$ | 咒罵 |
| Crises of life and death, | seng$^1$ sï$^3$ tih$^1$ kuan$^1$-t‘eo$^2$ | 生死的關頭 |
| Christian Endeavour, | mien$^3$-li$^4$ huei$^4$ | 勉勵會 |
| Church meeting, | t‘ang$^2$ huei$^4$ | 堂會 |
| Christian, a, | Chi$^1$-tuh$^1$-t‘u$^2$; Ie$^1$-su$^1$ men$^2$-t‘u$^2$ | 基督徒, 耶穌門徒 |
| Cross, to make the doctrine of, of none effect, | fei$^4$-liao$^3$ shïh$^1$-tsï$^4$-chia$^4$-tih$^1$ tao$^4$-li$^3$ | 廢了十字架的道理 |
| Changeable, | san$^1$ hsin$^1$ rï$^4$ i$^1$ | 三心二意 |
| Change, to pretend to, | chia$^3$ kai$^3$ | 假改 |
| Change, through fear of suffering, | p‘a$^4$ sheo$^4$ k‘u$^3$ ts‘ai$^2$ kai$^3$ | 怕受苦纔改 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Conscious of being reproved by one's own conscience, | *chioh$^{3}$-teh$^{2}$ liang$^{2}$-hsin$^{1}$ tseh$^{4}$-pei$^{4}$ tsï$^{4}$-chi$^{3}$* | 覺得良心責備自己 |
| Carpenter, to live as a, | *shua$^{3}$ ch‘iong$^{2}$ sheo$^{3}$-i$^{4}$ ko$^{4}$ rïh$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 耍窮手藝過日子 |
| Churches, federation of, | *lien$^{2}$ huei$^{4}$* | 聯會 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Deacon, | *chïh$^{2}$-sï$^{4}$* | 執事 |
| Devil, | *mo$^{2}$-kuei$^{3}$* | 魔鬼 |
| Disciple, | *men$^{2}$-t‘u$^{2}$* | 門徒 |
| Duty, | *pen$^{3}$-fen$^{4}$* | 本分 |
| Deceive the Lord, we cannot, | *man$^{2}$ puh$^{1}$ ko$^{4}$ Chu$^{3}$* | 瞞不過主 |
| Desires, illicit, | *sï$^{1}$-ch‘ing$^{2}$* | 私情 |
| Discouraged, | *sang$^{4}$ tan$^{3}$* | 喪膽 |
| Destruction; to perish, | *ch‘en$^{2}$-luen$^{2}$* | 沈淪 |
| Defilement, to contract, | *chan$^{1}$-ran$^{3}$ u$^{1}$-huei$^{4}$* | 沾染污穢 |
| Degeneracy, to have reached a position of, | *tao$^{4}$-liao$^{3}$ pai$^{4}$-huai$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ ti$^{4}$-pu$^{4}$* | 到了敗壞的地步 |
| Depend on, none to, | *u$^{2}$ i$^{3}$ u$^{2}$ k‘ao$^{4}$* | 無倚無靠 |
| Delegate, a, | *huei$^{4}$ shï$^{3}$* | 會使 |
| Division (of sermon) main, | *ta$^{4}$ tuan$^{4}$* | 大段 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Earnestness, | *reh$^{4}$-hsin$^{1}$* | 熱心 |
| Elder, | *chang$^{3}$-lao$^{3}$* | 長老 |
| Enquirer, | *uen$^{4}$-tao$^{4}$-tih$^{1}$; ch‘i$^{3}$-mo$^{4}$-tao$^{4}$-tih$^{1}$* | 問道的，企慕道的 |
| Evangelist, | *ch‘uan$^{2}$ fuh$^{2}$ in$^{1}$ tih$^{1}$* | 傳福音的 |
| Exhort, | *ch‘üen$^{4}$-hua$^{4}$* | 勸化 |
| Expound Scripture, | *chiai$^{4}$-shoh$^{1}$ Sheng$^{4}$-shu$^{1}$* | 解說聖書 |
| Escape from calamity, | *t‘ao$^{2}$ nan$^{4}$* | 逃難 |
| Experience of trouble, | *ching$^{1}$-ko$^{4}$ k‘u$^{3}$-nan$^{4}$* | 經過苦難 |
| Elect, the, | *hsüen$^{3}$-min$^{2}$* | 選民 |
| Enlisted under the banner of the Lord, | *tsai$^{4}$ Chu$^{3}$-tih$^{1}$ ch‘i$^{2}$ hsia$^{4}$ tang$^{4}$-ping$^{1}$* | 在主的旗下當兵 |
| Earnest, to grow, | *reh$^{4}$-ch‘i$^{3}$ hsin$^{1}$ lai$^{3}$* | 熱起心來 |
| Expel from the church, | *ch‘uh$^{1}$ chiao$^{4}$* | 出教 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Forgiveness, the hope of, | *iu$^{3}$ shœ$^{4}$-mien$^{3}$ tih$^{1}$ chï$^{3}$-uang$^{4}$* | 有赦免的指望 |
| Fail half way, | *pan$^{4}$ t‘u$^{2}$ rï$^{2}$ fei$^{4}$* | 半途而廢 |
| Forsake every sin, | *li$^{2}$-k‘ai$^{1}$ ih$^{1}$-ch‘ieh$^{1}$-tih$^{1}$ tsui$^{4}$-oh$^{4}$* | 離開一切的罪惡 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fault, not to be reckoned, a, | *puh$^1$ suan$^4$ iu$^3$ ko$^4$* | 不算有過 |
| Forgive—of superiors and inferiors, | *shœ$^4$; shœ$^4$-mien$^3$* | 赦, 赦免 |
| Forgive—of equals, | *rao$^2$; rao$^2$-shu$^4$* | 饒, 饒恕 |
| God (terms used for), | *Shang$^4$-ti$^4$; Chen$^1$-shen$^2$; T'ien$^1$-chu$^3$* | 上帝, 眞神, 天主 |
| God the Father, | *Sheng$^4$ Fu$^4$* | 聖父 |
| God the Son, | *Sheng$^4$ Tsï$^3$* | 聖子 |
| God the Holy Spirit (terms used for), | *Sheng$^4$ Ling$^2$; Sheng$^4$ Shen$^2$* | 聖靈, 聖神 |
| Gospel, | *fuh$^2$-in$^1$; fuh$^2$-in$^1$ tao$^4$-li$^3$* | 福音, 福音道理 |
| Grace, | *en$^1$-tien$^3$; en$^1$-huei$^4$* | 恩典, 恩惠 |
| Grace, abundant, | *long$^2$* (or *feng$^1$*) *sheng$^4$-tih$^1$ en$^1$-tien$^3$* | 隆 (豐) 盛的恩典 |
| Glory, to, rob God of his, | *toh$^2$ Shang$^4$-ti$^4$-tih$^1$ iong$^2$-iao$^4$* | 奪上帝的榮耀 |
| Goodness, to advance towards, | *uang$^3$ hao$^3$-ch'u$^4$ tseo$^2$* | 往好處走 |
| Heaven, | *t'ien$^1$; t'ien$^1$-t'ang$^2$* | 天, 天堂 |
| Heaven, ascend to, | *sheng$^1$-t'ien$^1$; kuei$^1$ t'ien$^1$* | 升天, 歸天 |
| Heaven, come down from, | *ts'ong$^2$ t'ien$^1$-shang$^4$ chiang$^4$ hsia$^4$-lai$^2$* | 從天上降下來 |
| Heavenly Father, | *T'ien$^1$-fu$^4$* | 天父 |
| Hell, | *ti$^4$-iuh$^4$* (*ü$^4$*) | 地獄 |
| Hymns, | *tsan$^4$-mei$^3$-shï$^1$* | 讚美詩 |
| Happiness, the first step toward, | *chœ$^4$ shï$^4$ teh$^2$ fuh$^2$ tih$^1$ t'eo$^2$ ih$^1$ pu$^4$* | 這是得福的頭一步 |
| Happiness, the way to, | *teh$^2$ fuh$^2$ tih$^1$ men$^2$-lu$^4$* | 得福的門路 |
| Happiness, unable to obtain true, | *teh$^2$ puh$^1$ choh$^2$ chen$^1$ fuh$^2$* | 得不着眞福 |
| Hardened and impenitent, | *ing$^4$ hsin$^1$ puh$^1$ huei$^3$-kai$^3$* | 硬心不悔改 |
| Heart, difficult to cure, | *hsin$^1$ ping$^4$ nan$^2$ i$^1$* | 心病難醫 |
| Holy Spirit, to quench, | *pa$^3$ Sheng$^4$-ling$^2$ hsiao$^1$ mieh$^4$ liao$^3$* | 把聖靈消滅了 |
| Holy Spirit, filled with, | *pei$^4$ Sheng$^4$-ling$^2$ ch'ong$^1$-man$^3$ liao$^3$* | 被聖靈充滿了 |
| Hope, to lose, | *shïh$^1$-liao$^3$ p'an$^4$-uang$^4$* | 失了盼望 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Immersion, terms used for, | *chin*$^4$-*li*$^3$; *hsi*$^3$-*li*$^3$; *chan*$^4$-*li*$^3$ | 浸禮,洗禮,蘸禮 |
| Implore, | *k'en*$^3$-*ch'iu*$^2$ | 懇求 |
| Incredulous, | *pan*$^4$ *hsin*$^4$ *pan*$^4$ *i*$^2$ | 半信半疑 |
| Immortality, | *ch'ang*$^2$ *seng*$^1$ *puh*$^1$ *lao*$^3$ | 長生不老 |
| Indifferent; cold, | *leng*$^3$-*tan*$^4$ | 冷淡 |
| Imitate the Saviour's example, | *hsiao*$^4$-*fah*$^4$ *Chiu*$^4$-*chu*$^3$-*tih*$^1$ *pang*$^3$-*iang*$^4$ | 效法救主的榜樣 |
| Justice must not be sacrificed to mercy, | *puh*$^1$ *k'o*$^3$ *i*$^3$ *en*$^1$ *fei*$^4$ *i*$^4$ | 不可以恩廢義 |
| Jesus, | *Ie*$^1$-*su*$^1$ | 耶穌 |
| Judgment, | *shen*$^3$-*p'an*$^4$ | 審判 |
| Judgment after death, there is, | *sï*$^3$ *heo*$^4$ *iu*$^3$ *shen*$^3$-*p'an*$^4$ | 死後有審判 |
| Justification, | *teh*$^2$ *ch'eng*$^1$ *uei*$^2$ *i*$^4$; *ch'eng*$^1$-*i*$^4$ | 得稱爲義,稱義 |
| Last day, | *t'ien*$^1$-*ti*$^4$-*tih*$^1$ *moh*$^4$-*rïh*$^4$ | 天地的末日 |
| Litany, the, | *tsong*$^3$-*tao*$^3$ *uen*$^2$ | 總禱文 |
| Lead us in prayer, | *ling*$^3$ *o*$^3$-*men*$^2$ *tso*$^4$ *tao*$^3$-*kao*$^4$ | 領我們做禱告 |
| Lord's Supper, | *sheng*$^4$-*ts'an*$^1$ | 聖餐 |
| Love one another, | *pi*$^3$-*ts'ï*$^3$-*hsiang*$^1$-*ai*$^4$ | 彼此相愛 |
| Loving-kindness, | *ren*$^2$-*ts'ï*$^2$ | 仁慈 |
| Labour in vain, | *t'u*$^2$ *lao*$^2$ *u*$^2$ *ih*$^4$ | 徒勞無益 |
| Load, to put down a heavy, | *hsie*$^4$-*hsia*$^4$ *chong*$^4$ *tan*$^4$ | 卸下重擔 |
| Leprosy, full of, | *ih*$^1$-*shen*$^1$-*tih*$^1$ *ta*$^4$-*ma*$^2$-*feng*$^1$ | 一身的大痲瘋 |
| Lord, to belong to, | *shuh*$^4$ *Chu*$^3$ *tih*$^1$ | 屬主的 |
| Look up to the Lord, | *iang*$^3$-*uang*$^4$ *Chu*$^3$ | 仰望主 |
| Live, to make things live (descriptive), | *pa*$^3$ *sï*$^4$-*ch'ing*$^2$ *shoh*$^1$ *hoh*$^4$-*liao*$^3$ | 把事情說活了 |
| Mediator, | *chong*$^1$-*pao*$^3$ | 中保 |
| Member, church, | *chiao*$^4$-*iu*$^3$ | 敎友 |
| Member, to admit, | *sheo*$^1$ *chiao*$^4$-*iu*$^3$ | 收敎友 |
| Members, make a list of, | *tsao*$^4$ *ih*$^1$-*pen*$^3$ *ts'eh*$^4$-*tsï*$^3$ | 造一本册子 |
| Members, strike name off list of, | *keh*$^2$ *ming*$^2$-*tsï*$^3$ | 革名字 |
| Merit, | *kong*$^1$-*lao*$^2$ | 功勞 |
| Meet together, to, | *chü*$^4$-*huei*$^4$ | 聚會 |
| Moved or affected by outward things, | *uai*$^4$ *uh*$^4$ *so*$^3$ *kan*$^3$ | 外物所感 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Miscalculate, | *ta$^3$ ts‘o$^4$ liao$^3$ suan$^4$-p‘an$^2$* | 打錯了算盤 |
| Majestic, | *uei$^1$-ien$^2$* | 威嚴 |
| Meeting, to lead a, | *ling$^3$ huei$^4$* | 領會 |
| Meeting, leader of, | *ling$^3$-huei$^4$-tih$^1$* | 領會的 |
| Meeting, to open a, | *k‘ai$^1$ huei$^4$* | 開會 |
| Meeting, to close a, | *san$^4$ huei$^4$* | 散會 |
| Mind, to come to a right state of, | *hsin$^1$-li$^3$ ming$^2$-peh$^4$ ko$^4$-lai$^2$* | 心裏明白過來 |
| Minutes, or records, | *chi$^4$-luh$^4$* | 記錄 |
| Moderator, or President, | *huei$^4$ cheng$^4$* | 會正 |
| Missionary, | *chiao$^4$-sï$^4$* | 敎士 |
| Missionary, lady, | *nü$^3$ chiao$^4$-sï$^4$* | 女敎士 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| New; thoroughly renewed, | *huan$^4$-ran$^2$ ih$^1$ hsin$^1$* | 煥然一新 |
| Narrate, | *shuh$^4$-shoh$^1$* | 述說 |
| New birth, | *ch‘ong$^2$-seng$^1$* | 重生 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Office, | *chïh$^2$-fen$^4$* | 職分 |
| Omnipresent, | *u$^2$-so$^3$-puh$^1$-tsai$^4$* | 無所不在 |
| Omniscient, | *u$^2$-so$^3$-puh$^1$-chï$^1$* | 無所不知 |
| Open a place of worship, | *k‘ai$^1$-sheh$^4$ chiao$^4$-t‘ang$^2$* | 開設敎堂 |
| Office, to lose an, | *shïh$^1$-liao$^3$ chïh$^2$-fen$^4$* | 失了職分 |
| One with Christ, | *ü$^3$ Chi$^1$-tuh$^1$ lien$^2$-hoh$^2$* | 與基督聯合 |
| Outline, general, | *ta$^4$ kuan$^1$ chieh$^2$ muh$^4$* | 大關節目 |
| Order; arrangement, | *ts‘eng$^2$-ts‘ï$^4$* | 層次 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pastor, | *muh$^4$-sï$^1$* | 牧師 |
| Prayer-meeting, | *tao$^3$-kao$^4$ li$^3$-pai$^4$* | 禱告禮拜 |
| Preach, | *chiang$^3$-tao$^4$-li$^3$* | 講道理 |
| Preacher, | *ch‘uan$^2$-tao$^4$-tih$^1$* | 傳道的 |
| Prophet, | *hsien$^1$-chï$^1$* | 先知 |
| Propagate religion, | *ch‘uan$^2$-chiao$^4$* | 傳敎 |
| Pulpit, | *chiang$^3$-shu$^1$-t‘ai$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 講書臺子 |
| Plans, quite independent of men's, | *pan$^4$ tien$^3$ puh$^1$ iu$^2$ ren$^2$ ta$^3$ suan$^4$* | 半點不由人打算 |
| Perfection, cannot have both to, | *puh$^1$ neng$^2$ liang$^3$ ch‘üen$^2$* | 不能兩全 |
| Profit, seeking one's own, | *t‘u$^2$ tsï$^4$-chi$^3$-tih$^1$ li$^4$-ih$^2$* | 圖自己的利益 |
| Pope, | *chiao$^4$ huang$^2$* | 敎皇 |
| Prayer, public, | *kong$^1$ ch‘i$^2$* | 公祈 |
| Pray with one accord, | *ch‘i$^2$ hsin$^1$ ch‘i$^2$-tao$^3$* | 齊心祈禱 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Prodigal's return, | *lang$^4$-tsï$^3$ huei$^2$-t‘eo$^2$* | 浪子回頭 |
| Progress, to make good, in the Truth, | *tsai$^4$ tao$^4$-li$^3$ shang$^4$ ta$^4$ iu$^3$ chang$^3$-chin$^4$* | 在道理上大有長進 |
| Progress, gradual. | *ih$^1$ pu$^4$ ih$^1$ pu$^4$ uang$^3$ ch‘ien$^2$ hsing$^2$* | 一步一步往前行 |
| Persuade, | *ch‘üen$^4$-mien$^3$* | 勸勉 |
| Pay attention, | *liu$^2$ hsin$^1$ t‘ing$^1$* | 留心聽 |
| Prayer, form of, | *tao$^3$-kao$^4$ uen$^2$* | 禱告文 |
| Prayer is efficacious, | *tao$^3$-kao$^4$ shï$^4$ ta$^4$ iu$^3$ hsiao$^4$-ien$^4$* | 禱告是大有效驗 |
| Presbytery, | *lao$^3$ huei$^4$* | 老會 |
| Priest (Roman), | *shen$^2$-fu$^4$* | 神父 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Receive; accept, | *chieh$^1$-sheo$^4$* | 接受 |
| Repent and amend, | *huei$^2$-hsin$^1$-kai$^3$-ko$^4$* | 回心改過 |
| Reward good and punish evil, | *shang$^3$-shan$^4$ fah$^2$-oh$^4$* | 賞善罰惡 |
| Rise again, | *fuh$^4$-hoh$^4$* | 復活 |
| Repent, too late to, | *heo$^4$-huei$^3$ puh$^1$ chih$^4$* | 後悔不及 |
| Recompense, several kinds of, | *chi$^3$ iang$^4$ tih$^1$ pao$^4$-ing$^4$* | 幾樣的報應 |
| Rash disciple, | *mao$^4$-shïh$^2$ men$^2$-t‘u$^2$* | 冒失門徒 |
| Reckless, | *tsï$^4$ pao$^4$ tsï$^4$ ch‘i$^4$* | 自暴自棄 |
| Revival meetings, | *fen$^4$ hsing$^1$ huei$^4$* | 奮興會 |
| Redeemed, the, | *shuh$^2$ min$^2$* | 贖民 |
| Roll, to call the, | *tien$^3$ ming$^2$* | 點名 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Saint, | *sheng$^4$-t‘u$^2$* | 聖徒 |
| Salvation, to obtain, | *teh$^4$-chiu$^4$* | 得救 |
| Scripture says, | *ching$^1$-shang$^4$ shoh$^1$* | 經上說 |
| Sin; evil, | *tsui$^4$-oh$^4$* | 罪惡 |
| Sin, to commit, | *fan$^4$-tsui$^4$ tso$^4$-oh$^4$* | 犯罪作惡 |
| Submit to the Lord, | *kuei$^1$-hsiang$^2$ Chu$^3$* | 歸降主 |
| Submit to the Lord's dealings, | *p‘ei$^4$-fuh$^4$ Chu$^3$ so$^3$ an$^1$-p‘ai$^2$ tih$^1$* | 佩服主所安排的 |
| Suddenly assemble and suddenly disperse, | *huh$^1$ chü$^4$ huh$^1$ san$^4$* | 忽聚忽散 |
| Singleness of heart, | *chuan$^1$hsin$^1$ch‘eng$^2$i$^4$tih$^1$* | 專心誠意的 |
| Sum up, to, | *tsong$^3$ ch‘i$^3$-lai$^2$ shoh$^1$* | 總起來說 |
| Suffer in our stead, | *t‘i$^4$ o$^3$-men$^2$ sheo$^4$ k‘u$^3$* | 替我們受苦 |
| Self-evident, | *hsien$^3$ rï$^2$ i$^4$ chien$^4$ tih$^1$* | 顯而易見的 |
| Sect; religious body, | *chiao$^4$-men$^2$* | 教門 |
| Salt, turned into a pillar of, | *pien$^4$ch‘eng$^2$ien$^2$chu$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 變成鹽柱子 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sin, involved in, | *hsien$^{4}$ tsai$^{4}$ tsui$^{4}$ li$^{3}$* | 陷在罪裏 |
| Scriptures, to search, | *chʻa$^{2}$-kʻan$^{4}$ sheng$^{4}$-ching$^{1}$* | 查看聖經 |
| Sympathise with, | *tʻi$^{3}$-tʻieh$^{4}$ ren$^{2}$ tih$^{1}$ hsin$^{1}$* | 體貼人的心 |
| Self-existent, | *tsï$^{4}$-ran$^{2}$ rï$^{2}$ iu$^{3}$ tih$^{1}$* | 自然而有的 |
| Serve God, | *sï$^{4}$-feng$^{4}$ Shang$^{4}$-ti$^{4}$* | 事奉上帝 |
| Suffering, intermittent, | *ling$^{2}$-sui$^{4}$ kʻu$^{3}$* | 零碎苦 |
| Sermon (a coined term), | *sheng$^{4}$ luen$^{4}$* | 聖論 |
| Singing, to lead the, | *ling$^{3}$ chʻang$^{4}$* | 領唱 |
| Standing; position, | *so$^{3}$ chan$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ ti$^{4}$-pu$^{4}$* | 所站的地步 |
| Synod, | *ta$^{4}$-huei$^{4}$* | 大會 |
| Sanctify, | *chʻeng$^{2}$ uei$^{2}$ sheng$^{4}$-chieh$^{2}$* | 成爲聖潔 |
| Spiritual, | *shuh$^{4}$ ling$^{2}$ tih$^{1}$* | 屬靈的 |
| Ten Commandments, the, | *shïh$^{1}$-tʻiao$^{2}$-kiai$^{4}$* | 十條誡 |
| Testify, | *tso$^{4}$-chien$^{4}$-cheng$^{4}$* | 做見證 |
| Thank, | *kan$^{3}$-hsie$^{4}$; kan$^{3}$-chih$^{4}$* | 感謝，感激 |
| Three persons in one substance; the Trinity, | *san$^{1}$-uei$^{4}$ ih$^{1}$-tʻi$^{3}$* | 三位一體 |
| Tract, | *chʻüen$^{4}$-shï$^{4}$-uen$^{2}$* | 勸世文 |
| Trust, | *i$^{3}$-kʻao$^{4}$* | 依靠 |
| Trust in the Saviour, | *kʻao$^{4}$ Chiu$^{4}$-chu$^{3}$* | 靠救主 |
| Typify; a type, | *ü$^{4}$-piao$^{3}$* | 預表 |
| Two-sided affair, | *liang$^{3}$ mien$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ sï$^{4}$* | 兩面的事 |
| Tune Book, | *shï$^{1}$-pʻu$^{3}$* | 詩譜 |
| Transgression, | *ko$^{4}$-fan$^{4}$* | 過犯 |
| Unstable, | *tong$^{1}$ liu$^{2}$ tong$^{1}$ lai$^{2}$, hsi$^{1}$ liu$^{2}$ hsi$^{1}$ chʻü$^{4}$* | 東流東來，西流西去 |
| Unity, a spirit of, | *hoh$^{4}$ rï$^{2}$ uei$^{2}$ ih$^{1}$ tih$^{1}$ hsin$^{1}$* | 合而爲一的心 |
| United in one, | *hoh$^{4}$ rï$^{2}$ uei$^{2}$ ih$^{1}$* | 合而爲一 |
| Virtue, to practise, | *lien$^{4}$-hsi$^{2}$ teh$^{4}$ hsing$^{4}$* | 練習德行 |
| Wickedness of all sorts, | *chien$^{1}$ tao$^{4}$ hsie$^{2}$ in$^{2}$* | 姦盜邪淫 |
| Warning to us now, to be a, | *tso$^{4}$ o$^{3}$-men$^{2}$ hsien$^{4}$-tsai$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ chien$^{4}$-kiai$^{4}$* | 作我們現在的鑒戒 |
| Worship, to conduct, | *ling$^{3}$ li$^{3}$-pai$^{4}$* | 領禮拜 |

# 禱告文

大慈大悲的天父上帝、我們這些罪人奉靠救主的尊名、來到父的台前求恩、求父看主的功勞悅納我們、開恩憐憫我們、因爲我們的罪極其衆多、該做的並沒去做、不該做的偏要去做、眞叫我們在至聖至潔的主面前抱愧、不敢抬頭、只得懇求主不照我們的罪待我們、照父的慈愛、大施恩典、饒恕我們一切的不義、使我們因信救主的話、靠他的大功、就可以蒙恩得救。感謝天父因爲疼愛我們到了極處、打發救主來替我們受苦、擔當我們的罪、在十字架上捨命流血、又感謝天父因他已經復活了、坐在父的右邊、執掌天上地下一切的權柄、能搭救我們、能引導我們走天路、又能把我們救到底、永遠不離開我們、永遠不拋撇我們。現在求主賜力量給我們、叫我們隨時隨地遵主的旨意行事、叫我們遠離一切的惡行、作事對得住人、又對得住神、凡事不虧良心、使人因見我們的好行爲、就把榮耀歸在主的名下、又求主叫我們誠心事奉你、使你的國興旺、魔鬼的國衰敗、叫無數的人脫了魔鬼的手、成了天父的兒女、求主准我們的禱告、求錯的饒恕我們、求不到的添補給我們、因爲我們所求所謝、都是奉靠救主的尊名、阿們。

# THE BOOKS OF THE OLD TESTAMENT. 舊約

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Genesis | *Ch‘uang*$^{3}$*-shï*$^{4}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 創世記 |
| Exodus | *Ch‘uh*$^{1}$ *Iai*$^{2}$*-chih*$^{2}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 出埃及記 |
| Leviticus | *Li*$^{4}$*-uei*$^{4}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 利未記 |
| Numbers | *Min*$^{2}$*-su*$^{3}$ *chi*$^{3}$*-lioh*$^{4}$ | 民數紀畧 |
| Deuteronomy | *Shen*$^{1}$*-ming*$^{4}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 申命記 |
| Joshua | *Ioh*$^{4}$*-shu*$^{1}$*-ia*$^{4}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 約書亞記 |
| Judges | *Sï*$^{4}$*-sï*$^{1}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 士師記 |
| Ruth | *Lu*$^{4}$*-teh*$^{4}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 路得記 |
| I. Samuel | *Sah*$^{3}$*-mu*$^{3}$*-rï*$^{3}$ *ch‘ien*$^{2}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 撒母耳前書 |
| II. Samuel | *Sah*$^{3}$*-mu*$^{3}$*-rï*$^{3}$ *heo*$^{4}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 撒母耳後書 |
| I. Kings | *Lieh*$^{4}$*-uang*$^{2}$*-chi*$^{4}$*-lioh*$^{4}$, *shang*$^{4}$ | 列王紀畧上 |
| II. Kings | *Lieh*$^{4}$*-uang*$^{2}$*-chi*$^{4}$*-lioh*$^{4}$, *hsia*$^{4}$ | 列王紀畧下 |
| I. Chronicles | *Lih*$^{4}$*-tai*$^{4}$*-chï*$^{4}$*-lioh*$^{4}$, *shang*$^{4}$ | 歷代志畧上 |
| II. Chronicles | *Lih*$^{4}$*-tai*$^{4}$*-chï*$^{4}$*-lioh*$^{4}$, *hsia*$^{4}$ | 歷代志畧下 |
| Ezra | *I*$^{3}$*-sï*$^{1}$*-lah*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 以斯喇書 |
| Nehemiah | *Ni*$^{2}$*-hsi*$^{1}$*-mi*$^{3}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 尼希米記 |
| Esther | *I*$^{3}$*-sï*$^{1}$*-t‘ieh*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 以斯帖書 |
| Job | *Ioh*$^{4}$*-peh*$^{2}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 約伯記 |
| Psalms | *Shï*$^{1}$*-p‘ien*$^{1}$ | 詩篇 |
| Proverbs | *Chen*$^{1}$*-ien*$^{2}$ | 箴言 |
| Ecclesiastes | *Ch‘uan*$^{2}$*-tao*$^{4}$*-chï*$^{1}$*-shu*$^{1}$ | 傳道之書 |
| The Song of Solomon | *Ia*$^{3}$ *Ko*$^{1}$ | 雅歌 |
| Isaiah | *I*$^{3}$*-sai*$^{4}$*-ia*$^{4}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 以賽亞書 |
| Jeremiah | *Ie*$^{1}$*-li*$^{4}$*-mi*$^{3}$ *chi*$^{4}$ | 耶利米記 |
| Lamentations | *Ie*$^{1}$*-li*$^{4}$*-mi*$^{3}$ *Ai*$^{1}$*-ko*$^{1}$ | 耶利米哀歌 |
| Ezekiel | *I*$^{3}$*-hsi*$^{1}$*-chieh*$^{2}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 以西結書 |
| Daniel | *Tan*$^{4}$*-i*$^{3}$*-li*$^{3}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 但以理書 |
| Hosea | *Ho*$^{2}$*-hsi*$^{1}$*-a*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 何西阿書 |
| Joel | *Ioh*$^{4}$*-rï*$^{3}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 約珥書 |
| Amos | *Ia*$^{4}$*-mo*$^{3}$*-sï*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 亞麼斯書 |
| Obadiah | *A*$^{1}$*-pa*$^{1}$*-ti*$^{3}$*-ia*$^{4}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 阿巴底亞書 |
| Jonah | *Ioh*$^{4}$*-na*$^{2}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 約拿書 |
| Micah | *Mi*$^{2}$*-chia*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 彌迦書 |
| Nahum | *Na*$^{4}$*-hong*$^{2}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 那鴻書 |
| Habakkuk | *Ha*$^{1}$*-pa*$^{1}$*-kuh*$^{4}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 哈巴谷書 |
| Zephaniah | *Hsi*$^{1}$*-fan*$^{1}$*-ia*$^{3}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 西番雅書 |
| Haggai | *Ha*$^{1}$*-kai*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 哈該書 |
| Zechariah | *Sa*$^{3}$*-chia*$^{1}$*-li*$^{4}$*-ia*$^{4}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 撒加利亞書 |
| Malachi | *Ma*$^{3}$*-la*$^{1}$*-chi*$^{1}$ *Shu*$^{1}$ | 馬拉基書 |

---

開卷有益 *In the opening of the book there is profit*

## THE BOOKS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. 約新

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Matthew | *Ma*$^3$*-t‘ai*$^4$ | 馬太 |
| Mark | *Ma*$^3$*-k‘o*$^3$ | 馬可 |
| Luke | *Lu*$^4$*-chia*$^1$ | 路加 |
| John | *Ioh*$^4$*-han*$^4$ | 約翰 |
| The Acts | *Shï*$^3$*-t‘u*$^2$ *Hsing*$^2$*-chuan*$^4$ | 使徒行傳 |
| Epistle to the Romans | *Lo*$^2$*-ma*$^3$*-ren*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 羅馬人書 |
| I. Corinthians | *Ko*$^1$*-lin*$^2$*-to*$^1$*, ch‘ien*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 哥林多前書 |
| II. Corinthians | *Ko*$^1$*-lin*$^2$*-to*$^1$*, heo*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 哥林多後書 |
| Galatians | *Chia*$^1$*-la*$^1$*-t‘ai*$^4$*-ren*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 加拉太人書 |
| Ephesians | *I*$^3$*-fuh*$^2$*-so*$^3$*-ren*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 以弗所人書 |
| Philippians | *Fei*$^2$*-lih*$^4$*-pi*$^3$*-ren*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 腓立比人書 |
| Colossians | *Ko*$^1$*-lo*$^2$*-hsi*$^1$*-ren*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 歌羅西人書 |
| I. Thessalonians | *T‘ieh*$^4$ *- sah*$^3$ *- lo*$^2$ *- ni*$^2$ *- chia*$^1$ *ch‘ien*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 帖撒羅尼迦前書 |
| II. Thessalonians | *T‘ieh*$^4$*-sah*$^3$*-lo*$^2$*-ni*$^2$*-chia*$^1$ *heo*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 帖撒羅尼迦後書 |
| I. Timothy | *T‘i*$^2$*-mo*$^2$*-t‘ai*$^4$ *ch‘ien*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 提摩太前書 |
| II. Timothy | *T‘i*$^2$*-mo*$^2$*-t‘ai*$^4$ *heo*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 提摩太後書 |
| Titus | *T‘i*$^2$*-to*$^1$ *Shu*$^1$ | 提多書 |
| Philemon | *Fei*$^2$*-lih*$^4$*-men*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 腓立門書 |
| Hebrews | *Hsi*$^1$*-peh*$^2$*-lai*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 希伯來書 |
| James | *Ia*$^3$*-koh*$^3$ *Shu*$^1$ | 雅各書 |
| I. Peter | *Pi*$^3$*-teh*$^4$*, ch‘ien*$^2$ *Shu*$^1$ | 彼得前書 |
| II. Peter | *Pi*$^3$*-teh*$^4$*, heo*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 彼得後書 |
| I. John | *Ioh*$^4$*-han*$^4$*, ih*$^1$ *Shu*$^1$ | 約翰一書 |
| II. John | *Ioh*$^4$*-han*$^4$*, rï*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 約翰二書 |
| III. John | *Ioh*$^4$*-han*$^4$*, san*$^1$ *Shu*$^1$ | 約翰三書 |
| Jude | *Iu*$^2$*-ta*$^4$ *Shu*$^1$ | 猶大書 |
| Revelation | *Ch‘i*$^3$<br>*Meh*$^4$ *shï-*$^4$*luh*$^4$ | 啟<br>默 示錄 |

恩同再造 *Grace, which, so to speak, makes us over again.*

## BUDDHISM. 敎 佛

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ancestral tablet, before the, | ling$^{2}$-ch‘ien$^{2}$ | 靈 前 |
| Barge of mercy, | ts‘i$^{2}$-hang$^{2}$ | 慈 航 |
| Buddha, highest title of, | ru$^{2}$-lai$^{2}$-fuh$^{2}$ | 如 來 佛 |
| Buddha, Shakyamuni, | shih$^{4}$-chia$^{1}$-meo$^{2}$-ni$^{2}$ fuh$^{2}$ | 釋 迦 牟 尼 佛 |
| Buddha Amida, I put my trust in, | na$^{3}$ mo$^{2}$ o$^{1}$-mi$^{2}$-t‘o$^{2}$-fuh$^{2}$ | 南 無 阿 彌 陀 佛 |
| Buddhism, | fuh$^{2}$-chiao$^{4}$ | 佛 敎 |
| Buddhists, | fah$^{4}$-men$^{2}$ | 法 門 |
| Cautions of Buddha, five, | u$^{3}$-chiai$^{4}$ | 五 戒 |
| Crackers, | pien$^{1}$-pao$^{4}$ ; pao$^{4}$-chuh$^{4}$ | 鞭 爆, 爆 竹 |
| Chiu-hua, idol of, | chiu$^{3}$-hua$^{2}$ p‘u$^{2}$-sa$^{1}$ | 九 華 菩 薩 |
| Demons, | kuei$^{3}$-shen$^{2}$ | 鬼 神 |
| Demons, orphan and neglected spirits, | ku$^{1}$-huen$^{2}$; ie$^{3}$-kuei$^{3}$ | 孤 魂, 野 鬼 |
| Divine by means of tallies, | ch‘iu$^{2}$ ch‘ien$^{1}$ | 求 籤 |
| Festival of all souls, to celebrate the, | ta$^{3}$-chiao$^{1}$ | 打 醮 |
| Fore-ordination, | iu$^{3}$-üen$^{2}$ | 有 緣 |
| Four births—womb, moisture, egg, metamorphosis, | t‘ai$^{1}$, luan$^{3}$, shih$^{1}$, hua$^{4}$ | 胎 卵 濕 化 |
| God of medicine, | ioh$^{4}$-uang$^{2}$ ta$^{4}$ ti$^{4}$ | 藥 王 大 帝 |
| Goddess of Mercy, | kuan$^{1}$-in$^{1}$ p‘u$^{2}$-sa$^{1}$ | 觀 音 菩 薩 |
| Grave, the, | huang$^{2}$-ch‘üen$^{2}$ | 黃 泉 |
| Happiness, extreme, | chih$^{2}$-loh$^{4}$ | 極 樂 |
| Hell, | ti$^{4}$-iuh$^{4}$ (ü) | 地 獄 |
| Hell of the oil cauldron, | iu$^{2}$-ko$^{1}$ | 油 鍋 |
| Hell of the "pointed-knife hill," | chien$^{1}$-tao$^{1}$ shan$^{1}$ | 尖 刀 山 |
| If there is prayer there will be a response, | iu$^{3}$ ch‘iu$^{2}$ pih$^{4}$ ing$^{4}$ | 有 求 必 應 |
| Incantations, draw, | hua$^{4}$-fu$^{2}$ | 畫 符 |
| Incantations, recite, | nien$^{4}$-cheo$^{3}$ | 念 咒 |
| Idol, | p‘u$^{2}$-sa$^{1}$ ; ni$^{2}$-t‘ai$^{1}$ | 菩 薩, 泥 胎 |
| Image, | eo$^{3}$-hsiang$^{4}$ | 偶 像 |
| Incense, burn, | shao$^{1}$-hsiang$^{1}$ | 燒 香 |

---

舌尖殺人不見血 *To slay men with the tip of the tongue and see no blood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Mass for a soul, to say, | *fang$^4$-ien$^4$-k‘eo$^3$* | 放 燄 口 |
| Meditation, sit cross-legged in, | *ta$^3$-p‘an$^2$ tso$^4$* | 打 盤 坐 |
| Merit, | *kong$^1$-teh$^4$* | 功 德 |
| Nun, | *ni$^2$-ku$^1$; ku$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 妮 姑, 姑 子 |
| Nunnery, | *an$^1$-t‘ang$^2$* | 庵 堂 |
| Ordination, summon to an, | *ch‘uan$^2$-chiai$^4$* | 傳 戒 |
| Paradise, the western, | *hsi$^1$-t‘ien$^1$* | 西 天 |
| Prayers, to recite, | *nien$^4$-ching$^1$* | 念 經 |
| Prayers to Buddha, to chant, | *nien$^4$-fuh$^2$* | 念 佛 |
| Priest, | *ho$^2$-shang$^4$* | 和 尙 |
| Priest, to become a, | *ch‘uh$^1$-chia$^1$* | 出 家 |
| Propagate Buddhism, | *chuan$^3$-fah$^4$-luen$^2$* | 轉 法 輪 |
| P‘u-tu, island of, | *nan$^2$-hai$^3$ p‘u$^3$-tu$^4$* | 南 海 普 渡 |
| Reform, | *hsiu$^1$-hsing$^4$* | 修 行 |
| Release living animals—a work of merit, | *fang$^4$-seng$^1$* | 放 生 |
| Religious exercises, perform, | *tso$^4$-kong$^1$-fu$^1$* | 做 工 夫 |
| Rosary, | *su$^4$-chu$^1$* | 素 珠 |
| Shansi, sacred resort in, | *u$^3$-t‘ai$^2$ shan$^1$* | 五 台 山 |
| Szechuan, sacred resort in, | *o$^2$-mei$^2$ shan$^1$* | 峨 眉 山 |
| Save from trouble and sorrow—a title of the Goddess of Mercy, | *chiu$^4$-k‘u$^3$-chiu$^4$-nan$^4$* | 救 苦 救 難 |
| Suffering, release souls from, | *ch‘ao$^1$-tu$^4$* | 超 渡 |
| Suffering, sea of, | *k‘u$^3$-hai$^3$* | 苦 海 |
| Temple, | *miao$^4$-ü$^3$* | 廟 宇 |
| Temple, dragon, | *long$^2$-uang$^2$ miao$^4$* | 龍 王 廟 |
| Temple of a Buddha who saves, | *ti$^4$-tsang$^1$-an$^1$* | 地 藏 庵 |
| Temple of city god, | *ch‘eng$^2$-huang$^2$ miao$^4$* | 城 隍 廟 |
| Temple of god of earth, | *t‘u$^3$-ti$^4$ ts‘ï$^2$* | 土 地 祠 |
| Temple of god of fire, | *ho$^3$-shen$^2$ miao$^4$* | 火 神 廟 |
| Temple of god of wealth, | *ts‘ai$^2$-shen$^2$ miao$^4$* | 財 神 廟 |
| Temple of the iron Buddha, | *t‘ieh$^3$-fuh$^2$ an$^1$* | 鐵 佛 庵 |
| Three Precious Ones—the Buddhist Trinity, | *san$^1$-pao$^3$* | 三 寶 |
| To take vows as a priest, | *sheo$^4$-chiai$^4$* | 受 戒 |
| Transmigration, | *luen$^2$-huei$^2$* | 輪 迴 |
| Vegetarianism, practise, | *ch‘ih$^1$-chai$^1$-pa$^3$-su$^4$* | 喫 齋 把 素 |
| West Lake—near Hangchow, | *hsi$^1$-hu$^2$* | 西 湖 |

# TAOISM. 教道

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Altar, | *t‘an$^2$-men$^2$* | 壇門 |
| Attend to the seventh day funeral rites, | *li$^3$ ch‘ih$^1$* | 理七 |
| Celestial excellency, | *üen$^2$-shi$^3$ t‘ien$^1$-tsuen$^1$* | 元始天尊 |
| Chaos, | *huen$^4$-tuen$^4$* | 混沌 |
| Classic, Taoist, | *tao$^4$-teh$^4$ ching$^1$* | 道德經 |
| Cleanse a house from evil, | *ta$^3$-sao$^3$-ching$^4$* | 打掃浄 |
| Die and not perish, | *sï$^3$-rï$^2$-puh$^1$-uang$^2$* | 死而不亡 |
| Elysium, | *hsien$^1$-ching$^4$* | 仙境 |
| Fairies, | *shen$^2$-hsien$^1$* | 神仙 |
| Feast in middle of 7th month, | *tso$^4$ ch‘ih$^1$ üeh$^4$ pan$^4$* | 做七月半 |
| Festival in honour of ancestors in 10th month, | *tso$^4$ shïh$^1$ üeh$^4$ chao$^1$* | 做十月朝 |
| First man, | *p‘an$^2$-ku$^3$* | 盤古 |
| Five elements—gold, wood, water, fire, earth, | *chin$^1$ muh$^4$ shui$^3$ ho$^3$ t‘u$^3$* | 金木水火土 |
| Five senses, | *u$^3$ kuan$^1$* | 五官 |
| ,, tastes, | *u$^3$ uei$^4$* | 五味 |
| ,, viscera, | *u$^3$ tsang$^1$* | 五臟 |
| Get rid of life and death, | *t‘oh$^3$ seng$^1$ sï$^3$* | 脫生死 |
| Gem Emperor, | *ü$^4$-huang$^2$ ta$^4$ ti$^4$* | 玉皇大帝 |
| Gem Kingdom, Capital of, | *ü$^4$-ching$^1$* | 玉京 |
| God of Fire, | *ho$^3$ shen$^2$* | 火神 |
| ,, of Earth, | *t‘u$^3$ shen$^2$* | 土神 |
| Gods, | *shen$^2$-ming$^2$* | 神明 |
| Head of the Taoist sect, | *chang$^1$ t‘ien$^1$-sï$^1$* | 張天師 |
| Heaven, former, | *hsien$^1$-t‘ien$^1$* | 先天 |
| ,, latter, | *heo$^4$-t‘ien$^1$* | 後天 |
| Heavenly worth, | *t‘ien$^1$-pao$^3$* | 天寶 |
| Heretical doctrines, | *p‘ang$^2$-men$^2$-tso$^3$-tao$^4$* | 旁門左道 |
| *In* and *Iang*, study of, | *in$^1$ iang$^2$ hsioh$^2$* | 陰陽學 |
| Intelligent worth, | *ling$^2$-pao$^3$* | 靈寶 |

---

猫哭老鼠, 假慈悲 *The cat crying over the rat—false compassion.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Lanterns**, procession of, | *tseo*$^3$*-teng*$^1$ | 走燈 |
| Lao-tze, founder of Taoism, | *Li*$^3$*-lao*$^3$*-chüin*$^1$ | 李老君 |
| Lao-chüin the great, | *t‘ai*$^4$*-shang*$^4$*-lao*$^3$*-chüin*$^1$ | 太上老君 |
| Malignant influences, | *mo*$^2$*-ch‘i*$^4$ | 魔氣 |
| Motion and rest ; noise, | *tong*$^3$*-ching*$^4$ | 動靜 |
| Noxious influences, | *hsie*$^2$*-ch‘i*$^4$ | 邪氣 |
| „ to drive away, | *t‘ui*$^4$*-shah*$^4$ | 退煞 |
| Orphan spirits, make a collection for, | *tso*$^4$ *chen*$^4$*-chi*$^4$ | 做賑濟 |
| Pill of immortality, | *lien*$^4$*-tan*$^1$ | 鍊丹 |
| Priest, | *tao*$^4$*-sï*$^4$ | 道士 |
| Real intelligence, | *chen*$^1$*-ling*$^2$ | 眞靈 |
| Spiritual worth, | *shen*$^2$*-pao*$^3$ | 神寶 |
| Taoism, | *tao*$^4$*-chiao*$^4$ | 道敎 |
| Temple of Hsü-chen, | *chen*$^1$*-chüin*$^1$ *tien*$^4$ | 眞君殿 |
| „ superior of a, | *tao*$^4$*-chang*$^3$ | 道長 |
| Ten temples, make circuit of, | *iu*$^2$ *shïh*$^1$ *tien*$^4$ | 遊十殿 |
| Three powers,—heaven, earth, man, | *t‘ien*$^1$, *ti*$^4$, *ren*$^2$, *san*$^1$*-ts‘ai*$^2$ | 天, 地, 人, 三才 |
| Three pure Ones—the Taoist Trinity, consisting of Lao-tsï, P‘an-ku and Ü-huang Shang-ti, | *san*$^1$ *ch‘ing*$^1$ | 三淸 |
| U-ch‘ang, procession in honour of, | *ch‘i*$^3$ *ch‘ang*$^1$ | 起猖 |

# 敘談眞道

門口來了客。請他到客房。倒兩碗茶來。請坐。貴姓。不敢、沒有領教。豈敢、敝姓鮑。不敢。敝姓張。府上在那裏。安慶府。啊、首府。豈敢。請教貴國是那一國。敝國英國。貴庚。空長三十三歲。幾位令郎。四個蠢兒。先生有德、恭喜你、在我們這裏有幾年。不久、只有十幾年。啊、說話同我們一樣。那兒的話、中國土俗人情一大半不懂。好說。先生在這裏有甚麼公幹。託福、在這裏教學。我們這裏沒有來過嗎。沒有來過。我們教中的書閣下見過沒有。見過、也曾看過幾本。啊、你這帶的是甚麼書。就是你們教中的一本書。巧得很、是怎麼得的。是我一個朋友買的、又轉送給我的。很好、先生看得怎麼樣。好還好、但有好些難明白的地方。不錯、彷彿海有淺有深的地方、請茶、以後敘談敘談。貴教的書常有上帝兩個字、請教這是指那一位說的。上帝兩個字是指一位眞神說的、就是掌管天地的大主宰。啊、就是我們這裏說的玉皇大帝麼。並不是玉皇、因爲玉皇是人、生在漢朝、姓張、名儀。這麼說、這位上帝到底是那一位呢。他就是造化天地萬物的大主宰、比人在先、無始無終、無所不能、無所不在、無所不知的眞神。開天闢地、不是盤古麼。說到盤古、乃是渺茫無稽之談、況且出乎情理之外、他是個人、

人不說不知，木不鑽不透 *If men are not informed they do not know, if wood is not bored it is not pierced through.*

焉能造日月星辰、山川草木、和天地人三才呢、豈不是有一位神在三才之上嗎。是的。這句話在理、但這位神造出許多東西是怎麽造法呢。他比不得人、先要備辦材料、他只說一句話、東西就有了、只用六天的工夫把一切造成。造成東西以後呢。末末了造出兩個人來、是一男一女。他現在做甚麽功夫呢。如今他保護萬人、賜下各樣的好處給他們、叫四季一點不錯亂、如三字經上說、曰春夏、曰秋冬、此四時、運不窮。先生說賜他們好處、怎見得呢。就是下雨、颳風、出太陽、曬熟了五穀、叫東西生長、叫人有吃的、有穿的、這不是大好處嗎。下雨不是龍王管的事麽。不是的、龍王也是人揑造的一個鬼神。有好年成不是土地菩薩作主麽。並非菩薩能管的事、難道泥塑木雕的偶像能幫人的忙、救人的苦、管人的生死嗎、明明是虛假的事。這位神只有一個稱呼麽。不只一個、有好幾個、就是眞神、天主、天父、還有耶和華三個字。爲甚麽叫眞神。因爲人所稱呼的神是假的、所以添個眞字好分別出來。何以叫天主呢。要指明他爲掌管天地的大主宰。講到天父兩個字、這也是要表明他爲天下人的大父親。這個好明白、惟有耶和華三個字、我實在不懂。那怪不得、這三個字是外國的土音、繙出中國的話來、就是自然而有的意思啊、這明白了。這不過畧畧的述說這位神的來歷、若要說盡他的作爲、能幹、就是一輩子也說不完。這自然。像這位大神豈不是先生可愛可敬的嗎。是、這不用說、但是還有許多的奧妙我還懂不到、請說給我聽、看你

們貴教中的書、常有靈魂兩個字、請教這是怎麽解說。靈魂是人人都有的、就是上帝造人的時候所賜的。人不是有三魂七魄麽。非也、只有一個靈魂、一個身體纔成了人。啊、靈魂身體相連。不錯、但是這樣、身體要死、靈魂是不得死的。這奇怪、豈不是身體死了、靈魂就沒有了嗎。並不是、若身體死靈魂也死、人不是和飛禽走獸一樣麽。但骨肉腐爛靈魂不消散嗎。不得消散、必永遠活着。若永遠活着、到底要在那裏活着呢。或在天堂、或在地獄。在那裏做甚麽事。憑今生所作的、或享福、或受罪。這事情怎麽可以曉得呢。原來有書爲憑、我們書上很講究這些事、就是貴國的人雖然說消散的話、到底也信服靈魂常活着。怎見得呢。因爲貴國的人、年年上墳祭祖先、又守孤魂節、放河燈、請和尚、道士、念經、超度、輪廻、等事。這話是不錯。天下的人不論是那一國、都深深的相信靈魂不得死、也不得消散、靈魂可比燈籠的蠟燭、燈籠沒有蠟燭、不過是個空燈籠就是了。又彷彿雀鳥在雀籠一樣、雀鳥一飛、也不過是個空籠而已。這樣看來靈魂好比身體的光、能看見、說話、辦事、都可以以靈魂爲主麽。是的、先生說的很對、一點不差、或是可比君王住在深宮、臣子宰相、辦理國政、都是聽他的吩咐去辦。是的、領教領教。救靈魂上天堂只有一位、就是我們書上常說的那位耶穌。耶穌是那一個。他是上帝的兒子。上帝有家眷麽。不是的、這不過是借着人倫比天上的事、最親的就是父子、而且有一個同體的意思在裏頭。父不比子大麽。在人看來是

這樣、但是天上的事總比不全。耶穌兩個字是怎麼解說呢。憑不得字面講、耶穌兩個字是外國口音、繙出中國的話來、就是救世主。啊、勸人爲善、同我們孔聖人一樣。不一樣、他來要救人、不是來勸世。不錯、我也聽見人說、他本來在我們中國傳教、後來碰見孔子、他就走到西方、叫孔子勸東方、他去勸西方。噯呀、告訴先生那句話的人大錯了、耶穌早一千八百多年前、從天上降下來、住在西方的一個國、名叫猶太國、你們以他爲聖人就是了。不是的、他比聖人兩樣、他有神性、也有人性、一面爲神、一面爲人。同我們這裏的神仙不差甚麼、或者是皇帝所封的神麼。也不是的、皇帝所封的神不過是古時的仁人君子、耶穌比他們都在先。先生不是纔說他早一千八百多年纔有嗎。這是說他降生的時候。他還沒有降生以先、在天上。他怎麼降世呢。他成了人身、披了肉體、被一個閨女所生、這閨女的名字叫馬利亞。他在那裏長大呢。在一個小村子、名叫拿撒勒。他怎樣過日子、靠甚麼吃飯呢。他學手藝、當木匠、造一切的木器、就是棹子、椅子、板櫈、門、窗戶、這些東西。不是苦寒麼。眞苦寒、他一輩子也是做個窮人。他當木匠到底麼。不是的、一到三十歲他就出門在外、周游四方、傳道、做好事。他傳的是甚麼道、做的是甚麼好事呢。他所傳的道理都包在一個字之內。這希奇、請教是那一個字呢。就是個愛字。怎麼樣。他說、人最要緊的本分、是要一面盡心、盡力、盡意、愛上帝、也要一面愛人如己。愛上帝是甚麼愛法呢。要保守他一切的誡命。要

保守他甚麽誡命呢。就是他的十條誡、我可以講給先生聽。第一條是這樣說、除了我以外、你不可敬奉別的上帝。第二條說、你不可爲自己製作甚麽偶像、甚麽形像、彷彿上天、下地、地底下、水中的萬物、不可跪拜那些像、也不可事奉他、因爲我耶和華你的上帝、是忌邪的上帝、怨恨我的、我必罰他的罪、以及子孫到三四代、敬愛我的、遵守我誡命的、我賜恩給他、直到千代。第三條說、你不可妄稱你上帝耶和華的名、因爲妄稱耶和華名的、耶和華必不以他爲無罪。第四條說、你當記念安息日、守爲聖日、六日之內、可以勤勞、辦理你的一切事務、第七日是你上帝耶和華的安息日、這一日、你和你的兒女、僕婢、牲畜、並住在你城裏客旅、無論何工都不可作、因爲六日之內耶和華創造天、地、海、和其中的萬物、到第七日、便安息、所以耶和華降福給安息日、定爲聖日。第五條說、你當孝敬父母、使你可以在你上帝耶和華所賜的地方長久居住。第六條說、不可殺人。第七條說、不可姦淫。第八條說、不可偷竊。第九條說、不可作假見證陷害人。第十條說、不可貪慕人的房屋、不可貪慕人的妻子、和他的僕婢、牛、驢、並他一切所有的。噯呀、守全這些誡命眞難、怕沒有人守過罷。除了耶穌以外、沒有人守過。不守、怕上帝不愛麽。他還是愛我們、因爲他深有可憐人的心、他滿心最慈悲。怕不能曉得罷。靠自己的聰明是不能曉得、所以耶穌來告訴我們。他說甚麽話。他說、上帝憐愛世人、甚至把他的獨生子賜給他們、叫凡信他的人、不至滅亡、必得

永生。況且他常用比喻、比這件事。甚麼比喻。有一回他用比喻是這麼說、一個財主有兩個兒子、小的在家不安分、不服父親的管、常要離家出外、就求他父親要分幾股產業給他、叫他走了、父親就分了幾股產業給他。過了幾天、小兒子把他一切所有的收拾起來、往遠方去、在那裏毫無節度、耗費錢財、以致成了窮人、一個錢都沒有。他一到這個地步、又遇見那地方大遭饑荒、叫他窮苦得很、因爲沒有人送他吃的、他就給那地方的一個人在田裏看猪•那個時候他纔醒悟過來、說我父親有許多工人、口糧有餘、我倒在這裏餓死嗎、我要起來、到我父親那裏去、對他說、父阿、我得罪了天、又得罪了你、從今以後我不配稱爲你的兒子、把我當作你的一個雇工罷•說完了話、他就起身回家、那曉得他離家還遠、他父親望見他、就急忙的跑出來迎接、雙手摟抱着他的頸項、與他親嘴•兒子就認錯說自己不好•父親卻吩咐僕人說、拿出上好的袍子來給他穿、把戒指戴在他的指頭上、把鞋子穿在他的脚上、把那肥牛犢牽來宰了、我們可以吃、喝、快樂罷、因爲我這個兒子是死而復活•失而復得的•他們就快樂起來。這比喻的意思先生會得過來麼。會不過來。這浪子可比我們世上的人、父親可比天父、滿有慈悲的心、接待我們罪人。啊、耶穌還說些比喻嗎。他很說了幾個、在那新約全書上先生可以看。閣下先說他做好事、請教他做甚麼好事。他常醫治各樣的疾病、疼痛、就是叫瞎子看見、聾子聽見、啞吧說話、癱瘋的能起來、長大痲瘋

的能潔淨、又叫死人復活。彷彿我們漢朝華陀相似。不是的他不動刀、不動鍼、不開方子叫人吃藥、他只說一句話、人的病就全退了。他還做甚麼事呢。他末末了替人贖罪。怎麼個贖法。他甘心情願替衆人捨他的性命。在那裏捨的。在十字架上。甚麼叫十字架。就是兩根木頭、一根豎的、一根橫的、釘成一個架子。啊、想必他犯法受罪罷。不是、他釘死在十字架上、是因爲我們世人都有罪、都犯了上帝的誡命、既然犯了誡命總該受罪、惡報就該當歸到我們各人的頭上。幸虧這位耶穌出來替我們受罪、把我們的惡報一身承當、我們的罪都歸到他身上去、所以他受苦受難不是爲他自己的罪、乃是爲我們衆人的罪。啊、彷彿俗語說、前人開路、後人行。有一點彷彿、可說耶穌因爲在苦架上受罪、他就把天堂的道路開通了。他釘死以後怎麼樣。死後埋葬在墳墓裏。想必到如今還在墳墓裏罷。不是、到第三日、他就復活。那奇怪得很。實在奇怪、但他的門徒親眼看見他、而且同他喫飯、說話、親手摸過他。既是這樣、他現在還在猶太國麽。不在那裏、復活以後他在地上只住了四十天、過了四十天、他就升上天去、到如今還在那裏、掌管天上地下的大權柄。他留下甚麼吩咐沒有。留下來、就是吩咐他的門徒往普天下去、勸化萬民悔改、相信福音。相信福音、有甚麼好處。極大的好處、就是可以免你先生的罪。免甚麼罪、我沒有罪。可惜、我們人人都有罪。請教人有甚麼罪。大概可以分兩樣。那兩樣呢。就是該做的事沒有去做、不該做的事倒

去做。怎麼曉得那該做、那不該做呢。各人都有良心、所以能辨別是非。那是不錯。人若從生到死、憑良心做人、他纔可以算沒有罪、那樣的人難得。沒有那樣的人、連一個也沒有。請教有甚麼不該做的事呢。不該敬拜那泥塑木雕的偶像、把他當神、該以上帝爲大、不拘看甚麼都不可以看比他大、若看功名、錢財、富貴、喫喝、比他要緊、這就是罪。看他在先就是了。是、因爲他是萬德的根源、人若不看重他、就彷彿樹枝離了樹根一樣、不能開花、不能結果、只能枯乾了。所以人做那不該做的事、是因爲離了他。啊、是這個情理。故此人常撒謊、偷東西、佔便宜、欺負人、哄騙人、辱駡人、毀謗人、犯姦淫、起貪心、殺人、起不好的念頭、想那不該想的事、埋怨人、嫉妒人、背地裏搬人的是非、妄做見證、和各樣的惡、這一切的事都是由人心出的。怎麼由人心出的呢、人心是善的。好樹結好果子、壞樹結壞果子、若人有善心、憑據在那裏呢。雖是那麼說、人還可以正心。正不了、救主說、人心就是萬惡的根源。他怎麼說。他說、從人心裏出來的就是惡念、姦淫、苟合、兇殺、偷竊、貪婪、邪惡、詭詐、浪蕩、嫉妒、驕傲、狂妄。把心一洗就是了。人洗不淨、只有耶穌的血成了洗罪泉源、能以把人的心洗得比雪還白、總要求他纔能把心洗淨了。你們書上是怎麼解說悔改兩個字。據我們書上說、悔改就是痛悔從前的罪孽、而改好了行爲。啊、就是知過必改。不錯、比方一個人素來撒謊、悔罪以後說話務必要眞、說一句可算一句、或是往日詭詐人、以後要賠還、或拜菩薩、以後

只要拜上帝、或做生意不公道、用大秤小斗、後來總要做個公平的買賣、這樣纔可算眞回心轉意了。要去假歸眞。是、又要在上帝的面前認罪、明說自己辜負他的大恩典、如同奸臣在皇帝的跟前認罪、以後做忠臣。這樣說、悔罪改過可以算是個最要緊的事情。若要塗抹罪惡、或要進入天國、或要成一個好人、非悔改不可。你們書上也有這一句、悔改信福音、這是甚麼意思、這句話的意思最要緊、我可以詳細講給先生聽。請說。一個人光痛恨往年的罪過、本是不彀。怎麼不彀呢。因爲他往年的罪還在身上、比方一個犯人坐監受罪、也有悔改的心、但他還是要受罪、一個人犯上帝的法也是這樣。所以要添上信福音那句話、纔可以曉得怎麼樣使罪得赦、上帝因爲有個憐憫人的心、開恩典說、若一個人肯信靠耶穌、那個人的罪都可以得赦免、這就是福音了。爲何必倚靠他呢。因爲除他以外沒有可靠的救主。自己積功德不好嗎。若有功勞何必悔改呢、這件事、依不得你說、依不得我說、上帝免罪的法子就是要我們相信耶穌得救、悔改相信耶穌是連合的、分開不得、若悔改不信、或只信不悔改、不能免罪、又要悔改又要相信。先生說、信靠耶穌、怎麼靠法呢。我可以告訴先生一件古事、好把那靠字解淸白、就是古時候上帝叫猶太國的人獻祭免罪、他們所要獻的就是牛、羊、隝鳩、鴿子·獻法是這樣、若獻羊總要選擇沒有殘疾的、擇好了、要把兩隻手按在羊的頭上、承認罪惡、認完了、就有人用刀宰羊、流出他的血來、這樣、人的罪

惡都歸到那羊的身上、故此上帝把那個人的罪免了、羊一死、就算替那人死。現今我們也要靠耶穌得救、彷彿那人把手按在羊的頭上一樣、靠他免罪。這個意思難明白。是的、所以耶穌應許聖靈來開導我們的心竅、叫我們明白。聖靈是那一位。他是三位一體上帝的第三位。能看見他麼。不能看見、他是個靈。他做甚麼樣的功夫。他感動我們的心、叫我們明白聖書做好人、又叫我們與上帝同心。他可比個通事、把上帝的話解通了。若不看見他怎麼曉得呢。雖然人不看見他、耶穌卻說、我要求父、父就要另外賜你們一位保惠師、叫他永遠同你們在一處。後來求下來了沒有。求下來了、就是在耶穌升天以後有十天的光景、他就下來了。怎樣下來呢。忽然間下來、彷佛一陣大風、當時有三千多人悔改信服耶穌。現今怎麼樣。現今他還是做這樣的功夫、我們傳道全是倚賴他的能力。況且耶穌親口說、你們雖是不好、尚且把好東西賜給兒子、難道天父倒不把聖靈賜給求他的人嗎。好、你們的教是怎麼入法。凡悔改信耶穌的人、都可以入教。入門要行甚麼禮。耶穌設了兩樣的禮、就是洗禮、和聖餐。聖餐是甚麼禮。這是耶穌設的一個大禮、就是衆教友都吃一點餅、喝一點酒。啊、這是喫丸藥罷。不是喫丸藥、喫丸藥是人造的謠言。爲甚麼吃餅喝酒呢。餅可比耶穌的身體、酒可比他的血。教中的人還要守甚麼規矩。每逢七天要守禮拜、到堂裏讚美上帝、念聖書、作禱告、聽牧師講解聖書。他們平常要怎麼樣呢。平常各人要幹各人

的事、做出個端正的榜樣來。你給他們多少錢一個月。君子謀道不謀食、分文都不給他他，們怎麼樣過日子呢。各人還是照常做各人的事、做買賣的做買賣、要手藝的要手藝、安分守己。念經的工夫怎麼樣呢。他們不是念經、只在家中天天作禮拜念一章聖書、唱幾節讚美詩、作幾句禱告就是了。不燒香、點燭嗎。不燒香不點燭、只用一片誠心禮拜上帝。作禱告說甚麼話呢。沒有一定、有的看事而隨便求、也有用一定的樣式。甚麼樣式呢。就是耶穌定的樣式說、我們在天上的父、願人都尊主的名爲聖、願主的國來到、願主的旨意行在地上、如同行在天上、我們日用的飲食、今日賜給我們、免我們的債、如同我們免了人的債、不叫我們遇見試探、救我們脫離那惡者、因爲國度、權柄、榮耀、全是主的、世世無窮、阿們。我看你們教中的人、吃飯的時候、先用手遮眼睛、念個甚麼兕。閣下看錯了、不是念兕、是感謝上帝賜他們飲食。不是念呪是說甚麼話。或說、多謝天父賜我飲食周備、養活肉體、求賜天糧、養活靈魂、叫我永守主的道、以後升天享永福、求謝都是靠主的功勞、阿們。你們和天主教是不是一樣。不一樣、大不相同。有甚麼不同處。不同的地方多、就是看聖書、作禮拜、吃葷、娶妻、禱告、吃聖餐、認罪、贖罪、煉獄、等。啊、差得這麼遠麼。是、說到看聖書、我們願人人看、願人人考究、是道則進、非道則退。天主教不然嗎。不然、只許聽神父解說、就是了、說是說非、全憑他一個人講。你們的教堂作禮拜不一樣嗎。不一樣、天主堂有偶像、香爐、燭臺、

他們也燒香、念經、素珠、磕頭拜神父。啊、和我們佛教差不多。差不多、大同小異。先生纔說吃葷兩個字是怎麼樣。我們耶穌教隨便吃、這個不關緊要、惟天主教定規吃齋的日期、教中的人都要守。我們佛教也是的．但是婚娶怎麼樣呢。天主教禁止神父娶親成家、叫他們做一輩子的鰥夫。你們教中娶老婆不娶呢。不禁止娶親、因爲聖書說明婚姻是個貴重的事情、生子成家也是敬重人倫。那是不錯、人倫是廢不掉的。再說禱告兩個字、天主教中、多用外國土話、叫衆人不懂意思、也求聖母、拿他當做中保。巧得很、我們佛教也用許多外國咒符念經、也有許多不明白的話語、你們如何呢。我們只用本地話教衆人明白、也只求那一位眞中保、就是我們的主耶穌。你們吃聖餐也是兩路嗎。兩路、天主教只許人吃一片饅頭、不許吃酒、餅、兩樣、他們又說、一經神父的手、酒變爲耶穌的血、餅變爲耶穌的眞體、隨意可以獻作祭物。這還了得、糊塗至極。就說到認罪、我們的規矩也是兩樣。怎麼爲兩樣呢。天主教要他們的人在神父面前認罪、不拘男女老少、富貴貧賤、那怕是君王、都要在他跟前認罪。何以呢。據他們說、神父操赦罪的權柄。機密事情也要告訴他嗎。都要告訴他、名爲告誡、若不老實講、他說些很話嚇死人。啊這眞是個妖術邪法、但是先生說贖罪、這是怎麼樣。我們的聖經說、耶穌釘死在十字架上、特爲要贖他百姓的罪、他死了一回、贖罪的事就成功了、惟天主教說、人可以自己贖罪、自己做出一點功勞來、名教補贖．再是

人死後神父或給他超度、叫他靈魂可以得天上的福氣。啊、我們也是一樣。不錯、可惜這個迷惑深得很、勸老兄不必從這虛妄的法子、人一下地獄、就是天下的銀子也買不出他來。煉獄地獄一樣嗎。不一樣、煉獄是天主教憑空揑造的地方、聖書並沒有這兩個字、據聖書說、善人死後要歸天、永遠與上帝同在、惡人要下地獄、永遠受苦。出錢可以買得出來罷。買不出來、這是騙人錢財的壞法子。不能超生嗎。萬不能、一個人生前做惡、死後要受永遠的苦楚。先生怎麼知道呢。因爲我們的主耶穌說明白了、在那裏蟲是不死的、火是不滅的、必有無窮無盡的苦楚。天堂可以買得進去罷。買不進去、得天堂的永福而免地獄的永火、不在乎錢財多少、在乎罪之免不免。不免罪不得進去嗎。那是一定的。因爲天堂是個至聖至潔的地方、大有榮耀、大有體面、沒有罪過、沒有苦難、沒有禍患在那裏。人一死可以到那裏去嗎。他的靈魂可以去、他的身體要入土、隨後復活。怎樣復活呢。人人都要復活、不問他好歹總要復活受報應、或者是受善報、或者是受惡報、正如俗語說、善惡到頭終有報、不是不報、時辰未到。那是不錯、但是說身體能再活、實在是令人難解。自然、在人看來是個萬不能有的事情、惟有上帝是無所不能、再說、若沒有復活善惡怎分得清楚呢、所以上帝叫人復活、就是要賞善罰惡。現在沒有報應嗎。有是有、但不均勻、現在可比種下禍福的田地、一復活就有個收成、種的是善收的也是善、種的是惡收的也是惡。善人惡人

一齊復活嗎。不能、主的百姓要復活在先、惡人要復活在後。相隔多少年代呢。千數年的光景、如今惡人是頭、善人是尾、但以後不然。以後要怎麼樣呢。以後救主要再來接他自己的百姓、叫他們永遠與他同在。啊、耶穌還要來嗎。還要來一回。要幾時來呢。不定、或早或晚。彷彿從前一樣嗎。大不一樣、他要坐雲回來、有千千萬萬的人隨着他來、大有榮光、大有權柄。人人能看見嗎。那時天下的人都要看見、要認眞他是天地萬物的大主宰。他的百姓要霑他的光嗎。是、他們要得大福氣、再不挨罵、挨打、受世人的氣、這就是他們最快樂的時候。過了千年以後呢。過了千年、惡人要復活受審判、按着各人的行爲、受各人的報應。誰要坐堂呢。就是上帝、因爲他無所不知、也最公平、他必要公公道道派定各人永遠的刑罰、這就是天地的末日。害人的鬼如何呢。也要一同受刑罰、要在硫磺火裏受世世無盡的大苦．他們的頭腦魔鬼也要在那裏吃大苦。那是應當的。但是閣下要如何躲避那樣的後患呢、我苦口勸你老兄趕緊的悔改、誠心實意信服這位救世主耶穌。何必呢。因爲耶穌是個照黑暗的明燈、是生死的福根、是永生的道路。啊、我不坐了、打攪打攪、二回再來再談。不送。留步。少陪啊。那裏的話、慢待慢待。

# EDUCATION. 界 學

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Attainment; degree, | *ch‘eng$^{2}$-tu$^{4}$* | 程 度 |
| Arithmetic, | *su$^{3}$ hsioh$^{2}$* | 數 學 |
| Analects, Confucian, | *luen$^{4}$-ü$^{3}$* | 論 語 |
| Abacus, | *suan$^{4}$ p‘an$^{2}$* | 算 盤 |
| Astronomy, | *t‘ien$^{1}$ uen$^{2}$* | 天 文 |
| Adjective, | *shï$^{4}$-tsï$^{4}$; hsing$^{2}$-iong$^{2}$ tsï$^{4}$* | 勢 字, 形 容 字 |
| Adverb, | *chuang$^{4}$ tsï$^{4}$; su$^{1}$-tsï$^{4}$* | 狀 字, 疏 字 |
| Addition, | *chia$^{1}$ fah$^{2}$* | 加 法 |
| Algebra, | *tai$^{4}$ su$^{4}$* | 代 數 |
| Astronomers, | *t‘ien$^{1}$-uen$^{2}$ chia$^{1}$* | 天 文 家 |
| Book of Changes, | *ih$^{4}$ ching$^{1}$* | 易 經 |
| Book of History, | *shu$^{1}$ ching$^{1}$* | 書 經 |
| Book of Poetry, | *shï$^{1}$ ching$^{1}$* | 詩 經 |
| Books, the Four, i.e., the Confucian Analects, Great Learning, Doctrine of the Mean, Mencius, | *sï$^{4}$ shu$^{1}$* | 四 書 |
| Bookshelf, | *shu$^{1}$ chia$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 書 架 子 |
| Blackboard, | *fen$^{3}$ pan$^{4}$* | 粉 板 |
| Botany, science of, | *chïh$^{2}$-uh$^{4}$ hsioh$^{2}$; ts‘ao$^{3}$-muh$^{4}$ hsioh$^{2}$* | 植物學, 草木學 |
| Class, | *pan$^{1}$* | 班 |
| Class, first, | *t‘eo$^{2}$ pan$^{1}$* | 頭 班 |
| Class, to go to a higher, | *sheng$^{1}$ pan$^{1}$* | 升 班 |
| Canonical books, | *ching$^{1}$ shu$^{1}$* | 經 書 |
| Commentary, | *chu$^{4}$ kiai$^{4}$* | 註 解 |
| College, | *kao$^{1}$ teng$^{3}$ hsioh$^{2}$-t‘ang$^{2}$; shu$^{1}$ üen$^{4}$* | 高等學堂, 書院 |
| Confucius, | *K‘ong$^{3}$ fu$^{1}$-tsï$^{3}$; K‘ong$^{3}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 孔 夫 子, 孔 子 |
| Confucianism, | *ru$^{2}$ chiao$^{4}$* | 儒 教 |

---

白 日 莫 閒 過, 青 春 不 再 來 *Do not spend the days in idleness, the Spring does not return.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Classics, the Five, i.e., the Book of Poetry, Book of Changes, Book of History, Record of Rites, Spring and Autumn, | *u$^3$ ching$^1$* | 五 經 |
| Chalk, | *peh$^2$ fen$^3$* | 白 粉 |
| Crayon, | *fen$^3$ pih$^3$* | 粉 筆 |
| Copy slip, | *keh$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 格 子 |
| Cap for Chinese pencil, | *pih$^3$ mao$^4$; pih$^3$ t‘ong$^2$* | 筆 冒, 筆 筩 |
| Chemistry, | *hua$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 化 學 |
| Certificate; diploma, | *uen$^2$ p‘ing$^2$* | 文 憑 |
| Copy, from copy slip, | *hsie$^3$ fang$^3$* | 寫 仿 |
| Conjunction, | *lien$^2$-hoh$^4$ tsï$^4$* | 連 合 字 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Doctor of Law, obtain degree of, | *chong$^4$ chin$^4$-sï$^4$* | 中 進 士 |
| Diploma; certificate, | *uen$^2$-p‘ing$^2$* | 文 憑 |
| Doctrine of the Mean, | *chong$^1$ iong$^1$* | 中 庸 |
| Doctor of Law, | *chin$^4$ sï$^4$* | 進 士 |
| Degree, an honorary, | *kong$^1$-ming$^2$* | 功 名 |
| Division, | *ch‘u$^2$ fah$^2$* | 除 法 |
| Drill ground, | *ti$^3$-ts‘ao$^1$ ch‘ang$^2$* | 體 操 塲 |
| Disturbance, to create a, | *nao$^4$ hsioh$^2$, feng$^1$ ch‘ao$^2$* | 鬧 學, 風 潮 |
| Drill, | *ts‘ao$^1$-ien$^4$* | 操 演 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Education, | *chiao$^4$-ü$^4$; chiao$^4$ iang$^3$* | 敎 育, 敎 養 |
| Education, Ministry of, | *hsioh$^2$ pu$^4$* | 學 部 |
| Educational Department, | *t‘ong uen$^2$ kuan$^3$* | 同 文 館 |
| Examination, metropolitan, | *huei$^4$ shï$^4$* | 會 試 |
| Examination, palace, | *tien$^4$ shï$^4$* | 殿 試 |
| Essay; newspaper article, | *luen$^4$* | 論 |
| Educational world, | *hsioh$^2$ kiai$^4$* | 學 界 |
| Erase (with rubber), | *ts‘ah$^1$ ch‘ü$^4$* | 擦 去 |
| Examine, | *k‘ao$^3$; k‘ao$^3$-shu$^1$* | 考, 考 書 |
| Examinations, day for, | *k‘o$^4$ rïh$^4$* | 課 日 |
| Explain the meaning, | *chiang$^3$ shu$^1$* | 講 書 |
| Explain to teacher, | *huei$^2$ shu$^1$* | 回 書 |
| Essay, to write, | *tso$^4$ luen$^4$* | 做 論 |
| Electricity, science of, | *tien$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 電 學 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Football field, | *ch‘iu$^2$ ch‘ang$^2$* | 球 塲 |
| Football, game of, | *t‘ih$^1$ ch‘iu$^2$* | 踢 球 |
| Fellow-students, | *t‘ong$^2$ ch‘uan$^1$* | 同 窗 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Geography, | *ti$^4$-li$^3$ ; ti$^4$-li$^3$ hsioh$^2$* | 地理, 地理學 |
| Geometry, | *hsing$^2$ hsioh$^2$* | 形學 |
| Geography, physical, | *ti$^4$ shï$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 地勢學 |
| Girls' school, | *nü$^3$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 女學堂 |
| Great Learning, the, | *ta$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 大學 |
| Grammar, | *uen$^2$ fah$^2$* | 文法 |
| Gathering—for sports, etc., | *üin$^4$ tong$^4$ huei$^4$* | 運動會 |
| Gymnastics, | *t‘i$^3$ ts‘ao$^1$* | 體操 |
| | | |
| Histories, | *shï$^3$ chi$^4$* | 史記 |
| Hanlin Academy, | *han$^4$-lin$^2$ üen$^4$* | 翰林院 |
| Handwriting, | *pih$^3$ chih$^4$* | 筆蹟 |
| Holidays, summer, | *fang$^4$ fuh$^4$ hsioh$^2$ ;*<br>*fang$^4$ shu$^3$ chia$^4$* | 放伏學, 放暑假 |
| Holidays, winter, | *fang$^4$ nien$^2$ hsioh$^2$* | 放年學 |
| Holidays, Spring and Autumn, | *fang$^4$ meh$^4$ hsioh$^2$ ;*<br>*fang$^4$ ch‘iu$^1$ hsioh$^2$* | 放麥學, 放秋學 |
| High jumping, | *t‘iao$^4$ kao$^1$* | 跳高 |
| | | |
| Industrial school, | *kong$^1$-i$^4$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 工藝學堂 |
| Ink, | *meh$^4$* | 墨 |
| Ink, fluid, | *meh$^4$ shui$^3$* | 墨水 |
| Ink pot, | *meh$^4$ hoh$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 墨盒子 |
| India rubber, | *hsiang$^4$ p‘i$^2$* | 象皮 |
| Ink slab, | *ien$^4$-t‘ai$^2$* | 硯台 |
| Ink slab, water pot for, | *ien$^4$ shui$^3$ hoh$^2$* | 硯水盒 |
| Ink, to rub, | *ien$^3$ meh$^4$* | 研墨 |
| Interjection, | *kan$^3$-t‘an$^4$ tsï$^4$* | 感嘆字 |
| | | |
| Jumping with a pole, | *ts‘eng$^1$ kan$^4$ t‘iao$^4$* | 撑竿跳 |
| | | |
| Leave school, | *ch‘uh$^1$ hsioh$^2$* | 出學 |
| Lecture ; address, | *ien$^3$ shoh$^1$* | 演說 |
| Leave, to apply for, | *kao$^4$ chia$^4$* | 告假 |
| List, to issue, | *fah$^1$ pang$^3$* | 發榜 |
| Library ; study, | *shu$^1$ fang$^2$* | 書房 |
| Lesson, to repeat, | *pei$^1$ shu$^1$* | 背書 |
| Light, science of, | *kuang$^1$ hsioh$^2$* | 光學 |
| Long jump, | *t‘iao$^4$ üen$^3$* | 跳遠 |
| Lesson, a, | *k‘o$^4$ ; kong$^1$ k‘o$^4$* | 課, 功課 |
| Lessons, daily, | *rïh$^4$ k‘o$^4$* | 日課 |
| Learning ; education, | *hsioh$^2$-uen$^2$* | 學問 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M.A. degree, to obtain, | *chong$^4$ chü$^3$* | 中舉 |
| Mathematics, | *suan$^4$ fah$^2$; suan$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 算法, 算學 |
| Master of Arts, | *chü$^3$ ren$^2$* | 舉人 |
| Mencius, | *meng$^4$ tsï$^3$* | 孟子 |
| Map, | *ti$^4$ t‘u$^2$* | 地圖 |
| Multiplication, | *ch‘eng$^2$ fah$^2$* | 乘法 |
| Morals, science of; moral philosophy, | *tao$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 道學 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Naval school, | *hai$^3$-chüin$^1$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 海軍學堂 |
| Natural science, | *keh$^2$ uh$^4$* | 格物 |
| Noun, | *ming$^2$-tsï$^4$; ming$^2$-ts‘ï$^2$* | 名字, 名詞 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Organ; harmonium, | *feng$^1$ ch‘in$^2$* | 風琴 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Proficient, by study, | *hsioh$^2$ huei$^4$* | 學會 |
| Piano, | *ch‘in$^2$* | 琴 |
| Piano, to practise the, | *lien$^4$ ch‘in$^2$* | 練琴 |
| Piano, to play, | *t‘an$^2$ ch‘in$^2$; fu$^3$ ch‘in$^2$* | 彈琴, 拊琴 |
| Physics, | *uh$^4$ li$^3$ hsioh$^2$* | 物理學 |
| Poetry, different kinds of, | *shï$^1$ ts‘ï$^2$ ko$^1$ fu$^4$* | 詩詞歌賦 |
| Pencil; pen, | *pih$^3$* | 筆 |
| Pencil, lead, | *ch‘ien$^2$ pih$^3$* | 鉛筆 |
| Pencil, to sharpen, | *hsüeh$^1$ (hsioh) pih$^3$* | 削筆 |
| Paper weight, Chinese, | *chen$^4$ chï$^3$; fang$^3$ ch‘üen$^4$* | 鎮紙, 仿圈 |
| Pencil, ordinary Chinese, | *shui$^3$ pih$^3$* | 水筆 |
| Physiology, | *t‘i$^3$ hsioh$^2$* | 體學 |
| Punished, | *pei$^4$ fah$^2$* | 被罰 |
| Preposition, | *hsien$^1$ ming$^2$-tsï$^4$; kiai$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 先名字, 介字 |
| Pronoun, | *tai$^4$-ming$^2$ tsï$^4$* | 代名字 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Review a lesson, | *uen$^1$-hsi$^2$* | 温習 |
| Reader, a, | *tuh$^4$ pen$^3$* | 讀本 |
| Record of Rites, the | *li$^3$ chi$^4$* | 禮記 |
| Regulations, school, | *hsioh$^2$ kuei$^1$* | 學規 |
| Rub out, | *ts‘ah$^1$ liao$^3$ ch‘ü$^4$* | 擦了去 |
| Revise lessons, | *uen$^1$ shu$^1$* | 温書 |
| Reward, | *chiang$^3$ shang$^3$* | 獎賞 |
| Reward, to obtain, | *teh$^2$ shang$^3$* | 得賞 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| School term, | *hsioh$^2$ ch‘ï$^2$* | 學斯 |
| School, primary, | *hsiao$^3$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 小學堂 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **School,** | *hsioh$^2$ t‘ang$^2$; hsioh$^2$ fang$^2$* | 學 堂, 學 房 |
| School, intermediate, | *chong$^1$ hsioh$^2$ t‘ang$^2$* | 中 學 堂 |
| School, advanced, | *ta$^4$ hsioh$^2$ t‘ang$^2$* | 大 學 堂 |
| School for deaf mutes, | *ia$^4$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 啞 學 堂 |
| Sage, | *sheng$^4$ ren$^2$* | 聖 人 |
| Sentences, order of, | *chü$^4$ fah$^2$* | 句 法 |
| Study, to, | *hsioh$^2$-hsi$^2$; nien$^4$ shu$^1$* | 學 習, 念 書 |
| Slates, | *shïh$^2$ pan$^3$* | 石 板 |
| Slate pencil, | *shïh$^2$ pih$^3$* | 石 筆 |
| Subtraction, | *chien$^3$ fah$^2$* | 減 法 |
| School, to open, | *k‘ai$^1$ hsioh$^2$* | 開 學 |
| School, to break up, | *fang$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 放 學 |
| Studies, | *hsioh$^2$ k‘o$^4$* | 學 課 |
| Satchel, | *shu$^1$ tai$^4$* | 書 袋 |
| Study, by lamp light, | *nien$^4$ teng$^1$ shu$^1$* | 念 燈 書 |
| Subject, to announce the, | *ch‘uh$^1$ t‘i$^2$* | 出 題 |
| Salary, | *shuh$^4$-hsiu$^1$; shuh$^4$-chin$^1$; hsin$^1$-shui$^3$* | 束脩,束金,薪水 |
| Scientists, | *keh$^4$-chï$^3$ chia$^1$* | 格 致 家 |
| Studies, to commence, | *shang$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 上 學 |
| School, to discontinue going to, | *hsia$^4$ hsioh$^2$* | 下 學 |
| Student, travelling, | *iu$^2$ hsioh$^2$ tih$^1$* | 游 學 的 |
| Student, who goes abroad to study, | *liu$^2$ hsioh$^2$ seng$^1$* | 留 學 生 |
| Theological school, | *shen$^2$ tao$^4$ hsioh$^2$-t‘ang$^2$* | 神 道 學 堂 |
| Three-character Classic, | *san$^1$ tsï$^4$ ching$^1$* | 三 字 經 |
| Thousand-character Classic, | *ch‘ien$^1$ tsï$^4$ uen$^2$* | 千 字 文 |
| Teacher; tutor, | *chiao$^4$ hsi$^2$* | 敎 習 |
| Truant, to play, | *t‘ao$^2$ hsioh$^2$; huah$^2$ hsioh$^2$* | 逃 學, 滑 學 |
| Tennis, | *ta$^3$ ch‘iu$^2$* | 打 球 |
| Throwing the hammer, | *p‘ao$^1$ t‘ieh$^3$ ch‘iu$^2$* | 抛 鐵 錘 |
| Teaching; what is taught, | *chiao$^4$ k‘o$^4$* | 敎 課 |
| Verb, | *hoh$^4$ tsï$^4$* | 活 字 |
| Wrangler, senior, | *chuang$^4$ üen$^2$* | 狀 元 |
| Writing, style of, | *pih$^3$ fah$^2$* | 筆 法 |
| Write from a copy, | *hsie$^3$ fang$^3$* | 寫 仿 |
| Writing exercise, to correct, | *p‘an$^4$ fang$^3$* | 判 仿 |

# SOME EXPRESSIONS USED IN CHINESE COMPOSITION.

## 文法

Arranged according to the number of characters.

| | |
|---|---|
| 虛字 | Abstract terms; particles. |
| 實字 | Substantives. |
| 文法 | Grammar. |
| 文理 | Style; literary style. |
| 上文 | Preceding context. |
| 下文 | Following context. |
| 屬上 | Belonging to what precedes. |
| 原文 | The original text. |
| 兩氣 | Two styles or sentiments. |
| 屬下 | Belonging to what follows. |
| 重意 | Repetition of thought; tautology. |
| 文話 | Literary talk; book expressions. |
| 隔氣 | To interrupt the flow—of a sentence; an hiatus. |
| 碰頭 | To clash—of words and meaning. |
| 小註 | Commentary. |
| 冷字 | A word rarely used. |
| 破題 | To broach the theme. |
| 落脚 | To finish up; to round off—a sentence. |
| 硬轉 | A forced 'turn' to a sentence. |
| 句法 | Arrangement of sentences. |
| 一段 | A section; a paragraph. |
| 一氣 | The same sentiment or regimen. |
| 轉句 | A clause which 'turns' the thought of the sentence. |
| 重句 | Reiterated statements. |
| 對句 | A balanced sentence. |
| 單句 | A sentence standing alone. |
| 雙關 | Capable of being taken in two ways. |
| 正文 | The text—as opposed to the commentary. |
| 申明 | To set forth clearly. |
| 兩平 | Both even—of meaning and words. |

學到老學不了 *If we study till old age, we shall not learn everything.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 直說 | To speak direct to the point. |
| 話生 | Words unwarranted by usage. |
| 尖點 | Comma. |
| 圓點 | Semicolon ; colon. |
| 小圈 | Small circle—period. |
| 大圈 | Large circle—end of paragraph. |
| 犯重 | Repetitious, tautological. |
| 死字 | Dead words—nouns. |
| 活字 | Living words—verbs. |
| 順寫 | To write in line with—preceding context. |
| 並寫 | To write in parallel columns. |
| 並論 | To discourse of more than one subject. |
| 泛論 | To discourse in a diffusive manner. |
| 承上 | To connect with what goes before. |
| 直接 | To make a direct connection. |
| 反接 | To connect in an adversative sense. |
| 引用 | To adduce—as a quotation. |
| 借用 | Used in an accommodated sense. |
| 收尾 | Conclusion ; to gather up at the end. |
| 換氣 | A change of sentiment or style. |
| 撒氣 | Loose, as style or construction. |
| 爽快 | Natural ; simple. |
| 恰當 | Exactly suitable ; apt. |
| 次序 | Order ; arrangement. |
| 並列 | Placed on the same footing or in the same category. |
| 轉折 | Turned and broken—involved, confused. |
| 原稿 | The original draft. |
| 不順 | Unidiomatic ; in wrong order. |
| 不接 | Will not connect. |
| 費解 | Difficult to explain. |
| 平排 | In the same category ; of equal force. |
| 連上 | Connected with the foregoing. |
| 强接 | A forced connection. |
| 連下 | Connected with the following. |
| 語病 | Defective construction. |
| 省文 | Abbreviated forms of expression. |
| 重複 | Reiteration ; verbosity. |
| 累贅 | Verbose. |
| 相混 | Confused ; mixed up. |
| 直接 | To connect with no particles (*e.g.*, 因 爲) between. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 相反 | The opposite; in opposition. |
| 傲口 | Difficult to pronounce. |
| 太簡 | Too terse; too abbreviated. |
| 押韻 | To ryhme. |
| 開筆 | To begin to compose. |
| 合筆 | To finish up—a composition. |
| 照原文 | According to the original. |
| 往上念 | Read from the preceding context. |
| 往下念 | Read on to the following context. |
| 指不上 | Will not refer—to an antecedent. |
| 承上文 | Derived from preceding context. |
| 起下文 | Connected with what follows. |
| 訣着字 | A character or characters short. |
| 管到底 | Governs to the end—of sentence. |
| 跟上文 | Follows on from preceding context. |
| 本門對 | A corresponding character in the same category. |
| 出門對 | A corresponding character in a different category. |
| 指着說 | Refers to it saying . . . . |
| 看串了 | Regarded as running into one—as two sentences. |
| 語氣足 | The sentiment fully expressed; words enough to express the sense. |
| 正口氣 | A direct statement or sentimemt. |
| 反口氣 | A statement or sentiment in opposition. |
| 用成語 | To use a set phrase. |
| 突得很 | Exceedingly abrupt. |
| 完了氣 | The sentiment or rhythm fully expressed. |
| 悖原文 | Contrary to the original. |
| 念白了 | To read and convey no meaning. |
| 不順口 | Unidiomatic. |
| 活動些 | More vivid; less stilted. |
| 不是題 | Is not the theme—irrelevant. |
| 不成句 | Does not make a sentence—either through defective construction or insufficient characters. |
| 往下看 | (The words) look to the following context. |
| 不自然 | Unnatural; forced. |
| 不靈活 | Not vivid; lifeless. |
| 不接氣 | Interrupted connection. |
| 句法變 | A change in the construction. |
| 串起來 | Run into one—as two sentences. |
| 懸起來 | Suspended—of sense or words. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 不吃勁 | Has no grip—as a disjointed sentence. |
| 所以然 | The why and the wherefore. |
| 原底兒 | The original rough draft. |
| 住不下 | Cannot stop—owing to the meaning being incomplete. |
| 進一層 | To pass on to another stage; progression or development of a subject. |
| 管兩層 | Governs two clauses. |
| 緊接着 | A close connection—in thought or expression. |
| 串着說 | Expressed by running two sentences into one. |
| 順着接 | A smooth connection. |
| 接不上 | Will not connect—as of an awkward construction or misplaced clause. |
| 打旁點 | To mark with italics; to italicize. |
| 緊連着 | Closely connected. |
| 往下串 | Run it on into the following context. |
| 煞住了 | Brought to a close; conclusion. |
| 不彀句 | Not enough to make a sentence, or to complete the sense. |
| 聽得生 | To hear a word in a sense unwarranted by usage. |
| 用得生 | Used in an unwarranted sense. |
| 話不合 | Words that do not fit the connection. |
| 太板了 | Too stiff or formal. |
| 有層次 | Having regular order or arrangement. |
| 發語詞 | An introductory particle. |
| 無所指 | No antecedent; nothing to which a word can refer. |
| 打個乂 | To make a caret. |
| 管兩處 | Governs both places. |
| 起承轉合 | The opening, amplification, re-statement and conclusion of a theme. |
| 反正虛實 | Adversative and direct statements, supposition and sequence. |
| 話不彀數 | Not words enough to express the sense or rhythm. |
| 引經據典 | To adduce classical allusions. |
| 帶着講兒 | Carries the explanation with it. |
| 恰照原文 | In exact correspondence with the original. |
| 一排下來 | Comes down in the same regimen. |
| 現成的話 | Ready-made expressions. |
| 另外起頭 | To make a new beginning. |
| 上虛下實 | Hypothesis above and sequence below. |
| 偏重一邊 | To emphasize one side only. |
| 泛泛的說 | A statement in general terms. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 有起有落 | To have prelude and conclusion; exordium and peroration. |
| 一反一正 | A direct statement and its opposite. |
| 話太零碎 | Too fragmentary; desultory talk. |
| 另作一段 | To make a separate paragraph. |
| 另起個頭 | Make a new beginning. |
| 照字面講 | To explain the obvious meaning. |
| 沒有來歷 | Having no antecedent. |
| 上下對着 | To match above and below. |
| 决斷的話 | A decided utterance; a positive statement. |
| 設若之詞 | Particles denoting supposition. |
| 對起來的 | Balanced—as sentences. |
| 句法不彀 | Insufficiency of grammatical forms. |
| 配起來的 | Matched—as characters. |
| 轉不過來 | Will not 'turn'—a connection cannot be made without altering the structure of the sentence. |
| 總承上節 | A general summary of the preceding verses. |
| 作一句念 | Read it as one sentence. |
| 作兩句讀 | Read it as two sentences. |
| 氣還沒完 | The sentiment still incomplete. |
| 不很關切 | Not very apposite. |
| 當個虛字 | Used as a particle. |
| 二字恰合 | The two words exactly agree. |
| 有音無字 | No character to represent the sound. |
| 問答口氣 | Relating to question and answer. |
| 話爽快些 | The expression is a little more natural. |
| 一綫到底 | One leading thought throughout. |
| 此處一轉 | The 'turn' of the sentence is here. |
| 上下一氣 | The same sentiment throughout. |
| 往上使勁 | Strengthens the preceding context. |
| 一開一合 | Beginning and conclusion. |
| 承上接下 | Connected with what precedes and what follows. |
| 字眼新鮮 | New expressions. |
| 按着句法 | According to rules of composition. |
| 轉的太硬 | The 'turn' (of sentence) is too strained. |
| 一句一氣 | A different sentiment or style in every sentence. |
| 雙關的話 | Words capable of a double meaning. |
| 沒有煞住 | Not brought to a proper conclusion. |
| 字句生冷 | Barbarous phraseology. |
| 落不住脚 | Will not finish up; *e.g.*, when such an auxiliary as 起來 is omitted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 離題太遠 | Too far removed from the subject in hand. |
| 與下文混 | Confused with what follows. |
| 上下不接 | What precedes is not connected with what follows. |
| 灣轉太多 | Too far fetched; too involved. |
| 上下照應 | Both above and below in correspondence. |
| 全無淸氣 | Nothing clear about it. |
| 不連上文 | Is not joined to preceding context. |
| 爽快得很 | Extremely natural. |
| 批在一邊 | Noted in the margin, or by the side of a character. |
| 隔着太遠 | Too far removed. |
| 隔一點氣 | A slight hiatus. |
| 去字的當 | The character ‘*ch‘ü*’ is satisfactory—in its use. |
| 煞脚的話 | Words that finish up and round off a sentence. |
| 說的太實 | Spoken too literally—of words that express figurative or abstract ideas. |
| 接得起來 | May be connected—of suitable phraseology. |
| 一氣下來 | The same sentiment throughout. |
| 從那一面說 | Spoken from the opposite point of view. |
| 字重意不重 | The words, not the thought is repeated. |
| 話來的自然 | The expression comes naturally. |
| 重在下一句 | The emphasis is on the lower sentence. |
| 寫的一個帽 | (He) wrote an introduction—opening remarks. |
| 句字拉的長 | The sentence is drawn out—suspended too long. |
| 應上頭的話 | In correspondence with the words above. |
| 兩樣的文法 | Two styles of composition. |
| 一樣的句法 | Same construction. |
| 進一層意思 | An advance in the thought. |
| 兩個字通用 | The two characters may be used interchangeably. |
| 把話說死了 | He took all the life out of the expression. |
| 要作兩截講 | Must be explained as two. |
| 順着題目寫 | To write in keeping with the subject. |
| 離開題目說 | To preach ‘*from*’ the text. |
| 字同意不同 | The words are alike, but the meaning is different. |
| 是字要念重 | Emphasize *shï* when you read. |
| 話說的太泛 | The statement is too diffuse. |
| 落的好一點 | Makes a slightly better ending. |
| 和還字照應 | In correspondence or grammatical relation with the word *huan*. |
| 末了那一句 | The last sentence. |
| 雙關的意思 | A meaning that may be taken two ways. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 先用總冒兒 | First set forth a summary of the essay. |
| 說的太過了 | Says too much of statements that go beyond the mark, or exceed the original. |
| 與下節不好接 | Does not make a good connection with the following verse. |
| 跟着上文來的 | Derived from the above. |
| 兩句用的恰合 | Both used exactly right. |
| 繙出眞滋味來 | To translate the 'inwardness' of a passage. |
| 未免節外生枝 | Impossible to avoid some wanderings from the text. |
| 憑不得字面講 | It does not do to explain according to the face value. |
| 乃字本是順接 | The word *nai* doubtless makes a smooth connection. |
| 分不出高低來 | To make no distinctions. |
| 乃字是轉語詞 | The word *nai* is a character that 'turns' the sentence. |
| 作一句拖下來 | Make it run down as one sentence. |
| 另說一層意思 | To set forth an additional idea. |
| 都字把他總起來 | The word *tu* gathers up the whole. |

# THE ESSENTIALS OF ETIQUETTE.

Note.—This Dialogue is intended to furnish material for conversation with a teacher—the best means of acquiring further information.

## 禮法須知

今天初[1]一、必有好些人來。說話之間、看門的送上片[2]子來。來了幾位。有一位先生、帶他的幾個親戚來、玩玩看看。好、請[3]。尊[4]姓。沒有領教。不敢、敝姓張。敝姓陸。就是裴[5]陸榮翁的陸罷。不錯、特來拜（會見）。請坐、台[6]甫是那兩個字。不敢、賤字達德。高雅得很、府上在那裏。敝地甯國府。閣下在甯國那裏有甚麽公幹。不敢、

1. The first and fifteenth of the month *ts‘u-ih*, *shih-u* 初一, 十五 are observed as special days for worship, etc. But what is done on these occasions is largely regulated by reference to the Calendar, *huang-lih* 皇歷 published yearly by the Imperial Board of Astronomy *ch‘ing-t‘ien chien* 欽天鑑.

2. Cards are not used when making an informal visit. A missionary's card should have his nationality and occupation stamped upon it, a little to the right above his name, *e.g.*, The English Missionary Hua Kueh-hsiang; *ta-ing chiao-si*, *Hua kueh-hsiang* 大英敎士花國香. It is usual to have the following sentence stamped on the back: "To be used as a visiting card only;" *pai-k‘eh liu-ming*, *puh tsoh pieh iong* 拜客留名, 不作别用. This is to prevent any person using it in order to obtain money under false pretences, etc. Some foreigners notify the local official that no card is from them unless both name and date are written in English. This serves as a check on unscrupulous rascals.

3. The word *ch‘ing* 請 is used in social intercourse with various meanings. For instance, in giving another the precedence, it='Will you please go first.' Here it may be translated, 'Request him to enter.' In most cases it indicates respect for the person to whom it is addressed. When it is not covenient to receive a visitor, the phrase, 'To stop the chariot' *tang-chia* 擋駕 is used to indicate this.

4. The words *kuei* 貴 or *tsuen* 尊 are not always used in asking another's name. The Chinese regulate the use of these words according to the status of the person in question, but it is better for foreigners to err on the side of over-politeness than to run the risk of being thought rude. The proverb says: 'No one blames you for being too polite'; *li to ren puh kuai* 禮多人不怪.

5. Chinese surnames are contained in a book called The Family Names, *puh-chia-hsing* 百家姓. They are arranged in groups of four in a line, and as many of them are of the same sound, though differing in form and meaning, it is customary—as here—to quote the line in which the one in question is found. To be able to do this raises a foreigner at once in the estimation of a Chinese.

6. Chinese have three names, called respectively Small or Milk Name, *hsiao*, *ru*, or *nai ming* 小, 乳, 奶名; Book or Student Name, *shu ming*, or *hsioh ming* 書名, 學名; and Official Name, *kuan-ming*, or *k‘ao-ming* 官名, 考名. Besides these they generally have a Title, *hao* 號, and sometimes a Nickname, *uai hao* 外號. The first of these is given in childhood, the second on beginning school life, the third at the age of 15 or 16, and the last on coming to manhood. The third is the one stamped on a visiting card.

---

## 應酬佳話 *The refined expressions of social intercourse.*

就個小館。老夫子高才啊。豈敢、才學疎淺得很。先生貴國是那一國。敝國是英國。先生寶眷可在這裏麼。豈敢、家[1]眷也在這裏。令政夫人可是中國人。不敢、賤內也是外國人。有幾位令郎。不敢、有兩[2]個小兒。恭喜、可有令愛。不敢、有個小女。可有貴乘[3]龍了。不敢、有了一個小婿。賢昆仲幾位。豈敢、愚弟兄四個。先生行[4]幾。不敢、行二、還有一個家[5]兄、兩個舍弟。幾位令姪公。一個舍姪、是家兄的孩子、舍弟纔有舍弟媳。令姊妹幾位。不敢、有一個家姐、一個舍妹。令尊令堂大人呢。不敢、家父去世了、家母還在外國。還請教先生貴庚。（如年紀老了白鬍子就問先生高壽）不敢、癡[6]長三十四歲。（虛度五十九歲）隨閣下來的這幾位[7]是親戚罷。有的是親戚、有的是朋友、這一位在城裏開一個小店。財喜好得很。託福。糊嘴罷。寶號開在那裏。小舖子開在三牌樓。生意還興隆罷。沒有事。那一位呢。他駕船。寶舟在那裏。豈敢、小

---

[1] A wife is spoken of as (The One) in the Home, *chia-li* 家裏, or The Small Home, *chia-hsiao* 家小. A vulgar term is 'Old Woman,' *lao-p'o* 老婆. In asking after the wife of another, *tsuen fu-ren* 尊夫人 is often used.

[2] In saying how many children he has, a Chinese gives the number of sons only; if he has any daughters they are only referred to in answer to a question about them.

[3] *Ch'eng-long* is an affected term for a son-in-law, based on a story of two sisters who got husbands like dragons. The usual name is *nü-hsüh* 女婿.

[4] The order of sons in a family is expressed by *p'ai hang* 排行, meaning 'Arranged in a series.' Hence the question is asked to ascertain whether a person is the eldest, or second, etc. The name, followed by the position in regard to the order of birth, is often stamped on the back of a visiting card; *e.g.*, *fu-kueh, hang san* 輔國, 行三. Colloquially the word *lao* 老 is prefixed as follows: Eldest, *lao-ta* 老大, Second, *lao-rï* 老二. Third, *lao-san* 老三; etc.

[5] Care should be taken to use polite prefixes correctly. Note that *chia* 家 stands before members of the family older than the speaker; *shæ* 舍 before those younger than he. In addition to those given in this Dialogue, the following conventional prefixes are common; the student should get examples from his teacher showing how and where they should be used:—*han* 寒, *lao* 老, *hsien* 賢.

[6] Many conventional expressions are not so forcible to Chinese ears as their literal meaning would suggest, even as many expressions used in polite conversation in the West, will not bear too close an analysis.

[7] Note use of *uei* 位 in speaking of a person in his presence. To use *ko* 個 in such a case is disrespectful.

船彎在龍王廟。先生品高望重、一定是福壽雙全。承閣下的誇獎、實在是老大無能。過謙過謙、請問你們那邊拜年[1]不拜年。也是拜年。[2]賀節不賀節呢不賀節。我們這邊娶親、過年、中舉、升官、出門回來、都去拜客。你們拜客怎麽說法。或說久[3]違、違教、不相見好久了、或是自謙奉承的話頭、我們結交朋友、應酬客、一切人情的話、多得不可說、我這位朋友說、你們見人不打[4]恭、不作揖、只拉手、可是這樣麽。不錯、禮行不同。又說、你們行客拜坐客、不教他坐左邊、以右手爲主、也不很講究位分、我們中國以[5]左手爲主。有客來、總請他上坐、倒碗茶給他喝、或拏煙[6]袋來給他吃煙、我們去拜客、先用圖書印幾張片子、裝在護書裏、穿上禮衣、這纔去拜客、你們請朋友來吃飯怎麽樣呢。說到請人吃飯、要看他年紀大小、來的遠近、纔請他坐首席、也有坐二席、三席、四席、五席、六席、不等。何以爲首席呢。進大門、靠右手上頭是首席、靠左手上頭爲二席、坐首席的左手是三席、坐二席的右手爲四席。五六呢。棹子上橫頭、靠坐首

---

[1] The usual thing at New Year is to send a card on the morning of New Year's Day, and pay a call two or three days afterwards. Women do not visit for the first four or five days after New Year.

[2] Visits on the holidays in the fifth and eighth months, are largely confined to officials.

[3] It is a good thing to acquire a stock of such expressions, and to use them freely; to do so adds much to the pleasantness of intercourse with the Chinese.

[4] To raise the hands, *ta-kong*, or *kong-sheo* 打 恭, 拱 手 is not so respectful as to *tsoh-ih* 作 揖. The degree of respect shewn is indicated in the one case by the height to which the hands are raised, and in the other by the time taken, and the depth to which the body is bent.

[5] This is a point much insisted on in Chinese society Foreigners often lose ground with the Chinese by setting such rules at defiance, but it is better to fall in with native usages in this respect. A general "levelling up" is not a thing to be greatly desired.

[6] The Chinese in social intercourse regard the pipe as a necessary accompaniment of tea. Hence the proverb, "Tobacco and tea prevent a breach;" *ien ch'a puh fen chia* 烟茶不分家. But they will not misunderstand a missionary neither offering nor accepting a pipe, as abstinence from both tobacco and wine is looked on as an evidence of a good life.

席的右手爲五席、靠二席的左手、爲六席、棹子下橫頭是主人自己坐的地方、也可以說七席八席、這是以大門向爲主、棹子縫也直對大門的。怎樣照棹子縫呢。比方在書房請客、牆上不是掛的有字[1]畫嗎、棹[2]子縫總要直對字畫、主人面對字畫坐着、就不錯。你們這邊送[3]禮怎麼樣。看交情的輕重、比方情重、他送十樣來、或收七八樣、或全收也可以、情淺的、收四五樣就彀了。送來的人還要[4]給他的脚錢、名叫回托兒錢。你們給他多少呢。一吊錢的禮物、給他一百個錢、還要把一張名片、放在托子裏、意思謝謝他的主人、若主人親自送來、自然不給錢、只說、不敢當、不敢當、後說、愧領、愧領。請問你們外國人、去見我們中國的官、怎麼樣呢。我們不[5]用磕頭、打千、比方衙門裏跟[6]官的來問個甚麼事、說某老爺呌我過來請安、要請問一椿事、我就說多承貴東的愛、事情就是這樣、就給他回片、消他的差、他就說、我可以回去告訴敝東就是了。

---

[1] The rule is to hang four scrolls on each side of the room. Those on the left hand looking outward are covered with poetry or extracts from some well-known author, those on the right hand with flowers. The written ones are in the place of honour. A set of the painted ones is called *ih-tʻang si-shih hua-huei* 一堂四時的花卉.

[2] Tables are placed with the seams of the top pointing north and south. The positions taken by visitors are regulated by this.

[3] Presents are given at births, marriages and deaths, on attaining a literary degree, at the New Year, and on the holidays in the fifth and eighth months. A card is always sent with them. The degree of intimacy and respect is indicated by the amount of the present accepted; the more accepted the greater the respect shewn. As local usages vary, it will be well for the student to ascertain what custom obtains in his district.

[4] It is the custom to give gratuities to servants. In many cases the amount of wages given is regulated by the number of opportunities the servant has of making money in the way here indicated. The wise use of a few cash on these and similar occasions, is often of great value. About 10 per cent. is the usual amount to give.

[5] It is of great importance to show due respect to those in authority. Not being subjects of the Emperor, foreigners are not obliged to show respect in the manner here mentioned, but anything of a disrespectful bearing should be avoided.

[6] Such a person should have a card to accredit his message, and should be furnished with a card to take back as evidence that he has fulfilled his commission.

要是親[1]自去見怎麼樣呢。我們拿個帖叫門丁傳進去、見面的時候、站在他的左手、[2]對上作個長揖、或彼此對面作揖、不等。然後他說、請上[3]坐、或讓我坐匠床上、他就問、你駕有甚麼事來。我就說特[4]來請安、但有點事要費心、就由這句話談起、說完了話、他就舉[5]杯說、請茶、放下杯子、我就站起來還作一揖、說費心、暫違。他也拱手說再見、就送出來。我說打攪、打攪、可以不必勞駕。他說、得罪、得罪、簡慢得很、莫怪、空坐。我說、豈敢、言重得很。他說、[6]沒有事、可以來坐坐。我說、再來請安、就教。兩下互一拱手、說、請、他說、不遠送、恕送、恕送、慢慢走。我說、請留步、不要客氣、諸事領教、後會有期。我們見官就是這樣話長時短、不能久談、我們可以回去罷。閣下要回去麼、我心裏實在有點依依不捨。承先生的厚愛、彼此都是一樣、我們以後可以常常通信。是、彼此常有書信往來、就不致於久別生疎了。好極好極、過一期再來領敎。那就不敢當了。請。請。請。請。

---

[1] Visits to the magistrate's office should be made either in a chair or in a cart. The card should be carried in a native card case, *hu-shu* 護書, and handed in by a servant. A courteous conciliatory manner in dealing with either the *men-fang* 門房, or the Secretary, *sï-ie* 師爺 may materially expedite the business in hand.

[2] Care is needed in turning the body to keep the face toward the one turned from; to turn the back is considered a great insult. Official etiquette, *i-chu*, 儀註 needs special study, and as most foreigners are, in the nature of the case, ignorant of it, they should be careful not to expose themselves to insult by displaying their ignorance.

[3] The room where a magistrate sees his guest is arranged in the same manner as the guest hall, *k'eh-t'ang* 客堂, in an ordinary house; the same relative order in the matter of seats should therefore be observed.

[4] The subject in hand should be introduced with a few polite opening phrases. The bluntness and abruptness of Western intercourse is often mistaken for rudeness by the Chinese. They say that we speak "all in a heap" *shoh hua ih ta tui* 說話一大堆.

[5] The lifting of the cup by the official is to intimate that the visit is at an end. At times it has the same significance in ordinary intercourse, but this depends on circumstances. A good deal is *hinted* at in the actions of the Chinese, and foreigners will do well to ascertain what such hints mean.

[6] Nearly all such invitations are mere conventionalities, and mea nothing.

# GOVERNMENT. 政界

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| **Admiral,** | *shui$^{3}$ sï$^{1}$ t'i$^{2}$-tuh$^{4}$* | 水師提督 |
| **Adviser-government,** | *ku$^{4}$ uen$^{4}$ kuan$^{1}$* | 顧問官 |
| **Advisory Council—to the President,** | *ku$^{4}$ uen$^{4}$ üen$^{4}$* | 顧問院 |
| **Ambassador; Commissioner,** | *chu$^{4}$ shï$^{3}$*<br>*ch'uh$^{1}$ iang$^{2}$ ta$^{4}$ ch'en$^{2}$*<br>*kong$^{4}$ shï$^{3}$* | 駐使<br>出洋大臣<br>公使 |
| **Army,** | *han$^{4}$ chüin$^{1}$; luh$^{4}$ chüin$^{1}$* | 旱軍, 陸軍 |

,, Chinese, main divisions :—

Infantry, 步隊 *pu$^{4}$ tui$^{4}$*; Cavalry, *ma$^{3}$ tui$^{4}$* 馬隊; Artillery, *p'ao$^{4}$ tui$^{4}$* 砲隊; Sappers and miners, *kong$^{1}$ ch'eng$^{2}$ tui$^{4}$* 工程隊; Vanguard, *ch'ien$^{2}$ tui$^{4}$* 前隊; Rearguard, *heo$^{4}$ tui$^{4}$* 後隊; Commissariat, *tsï$^{1}$ chong$^{4}$ tui$^{4}$* 輜重隊.

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| Ballot, | *te'o$^{2}$-p'iao$^{4}$* | 投票 |
| Ballot, to open the, | *k'ai$^{1}$ p'iao$^{4}$* | 開票 |
| Ballot office, | *t'eo$^{2}$-p'iao$^{4}$ so$^{3}$* | 投票所 |
| Ballot, officer in charge of, | *kuan$^{3}$-li$^{3}$ üen$^{2}$* | 管理員 |
| Ballot ticket, | *t'eo$^{2}$-p'iao$^{4}$ chï$^{3}$* | 投票紙 |
| Ballot box, | *t'eo$^{2}$-p'iao$^{4}$ kuei$^{4}$* | 投票匱 |
| Board of Ceremonies, | *li$^{3}$-pu$^{4}$* | 禮部 |
| ,, ,, Communications, | *chiao$^{1}$ t'ong$^{1}$ pu$^{4}$* | 交通部 |
| ,, ,, Civil Office, | *li$^{4}$ pu$^{4}$* | 吏部 |
| ,, ,, Commerce, | *nong$^{2}$ kong$^{1}$ shang$^{1}$ pu$^{4}$* | 農工商部 |
| ,, ,, Finance, | *ts'ai$^{2}$ cheng$^{4}$ pu$^{4}$* | 財政部 |
| ,, ,, Interior, | *nei$^{4}$ u$^{4}$ pu$^{4}$* | 內務部 |
| ,, ,, Justice, | *sï$^{1}$ fah$^{1}$ pu$^{4}$* | 司法部 |
| ,, ,, Punishments, | *fah$^{4}$ pu$^{4}$* | 法部 |
| ,, ,, Reorganisation, | *shan$^{4}$ heo$^{4}$ chüh$^{2}$* | 善後局 |
| ,, ,, Works, | *kong$^{1}$ pu$^{4}$* | 工部 |
| Budget, | *kueh$^{2}$ k'o$^{4}$; ü$^{4}$ chi$^{4}$* | 國課, 預計 |
| Central-government, | *chong$^{1}$ iang$^{1}$* | 中央 |
| Chinese Republic, | *chong$^{1}$ hua$^{2}$ min$^{2}$ kueh$^{2}$* | 中華民國 |

**國正天心順, 官清民自安** *When the government is good, heaven is favourable; when officials are incorruptible, the people are in peace.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cabinet Ministers, | *cheng*$^4$ *ch‘ing*$^2$ | 正卿 |
| Chief of Judiciary, | *sï*$^1$ *fah*$^1$ *tsong*$^3$ *chang*$^3$ | 司法總長 |
| Constitution, | *hsien*$^4$ *fah*$^1$ | 憲法 |
| Constitutional Government, | *lih*$^4$ *hsien*$^4$ *cheng*$^4$-*t‘i*$^3$ | 立憲政體 |
| Conservative Party, | *sheo*$^3$ *ku*$^3$ *tang*$^3$ | 守古黨 |
| Commissioner of Customs, | *shui*$^4$-*u*$^4$-*sï*$^1$ | 稅務司 |
| Commissioner of Customs, Deputy, | *fu*$^4$ *shui*$^4$-*u*$^4$-*sï*$^1$ | 副稅務司 |
| Consul | *ling*$^3$-*sï*$^4$-*kuan*$^1$ | 領事官 |
| Concession, territorial, | *tsu*$^1$ *kiai*$^4$ | 租界 |
| Customs; Custom House, | *hai*$^3$ *kuan*$^1$; *hsin*$^1$ *hai*$^3$-*kuan*$^1$ | 海關, 新海關 |
| Customs, native, | *ch‘ang*$^2$ *kuan*$^1$ | 常關 |
| Deputy, | *uei*$^3$-*üen*$^2$ | 委員 |
| Despatch, | *chao*$^4$ *huei*$^4$ | 照會 |
| Discussion, to open, | *k‘ai*$^1$ *i*$^4$ | 開議 |
| Discussion, to stop, | *t‘ing*$^2$ *i*$^4$ | 停議 |
| Dynasty, | *ch‘ao*$^2$ | 朝 |
| Edict, of President, | *ming*$^4$ *ling*$^4$; *ming*$^2$ *uen*$^2$ | 命令, 明文 |
| Election, an invalid, | *hsüen*$^3$-*chü*$^3$ *u*$^2$ *hsiao*$^4$ | 選舉無效 |
| Emperor, | *huang*$^2$-*shang*$^4$; *huang*$^2$-*ti*$^4$ | 皇上, 皇帝 |
| Empress, | *huang*$^2$-*heo*$^4$ | 皇后 |
| Empress Dowager, | *huang*$^2$ *t‘ai*$^4$-*heo*$^4$ | 皇太后 |
| Examiners (of ballot), | *tiao*$^4$-*ch‘a*$^2$ *üen*$^2$ | 調查員 |
| Extraterritoriality, | *puh*$^1$ *kuei*$^1$ *kueh*$^2$ *hsiah*$^2$; *chï*$^4$ *uai*$^4$ *fah*$^4$ *ch‘üen*$^2$ | 不歸國轄, 治外法權 |
| Finance, Ministry of, | *toh*$^4$-*chï*$^1$ *pu*$^4$ | 度支部 |
| Formal, regular, as government procedure, | *cheng*$^4$ *shï*$^4$ | 正式 |
| Foreign Office, | *uai*$^4$-*u*$^4$ (or *chiao*$^1$) *pu*$^4$ | 外務(or 交)部 |
| Foreign Bureau (local), | *iang*$^2$-*u*$^4$ *chüh*$^2$ | 洋務局 |
| Government, the, | *kueh*$^2$-*chia*$^1$; *cheng*$^4$ *fu*$^3$ | 國家 政府 |
| Government, administration of, | *kueh*$^2$-*cheng*$^4$; *hsing*$^2$ *cheng*$^4$ | 國政, 行政 |
| Government office, | *cheng*$^4$-*u*$^4$ *ch‘u*$^4$ | 政務處 |
| Governor of Province, | *hsüin*$^2$ *an*$^4$ *shï*$^3$ | 巡按使 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Governor of military, on setting up Republic, | *tu*$^1$ *tuh*$^1$ | 都督 |
| Government affairs, | *cheng*$^4$ *u*$^4$ | 政務 |
| ,, monarchical, | *chüin*$^1$ *chu*$^2$ *cheng*$^4$ *t'i*$^3$ | 君主政體 |
| Hague Tribunal, | *hai*$^3$ *ia*$^2$ *ho*$^2$ *p'ing*$^2$ *huei*$^4$ | 海牙和平會 |
| Head of the people, | *min*$^2$ *chu*$^3$ | 民主 |
| High Court of Republic, | *ta*$^4$ *li*$^3$ *üen*$^4$ | 大理院 |
| Indirect taxation, | *chien*$^1$ *chieh*$^1$ *shui*$^4$ | 間接稅 |
| Intendant of Circuit, | *tao*$^4$ *in*$^3$ | 道尹 |
| International law, | *uan*$^4$ *kueh*$^2$ *kong*$^1$ *fah*$^4$ | 萬國公法 |
| International questions, | *kueh*$^2$ *chi*$^4$ *uen*$^4$ *t'i*$^2$ | 國際問題 |
| Investigation, Court of, | *huei*$^4$ *hsüin*$^4$ *kong*$^1$ *t'ang*$^2$ | 會訊公堂 |
| Jailer, | *sï*$^1$-*iuh*$^4$ (*ü*), *chin*$^4$-*tsï*$^3$, *chin*$^4$-*tsuh*$^4$ | 司獄,禁子,禁卒 |
| Judge, a, | *shen*$^3$ *p'an*$^4$ *kuan*$^1$ | 審判官 |
| Judgment, Court of, | *shen*$^3$ *p'an*$^4$ *t'ing*$^1$ | 審判廳 |
| Jury, trial by, | *kong*$^1$ *tuan*$^4$ | 公斷 |
| Loan, | *chie*$^4$ *k'uan*$^3$ | 借款 |
| ,, foreign, | *uai*$^4$ *chai*$^4$ | 外債 |
| ,, for military purposes, | *chüin*$^1$ *sï*$^4$ *kong*$^1$ *chai*$^4$ | 軍事公債 |
| ,, public, 5 per cent., | *u*$^3$ *li*$^2$ *kong*$^1$ *chai*$^4$ | 五釐公債 |
| Local Government Board, | *tsï*$^4$-*chï*$^4$ *huei*$^4$ | 自治會 |
| Liberal Party, | *uei*$^2$ *hsin*$^1$ *tang*$^3$ | 維新黨 |
| Magistrate, | *chï*$^1$ *sï*$^4$ | 知事 |
| Ministry of Posts and Communications, | *iu*$^2$-*ch'uan*$^2$ *pu*$^4$ | 郵傳部 |
| Ministry of Home Affairs, | *min*$^2$ *cheng*$^4$ *pu*$^4$ | 民政部 |
| Ministry of War, | *luh*$^4$-*chüin*$^1$ *pu*$^4$ | 陸軍部 |
| Mint, the, | *in*$^2$ *üen*$^2$ *chüh*$^2$ | 銀元局 |
| Munitions of War, | *chüin*$^1$-*ho*$^3$ | 軍火 |
| Munitions of War, government factory, | *chüin*$^1$ -*cheng*$^1$ *chüh*$^2$ | 軍政局 |
| National Assembly, | *kueh*$^2$ *huei*$^4$ | 國會 |
| Navy, | *hai*$^3$ *chüin*$^1$ | 海軍 |
| Passport, | *hu*$^4$-*chao*$^4$ | 護照 |
| Plenipotentiary, Minister, | *pien*$^4$-*i*$^2$*hsing*$^2$*sï*$^4$*ta*$^4$*ch'en*$^2$ | 便宜行事大臣 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Political Party, | *tang$^3$* | 黨 |
| Premier, | *kueh$^2$ u$^4$ ch‘ing$^2$* | 國務卿 |
| President of a Republic, | *tsong$^3$-t‘ong$^3$* | 總統 |
| President of Assembly; the Speaker, | *i$^4$ chang$^3$* | 議長 |
| Prime Minister, | *tsong$^3$ li$^3$* | 總理 |
| Privy Council, | *chüin$^1$-chi$^1$ ch‘u$^4$* | 軍機處 |
| Provincial Assembly Hall, | *i$^4$-sï$^4$ t‘ing$^1$* | 議事廳 |
| Provisional, | *lin$^2$ shï$^2$* | 臨時 |
| ,, government, | *lin$^2$ shï$^2$ cheng$^4$ fu$^3$* | 臨時政府 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Qualifications, e.g., for voting, | *tsï$^1$-keh$^2$* | 資格 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Re-elected, | *fuh$^4$ hsüen$^3$* | 復選 |
| Republic-an, | *min$^2$ kueh$^2$; kong$^4$ ho$^2$* | 民國, 共和 |
| Republic of the Five Races, | *u$^3$ ts‘uh$^4$ kong$^1$ ho$^2$* | 五族共和 |
| Republic-an Flag, | *u$^3$ seh$^4$ ch‘i$^2$* | 五色旗 |
| Revenue, government, | *kueh$^4$ k‘o$^4$* | 國課 |
| Revolutionary Party, | *keh$^2$-ming$^4$ tang$^3$* | 革命黨 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Salt Bureau, government, | *kuan$^1$ üin$^4$ chüh$^2$* | 官運局 |
| Salt Commissioner, | *ien$^2$ üin$^4$-sï$^1$* | 鹽運司 |
| Salt Department, Examiner, | *ien$^2$ ta$^4$ shï$^3$* | 鹽大使 |
| ,, Inspector, | *ien$^2$ t‘i$^2$-chü$^3$* | 鹽提舉 |
| Salt monopoly, officials in charge of, | *ien$^2$-u$^4$ kuan$^1$* | 鹽務官 |
| Secretary of Assembly, | *shu$^1$ chi$^4$* | 書記 |
| Secretary, Chief of Assembly, | *shu$^1$-chi$^4$ chang$^3$* | 書記長 |
| Session, to close, | *t‘ing$^2$ huei$^4$* | 停會 |
| Stamp Tax, | *in$^4$ hua$^1$ shui$^4$* | 印花稅 |
| State Rights, | *kueh$^2$ ch’üen$^2$* | 國權 |
| State Council, | *ts‘an$^1$ cheng$^4$ üen$^4$* | 叅政院 |
| Supervisors (of ballot), | *chien$^1$-ch‘ah$^2$ üen$^2$* | 監察員 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Treaty, | *t‘iao$^2$ ioh$^4$; ho$^2$ ioh$^4$* | 條約, 和約 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Vice-President of Assembly, | *fu$^4$ i$^4$-chang$^3$* | 副議長 |
| Vice-President of Republic, | *fu$^4$ tsong$^3$ t‘ong$^3$* | 副總統 |
| Vote; voting, | *hsüen$^3$-chü$^3$* | 選舉 |
| Vote, the power to, | *iu$^3$ hsuen$^3$-chü$^3$ ch‘üen$^2$* | 有選舉權 |
| Vote by ballot, | *t‘eo$^2$ p‘iao$^4$ hsüen$^3$-chü$^3$* | 投票選舉 |

## COMMERCE. 商界

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Account book, | *chang$^4$ pu$^4$* | 賬簿 |
| Account, enter to my, | *shang$^4$ o$^3$-tih$^1$ chang$^4$* | 上我的賬 |
| Account is wrong, | *chang$^4$ ts‘o$^4$-liao$^3$* | 賬錯了 |
| Account, to dun for, | *t‘ao$^3$ chang$^4$* | 討賬 |
| Account, to enter in, | *chi$^4$ chang$^4$* | 記賬 |
| Accounts, all settled, | *ch‘ing$^1$chang$^4$; liang$^3$ ch‘ing$^1$* | 清賬, 兩清 |
| Accountant; manager, | *kuan$^3$ chang$^4$ tih$^1$* | 管賬的 |
| Agreement; contract, | *hoh$^2$ t‘ong$^2$* | 合同 |
| Agreement, to make, | *ta$^3$* (or *lih$^4$*) *hoh$^2$-t‘ong$^2$* | 打 (or 立) 合同 |
| Assistant, | *ho$^3$-chi$^4$* | 夥計 |
| Auction, to sell by, | *p‘eh$^1$ mai$^4$; chiao$^4$-chuang$^1$* | 拍賣, 呌莊 |
| Apprentice, | *t‘u$^2$-ti$^4$* | 徒弟 |
| Apprenticeship, to serve an, | *hsioh$^2$ t‘u$^2$* | 學徒 |
| Balance for weighing silver, | *teng$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 戥子 |
| Balance for weighing silver, case for, | *teng$^3$-hoh$^2$-tsï$^1$* | 戥盒子 |
| Ballast, | *iah$^4$-tsai$^4$* | 壓載 |
| Bank, | *p‘iao$^4$-hao$^2$; p‘iao$^4$-chuang$^1$; in$^2$-hao$^4$; in$^2$ hang$^2$* | 票號, 票庄, 銀號, 銀行 |
| Bankrupt, | *tao$^3$-liao$^3$; kuan$^1$-liao$^3$ men$^2$; tso$^4$huang$^2$liao$^3$; shæ$^3$-liao$^3$-pen$^3$* | 倒了, 關了門, 做黃了, 捨了本 |
| Bet, to, | *ta$^3$-tu$^3$* | 打賭 |
| ,, and lose, | *ta$^3$-tu$^3$ shu$^1$ liao$^3$* | 打賭輸了 |
| ,, and win, | *ta$^3$-tu$^3$ ing$^2$ liao$^3$* | 打賭贏了 |
| Best of these, which is the? | *chœ$^4$-hsie$^1$ tong$^1$-hsi$^1$ na$^3$-ih$^1$-ko$^4$ hao$^3$?* | 這些東西那一個好 |
| Bond; guarantee, | *pao$^3$-chieh$^3$; pao$^3$-tan$^1$* | 保結, 保單 |
| Broker, | *ching$^1$-chi$^4$* | 經紀 |
| Business, foreign house of, | *iang$^2$ hang$^2$* | 洋行 |
| Bushel; bushel measure, | *teo$^4$* | 斗 |

買賣中一團和氣 *Be altogether pleasant in commercial intercourse.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Business, to start, | *k‘ai$^1$-chang$^1$ ; k‘ai$^1$-shi$^4$* | 開張, 開市 |
| Buyer, the, | *mai$^3$-chu$^3$* | 買主 |
| Business, to discuss, | *chiang$^3$ mai$^3$-mai$^4$* | 講買賣 |
| Capital, | *pen$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 本錢 |
| Capital, to advance, | *tien$^4$ pen$^3$* | 墊本 |
| Capital, to seek interest on, | *chiang$^1$ pen$^3$ ch‘iu$^2$ li$^4$* | 將本求利 |
| Capital and interest, | *lien$^2$ pen$^3$ tai$^4$ li$^4$* | 連本帶利 |
| Capital in trade, | *pen$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 本錢 |
| Cash, between ten and twenty, | *shïh$^2$-la$^1$ (chi$^3$) ko$^4$ ch‘ien$^2$* | 十來(幾)個錢 |
| Cash—what cash do you use here? | *tsai$^4$-chœ$^4$-li$^2$ iong$^4$ shen$^4$-mo$^3$ ch‘ien$^2$?* | 在這裏用甚麽錢 |
| Cash, to string, | *ch‘uan$^4$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 串錢 |
| Cash notes, | *ch‘ien$^2$-p‘iao$^4$* | 錢票 |
| Cash at 95 to the 100, | *chiu$^3$-u$^3$ ch‘ien$^2$* | 九五錢 |
| Cent per cent, | *tui$^4$ hoh$^2$ tih$^1$ li$^4$-chi‘en$^2$* | 對合的利錢 |
| Cheap, very, | *chia$^4$-ch‘ien$^2$ hen$^3$ p‘ien$^1$-i$^2$* | 價錢很便宜 |
| Cheap, | *chien$^4$ ; puh$^1$ kuei$^4$ ; kong$^1$-tao$^4$* | 賤, 不貴, 公道 |
| Chit book, | *song$^4$ hsin$^4$ pu$^4$* | 送信簿 |
| Chinese Telegraph Administration, | *Chong$^1$-kueh$^2$ tien$^4$-pao$^4$ chüh$^2$* | 中國電報局 |
| Commission, | *huei$^4$-shui$^3$* | 匯水 |
| Compradore, | *mai$^3$-pan$^4$* | 買辦 |
| Cost of carriage, | *kioh$^3$-lih$^4$ ch‘ien$^2$ ; kioh$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 脚力錢, 脚錢 |
| Coin, to illicitly, | *sï$^1$ tsao$^4$ ch‘ien$^2$* | 私造錢 |
| Customs declaration, | *pao$^4$ tan$^1$* | 報單 |
| Contraband goods, | *sï$^1$ ho$^4$* | 私貨 |
| ” ” to smuggle, | *tai$^4$ sï$^1$ ho$^4$* | 帶私貨 |
| Customs dues, to pay, | *pao$^4$ kuan$^1$ shang$^4$ shui$^4$* | 報關上稅 |
| Circular, | *ch‘uan$^2$ tan$^1$* | 傳單 |
| Credit, to give, | *shœ$^1$ chang$^4$* | 賒賬 |
| Company, a commercial, | *kong$^1$-sï$^1$* | 公司 |
| Counter, | *kuei$^4$-t‘ai$^2$* | 櫃台 |
| Customs, to pass the, | *ko$^4$ kuan$^1$* | 過關 |
| Customer, | *chu$^3$-ku$^4$* | 主顧 |
| Discount, | *cheh$^2$-t‘eo$^2$; cheh$^2$-k‘eo$^4$* | 折頭, 折扣 |
| ” two per cent., | *rï$^4$ fen$^4$ k‘eo$^4$ ; chiu$^3$ pah$^1$ k‘eo$^4$* | 二分扣, 九八扣 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Divide equally, | *chüin*$^1$ *fen*$^1$ | 均分 |
| Distribute, equally, | *chüin*$^1$ *t'an*$^1$ | 均攤 |
| Dollars, Mexican, Spanish, | *ing*$^1$*-iang*$^2$ ; *pen*$^3$*-iang*$^2$ | 英洋, 本洋 |
| Draft, | *huei*$^4$*-p'iao*$^4$ | 匯票 |
| Drawer, | *ch'eo*$^1$*-t'i*$^4$ | 抽屜 |
| Duties, to receive Customs, | *sheo*$^1$ *shui*$^4$ | 收稅 |
| Duty free, | *mien*$^3$ *shui*$^4$ | 免稅 |
| Each, a little of, | *mei*$^3$ *iang*$^4$ *iao*$^4$ *ih*$^1$*-tien*$^3$ | 每樣要一點 |
| Entrust others with business, | *t'oh*$^1$ *ren*$^2$ *pan*$^4$ *sĭ*$^4$ | 托人辦事 |
| Export duty, | *ch'uh*$^1$ *k'eo*$^3$ *shui*$^4$ | 出口稅 |
| Fair dealing, | *kong*$^1$*-p'ing*$^2$ *chiao*$^1$*-i*$^4$ | 公平交易 |
| Figures, | *ma*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ | 碼子 |

Large style of writing adopted to avoid fraud, *ta-hsie* 大寫.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| One, | *ih*$^1$ | 壹 |
| Two, | *rĭ*$^4$ | 貳 |
| Three, | *san*$^1$ | 叁 |
| Four, | *sĭ*$^4$ | 肆 |
| Five, | *u*$^3$ | 伍 |
| Six, | *luh*$^4$ ; *liu*$^4$ | 陸 |
| Seven, | *ch'ih*$^1$ | 柒 |
| Eight, | *pah*$^1$ | 捌 |
| Nine, | *chiu*$^3$ | 玖 |
| Ten, | *shïh*$^2$ | 拾 |

Ordinary style where no need exists for special caution, *hua ma* 畫碼.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1, | *ih* | 〡 |
| 2, | *rĭ* | 〢 |
| 3, | *san* | 〣 |
| 4, | *sĭ* | 〤 |
| 5, | *u* | 〥 |
| 6, | *luh* | 〦 |
| 7, | *ch'ih* | 〧 |
| 8, | *pah* | 〨 |
| 9, | *chiu* | 〩 |
| 10, | *shïh* | 十 |
| 13, | *shïh-san* | 〡三 |
| 22, | *rĭ-shïh-rĭ* | 〢二 |
| 24, | *rĭ-shïh-sĭ* | 〢〤 |
| 102, | *ih-peh ling rĭ* | 〡〇二 |
| 115, | *ih-peh ih-shïh-u* | 〡·〥 |
| 1360, | *ih-ch'ien san-peh luh* | 〡三〦十 |
| 4642, | *sĭ-ch'ien luh-peh sĭ-shïh-rĭ* | 〤〦〤二 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Flag, Chinese, | *u*$^3$ *seh*$^4$ *ch'i*$^2$ | 五色旗 |
| Foreign goods, these are all, | *chœ*$^4$ *tu*$^1$ *shï*$^4$ *iang*$^2$ *ho*$^4$ | 這都是洋貨 |
| Flag, | *ch'i*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 旗子 |
| Full weight and measure, | *ch'eng*$^1$ *p'ing*$^2$ *teo*$^4$ *man*$^3$ | 稱平斗滿 |
| Goods, | *ho*$^4$ ; *ho*$^4$*-uh*$^4$ | 貨, 貨物 |
| Goods genuine, fixed prices, | *ho*$^4$ *chen*$^1$ *chia*$^4$ *shïh*$^2$ | 貨眞價實 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Handicraft; workmanship, | *sheo*$^3$*-i*$^4$*; sheo*$^8$ *tuan*$^4$ | 手藝, 手段 |
| How heavy is this? | *puh*$^1$ *chï*$^1$*-tao*$^4$ *chœ*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *to*$^1$*-mo*$^3$ *ch'en*$^2$ *(chong*$^4$*)?* | 不知道這個多麽沈(or 重) |
| Income not equal to expenditure, | *so*$^3$ *ruh*$^4$ *puh*$^1$ *fu*$^1$ *so*$^8$ *ch'uh*$^1$ | 所入不敷所出 |
| Income, | *chin*$^4$ *hsiang*$^4$ | 進項 |
| Income, barely sufficient, | *chin*$^4$ *hsiang*$^4$ *chin*$^3$ *chin*$^3$ *tih*$^1$ *keo*$^4$ *iong*$^4$ | 進項僅僅的彀用 |
| Inferior goods, | *hsia*$^4$ *teng*$^3$ *lih*$^1$ *ho*$^4$ | 下等的貨 |
| Ill-gotten gains will not enrich the man fated to be poor, | *hueng*$^2$ *ts'ai*$^2$ *puh*$^1$ *fu*$^4$ *ming*$^4$ *ch'iong*$^2$ *ren*$^2$ | 橫財不富命窮人 |
| Letter, | *ih*$^1$*-feng*$^1$*-hsin*$^4$ *; hsin*$^4$ | 一封信, 信 |
| Letter, carry a, | *shao*$^1$ *hsin*$^4$*; tai*$^4$ *hsin*$^4$ | 捎信, 帶信 |
| Letter, foreign, | *uai*$^4$*-kueh*$^2$ *hsin*$^4$ | 外國信 |
| Letter, receive a, | *chieh*$^1$ *hsin*$^4$ | 接信 |
| Letter, send a, | *chi*$^4$*-hsin*$^4$*; fah*$^1$ *hsin*$^4$ | 寄信, 發信 |
| Letter, take a, | *song*$^4$ *hsin*$^4$ | 送信 |
| Likin tax, | *li*$^2$*-chin*$^1$ | 釐金 |
| Locally made or imported? | *chœ*$^4$ *shï*$^4$ *pen*$^3$*-ti*$^4$ *tso*$^4$*-tih*$^1$ *shï*$^4$ *uai*$^4$*-kueh*$^2$ *lai*$^2$*-tih*$^1$ *?* | 這是本地做的是外國來的 |
| Manager, | *kuan*$^3$*-sï*$^4$*-tih*$^1$ | 管事的 |
| Market rate; state of the market, | *hang*$^2$*-shï*$^4$*; hang*$^2$*-ch'ing*$^2$ | 行市, 行情 |
| Make up to—above regular allowance, | *t'ieh*$^1$ *pu*$^3$ | 貼補 |
| Merchants, | *shang*$^1$*-chia*$^1$ | 商家 |
| Middle-class goods, | *chong*$^1$ *teng*$^3$ *tih*$^1$ *ho*$^4$ | 中等的貨 |
| Negotiate; pass through a person's hands, | *ching*$^1$*-sheo*$^8$ | 經手 |
| Notice; notification, | *kao*$^4$ *peh*$^4$ | 告白 |
| Night permit, | *ie*$^4$ *p'iao*$^4$ | 夜票 |
| Office, | *chang*$^4$*-fang*$^2$ | 賬房 |
| Ounce, | *liang*$^8$ | 兩 |
| Payable at three to five days' sight, | *chien*$^4$ *- p'iao*$^4$ *ch'ï*$^2$ *san*$^1$ *u*$^3$ *t'ien*$^1$ | 見票遲三五天 |
| Payable to bearer only, | *ren*$^4$ *p'iao*$^4$ *puh*$^1$ *ren*$^4$ *ren*$^2$ | 認票不認人 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Partnership, to enter into, | *tah*$^1$ *ho*$^3$ | 搭夥 |
| Partnership, to dissolve, | *ts‘eh*$^4$ *ho*$^3$ | 拆夥 |
| Pounds (English), | *pang*$^4$ | 磅 |
| Pence ,, | *pieh*$^2$ *lih*$^4$ | 別力 |
| Per cent; to make two, | *chuan*$^4$ *rï*$^3$ *fen*$^4$ *li*$^4$ | 賺二分利 |
| Per cent; how much did you make? | *chuan*$^4$ *chi*$^3$ *fen*$^4$ *li*$^4$*?* | 賺幾分利 |
| Percentage, to take a, | *ch‘eo*$^1$ *fen*$^4$ | 抽分 |
| Permit to land goods, a, | *ch‘i*$^3$ *ho*$^4$ *tan*$^1$ | 起貨單 |
| Prices, uncertain whether they will rise or fall, | *chang*$^3$ *loh*$^4$ *na*$^2$ *puh*$^1$ *ting*$^4$ | 長落拿不定 |
| Price, no fixed market, | *chia*$^4$*-ch‘ien*$^2$ *puh*$^1$ *ting*$^4$ *p‘an*$^2$*-rï*$^2$ | 價錢不定盤兒 |
| Price, to lose on, | *p‘ei*$^2$ *pen*$^3$; *k‘uei*$^1$ *pen*$^3$ | 賠本, 虧本 |
| Price of this, what is the? | *chœ*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *mai*$^4$ *shen*$^4$*-mo*$^3$ *chia*$^4$*-ch‘ien*$^2$*?* | 這個賣甚麽價錢 |
| Price, cannot afford to sell for the, | *chœ*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *chia*$^4$ *ch‘ien*$^2$ *mai*$^4$ *puh*$^1$ *ch‘uh*$^1$ *ch‘ü*$^4$ | 這個價錢賣不出去 |
| Price, I cannot afford to pay the, | *chœ*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *chia*$^4$*-ch‘ien*$^2$ *mai*$^3$ *puh*$^1$ *hsia*$^4$ *lai*$^2$ | 這個價錢買不下來 |
| Profit, | *li*$^4$ *hsih*$^2$ | 利息 |
| Proprietor, | *lao*$^3$*-pan*$^3$; *chang*$^3$*-kuei*$^4$*-tih*$^1$ | 老板, 掌櫃的 |
| Pint; pint measure, | *sheng*$^1$ | 升 |
| Pound, | *chin*$^1$ | 斤 |
| | | |
| Ready money business, | *hsien*$^4$*-ch‘ien*$^2$ *tih*$^1$ *mai*$^3$ *mai*$^4$ | 現錢的買賣 |
| Recommend, | *chü*$^3$*-chien*$^4$ | 舉荐 |
| Receipt, | *sheo*$^1$*-t‘iao*$^2$ | 收條 |
| Receipt book (native), | *sheo*$^3$*-cheh*$^2$ | 手摺 |
| Received, | *sheo*$^1$*-tao*$^4$*-liao*$^3$ | 收到了 |
| Remit money, | *huei*$^4$ *in*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 匯銀子 |
| Robbed, to be, | *pei*$^4$ *liao*$^3$ *tao*$^4$ | 被了盜 |
| | | |
| Salary; stipend, | *hsin*$^1$ *shui*$^3$; *shuh*$^4$ *hsiu*$^1$ | 薪水, 束脩 |
| Scales, | *t‘ien*$^1$*-p‘ing*$^2$ | 天平 |
| Scale, difference of, | *hsiao*$^3$*-p‘ing*$^2$ | 小平 |
| Scale—what scale do you use here? | *chœ*$^4$*-li*$^3$ *iong*$^4$ *shen*$^4$*-mo*$^3$ *p‘ing*$^2$*?* | 這裏用甚麽平 |
| Scale (we) use the *ts‘ao*, | *iong*$^4$ *ts‘ao*$^2$*-p‘ing*$^2$ | 用槽平 |
| Seller, the, | *mai*$^4$*-chu*$^3$ | 賣主 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ship's manifest, | *tsʻang$^1$-kʻeo$^3$ tan$^1$* | 艙口單 |
| 'Show' goods, | *men$^2$ mien$^4$ ho$^4$* | 門面貨 |
| Shut up shop, | *shang$^1$ men$^2$* | 上門 |
| Silver at 2 *per cent.* alloy, | *chiu$^3$-pah$^1$ in$^2$* | 九八銀 |
| Silver, depreciation of, | *mao$^2$-seh$^4$* | 毛色 |
| Silver, fall in, | *in$^2$-tsï$^2$ tieh$^1$-chia$^4$* | 銀子跌價 |
| Silver, full quality; "touch," | *chʻeng$^2$-seh$^4$* | 成色 |
| Silver, pure, | *uen$^2$-in$^2$* | 紋銀 |
| Silver, rise in price of, | *in$^2$-tsï$^3$ chang$^3$-chia$^4$* | 銀子長價 |
| Silver, broken, | *sui$^4$ in$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 碎銀子 |
| Shillings, | *hsi$^1$-lin$^2$* | 西林 |
| Silver, a fall in, | *in$^2$-tsï$^3$ loh$^2$* or *tieh$^1$* | 銀子落 (or) 跌 |
| Silver, a rise in, | *in$^2$-tsï$^3$ chang$^3$* | 銀子長 |
| Superior goods, | *shang$^4$ teng$^3$ tih$^1$ ho$^4$* | 上等的貨 |
| Superintend the weighing of goods, | *chang$^3$ chʻeng$^4$* | 掌稱 |
| Stocks; shares, | *ku$^3$-fen$^4$ pʻiao$^4$* | 股分票 |
| Stock, to take, | *pʻan$^2$ ho$^4$* | 盤貨 |
| Shop, | *pʻu$^4$-tsï$^3$; tien$^4$; chuang$^1$* | 舖子, 店, 莊 |
| Speculate, | *mai$^3$ kʻong$^1$* | 買空 |
| Steelyard, | *chʻeng$^4$* | 稱 |
| Tael, Imperial, | *kʻu$^4$ pʻing$^2$* | 庫平 |
| „ Customs, | *kuan$^1$ pʻing$^2$* | 關平 |
| „ Shanghai, | *kuei$^1$ pʻing$^2$* | 規平 |
| Telegram, | *tien$^4$-pao$^4$* | 電報 |
| Telegram, expense of sending, | *pao$^4$ fei$^4$* | 報費 |
| Telegram, receive a, | *chieh$^1$ pao$^4$* | 接報 |
| Telegram to Shanghai, to send a, | *chi$^4$ tien$^4$-pao$^4$ tao$^4$ Shang$^4$-hai$^3$* | 寄電報到上海 |
| Telegram, transmit a, | *chuan$^3$ pao$^4$* | 轉報 |
| Trade mark, | *shang$^1$ piao$^1$* | 商標 |
| Trader, dealer, | *fan$^4$-tsï$^3$; fan$^4$ hu$^4$* | 販子, 販戶 |
| Trade; business, | *seng$^1$-i$^4$; mai$^3$-mai$^4$* | 生意, 買賣 |
| Uniform prices, | *hua$^4$ ih$^1$ puh$^1$ rï$^4$* | 畫一不二 |
| Warehouse; 'godown,' | *chan$^4$ fang$^2$* | 棧房 |
| Weigh it, bring steelyard and, | *na$^2$chʻeng$^4$lai$^2$chʻeng$^1$ chʻeng$^1$* | 拿稱來稱稱 |
| Weights, | *fah$^2$ ma$^4$* | 法碼 |
| Weight, on steelyard, | *chʻeng$^4$ tʻo$^2$* | 稱鉈 |
| Work, to, | *tso$^4$ ing$^2$-seng$^1$; tso$^4$ hoh$^4$* | 做營生, 做活 |

# THE STUDY. 書房

(See also under Education.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Aspirated, | *ch‘uh$^1$-ch‘i$^4$* | 出氣 |
| „ not, | *puh$^1$ ch‘uh$^1$-ch‘i$^4$* | 不出氣 |
| „ or not? | *ch‘uh$^1$-ch‘i$^4$ puh$^1$-ch‘uh$^1$-ch‘i$^4$?* | 出氣不出氣 |
| Book, | *shu$^1$; ih$^1$-pen$^3$ shu$^1$* | 書, 一本書 |
| Book, stitch me up a, | *ch‘ing$^3$ chih$^4$ o$^3$ ting$^4$ ko$^4$ chï$^3$ pen$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 請給我釘個紙本子 |
| „ case, | *shu$^1$-chia$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 書架子 |
| Character, how do you write this? | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ tsen$^3$-mo$^3$ hsie$^3$-fah$^4$?* | 這個字怎麼寫法 |
| „ I do not know this, | *o$^3$ puh$^1$ ren$^4$-teh$^4$ chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$* | 我不認得這個字 |
| „ what is this please? | *chœ$^4$ shï$^4$ shen$^4$-mo$^3$ tsï$^4$?* | 這是甚麼字 |
| „ what radical does this come from? | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ ts‘ong$^2$ shen$^4$-mo$^3$ p‘ang$^2$?* | 這個字從甚麼旁 |
| „ what tone is this? | *chœ$^4$ shï$^4$ shen$^4$-mo$^3$ sheng$^1$-in$^1$?* | 這是甚麼聲音 |
| „ which stroke do you write first in this? | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ ts‘ong$^2$ na$^3$-li$^3$ hsie$^4$-ch‘i$^3$?* | 這個字從那裏寫起 |
| „ I cannot find this; please look it up, | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ o$^3$ ch‘a$^2$ puh$^1$ ch‘uh$^1$-lai,$^2$ ch‘ing$^3$ chih$^4$ o$^3$ ch‘a$^2$ ih$^1$ ch‘a$^2$* | 這個字我查不出來,請給我查一查 |
| Clear copy, to make a, | *t‘eng$^2$ ch‘ing$^1$* | 謄清 |
| Copy slip, please write me a, | *ch‘ing$^3$ chih$^4$ o$^3$ hsie$^4$ ko$^4$ in$^4$ pen$^3$* | 請給我寫個印本 |
| Correct me, please, | *ch‘ing$^3$ chï$^3$ o$^3$-tih$^1$ ts‘o$^4$* | 請指我的錯 |
| Diligent, to be, | *iong$^4$ kong$^1$* | 用功 |
| Dictionary, look up the, | *ch‘a$^2$ tsï$^4$-tien$^3$* | 查字典 |
| Draft, a, | *ts‘ao$^3$-kao$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 草稿子 |
| Emphasize this character, | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ iao$^4$ chong$^4$ nien$^4$* | 這個字要重念 |
| Emphasize this word, do not, | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ tsï$^4$ iao$^4$ ch‘ing$^1$ nien$^4$* | 這個字要輕念 |
| Explain this, please, | *ch‘ing$^3$ kiai$^3$-shoh$^1$ chih$^4$ o$^3$ t‘ing$^1$* | 請解說給我聽 |

書中有黃金 *There is wealth in books.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Explain the meaning of this lesson, please, | *ch‘eng$^{3}$chiang$^{3}$chæ$^{4}$-k‘o$^{4}$ tih$^{1}$ i$^{4}$-sï$^{1}$ chih$^{4}$ o$^{3}$ t‘ing$^{1}$* | 請講這課的意思給我聽 |
| Foreigners do not distinguish tones, | *uai$^{4}$-kueh$^{2}$-ren$^{2}$puh$^{1}$fen$^{1}$ p‘ing$^{2}$,shang$^{4}$, ch‘ü$^{4}$, ruh$^{4}$* | 外國人不分平,上,去,入 |
| Home, where is your? | *fu$^{3}$-shang$^{4}$ na$^{3}$-li$^{3}$?* | 府上那裏 |
| If I make a mistake, please tell me, | *roh$^{4}$-shï$^{4}$ o$^{3}$ shoh$^{1}$ ts‘o$^{4}$-liao$^{3}$,ch‘ing$^{3}$kao$^{4}$-su$^{4}$ o$^{3}$* | 若是我說錯了,請告訴我 |
| Ink, | *meh$^{4}$* | 墨 |
| ,, to rub down, | *mo$^{2}$ (ien$^{3}$) meh$^{4}$* | 摩(研)墨 |
| ,, block of, | *ih$^{1}$-k‘uai$^{4}$ meh$^{4}$* | 一塊墨 |
| ,, fluid, | *meh$^{4}$-shui$^{3}$* | 墨水 |
| ,, please buy me a block of, | *ch‘ing$^{3}$ t‘i$^{4}$ o$^{3}$ mai$^{3}$ ih$^{1}$-k‘uai$^{4}$ meh$^{4}$* | 請替我買一塊墨 |
| Ink-slab, | *ien$^{4}$-t‘ai$^{2}$* | 硯台 |
| Ink-pot, | *meh$^{4}$ hoh$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 墨盒子 |
| I wish to read this book, | *o$^{3}$ iao$^{4}$ nien$^{4}$ chæ$^{4}$-pen$^{3}$ shu$^{1}$* | 我要念這本書 |
| Know, I, | *o$^{3}$ hsiao$^{3}$-teh$^{1}$; o$^{3}$chï$^{1}$-tao$^{4}$* | 我曉得,我知道 |
| ,, do you? | *hsiao$^{3}$-teh$^{4}$ puh$^{1}$ hsiao$^{3}$-teh$^{4}$?* | 曉得不曉得 |
| ,, I do not, | *o$^{3}$ puh$^{1}$ hsiao$^{3}$-teh$^{4}$* | 我不曉得 |
| Lesson, which? | *na$^{3}$-ih$^{1}$ k‘o$^{4}$?* | 那一課 |
| ,, not this, | *puh$^{1}$ shï$^{4}$ chæ$^{4}$-ih$^{1}$ k‘o$^{4}$* | 不是這一課 |
| Learn, | *hsioh$^{2}$* | 學 |
| Learn thoroughly, | *hsioh$^{2}$ huei$^{4}$ liao$^{3}$* | 學會了 |
| Learn, unable to, | *hsioh$^{2}$ puh$^{1}$ huei$^{4}$* | 學不會 |
| Literary style; style, | *uen$^{2}$-li$^{3}$* | 文理 |
| Mandarin dialect, | *kuan$^{1}$ hua$^{4}$* | 官話 |
| Name, your honourable? | *kuei$^{1}$-hsing$^{4}$?* | 貴姓 |
| Name, my unworthv is Li, | *pi$^{4}$ hsing$^{4}$ Li$^{3}$* | 敝姓李 |
| Paper, | *chï$^{3}$* | 紙 |
| ,, buy a few sheets of, | *mai$^{3}$ chi$^{3}$-chang$^{1}$ chï$^{3}$* | 買幾張紙 |
| ,, coarse yellow writing, | *mao$^{2}$-pien$^{1}$-chï$^{3}$* | 毛邊紙 |
| ,, sheet of, | *ih$^{1}$-chang$^{1}$ chï$^{3}$* | 一張紙 |
| ,, tough white, | *p‘i$^{2}$-chï$^{3}$* | 皮紙 |
| ,, white writing, | *peh$^{2}$-fan$^{2}$-chï$^{3}$* | 白礬紙 |
| ,, yellow writing, | *chuh$^{4}$-chï$^{3}$* | 竹紙 |
| Pen rest, | *pih$^{3}$-chia$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 筆架子 |
| Pencil; pen, | *pih$^{3}$; ih$^{1}$-chï$^{1}$ pih$^{3}$* | 筆,一枝筆 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Point protector, | pih$^{3}$-t‘ong$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$ | 筆筒子 |
| Price—what is the price of this thing? | chœ$^{4}$-ko$^{4}$ tong$^{1}$-hsi$^{1}$ mai$^{3}$ to$^{1}$-shao$^{4}$ ch‘ien$^{2}$? | 這個東西買多少錢 |
| Pronunciation, | k‘eo$^{3}$-in$^{1}$ | 口音 |
| Pronunciation correct? is my, | o$^{3}$-tih$^{1}$ k‘eo$^{3}$-in$^{1}$ tui$^{4}$ puh$^{1}$ tui$^{4}$? | 我的口音對不對 |
| Radical, | tsï$^{4}$-mu$^{3}$ | 字母 |
| Read the first lesson, I want to, | o$^{3}$ iao$^{4}$ nien$^{4}$ ti$^{4}$-ih$^{1}$ k‘o$^{4}$ | 我要念第一課 |
| Read from here, I want to, | o$^{3}$ iao$^{4}$ ts‘ong$^{2}$ chœ$^{4}$-li$^{3}$ nien$^{4}$ | 我要從這裏念 |
| Read after me, | ken$^{1}$ o$^{3}$ nien$^{4}$ | 跟我念 |
| Revise lessons, | li$^{3}$-shu$^{1}$ | 理書 |
| Right or wrong? | ts‘o$^{4}$ puh$^{1}$ ts‘o$^{4}$? | 錯不錯 |
| Right, | puh$^{1}$ ts‘o$^{4}$ | 不錯 |
| Rough draft, I only want a, | o$^{3}$ chï$^{3}$ iao$^{4}$ ta$^{3}$ ts‘ao$^{3}$ kao$^{3}$-tsï$^{3}$ | 我只要打草稿子 |
| Say that once again, please, | ch‘ing$^{3}$ tsai$^{4}$ shoh$^{1}$ ih$^{1}$-huei$^{4}$ | 請再說一回 |
| ,, again, please; I did not catch it, | o$^{3}$ t‘ing$^{1}$-puh$^{1}$-ch‘uh$^{1}$-lai$^{2}$ ch‘ing$^{3}$ tsai$^{4}$ shoh$^{1}$ | 我聽不出來請再說 |
| Seat, please take a, | ch‘ing$^{3}$ tso$^{4}$ | 請坐 |
| Speak more slowly, please, | ch‘ing$^{3}$ man$^{4}$-tien$^{3}$ shoh$^{1}$ | 請慢點說 |
| Study, to, | nien$^{4}$-shu$^{1}$ | 念書 |
| Study; library, | shu$^{1}$-fang$^{2}$ | 書房 |
| Study, to, | hsioh$^{2}$-hsi$^{2}$ | 學習 |
| Study writing, | hsioh$^{2}$ hsie$^{3}$ | 學寫 |
| Teacher, | hsien$^{1}$-seng$^{1}$ | 先生 |
| Tone, | sheng$^{1}$-in$^{1}$ | 聲音 |
| Translate, | fan$^{1}$ ch‘uh$^{1}$ lai$^{2}$ | 繙出來 |
| Translate, unable to, | fan$^{1}$ puh$^{1}$ ch‘uh$^{1}$-lai$^{2}$ | 繙不出來 |
| Understand, | ming$^{2}$-peh$^{2}$ | 明白 |
| Understand, do you? | ming$^{2}$-peh$^{2}$ puh$^{1}$ ming$^{2}$-peh$^{2}$? | 明白不明白 |
| Understand this, I do not. | chœ$^{4}$-ko$^{4}$ i$^{4}$-sï$^{1}$ o$^{3}$ puh$^{1}$ tong$^{3}$ | 這個意思我不懂 |
| Well, are you? | hsien$^{1}$-seng$^{1}$ hao$^{3}$ a$^{4}$? | 先生好阿 |
| Wise; clever, | ts‘ong$^{1}$-ming$^{2}$ | 聰明 |
| Write, | hsie$^{3}$-tsï$^{3}$ | 寫字 |
| ,, I want to learn to, | o$^{3}$ iao$^{4}$ hsioh$^{2}$ hsie$^{3}$ tsï$^{3}$ | 我要學寫字 |
| Written, how is this? | chœ$^{4}$ shï$^{4}$ tsen$^{3}$-mo$^{3}$ hsie$^{3}$ fah$^{4}$? | 這是怎麼寫法 |
| Wrong, | ts‘o$^{4}$ | 錯 |

# THE KITCHEN. 房廚

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 煮 | *chu*$^{3}$ | To boil. | 剁 | *to*$^{4}$ | To chop; to mince. |
| 煎 | *chien*$^{1}$ | To fry. | 割 | *koh*$^{1}$ | To cut. |
| 烤 | *k‘ao*$^{3}$ | To roast. | 切 | *ch‘ieh*$^{1}$ | To slice. |
| 泡 | *p‘ao*$^{4}$ | To soak. | 片 | *p‘ien*$^{4}$ | To cut in slices. |
| 洗 | *hsi*$^{3}$ | To wash. | 刷 | *shuah*$^{1}$ | To brush; wash up. |
| 嫩 | *nuen*$^{4}$ | Tender. | 涮 | *shuan*$^{4}$ | To rinse; to scour. |
| 煳 | *hu*$^{2}$ | Burnt. | 臭 | *ch‘eo*$^{4}$ | To stink; stinking. |
| 菜 | *ts‘ai*$^{4}$ | Vegetables. | 爛 | *lan*$^{4}$ | Tender. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Apples, | *p‘ing*$^{2}$*-ko*$^{3}$ | 蘋菓 |
| Apricots, | *hsing*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 杏子 |
| Arrowroot, | *eo*$^{3}$*-fen*$^{3}$ | 藕粉 |
| Baked (or roasted) over-much, | *chœ*$^{4}$*-ko*$^{4}$*tong*$^{1}$*-hsi*$^{1}$*k‘ao*$^{3}$*-tih*$^{1}$ *ko*$^{4}$ *ho*$^{3}$ *lah*$^{1}$ | 這個東西烤的過火喇 |
| Bean-curd, | *teo*$^{4}$*-fu*$^{3}$ | 豆腐 |
| Bean-powder, | *teo*$^{4}$*-fen*$^{3}$ | 豆粉 |
| Bean-sprouts, | *teo*$^{4}$*-ia*$^{2}$ | 豆芽 |
| Beans, | *teo*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 豆子 |
| ,, broad, | *ts‘an*$^{2}$*-teo*$^{4}$ | 蠶豆 |
| Beef, | *niu*$^{2}$*-ruh*$^{4}$ (ro) | 牛肉 |
| Biscuits; cakes, | *ping*$^{3}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 餅子 |
| Bitter, this is very, | *chœ*$^{4}$*-ko*$^{4}$ *tong*$^{1}$*-hsi*$^{1}$ *hen*$^{3}$ *k‘u*$^{3}$ | 這個東西很苦 |
| Bread, | *man*$^{2}$*-t‘eo*$^{2}$; *mo*$^{2}$*-mo*$^{2}$ | 饅頭, 饝饝 |
| ,, foreign, | *mien*$^{4}$*-pao*$^{1}$ | 麵包 |
| Brush for washing utensils, | *shuah*$^{3}$*-cheo*$^{3}$ | 刷箒 |
| Boil (the eggs) softer, | *iao*$^{4}$ *chu*$^{5}$ *nuen*$^{4}$*-hsie*$^{1}$ | 要煮嫩些 |
| Boiled overmuch, | *chu*$^{3}$*-lan*$^{4}$*-liao*$^{3}$ | 煮爛了 |
| Buckwheat, | *ch‘iao*$^{2}$*-meh*$^{4}$*-mien*$^{4}$ | 蕎麥麵 |
| Butter, | *niu*$^{2}$*-nai*$^{3}$*-iu*$^{2}$; *nai*$^{3}$ *iu*$^{2}$ | 牛奶油, 奶油 |
| Burnt, | *shao*$^{1}$*-hu*$^{2}$*-liao*$^{3}$ | 燒煳了 |
| Cabbage, | *peh*$^{2}$*-ts‘ai*$^{4}$ | 白菜 |
| Cake, baked, | *shao*$^{1}$*-ping*$^{3}$ | 燒餅 |

---

一樣的米麵, 各人的手段 *The rice and flour are the same, but each one's handiwork differs—in cooking them.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cake, crisp, | *ts‘ui$^4$-ping$^3$* | 脆 餅 |
| Candied peel, | *chüh$^2$-ping$^3$* | 橘 餅 |
| Capsicum, | *lah$^4$-chiao$^1$* | 辣 椒 |
| Cheese, | *niu$^2$-nai$^3$-ping$^3$* | 牛 奶 餅 |
| Chestnuts, | *lih$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 栗 子 |
| Cinnamon, | *ruh$^4$-kuei$^4$* | 肉 桂 |
| Cloves, | *ting$^1$-hsiang$^1$* | 丁 香 |
| Coffee, | *kia$^1$ fei$^1$* | 咖 啡 |
| Confectionery, | *tien$^3$-hsin$^1$* | 點 心 |
| Corn flour, | *liang$^2$-fen$^3$* | 凉 粉 |
| Crab-apples, | *hua$^1$-hong$^2$* | 花 紅 |
| Cucumber, | *huang$^2$ (uang) kua$^1$* | 黃 (王) 瓜 |
| Cooking-pan, medium, | *chong$^1$-ko$^1$* | 中 鍋 |
| „ small, | *hsiao$^3$-ko$^1$* | 小 鍋 |
| Cooking-pan cover, | *ko$^1$-kai$^4$* | 鍋 蓋 |
| Cooking-range, | *ko$^1$-t‘ai$^2$* | 鍋 臺 |
| Candle, | *lah$^4$-chuh$^2$* | 蠟 燭 |
| Candlestick, | *lah$^4$-chuh$^2$ t‘ai$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 蠟 燭 臺 子 |
| Carpet; rug, | *t‘an$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 毯 子 |
| Chopping-board, | *an$^4$-pan$^3$* | 案 板 |
| Chop-sticks, | *k‘uai$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 筷 子 |
| Chop-stick basket, | *k‘uai$^4$-lo$^2$* | 筷 籮 |
| Cooking-pan, large, | *ta$^4$-ko$^1$* | 大 鍋 |
| Cook, a, | *ta$^4$-sï$^1$-fu$^4$* | 大 司 傅 |
| Cooked, this is not thoroughly, | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ muh$^2$ iu$^3$ shuh$^2$* | 這 個 沒 有 熟 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Dirt; refuse, | *huei$^1$-t‘u$^3$* | 灰 土 |
| Dirty; filthy, | *oh$^4$-ch‘oh$^1$; tsang$^1$* | 齷 齪, 髒 |
| Dish, | *ch‘ang$^2$ p‘an$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 長 盤 子 |
| Dough strips, | *mien$^4$ t‘iao$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 麵 條 子 |
| „ hung, | *kua$^4$-mien$^4$* | 掛 麵 |
| Duck, | *iah$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 鴨 子 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Eggs, | *tan$^4$* | 蛋 |
| Eggs, hen's, | *chi$^1$-tan$^4$; chi$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 雞 蛋, 雞 子 |
| Eggs, duck's, | *iah$^1$-tan$^4$* | 鴨 蛋 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fish, | *ü$^2$* | 魚 |
| Flour, | *huei$^1$-mien$^4$; peh$^2$-mien$^4$* | 灰 麵, 白 麵 |
| Fowls, | *chi$^1$; chi$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 雞, 雞 子 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Do not boil the eggs hard, | *chœ$^4$-hsie$^1$chi$^1$-tan$^4$puh$^1$ iao$^4$ chu$^3$ ko$^4$ (lao$^3$) liao$^3$* | 這些雞蛋不要煮過(老)了 |
| Dust, to, | *tan$^3$-huei$^1$* | 担灰 |
| Eggs, boil two, | *chu$^3$ liang$^3$-ko$^4$ chi$^1$-tan$^4$* | 煑兩個雞蛋 |
| „ fry a few, | *chien$^1$ chi$^3$-ko$^4$ tan$^4$* | 煎幾個蛋 |
| „ you must boil the, hard, | *chi$^1$-tan$^4$ iao$^4$ chu$^3$ lao$^3$* | 雞蛋要煑老 |
| Fire, light the, | *seng$^1$-ho$^3$; hsing$^1$-ho$^3$* | 生火，興火 |
| Food left over—where is it? | *sheng$^4$-tih$^1$ ts‘ai$^4$ tsai$^4$-na$^3$-li$^3$?* | 賸的菜在那裏 |
| Food, prepare, | *long$^4$-fan$^4$* | 弄飯 |
| Fowl, kill a, | *tsai$^3$-chi$^1$; shah$^1$-chi$^1$* | 宰雞，殺雞 |
| „ mince the, | *pa$^3$ chi$^1$ to$^4$-sui$^4$* | 把雞剁碎 |
| Froth; scum, | *moh$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 沫子 |
| Fruit, buy fresh, | *mai$^3$ shui$^3$-ko$^3$* | 買水菓 |
| Garlic, | *ta$^4$-suan$^4$* | 大蒜 |
| Ginger, | *seng$^1$-chiang$^1$* | 生薑 |
| Grapes, | *p‘u$^2$-t‘ao$^2$* | 葡萄 |
| Green peas, | *uan$^1$-teo$^4$* | 豌豆 |
| Greens, | *ch‘ing$^2$-ts‘ai$^4$* | 青菜 |
| Ham, | *ho$^3$-t‘ui$^3$* | 火腿 |
| Honey, | *feng$^1$-mih$^4$* | 蜂蜜 |
| Jam, haw, | *shan$^1$-cha$^1$-kao$^1$* | 山楂糕 |
| Jam, | *ko$^3$-chiang$^4$* | 菓醬 |
| Jar, | *poh$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 缽子 |
| Jug, | *kuan$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 罐子 |
| Kitchen, | *ch‘u$^2$ fang$^2$* | 厨房 |
| Kitchen knife, | *ts‘ai$^4$-tao$^1$* | 菜刀 |
| Knife, | *ih$^1$-pa$^3$ tao$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 一把刀子 |
| Knife, the, is blunt, take it away and sharpen it, | *chœ$^4$-pa$^3$ tao$^1$-tsï$^3$ tuen$^4$ liao$^3$, na$^2$-ch‘ü$^4$ mo$^2$-mo$^2$* | 這把刀子鈍了，拿去磨磨 |
| Knives, to clean, | *mo$^2$ tao$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 磨刀子 |
| Ketchup, | *chiang$^4$-iu$^2$; ch‘ing$^1$ chiang$^4$* | 醬油，清醬 |
| Ladle, iron, | *t‘ieh$^3$-p‘iao$^2$* | 鐵瓢 |
| „ water, | *shui$^3$-p‘iao$^2$* | 水瓢 |
| Lard, | *chu$^1$-iu$^2$* | 猪油 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Marketing, to go, | *shang$^4$-kiai$^1$ mai$^3$ tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* | 上街買東西 |
| Meat, | *ruh$^4$ (ro)* | 肉 |
| Meatballs, | *ruh$^4$-ping$^3$-tsï$^3$; ruh$^4$-üen$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 肉餅子, 肉圓子 |
| Meat dumplings, | *pao$^1$-kiao$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 包餃子 |
| Meat shreds, fried, | *ch‘ao$^3$-ruh$^4$-sï$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 炒肉絲子 |
| Melon seeds, | *kua$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 瓜子 |
| Monkey-nuts; ground-nuts; peanuts, | *hua$^1$-seng$^1$; ch‘ang$^2$-seng$^1$ ko$^3$; loh$^4$ hua$^1$ seng$^1$* | 花生, 長生果, 落花生 |
| Mustard. | *kiai$^4$-meh$^4$-fen$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 芥麥粉子 |
| Meal, bring in the, | *pai$^3$-fan$^4$* | 擺飯 |
| ,, is on the table, | *fan$^4$ pai$^3$-hao$^3$-liao$^3$* | 飯擺好了 |
| ,, is it ready? | *fan$^4$ hao$^3$-liao$^3$ muh$^2$ iu$^3$?* | 飯好了沒有 |
| ,, serve up a, | *k‘ai$^1$-fan$^4$* | 開飯 |
| Meals at regular hours, to have, | *an$^4$ shï$^2$-heo$^4$ ch‘ih$^1$-fan$^4$* | 按時候喫飯 |
| Meat, this is too fat, | *chœ$^4$-ko$^4$ ruh$^4$ t‘ai$^4$ fei$^2$* | 這個肉太肥 |
| Meat-safe, | *liang$^2$-long$^2$* | 涼籠 |
| Milk, | *nai$^3$* | 奶 |
| Milk, cows’, | *niu$^2$-nai$^3$; nai$^3$* | 牛奶, 奶 |
| Milk cannot be bought, | *niu$^2$-nai$^3$ mai$^3$ puh$^1$-tao$^4$* | 牛奶買不到 |
| Mince fine, to, | *to$^4$-lan$^4$* | 剁爛 |
| Mincemeat, to make, | *pa$^3$ ruh$^4$ ch‘ieh$^1$ sui$^4$-liao$^3$* | 把肉切碎了 |
| Mutton, | *iang$^2$-ruh$^4$* | 羊肉 |
| Oatmeal, | *iu$^1$-meh$^4$-mien$^4$; uai$^4$-kueh$^2$ meh$^4$ fen$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 莜麥麵, 外國麥粉子 |
| Onions, | *ts‘ong$^1$* | 葱 |
| Oranges, | *chüh$^2$-tsï$^3$; kan$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 橘子, 柑子 |
| Pastry, to make, | *tso$^4$ tien$^3$-hsin$^1$* | 做點心 |
| Peaches, | *t‘ao$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 桃子 |
| Pears, | *li$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 梨子 |
| Peel—potatoes, | *poh$^1$* | 剝 |
| Pepper, | *hu$^2$-chiao$^1$* | 胡椒 |
| Persimmons, | *sï$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 柿子 |
| Pickles, | *suan$^1$-ts‘ai$^4$* | 酸菜 |
| Plate. | *p‘an$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 盤子 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plums, | *li*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ | 李子 |
| Pork, | *chu*$^1$ *ruh*$^4$ ; *ta*$^4$ *ruh*$^4$ | 猪肉, 大肉 |
| Potatoes, | *shan*$^1$*-ü*$^4$; *hong*$^2$*shao*$^4$; *ti*$^4$*-tan*$^4$ | 山芋, 紅苕, 地蛋 |
| Potatoes, sweet, | *hong*$^2$*-ü*$^4$ ; *ti*$^4$*-kua*$^1$ | 紅芋, 地瓜 |
| Pumelo, | *iu*$^4$*-tsï*$^3$ | 柚子 |
| Pungent, this is very, | *chœ*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *tong*$^1$ *- hsi*$^1$ *uei*$^4$ *hen*$^3$ *lah*$^4$ | 這個東西味很辣 |
| | | |
| Raisins, | *p'u*$^2$*-t'ao*$^2$*-kan*$^1$*-tsï*$^3$ | 葡萄乾子 |
| Raw—only half cooked, | *pan*$^4$*-seng*$^1$*-puh*$^1$*-shuh*$^2$ | 半生不熟 |
| Ready—not yet, | *hai*$^2$ *muh*$^2$ *iu*$^3$ *hao*$^3$ | 還沒有好 |
| Rice ; food, | *fan*$^4$ | 飯 |
| Rice-cake, three-cornered, | *tsong*$^1$*-tsï*$^3$ | 粽子 |
| Rice-bucket, | *fan*$^4$*-p'en*$^4$ | 飯盆 |
| Rice-steamer, | *fan*$^4$*-tseng*$^4$ | 飯甑 |
| Rice, this, is not very well cooked, | *chœ*$^4$ *fan*$^4$ *puh*$^1$ *ta*$^4$ (*hen*$^3$) *shuh*$^2$ | 這飯不大(很)熟 |
| Roll dough, to, | *kan*$^3$ *mien*$^4$ | 擀麵 |
| Rolling-pin, | *kan*$^3$*-mien*$^4$ *kuen*$^4$*-tsï*$^3$ | 擀麵棍子 |
| | | |
| Salt, | *ien*$^2$ | 鹽 |
| Salt—the flavour, | *hsien*$^2$ | 鹹 |
| Saucer, | *tieh*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 碟子 |
| Scum, skim off the, | *pa*$^3$ *moh*$^4$ *p'ieh*$^3$ *liao*$^3$ | 把沫撇了 |
| Seaweed, | *iang*$^2$*-ts'ai*$^4$ | 洋菜 |
| Scones, | *ta*$^4$*-ping*$^3$ | 大餅 |
| Short-bread, | *su*$^1$*-ping*$^3$ | 酥餅 |
| Shovel, used in cooking, | *ko*$^1$ *ch'an*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ | 鍋鏟子 |
| Soak, to, | *p'ao*$^4$ | 泡 |
| Soda, use a little, | *iong*$^4$ *tien*$^3$ *chien*$^3$ | 用點鹼 |
| Soup ; gravy, | *t'ang*$^1$ ; *ta*$^4$ *t'ang*$^1$ | 湯, 大湯 |
| Sour—as vinegar, | *suan*$^1$ | 酸 |
| Spinach, | *po*$^2$*-ts'ai*$^4$ | 菠菜 |
| Sponge cake, | *chi*$^1$*-tan*$^4$ *kao*$^1$ | 雞蛋糕 |
| Sugar, brown, | *hong*$^2$*-t'ang*$^2$ | 紅糖 |
| ,, white, | *peh*$^2$*-t'ang*$^2$ | 白糖 |
| Slice a plate of cold meat, | *p'ien*$^4$ *ih*$^1$ *p'an*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ *leng*$^3$ *ro*$^4$ | 副一盤子冷肉 |
| Soup, the, is rich, | *na*$^4$*-hsie*$^1$ *t'ang*$^1$ *nong*$^2$ | 那些湯濃 |
| Soup, this is insipid, | *chœ*$^4$*-hsie*$^1$ *t'ang*$^1$ *tan*$^4$ | 這些湯淡 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Suet,** | *niu*$^2$*-iu*$^2$ | 牛油 |
| Soap, | *fei*$^2$*-tsao*$^3$ ; *i*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 肥皂, 胰子 |
| Spoon, | *t‘iao*$^2$*-keng*$^1$ ; *ch‘ï*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 調羹, 匙子 |
| Stove, | *ho*$^3$*-lu*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 火爐子 |
| Strong, of liquids, | *ien*$^4$ ; *nong*$^2$ | 釅, 醲 |
| Sweet, | *t‘ien*$^2$ | 甜 |
| | | |
| Tea, black, | *hong*$^2$*-ch‘a*$^2$ | 紅茶 |
| „ green, | *ch‘ing*$^2$*-ch‘a*$^2$ | 青茶 |
| „ in leaf, | *ch‘a*$^2$*-ieh*$^4$ | 茶葉 |
| Tea, infuse, | *p‘ao*$^4$*-ch‘a*$^2$; *ch‘ï*$^1$ *ch‘a*$^2$ | 泡茶, 沏茶 |
| Toast a few **slices of** bread, | *k‘ao*$^3$ *chi*$^3$ - *p‘ien*$^4$ *man*$^2$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 烤幾片饅頭 |
| Tongs, | *ho*$^3$*-ch‘ien*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 火鉗子 |
| **Treacle,** | *t‘ang*$^2$*-shui*$^3$; *t‘ang*$^2$*-hsi*$^1$ | 糖水, 糖醯 |
| **Turnips,** | *lo*$^2$*-poh*$^4$ | 蘿蔔 |
| | | |
| Vegetables, | *su*$^4$*-ts‘ai*$^4$ | 蔬菜 |
| Vegetables, **what have you?** | *iu*$^3$*-shen*$^4$*-mo*$^3$*-ts‘ai*$^4$ *?* | 有甚麼菜 |
| Vinegar, | *ts‘u*$^4$ | 醋 |
| | | |
| Walnuts, | *heh*$^2$*-t‘ao*$^2$ | 核桃 |
| Wash and starch—**clothes,** | *chiang*$^1$ *hsi*$^3$ | 漿洗 |
| Wash up the things, | *shuah*$^4$ *chia*$^1$*-ho*$^3$ | 刷傢伙 |
| Water, to pour out, | *tao*$^3$*-shui*$^3$ | 倒水 |
| „ bring a bucket of hot, | *na*$^2$ *ih*$^1$ - *t‘ong*$^2$ *reh*$^4$ *shui*$^3$ *lai*$^2$ | 拿一桶熱水來 |
| „ bring four cash worth of boiling, | *ch‘ong*$^1$ *sï*$^4$*-ko*$^4$ *ch‘ien*$^2$ *k‘ai*$^1$ *shui*$^3$ *lai*$^2$ | 沖四個錢開水來 |
| Weak, of fluids, | *tan*$^4$ | 淡 |
| Wine, | *chiu*$^3$ | 酒 |
| | | |
| Yeast, | *fah*$^2$*-mien*$^4$; *chiao*$^4$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 發麵, 酵頭 |

## BEDROOM AND NURSERY. 臥房

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Awake, to, | *shui$^4$-hsing$^3$-liao$^3$* | 睡醒了 |
| Bathe, | *hsï$^3$-tsao$^3$* | 洗澡 |
| Bath, | *hsï$^3$-tsao$^3$ p‘en$^2$* | 洗澡盆 |
| Bed, | *ih$^1$-chang$^1$ ch‘uang$^2$* | 一張床 |
| „ brick, | *k‘ang$^4$* | 炕 |
| „ of coir netting, | *tsong$^1$-peng$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 椶絣子 |
| Bed, to make the, | *p‘u$^1$-ch‘uang$^2$* | 鋪床 |
| Bedroom, | *o$^4$-fang$^2$* | 臥房 |
| Bed coverlet, | *pei$^4$-o$^1$ ; mien$^2$-pei$^4$* | 被窩，棉被 |
| Blanket, | *rong$^2$ (mao$^2$) t‘an$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 絨（毛）毯子 |
| Box, | *hsiang$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 箱子 |
| Bracelet, | *sheo$^3$ choh$^2$* | 手鐲 |
| Broom, | *sao$^3$-cheo$^3$* | 掃箒 |
| Book-stand, | *shu$^1$-chi$^1$* | 書几 |
| Candle, | *lah$^4$-chuh$^2$* | 蠟燭 |
| Candlestick, | *lah$^4$-chuh$^2$ t‘ai$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 蠟燭台子 |
| Cane-bed, | *t‘eng$^2$ ch‘uang$^2$* | 籐床 |
| Cane-chair, | *t‘eng$^2$ i$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 籐椅子 |
| Chair, | *ih$^1$-pa$^3$ i$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 一把椅子 |
| Commode, | *ma$^4$-t‘ong$^3$* | 榪桶 |
| Child—take the child for an airing, | *pa$^3$ hsiao$^3$ hai$^2$-tsï$^3$ pao$^4$ tao$^4$ uai$^4$-t‘eo$^2$ ch‘ü$^4$* | 把小孩子抱到外頭去 |
| Child—bring it inside, | *pa$^3$ hai$^2$-tsï$^3$ tai$^4$ chin$^4$-lai$^2$* | 把孩子帶進來 |
| Curtains, | *ih$^1$-ting$^3$ chang$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 一頂帳子 |
| Comb, large tooth, | *su$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 梳子 |
| „ small „ | *pi$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 篦子 |
| „ the hair, | *su$^1$-t‘eo$^2$* | 梳頭 |
| Duster, | *moh$^4$ (mah) pu$^4$* | 抹布 |
| Dust-pan, | *po$^1$-chi$^1$* | 簸箕 |
| Earrings, | *rï$^3$-huan$^2$* | 耳鐶 |
| Floor—sweep a boarded, | *sao$^3$ ti$^4$-pan$^3$* | 掃地板 |
| Foot-warmer, | *chioh$^3$-lu$^2$* | 脚爐 |
| Glass, to look in the, | *chao$^4$ ching$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 照鏡子 |

早起三光，晚起三慌 *To rise betimes, means full illumination; to rise too late, means nought but perturbation.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Hair-pins, | *tsan$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 簪 子 |
| Handkerchief, | *sheo$^3$-chin$^1$* | 手 巾 |
| Hand-stove, | *sheo$^3$-lu$^2$* | 手 爐 |
| Hook for mosquito netting, | *chang$^4$-keo$^1$* | 帳 鈎 |
| Lie down; recline, | *t'ang$^3$ ; t'ang$^3$-hsia$^4$* | 躺, 躺 下 |
| Looking-glass, | *ching$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 鏡 子 |
| Matches, | *iang$^2$-ho$^3$* | 洋 火 |
| Pins, | *ting$^4$ chen$^1$; kuan$^4$ chen$^1$* | 定 針, 攅 針 |
| Pillow-case, | *chen$^3$-t'eo$^2$ t'ao$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 枕 頭 套 子 |
| Safety pin, | *k'eo$^4$ chen$^1$; kuan$^4$ chen$^1$* | 扣 針, 攅 針 |
| Sheet, | *pei$^4$ (o$^4$) tan$^1$* | 被 臥) 襌 |
| Sleep, | *shui$^4$ chiao$^4$* | 睡 覺 |
| Sleep, unable to, | *shui$^4$ puh$^1$ choh$^2$* | 睡 不 着 |
| Sleeping-mat, | *liang$^2$ hsih$^2$* | 凉 蓆 |
| Slops, to empty, | *tao$^3$ tsang$^1$ shui$^3$* | 倒 髒 水 |
| Soap, | *fei$^2$-tsao$^4$ ; i$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 肥 皂, 胰 子 |
| Staircase, | *leo$^2$-t'i$^1$* | 樓 梯 |
| Sponge, | *hai$^3$-rong$^2$* | 海 絨 |
| Table, | *ih$^1$-chang$^1$ choh$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 一 張 棹 子 |
| ,, used on brick beds, | *k'ang$^4$-choh$^1$* | 炕 棹 |
| Tidy, make it thoroughly, | *iao$^4$long$^4$-teh$^2$ch'i$^2$-ch'i$^2$ cheng$^3$-cheng$^3$-tih$^1$* | 要 弄 得 齊 齊 整 整 的 |
| Tidy the room, | *sheo$^1$-shïh$^1$ (shïh$^1$-toh$^4$) fang$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 收 拾 (拾 掇) 房 子 |
| Toilet paper, | *ts'ao$^3$ chï$^3$* | 草 紙 |
| Tooth-brush, | *ia$^2$-shuah$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 牙 刷 子 |
| Tooth-powder, | *ia$^2$-fen$^3$* | 牙 粉 |
| Towel, | *sheo$^3$-chin$^1$* | 手 巾 |
| Wash-hand-basin, | *hsi$^3$-lien$^3$-p'en$^2$* | 洗 臉 盆 |
| Washstand, | *hsi$^3$-lien$^3$-chia$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 洗 臉 架 子 |
| Wean, to, | *tuan$^3$-nai$^3$* | 斷 奶 |
| Wet-nurse, engage a, | *iao$^4$ ch'ing$^4$ ko$^4$ nai$^3$-ma$^1$* | 要 請 個 奶 媽 |
| Water bottle, | *shui$^3$-p'ing$^2$* | 水 瓶 |
| ,, bucket, | *shui$^3$-t'ong$^3$* | 水 桶 |
| ,, jug, | *shui$^3$-hu$^2$* | 水 壺 |
| Warm water, | *uen$^1$ shui$^3$* | 温 水 |
| Windows, made of paper, | *chï$^3$ ch'uang$^1$-hu$^4$* | 紙 窗 戶 |
| ,, ,, ,, to paste, | *piao$^3$(hu$^2$)ch'uang$^1$-hu$^4$* | 裱 (糊) 窗 戶 |
| Woman-servant, call the, | *chiao$^4$ ma$^1$-ma$^1$ lai$^2$* | 叫 媽 媽 來 |
| Worship, we must have daily morning, | *t'ien$^1$-t'ien$^1$ tsao$^3$-shang$^4$ iao$^4$ tso$^4$ li$^3$-pai$^4$* | 天 天 早 上 要 做 禮 拜 |

# RECEPTION ROOM. 堂客

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| After you, | *ch‘ing*$^3$ | 請 |
| A peaceful journey, | *ih*$^1$-*lu*$^4$ *p‘ing*$^2$-*an*$^1$ | 一路平安 |
| Best thanks, please retrace your steps, | *ch‘ing*$^3$ *huei*$^2$ *pa*$^4$ | 請回罷 |
| Chair cushion, | *i*$^3$-*tien*$^4$ | 椅墊 |
| Clock, striking, | *tsï*$^4$-*ming*$^2$ *chong*$^1$ | 自鳴鐘 |
| Congratulations, | *kong*$^1$-*hsi*$^3$ | 恭喜 |
| Door screen, hanging, | *chang*$^4$-*lien*$^2$; *men*$^2$-*lien*$^2$ | 帳簾, 門簾 |
| Escort a guest out, | *song*$^4$ *k‘eh*$^4$ | 送客 |
| Excuse me not escorting you further, etc., etc., | *shu*$^4$ *o*$^3$ *puh*$^1$ *üen*$^3$ *song*$^4$ | 恕我不遠送 |
| Fan, folding, | *cheh*$^2$-*shan*$^4$ | 折扇 |
| „ palm-leaf, | *pa*$^1$-*chiao*$^1$ | 芭蕉 |
| Feather duster, | *chi*$^1$-*mao*$^2$ *tan*$^3$-*tsï*$^3$ | 雞毛担子 |
| Flower-pot, | *hua*$^1$-*p‘en*$^2$ | 花盆 |
| Fortunate in both years and happiness (of elderly people), | *fuh*$^2$ *sheo*$^4$ *shuang*$^1$ *ch‘üen*$^2$ | 福壽雙全 |
| Good-bye, | *tsai*$^4$ *chien*$^4$; *tsai*$^4$ *huei*$^4$ | 再見, 再會 |
| Guest hall, | *k‘eh*$^4$-*fang*$^2$; *k‘eh*$^4$-*t‘ang*$^2$ | 客房, 客堂 |
| How long have you been here? | *tsai*$^4$-*chœ*$^4$-*li*$^3$ *iu*$^3$ *chi*$^3$ *nien*$^2$ | 在這裏有幾年 |
| Is your honourable family with you? | *pao*$^3$-*chüen*$^4$ *tsai*$^4$-*chœ*$^4$-*li*$^3$ *mo*$^3$ ? | 寶眷在這裏麽 |
| I have not recently had the opportunity of being favoured with your instruction, | *chœ*$^4$ *chi*$^3$ *t‘ien*$^1$ *muh*$^2$ *iu*$^3$ *ling*$^3$-*chiao*$^4$ | 這幾天沒有領敎 |

---

結交須勝己, 似己不如無 *Friendships should be formed with those superior to yourself; better none than with those like yourself.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I have been slack in enquiring after your health. And I likewise, | *ih$^{1}$-hsiang$^{4}$ shao$^{3}$ ch'ing$^{3}$ an$^{1}$, pi$^{3}$-ts'i$^{3}$, pi$^{3}$-ts'i$^{3}$* | 一向少請安。彼此，彼此 |
| I will come another time to receive your instructions, | *ko$^{4}$ ih$^{1}$-ti'en$^{1}$ tsai$^{4}$ lai$^{2}$ ling$^{3}$-chiao$^{4}$* | 過一天再來領教 |
| Many thanks—for kind enquiries, etc., | *t'oh$^{1}$-fuh$^{2}$* | 託福 |
| Map, | *ti$^{4}$-t'u$^{2}$* | 地圖 |
| New Year calls, | *pai$^{4}$ nien$^{2}$* | 拜年 |
| Pipe light, | *mei$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 煤子 |
| Picture, | *ih$^{1}$-fuh$^{2}$ hua$^{4}$* | 一幅畫 |
| Saucer, metal, | *ch'a$^{2}$-ch'uan$^{2}$* | 茶船 |
| Separate, to, | *fen$^{1}$ sheo$^{3}$* | 分手 |
| Scroll, a centre, | *chong$^{1}$-t'ang$^{2}$* | 中堂 |
| Scrolls, a pair, | *ih$^{1}$-fu$^{2}$ tui$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 一副對子 |
| Sideboard, | *t'iao$^{2}$-choh$^{1}$; t'iao$^{2}$-chi$^{1}$* | 條棹，條儿 |
| Stool; form; bench, | *pan$^{3}$-teng$^{4}$* | 板櫈 |
| Stool, square, | *uh$^{4}$-teng$^{4}$* | 杌櫈 |
| Stove; fire-place, | *ho$^{3}$ lu$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 火爐子 |
| Table, round, | *üen$^{2}$-choh$^{1}$* | 圓棹 |
| „ square, | *fang$^{1}$-choh$^{1}$* | 方棹 |
| Take care of your health, | *ih$^{1}$-ch'ieh$^{1}$ pao$^{4}$-chong$^{4}$* | 一切保重 |
| Tea-table, small, | *ch'a$^{2}$-chi$^{1}$* | 茶儿 |
| Thanks, you are too kind, | *ch'i$^{3}$ kan$^{3}$* | 豈敢 |
| That is too kind, | *na$^{3}$ chiu$^{4}$ puh$^{1}$-kan$^{3}$-tang$^{1}$ liao$^{3}$* | 那就不敢當了 |
| Vase, large, | *ta$^{4}$ ch'ah$^{1}$-p'ing$^{2}$* | 大插瓶 |
| Visitor; guest, | *k'eh$^{4}$; k'eh$^{4}$-ren$^{2}$* | 客，客人 |
| We shall meet again, | *heo$^{4}$ huei$^{4}$ iu$^{3}$ ch'i$^{2}$* | 後會有期 |
| Welcome a guest, | *chieh$^{1}$-tai$^{4}$ k'eh$^{4}$* | 接待客 |

## HOUSEHOLD EXPRESSIONS. 談常用家

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Axe, | *fu$^3$-tsi$^3$* | 斧子 |
| Basin, large, | *ta$^4$ uan$^3$* | 大碗 |
| „ rice, | *fan$^4$ uan$^3$* | 飯碗 |
| „ vegetable, | *ts'ai$^4$ uan$^3$* | 菜碗 |
| Basket, | *lan$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 籃子 |
| Bell, to ring the, | *iao$^2$-ling$^2$ ; ta$^4$-ling$^2$* | 搖鈴 打鈴 |
| Clear away the things, | *sheo$^1$-tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* | 收東西 |
| Clean ; very clean, | *kan$^1$-kan$^1$-ching$^1$-ching$^1$-tih$^1$* | 乾乾浄浄的 |
| Clean glass, to, | *ts'ah$^1$ po$^1$-li$^2$* | 擦玻璃 |
| Clothes, to boil, | *chu$^3$ i$^1$-fuh$^2$* | 煮衣服 |
| „ to brush, | *shuah$^4$-i$^1$-fuh$^3$* | 刷衣服 |
| „ to dry in the sun, | *shai$^4$ i$^1$-shang$^2$* | 曬衣裳 |
| „ to iron, | *t'ang$^4$ i$^1$-shang$^3$* | 燙衣裳 |
| „ to starch, | *chiang$^1$ i$^1$-fuh$^3$* | 漿衣服 |
| „ to wash, | *hsi$^3$ i$^1$-fuh$^3$* | 洗衣服 |
| Clothes-iron, | *üin$^4$-teo$^4$* | 熨斗 |
| Cupboard, | *kuei$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 櫃子 |
| „ large, | *ch'u$^2$-kuei$^4$* | 廚櫃 |
| Door, open the, | *k'ai$^1$-men$^2$* | 開門 |
| „ shut the (on entering), | *kuan$^1$-men$^2$* | 關門 |
| „ shut the (on leaving), | *tai$^4$-men$^2$* | 帶門 |
| Drawer, | *ch'eo$^1$-t'i$^4$* | 抽屜 |
| File, | *kang$^1$-ts'o$^4$* | 鋼銼 |
| Flowers, water the, | *chiao$^1$-hua$^1$* | 澆花 |
| Fork, | *ih$^1$-pa$^3$ ch'a$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 一把叉子 |
| Hat-stand, | *mao$^4$ chia$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 帽架子 |
| Hair, comb the, | *su$^1$-t'eo$^2$* | 梳頭 |

吃飯穿衣量家道 *Let eating and dressing be regulated by one's means.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Iron, to, | *t‘ang$^4$* | 燙 |
| Lamp, bring a, | *chao$^4$ ko$^4$ teng$^1$ lai$^2$* | 照個燈來 |
| „ clean the, | *ts‘ah$^1$ teng$^1$* | 擦燈 |
| „ light the, | *tien$^3$ teng$^1$* | 點燈 |
| Lamp-shade, | *teng$^1$ chao$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 燈罩子 |
| Lamp-wick, | *ih$^1$-t‘iao$^2$ teng$^1$-hsin$^1$* | 一條燈心 |
| Lampstand, | *teng$^1$-t‘ai$^2$* | 燈臺 |
| Lantern, | *teng$^1$-long$^2$* | 燈籠 |
| Lock, a, | *ih$^1$-pa$^3$ so$^3$* | 一把鎖 |
| Matting, | *hsih$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 蓆子 |
| Needlework, you must do, | *iao$^4$ tso$^4$ chen$^1$-hsien$^4$* | 要做針綫 |
| Oil, | *iu$^2$* | 油 |
| Paraffine; kerosene, | *iang$^2$-iu$^2$* | 洋油 |
| Paste, make a little, | *ta$^3$ tien$^3$ chiang$^4$-hu$^2$-tsï$^3$* or *chiang$^4$* | 打點糨糊子 (糨) |
| Saw, | *chü$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 鋸子 |
| Scissors, bring a pair of, | *na$^2$ pa$^3$ chien$^3$-tsï$^3$ lai$^2$* | 拿把剪子來 |
| Shake, give it a, | *teo$^3$-ih$^1$-teo$^3$* | 抖一抖 |
| Starch, to, | *chiang$^4$* | 糨 |
| Sweep it clean, | *ta$^3$-sao$^3$ kan$^1$-ching$^4$* | 打掃乾淨 |
| Table, lay the, | *pai$^3$ choh$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 擺棹子 |
| „ wipe the, | *moh$^3$ (mah) choh$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 抹棹子 |
| Table cloth, | *t‘ai$^2$-pu$^4$* | 臺布 |
| Table cover, felt, | *choh$^1$-chȧn$^1$* | 棹氈 |
| Tea, pour out, | *tao$^3$-ch‘a$^2$* | 倒茶 |
| Tea cup, | *ch‘a$^2$ pei$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 茶杯子 |
| „ pot, | *ch‘a$^2$-hu$^2$* | 茶壺 |
| „ „ case, | *ch‘a$^2$-hu$^2$ t‘ong$^3$* | 茶壺桶 |
| Tobacco-pipe, | *ien$^1$-tai$^4$* | 烟袋 |
| Up-stairs, to go, | *shang$^4$-leo$^2$* | 上樓 |
| Up-stairs, | *tsai$^4$-leo$^2$-shang$^4$* | 在樓上 |
| Water-butt, | *shui$^3$-kang$^1$* | 水缸 |
| Wine cup, | *chiu$^3$-chong$^1$* | 酒盅 |
| „ pot, | *chiu$^3$-hu$^2$* | 酒壺 |

# HOUSES AND BUILDING. 屋房

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ante-room, | *t'ao$^4$-fang$^2$* | 套房 |
| Artizan, | *ta$^4$-kong$^1$* | 大工 |
| Artizan's labourer, | *hsiao$^3$-kong$^1$* | 小工 |
| Balustrade, | *lan$^2$-kan$^1$* | 欄杆 |
| Beam, | *liang$^2$* | 梁 |
| Boarded ceiling, | *uang$^4$-pan$^3$; iang$^3$-pan$^3$; t'ien$^1$-hua$^1$pan$^3$* | 望板, 仰板, 天花板 |
| Bricks, | *chuan$^1$* | 磚 |
| „ sun-dried, | *t'u$^3$ p'ei$^1$* | 土坯 |
| Build a house, to, | *kai$^4$-fang$^2$* | 蓋房 |
| Build and repair, to, | *hsiu$^1$-tsao$^4$* | 修造 |
| Chimney, | *ien$^1$-t'ong$^2$* | 烟筒 |
| Corner, a, | *kuai$^4$-kioh$^1$-rï$^2$* | 拐角兒 |
| Courtyard, | *üen$^4$-tsï$^3$; t'ien$^1$-ching$^3$* | 院子, 天井 |
| Cross beam, | *hueng$^2$-liang$^2$* | 横梁 |
| Door, back, | *heo$^4$-men$^2$* | 後門 |
| „ bar, | *men$^2$-shuan$^1$* | 門閂 |
| „ frame, | *men$^2$ k'uang$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 門框子 |
| „ front, | *ta$^4$-men$^2$* | 大門 |
| „ second, | *rï$^4$-men$^2$* | 二門 |
| „ side, | *p'ien$^1$-men$^2$* | 偏門 |
| „ single-leaved, | *tan$^1$-shan$^4$-men$^2$* | 單扇門 |
| „ sill made of stone, | *shïh$^1$-k'an$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 石檻子 |
| „ used as screen, large, | *p'ing$^2$-men$^2$* | 屏門 |
| Doors, folding, | *shuang$^1$ shan$^4$-men$^2$* | 雙扇門 |
| Drain, | *shui$^3$-keo$^1$* | 水溝 |
| Eaves, | *uh$^1$-ien$^2$* | 屋簷 |
| Floor boards, | *ti$^4$-pan$^3$* | 地板 |
| Foundation, | *ken$^1$-chi$^1$; ch'iang$^1$-kioh$^3$* | 根基, 墻脚 |
| Framework of house, to put up the, | *shang$^4$-liang$^2$* | 上梁 |
| Glass, | *po$^1$-li$^2$* | 玻璃 |
| Glaze, to, | *an$^1$ po$^1$-li$^2$* | 安玻璃 |
| Glue, | *chiao$^1$; shui$^3$ chiao$^1$* | 膠, 水膠 |
| Hinges, | *chiao$^1$ lien$^2$; hoh$^2$ ieh* | 鉸鏈, 合葉 |
| House; houses, | *fang$^2$-uh$^1$* | 房屋 |

---

上梁不正, 下梁歪 *If the upper beam is not upright, the lower one will be awry.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Inner angle | *uh$^1$-kioh$^1$* | 屋角 |
| Lime, | *shïh$^2$-huei$^1$* | 石灰 |
| Lintel, | *men$^2$-mei$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 門楣子 |
| Lock; to lock, | *so$^3$* | 鎖 |
| „ to put on, | *shang$^4$ so$^3$* | 上鎖 |
| Nails, | *ting$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 釘子 |
| Overhanging tiles, | *tih$^1$-shui$^3$* | 滴水 |
| Partition; low wall, | *pih$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 壁子 |
| Passage, | *tseo$^3$-lan$^2$* | 走欄 |
| Pillars, | *chu$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 柱子 |
| „ foundations for, | *sang$^3$-teng$^4$* | 磉磴 |
| Plaster, to, | *man$^4$-ni$^2$* | 墁泥 |
| Rafters, | *ch‘uan$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 椽子 |
| Ridge, | *uh$^1$-chih$^2$* | 屋脊 |
| Roof of house, | *fang$^2$-ting$^3$; fang$^3$ kai$^4$* | 房頂, 房蓋 |
| Room, | *ih$^1$-chien$^1$ fang$^2$-tsï* | 一間房子 |
| „ guest, | *k‘eh$^4$-t‘ang$^2$; k‘eh$^4$-fang$^2$* | 客堂, 客房 |
| „ principal, | *cheng$^4$-uh$^1$* | 正屋 |
| „ reception, | *shang$^4$-fang$^3$* | 上房 |
| „ side, | *hsiang$^1$-fang$^3$* | 廂房 |
| Screw nail, | *lo$^2$-sï$^1$ ting$^1$* | 羅絲釘 |
| Stairs, | *leo$^2$-t‘i$^1$* | 樓梯 |
| Steps, | *kiai$^1$-t‘ai$^2$; teng$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 堦台, 磴子 |
| Storey, an upper, | *ih$^1$-ts‘eng$^2$-leo$^2$* | 一層樓 |
| Terrace; verandah, | *t‘ai$^2$-tsï$^3$; liang$^2$-t‘ai$^2$* | 台子, 凉台 |
| Threshold, | *men$^2$-k‘an$^3$* | 門檻 |
| Tiles, | *ua$^3$* | 瓦 |
| Tile, to, | *shang$^4$-ua$^3$; kai$^4$-ua$^3$* | 上瓦, 盖瓦 |
| Timber; lumber, | *muh$^4$-liao$^4$* | 木料 |
| Venetian windows, | *feng$^1$-ch‘uang$^1$* | 風牕 |
| Wall, a, | *ih$^1$-tao$^4$ ch‘iang$^2$* | 一道墻 |
| „ build a, | *ch‘i$^4$-ch‘iang$^2$; lih$^4$ ch‘iang$^2$* | 砌墻, 立墻 |
| „ hollow, | *teo$^4$-tsï$^3$-ch‘iang$^2$* | 斗子墻 |
| „ outside front door, | *chao$^4$-pih$^1$; ing$^3$-pih$^1$* | 照壁, 影壁 |
| „ partition, | *pih$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 壁子 |
| „ plaster, a, | *fen$^3$-ch‘iang$^2$* | 粉墻 |
| „ whitewash a, | *shuah$^4$-ch‘iang$^2$* | 刷墻 |
| Well, a, | *ih$^1$-k‘eo$^3$ ching$^3$* | 一口井 |
| Windows, | *ch‘uang$^1$-hu$^4$* | 牕戶 |
| Window sill, | *ch‘uang$^1$-t‘ai$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 窗臺子 |

## CLOTHING AND COLOURS. 色顏服衣

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Alter this garment for me, | *pa*$^{3}$ *chœ*$^{4}$*-chien*$^{4}$ *i*$^{1}$*-shang*$^{2}$ *chih*$^{4}$ *o*$^{3}$ *kai*$^{3}$ *liao*$^{3}$ *pa*$^{4}$ | 把這件衣裳給我改了罷 |
| Black, | *hsüen*$^{2}$*-seh*$^{4}$ | 玄色 |
| Blue, | *lan*$^{2}$*-seh*$^{4}$ | 藍色 |
| Boots, | *hsüe*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 靴子 |
| Boots, nailed, | *ting*$^{1}$ *hsüe*$^{1}$ | 釘靴 |
| Braid, | *pien*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 辮子 |
| Button, | *niu*$^{3}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ ; *kʻeo*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 鈕子, 釦子 |
| Button, to, | *kʻeo*$^{4}$ *niu*$^{3}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 扣鈕子 |
| Button-loops, | *niu*$^{3}$*-kʻeo*$^{4}$; *kʻeo*$^{4}$*-pʻan*$^{4}$; *kʻeo*$^{4}$*-men*$^{2}$ | 鈕釦, 釦襻, 扣門 |
| Cap, ordinary Chinese, | *kua*$^{1}$*-pʻi*$^{2}$ *mao*$^{4}$ | 瓜皮帽 |
| Cloth, broad, | *ta*$^{4}$*-ni*$^{2}$ | 大呢 |
| Cloth, Chinese, | *pen*$^{3}$ *pu*$^{4}$ | 本布 |
| Cloth, foreign, | *iang*$^{2}$ *pu*$^{4}$ | 洋布 |
| Cloth, Italian, | *iang*$^{2}$ *tuan*$^{4}$ | 洋緞 |
| Cloth, cotton twilled, | *iang*$^{2}$*-hsien*$^{4}$ *pu*$^{4}$ | 洋綫布 |
| Clothes, | *i*$^{1}$*-fuh*$^{4}$; *i*$^{1}$*-shang*$^{2}$ | 衣服, 衣裳 |
| Clothes, suit of, | *ih*$^{1}$*-tʻao*$^{4}$ *i*$^{1}$*-fuh*$^{4}$ | 一套衣服 |
| Collar, | *ling*$^{3}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 領子 |
| Colour, | *seh*$^{4}$*-chʻi*$^{4}$ ; *ien*$^{2}$*-seh*$^{4}$ | 色氣, 顏色 |
| Colour of this garment, will it come out in the wash? | *chœ*$^{4}$*-chien*$^{4}$ *i*$^{1}$*-shang*$^{2}$ *hsi*$^{3}$*hsi*$^{3}$*loh*$^{4}$(*tiao*$^{4}$)*seh*$^{4}$ *puh*$^{1}$*loh*$^{4}$ (*tiao*$^{4}$)*seh*$^{4}$? | 這件衣裳洗洗落(掉)色不落(掉)色 |
| Dye, to, | *ran*$^{3}$ | 染 |
| Flannel, | *iang*$^{2}$ *rong*$^{2}$ | 洋絨 |
| Flowered, | *hua*$^{1}$*-tih*$^{1}$ | 花的 |
| Girdle, | *iao*$^{1}$*-tai*$^{4}$ | 腰帶 |
| Gown, | *pʻao*$^{2}$*-tsï*$^{3}$; *kua*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 袍子, 褂子 |
| Gown, lined, | *chiah*$^{2}$*-pʻao*$^{2}$ | 夾袍 |
| Gown, wadded, | *mien*$^{2}$*-pʻao*$^{2}$ | 綿袍 |
| Gray, | *huei*$^{1}$*-seh*$^{4}$ | 灰色 |
| Green, | *luh*$^{4}$ (*lü*$^{4}$) *seh*$^{4}$ | 綠色 |
| Hat, | *ih*$^{1}$*-ting*$^{3}$*-mao*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 一頂帽子 |
| Jacket, short outer, | *ma*$^{3}$ *kua*$^{4}$ | 馬褂 |
| Jacket, sleeveless, | *pei*$^{1}$*-hsin*$^{1}$; *pei*$^{1}$*-tah*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$; *kʻan*$^{3}$*-chien*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 背心, 背褡子, 坎肩子 |

非針不引線 *Without a needle you cannot guide the thread.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Lapel of gown, large, | *ta$^4$-chin$^1$* | 大襟 |
| Lapel of gown, small, | *hsiao$^3$-chin$^1$* | 小襟 |
| Leggings, | *t‘ao$^4$-k‘u$^4$* | 套褲 |
| Leggings, a pair of, | *ih$^1$-shuang$^1$ t‘ao$^4$-k‘u$^4$* | 一雙套褲 |
| Lined, | *chiah$^2$-tih$^1$* | 夾的 |
| Lining, | *li$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 裡子 |
| Needle-work, to do, | *tso$^4$ chen$^1$-hsien$^4$* | 做針綫 |
| Order, made to, | *ting$^4$-tso$^4$-tih$^1$* | 定做的 |
| Pocket, Chinese waist, | *teo$^1$-pao$^1$-tsï$^2$; tu$^3$-teo$^1$; teo$^1$-tu$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 兜包子，肚兜<br>兜肚子 |
| Purple, | *tsï$^3$-seh$^4$* | 紫色 |
| Queue of false hair, | *pien$^4$-lien$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 辮摙子 |
| Queue, braid for, | *pien$^4$-hsien$^4$* | 辮線 |
| Ready-made, | *hsien$^4$-ch‘eng$^2$-tih$^1$* | 現成的 |
| Red, | *hong$^2$-seh$^4$* | 紅色 |
| Re-make, | *t‘ong$^2$-tso$^4$* | 從做 |
| Satin, | *tuan$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 緞子 |
| Scissors, pair of, | *ih$^1$-pa$^3$ chien$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 一把剪子 |
| Seam, a | *ih$^1$-t‘iao$^2$-feng$^4$* | 一條縫 |
| Sew, to, | *feng$^2$* | 縫 |
| Shoe-horn, | *hsiai$^2$-pah$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 鞋拔子 |
| Shoe-soles, | *hsiai$^2$-ti$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 鞋底子 |
| Shoe-uppers, | *hsiai$^2$-pang$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 鞋鞤子 |
| Single, | *tan$^1$-tih$^1$* | 單的 |
| Silk, embroidered, | *hua$^1$-ch‘eo$^2$* | 花綢 |
| Silk, plain, | *su$^4$-ch‘eo$^2$* | 素綢 |
| Skirt, | *ch‘üin$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 裙子 |
| Sleeves, | *hsiu$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 袖子 |
| Socks, | *uah$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 襪子 |
| Tailor, | *ts‘ai$^2$-feng$^2$ sï$^1$-fu$^4$* | 裁縫司傅 |
| Tape, | *tai$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 帶子 |
| Thimble, | *ting$^3$-chen$^1$; ting$^3$-chï$^3$* | 頂針，頂[illegible] |
| Thread, cotton, | *mien$^2$-hsien$^4$* | 綿綫 |
| Thread, silk, | *sï$^1$-hsien$^4$* | 絲綫 |
| Trimming, | *kuen$^3$-t‘iao$^2$* | 滾條 |
| Trimming ribbon, | *lan$^2$-kan$^1$* | 欄杆 |
| Trousers, | *k‘u$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 褲子 |
| Trousers, pair of, | *ih$^1$-t‘iao$^2$ k‘u$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 一條褲子 |
| Turn, to, | *ta$^3$-fan$^1$* | 打翻 |
| Wadded, | *mien$^2$-tih$^1$* | 綿的 |
| Wadding, cotton, | *mien$^2$-hua$^1$* | 綿花 |
| Waste material, to, | *fei$^4$-liao$^4$* | 費料 |
| White, | *peh$^2$-seh$^4$* | 白色 |
| Yellow, | *huang$^2$-seh$^4$* | 黃色 |

## TRAVELLING. 水陸兩途

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Anchor, | *mao*$^{2}$ | 錨 |
| „ let go the, | *p‘ao*$^{1}$*-mao*$^{2}$ | 抛錨 |
| „ raise the, | *ch‘i*$^{3}$*-mao*$^{2}$ | 起錨 |
| Awning over the horse, | *ch‘œ*$^{1}$*-p‘eng*$^{2}$ | 車棚 |
| Bank, | *p‘o*$^{1}$ ; *an*$^{4}$ | 坡, 岸 |
| Bend, | *uan*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 灣子 |
| Blow, | *kuah*$^{1}$ (*ch‘i*$^{3}$) *feng*$^{1}$ | 颳 (起) 風 |
| Boat, | *ch‘uan*$^{2}$ | 船 |
| Bit, | *chioh*$^{2}$*-tsï*$^{3}$; *chioh*$^{2}$*-huan*$^{2}$ | 嚼子, 嚼環 |
| Bridle, | *p‘ei*$^{4}$*-t‘eo*$^{2}$ | 轡頭 |
| Bridle reins, | *chiang*$^{1}$*-sheng*$^{2}$ | 韁繩 |
| Baggage, | *hsing*$^{2}$*-li*$^{3}$ | 行李 |
| Barrowman, | *t‘ui*$^{1}$*-ch‘œ*$^{1}$*-tih*$^{1}$ | 推車的 |
| Bed-bag, Chinese, | *pei*$^{4}$*-o*$^{1}$ *t‘ao*$^{4}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 被窩套子 |
| Bedding, | *p‘u*$^{1}$*-kai*$^{4}$ | 鋪盖 |
| „ to do up, | *k‘uen*$^{3}$ (*ta*$^{3}$) *p‘u*$^{1}$*-kai*$^{4}$ | 捆 (打) 鋪盖 |
| „ to undo, | *ta*$^{3}$*-k‘ai*$^{1}$ *p‘u*$^{1}$*-kai*$^{4}$ | 打開鋪盖 |
| Box, bamboo, | *mieh*$^{4}$*-hsiang*$^{1}$ | 篾箱 |
| „ skin, | *p‘i*$^{2}$*-hsiang*$^{1}$ | 皮箱 |
| „ wood, | *muh*$^{4}$*-hsiang*$^{1}$ | 木箱 |
| Boat, small row-, | *san*$^{1}$*-pan*$^{3}$ ; *hua*$^{2}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 三板, 划子 |
| Boat-hook, | *uan*$^{3}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 捥子 |
| Boat office, | *ch‘uan*$^{2}$ *hang*$^{2}$ | 船行 |
| Boat-pole, | *kao*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ | 篙子 |
| Bundle, a traveller’s, | *pao*$^{1}$*-fuh*$^{2}$ | 包袱 |
| Business centre ; wharf ; jetty, | *ma*$^{3}$*-t‘eo*$^{2}$ | 碼頭 |
| Cart, a, | *ih*$^{1}$ - *ch‘eng*$^{4}$ (*liang*$^{4}$) *ch‘œ*$^{1}$ | 一乘 (輛) 車 |
| „ a passenger, | *chiao*$^{4}$*-ch‘œ*$^{1}$ | 轎車 |
| Captain, | *ch‘uan*$^{2}$*-chu*$^{3}$; *ch‘uan*$^{2}$*-lao*$^{3}$*-pan*$^{3}$ | 船主, 船老板 |
| Carrying pole, | *pien*$^{3}$*-tan*$^{1}$ | 扁擔 |
| Cash bag, | *ch‘ien*$^{2}$*-tah*$^{1}$*-tsï*$^{3}$ ; *tah*$^{1}$ *lien*$^{2}$ | 錢褡子, 褡褳 |

---

兩人養馬瘦, 兩家養船漏 *If two men keep a horse, it gets thin ; if two men keep a boat, it leaks.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Check ; label, | *p‘ai$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 牌 子 |
| Chain, | *lien$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 鍊 子 |
| Collect your things together, | *sheo$^{1}$-shïh$^{1}$ tong$^{1}$-hsi$^{1}$* | 收 拾 東 西 |
| Coolie, | *t‘iao$^{1}$-fu$^{1}$* | 挑 夫 |
| Coolies, settle with, | *k‘ai$^{1}$-fah$^{1}$ kioh$^{3}$-ch‘ien$^{2}$* | 開 發 脚 錢 |
| Cord, a length of, | *soh$^{3}$; sheng$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 索, 繩 子 |
| Count the goods, | *tien$^{3}$ tong$^{1}$-hsi$^{1}$* | 點 東 西 |
| Cover over, | *chœ$^{1}$-kai$^{4}$* | 遮 蓋 |
| Crew ; assistants, | *ho$^{3}$-chi$^{4}$* | 夥 計 |
| Customs, to pass, | *ko$^{4}$ kuan$^{1}$* | 過 關 |
| Deep, | *shen$^{1}$* | 深 |
| Discharge cargo, | *hsie$^{4}$-ho$^{4}$* | 卸 貨 |
| Donkey, | *lü$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 驢 子 |
| Fair winds accompany you, may, | *shuen$^{1}$ feng$^{1}$ hsiang$^{1}$-song$^{4}$* | 順 風 相 送 |
| Feed animals, | *uei$^{4}$ seng$^{1}$-k‘eo$^{3}$* | 餵 牲 口 |
| Ferry, | *pai$^{3}$-tu$^{4}$* | 擺 渡 |
| Fodder, | *ts‘ao$^{3}$-liao$^{4}$* | 草 料 |
| Flag, | *ch‘i$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 旗 子 |
| Forecastle, | *t‘eo$^{2}$-ts‘ang$^{1}$* | 頭 艙 |
| Gale, | *k‘uang$^{2}$-feng$^{1}$; ta$^{4}$-feng$^{1}$; pao$^{4}$-feng$^{1}$* | 狂 風, 大 風, 暴 風 |
| Go abroad, | *shang$^{4}$ ch‘uan$^{2}$* | 上 船 |
| ,, ashore, | *shang$^{4}$ p‘o$^{1}$; shang$^{4}$ an$^{4}$* | 上 坡, 上 岸 |
| ,, down the stream, | *hsia$^{4}$-shui$^{3}$* | 下 水 |
| ,, up the stream, | *shang$^{4}$-shui$^{3}$* | 上 水 |
| Girth, | *tu$^{3}$-tai$^{4}$* | 肚 帶 |
| Good luck to you, | *kong$^{1}$-hsi$^{3}$ fah$^{1}$ ts‘ai$^{2}$* | 恭 喜 發 財 |
| Halt for dinner, | *ta$^{3}$-chien$^{1}$* | 打 尖 |
| Hatter, | *long$^{2}$-t‘eo$^{2}$* | 韄 頭 |
| Hat box, | *mao$^{4}$ hoh$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 帽 盒 子 |
| Helm, port the, | *li$^{3}$-to$^{4}$* | 裏 舵 |
| ,, starboard the, | *uai$^{4}$-to$^{4}$* | 外 舵 |
| Hoist a flag, | *ch‘œ$^{3}$-ch‘i$^{2}$* | 扯 旗 |
| Hoof, | *t‘i$^{2}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 蹄 子 |
| Horse, | *ma$^{3}$* | 馬 |
| Hold, the, | *ts‘ang$^{1}$* | 艙 |
| Inn, | *tien$^{4}$; hsia$^{4}$-ch‘u$^{4}$; k‘eh$^{4}$-ü$^{4}$* | 店, 下 處, 客 寓 |
| Inn stop at an, | *chu$^{4}$-tien$^{4}$; hsieh$^{1}$-tien$^{4}$* | 住 店, 歇 店 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Lantern, | *teng$^1$-long$^2$* | 燈籠 |
| Landlord; proprietor, | *chang$^3$-kuei$^4$-tih$^1$; lao$^3$-pan$^3$* | 掌櫃的, 老板 |
| Lead the horse here, | *pa$^3$ ma$^3$ ch‘ien$^1$ ko$^4$-lai$^2$* | 把馬牽過來 |
| Lead the horse away, | *pa$^3$ma$^3$ch‘ien$^1$huei$^2$ch‘ü$^4$* | 把馬牽回去 |
| Load pack mules, | *shah$^4$ to$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 煞馱子 |
| Load, to, | *chuang$^1$-ho$^4$* | 裝貨 |
| Mast, | *uei$^2$* | 桅 |
| „ lower the, | *mien$^3$-uei$^2$* | 免桅 |
| „ step the, | *shu$^4$-uei$^2$* | 竪桅 |
| Mop, | *hsi$^3$-pa$^3$* | 洗把 |
| Motor-car, | *ch‘i$^4$-ch‘œ$^1$* | 氣車 |
| Mule-litter, | *t‘o$^2$-chiao$^4$* | 駝轎 |
| Oar, | *chiang$^3$; lu$^3$* | 槳, 櫓 |
| Odds and ends, | *ling$^2$-sui$^4$ (hsing$^1$) tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* | 零碎(星)東西 |
| Oiled paper, | *iu$^2$-chï$^3$* | 油紙 |
| Passage money, | *shui$^3$-kioh$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 水脚錢 |
| Passage in a vessel, take a, | *tah$^1$-ch‘uan$^2$* | 搭船 |
| Passengers, take on, | *tah$^1$-k‘eh$^2$* | 搭客 |
| Passenger boat, | *min$^2$-ch‘uan$^2$* | 民船 |
| Passport, a, | *hu$^4$-chao$^4$* | 護照 |
| Personal belongings, | *sui$^2$ shen$^1$ tai$^4$ tih$^1$ tong$^1$-hsi$^1$* | 隨身帶的東西 |
| Platform, railway, | *üeh$^4$-t‘ai$^2$* | 月台 |
| Pickpocket, | *p‘a$^2$-sheo$^3$* | 扒手 |
| Provision basket, | *ho$^3$-shïh$^2$ lan$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 火食籃子 |
| Railway, | *ho$^3$-luen$^2$ ch‘œ$^1$* | 火輪車 |
| Ride a horse, | *ch‘i$^2$ ma$^3$* | 騎馬 |
| Road journey, | *han$^4$-lu$^4$* | 旱路 |
| Rapid, a, | *t‘an$^1$* | 灘 |
| „ shoot a, | *fang$^4$-t‘an$^1$* | 放灘 |
| Row, | *t‘ang$^4$chiang$^3$; ua$^1$chao$^4$* | 盪槳, 挖櫂 |
| Rudder, | *to$^4$* | 舵 |
| Saddle the horse and fasten the belly-band, | *pei$^4$ shang$^4$ an$^4$-tsï$^3$, chi$^4$ shang$^4$ tu$^3$-tai$^4$* | 背上鞍子, 緊上肚帶 |
| Sail, | *p‘eng$^2$* | 篷 |
| „ lower, | *loh$^4$-p‘eng$^2$* | 落篷 |
| „ haul up, | *ch‘œ$^3$-p‘eng$^2$* | 扯篷 |
| Saloon, | *kuan$^1$-ts‘ang$^1$* | 官艙 |
| Screw (of a steamer), | *an$^4$-luen$^2$* | 暗輪 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Steamer, | *ho$^3$-luen$^2$-ch‘uan$^2$* | 火 輪 船 |
| Scull a, or sweep, | *lu$^3$* | 櫓 |
| „ to, | *iao$^2$-lu$^3$* | 搖 櫓 |
| Saddle, a, | *an$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 鞍 子 |
| Saddle to, an animal, | *pei$^4$* | 備 |
| Saddle, take off and lead (the horse) about, | *chieh$^1$ hsia$^4$ an$^4$-tsï$^3$ lai$^2$ liu$^4$-liu$^4$* | 揭 下 鞍 子 來 遛 遛 |
| Sharper, a, | *kuang$^1$-kuen$^4$* | 光 棍 |
| Shoe a horse, | *ting$^4$ chang$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 釘 掌 子 |
| Stables, | *ma$^3$-hao$^4$* | 馬 號 |
| Stirrups, place in position, | *pei$^4$ shang$^4$ teng$^4$* | 背 上 鐙 |
| Stirrup, | *teng$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 鐙 子 |
| Tickets, | *p‘iao$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 票 子 |
| Tie up a horse, | *shuan$^1$ ma$^3$* | 拴 馬 |
| Ticket office, | *mai$^3$ p‘iao$^4$ ch‘u$^2$* | 買 票 處 |
| Tickets, to collect, | *sheo$^1$ p‘iao$^4$* | 收 票 |
| Tide, | *ch‘ao$^2$* | 潮 |
| „ ebb, | *t‘ui$^4$ (loh$^4$) ch‘ao$^2$* | 退 (落) 潮 |
| „ flood, | *lai$^2$ (chang$^3$) ch‘ao$^2$* | 來 (長) 潮 |
| „ high, | *p‘ing$^2$-ch‘ao$^2$* | 平 潮 |
| Tobacco pipe, | *ien$^1$-tai$^4$* | 煙 袋 |
| Travel, to, | *ch‘uh$^1$-men$^2$* | 出 門 |
| „ by stages, | *tuan$^3$ p‘an$^2$ tseo$^3$* | 短 盤 走 |
| Travelling expenses, | *p‘an$^2$-ch‘an$^2$; p‘an$^2$-fei$^4$* | 盤 纏, 盤 費 |
| Trough, | *ma$^3$-ts‘ao$^2$* | 馬 槽 |
| Tow or track, | *la$^1$ ch‘ien$^1$* | 拉 縴 |
| Towing, cease, | *sheo$^1$ t‘an$^4$* | 收 探 |
| „ rope, | *t‘an$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 探 子 |
| „ or tracking yoke, | *ch‘ien$^1$-pan$^3$* | 縴 板 |
| Umbrella, | *ü$^3$-san$^3$* | 雨 傘 |
| „ close an, | *sheo$^1$ san$^3$* | 收 傘 |
| „ open an, | *ta$^3$ san$^3$* | 打 傘 |
| Wind, | *feng$^1$* | 風 |
| „ fair, | *shuen$^4$-feng$^1$* | 順 風 |
| „ head, | *ting$^3$-feng$^1$* | 頂 風 |
| Work a boat, | *long$^3$ ch‘uan$^2$* | 攏 船 |
| Wadded coverlet, | *mien$^2$-pei$^4$; pei$^4$-o$^1$; pei$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 緜 被, 被 窩, 被 子 |
| Waterproof cloth, | *iu$^2$-pu$^4$* | 油 布 |
| Water animals, | *in$^4$ shui$^3$* | 飲 水 |
| Wheel-barrow, | *ih$^1$-pu$^4$ hsiao$^3$-ch‘œ$^1$* | 一 步 小 車 |
| Whip, | *pien$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 鞭 子 |
| Wine money, | *chiu$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$* | 酒 錢 |

# RANK AND RELATIONSHIPS. 呼 稱

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ancestors, | *tsu$^3$-tsong$^1$ ; lieh$^4$-tsu$^3$* | 祖 宗, 列 祖 |
| Baron, | *nan$^2$* | 男 |
| Brother, elder, | *ko$^1$-ko$^1$* | 哥 哥 |
| „ younger, | *hsiong$^1$-ti$^4$* | 兄 弟 |
| „ father's elder, | *ta$^4$-ie$^2$ ; peh$^2$-peh$^2$* | 大 爺, 伯 伯 |
| „ father's younger, | *shuh$^2$-shuh$^2$* | 叔 叔 |
| „ mother's, | *chiu$^4$-chiu$^4$* | 舅 舅 |
| „ wife's elder, | *ta$^4$-chui$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 大 舅 子 |
| „ wife's younger, | *hsiao$^3$-chiu$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 小 舅 子 |
| Clan, | *ts'uh$^2$ ; (tsuh$^2$)* | 族 |
| Clansman, near, | *chin$^1$-ts'uh$^2$ (tsuh$^2$)* | 近 族 |
| Clansman, distant, | *üen$^3$-ts'uh$^2$ (tsuh$^2$)* | 遠 族 |
| Cousin, maternal, | *piao$^3$-hsiong$^1$-ti$^4$* | 表 兄 弟 |
| Daughter, | *nü$^3$-rï$^2$ ; kuei$^1$-nü$^3$* | 女 兒, 閨 女 |
| Duke, | *kong$^1$* | 公 |
| Earl, | *peh$^2$* | 伯 |
| Emperor, | *huang$^2$-shang$^4$; uan$^4$ sui$^4$-ie$^3$ ; huang$^2$-ti$^4$* | 皇 上, 萬 歲 爺, 皇 帝 |
| Empress, | *huang$^2$-heo$^4$* | 皇 后 |
| „ Dowager, | *huang$^2$-t'ai$^4$-heo$^4$* | 皇 太 后 |
| Father, | *fu$^4$-ch'in$^1$ ; lao$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 父 親, 老 子 |
| Father-in-law of husband, | *chang$^4$-ren$^2$ ; ioh$^4$ (üeh$^4$) fu$^4$* | 丈 人, 岳 父 |
| „ of wife, | *kong$^1$-kong$^1$* | 公 公 |
| Family, one's own, | *pen$^3$-chia$^1$* | 本 家 |
| Friend, | *p'eng$^2$-iu$^3$* | 朋 友 |
| Grandfather, | *ie$^2$-ie$^2$* | 爺 爺 |
| „ great, | *tsen$^1$-tsu$^3$* | 曾 祖 |
| „ „ -great, | *kao$^1$-tsu$^3$* | 高 祖 |
| Grandmother, | *chia$^1$-p'o$^2$* | 家 婆 |
| Grandson, | *suen$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 孫 子 |
| „ great, | *ch'ong$^2$-suen$^1$* | 重 孫 |
| „ „ -great, | *hsüen$^1$-suen$^1$* | 元 孫 |
| Grand daughter, | *suen$^1$-nü$^3$* | 孫 女 |

---

名 正 言 順 百 事 成 *When titles are fittingly given and speech fittingly used, anything may be accomplished.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Heir Apparent, | *t‘ai$^4$-tsï$^3$* | 太子 |
| Husband, | *chang$^4$-fu$^1$* | 丈夫 |
| „ of elder sister, | *chie$^3$-fu$^1$* | 姐夫 |
| „ „ younger sister, | *mei$^4$-fu$^1$* | 妹夫 |
| „ „ father's sister, | *ku$^1$-fu$^1$* | 姑夫 |
| „ „ mother's sister, | *i$^2$-fu$^1$* | 姨夫 |
| Marquis, | *heo$^2$* | 侯 |
| Mother, | *mu$^3$-ch‘in$^1$; niang$^2$* | 母親, 娘 |
| Mother-in-law of husband, | *chang$^4$-mu$^3$* | 丈母 |
| „ of wife, | *p‘o$^2$-p‘o$^2$* | 婆婆 |
| Princes, | *uang$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 王子 |
| Princess Imperial, | *kong$^1$-chu$^3$* | 公主 |
| Relatives, | *ch‘in$^1$-ch‘ih$^4$* | 親戚 |
| Sister, elder, | *chie$^3$-chie$^3$* | 姐姐 |
| „ younger, | *mei$^4$-mei$^4$* | 妹妹 |
| Sisters, | *tsï$^3$-mei$^4$* | 姊妹 |
| Sister's son, | *uai$^4$-seng$^1$* | 外甥 |
| „ daughter, | *uai$^4$-seng$^1$-nü$^3$-rï$^2$* | 外甥女兒 |
| Sister, father's married, | *ku$^1$-mu$^3$* | 姑母 |
| Sister, mother's, | *i$^2$-niang$^2$* | 姨娘 |
| „ wife's elder, | *ta$^4$ i$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 大姨子 |
| „ „ younger, | *hsiao$^3$-i$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 小姨子 |
| Sister-in-law, wife's elder, | *ta$^4$-ku$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 大姑子 |
| „ „ younger, | *hsiao$^3$-ku$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 小姑子 |
| Son, | *rï$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 兒子 |
| Uncles, | *peh$^2$-shuh$^2$* | 伯叔 |
| Viscount, | *tsï$^3$* | 子 |
| Wife, principal, | *ch‘i$^1$* | 妻 |
| „ secondary, | *ch‘ieh$^4$* | 妾 |
| „ of elder brother, | *sao$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 嫂子 |
| „ „ younger brother, | *ti$^4$-fu$^4$* | 弟婦 |
| „ „ father's elder brother, | *ta$^4$-niang$^2$* | 大娘 |
| „ „ mother's brothers, | *chiu$^4$-mu$^3$* | 舅母 |
| „ „ son, grandson or nephew, | *hsih$^2$-fu$^4$* | 媳婦 |
| „ „ younger brother-in-law, | *shen$^3$-shen$^3$* | 嬸嬸 |
| „ „ wife's elder brother-in-law, | *sao$^3$-sao$^3$* | |

## Some Expressions used in Legal and Official Documents. 件文

(Arranged according to the number of characters.)

| | |
|---|---|
| 契 | Deed; bond. |
| 典 or 當 | Mortgage, Chinese. "A legal mortgage can only be created by an out-and-out transfer, with possession, subject to a reconveyance on repayment of the mortgage debt."—Giles. |
| 贖 | To redeem. |
| 查 | To examine. Whereas . . . . Often denotes what, in English, would be expressed by a new paragraph. |
| 竊<br>窃 | A term of modesty = "my humble self:" used by the writer of a document in addressing a superior. |
| 該 | The said; the respective; that; the. |
| 開 | Introducing the tenor of a document quoted: to state, stating; "to the effect that." |
| 科 | To calculate from; rank. |
| 本 | This, as in "*this* office;" the possessive pronoun of the person speaking or writing. |
| 稟 | A communication from an inferior to a superior; to petition. |
| 部 | Class; one of the Boards of Government. |
| 申 | To explain; to state to a superior. |
| 殊 | Distinction; unlike; very. |
| 署 | A yamen; to act for another. |
| 俟 | To wait till; when. |
| 俟 | . . . . 方 or 卽 or 再 as soon as . . . .; then . . . .; wait till . . . .; and then. |
| 咨 | A despatch; to address equals in a despatch. |
| 由 | Circumstances; details; sometimes denotes the doer of an action. |
| 援 | To put forward; to quote by way of analogy; to claim—as privileges granted to others. |
| 批 | To write in reply to a petition; to endorse a petition. |
| 立約 | To draw up an agreement. |
| 紅契 | Agreement, officially sealed. |
| 白契 | Agreement signed but not officially sealed. |
| 界石 | Boundary stone. |

---

私憑文約官憑印 *A private person trusts to his agreement, an official to his stamp.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 異言 | Contrary statement. |
| 批明 | To endorse, as a certificate is endorsed by an official. |
| 押租 | Deposit money. |
| 定錢 | Earnest money. |
| 憑據 | Evidence; proof. |
| 房東 | Landlord of house. |
| 地主 | Landlord of property. |
| 任憑 | At liberty; at one's pleasure. |
| 中人 | A middleman. |
| 中資 | Expenses of middleman. |
| 稅契 | Official fee. |
| 老契 | An old agreement. |
| 日期 | A period. |
| 洋價 | Price in dollars. |
| 買主 | Purchaser. |
| 退還 | Refund. |
| 租賃 | Rent, to. |
| 摺子 | Rent pass-book. |
| 租價, 行租 | Rental. |
| 賣主 | Seller. |
| 坐落 | Situate. |
| 轉當 | Sub-mortgage. |
| 畫押 | To affix one's signature; to sign. |
| 杜賣 | Sell without reserve. |
| 房客 | Tenant. |
| 查照 | To take official notice; for official information. |
| 照例 | According to rule; not contrary to regulations. |
| 照知 | To inform in a despatch. |
| 照會 | An official communication; a despatch. |
| 照復 or 覆 | To reply in a despatch. |
| 証據 | Testimony; evidence. |
| 承辦 | To undertake the management of. |
| 給發 | To issue. |
| 計開 | Namely; to wit (before an enumeration of things). |
| 旣經 | From the time that; since . . . has, etc., |
| 交淸 | To pay an amount in full. |
| 前來 | To have come forward; to have come to hand (as a despatch, etc.) These two words frequently follow the mention of a document received, or its tenor. |
| 知照, 知會 | To inform. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 欽此 | "The above is Imperial:" "Such is his Majesty's pleasure." |
| 頃接 | I have just received. |
| 駐紮 | To be stationed at. |
| 除....外 | Deducting ....; besides .... "Passages of some length are often included between these characters, the literal meaning of which is—besides (doing all that is said *chʻu* and *uai*)." Hirth. |
| 專此 | I specially write this note (a concluding phrase in letters). |
| 轉咨 | To transmit in a despatch a communication received. |
| 轉飭 | To give instructions for transmission to subordinates. |
| 權辦 | To adopt an exceptional course owing to special circumstances. |
| 凡....者 | All .... who (or which). ... |
| 奉行 | To act in compliance with instructions; to receive orders from a superior. |
| 伏查 | It is my humble opinion that .... |
| 函稱 | To state in a letter. |
| 合亟 | Promptly; with dispatch. |
| 曉諭 | For general information; to inform by proclamation. |
| 勛安 | (I wish you) merit and peace (a concluding phrase in letters). |
| 會同 | To meet together; conjointly. |
| 啓者 or 逕啓者 | An opening phrase in letters; "You are hereby informed that;" "I beg to inform you." |
| 蓋因 | The reason, generally, is .... |
| 明文 | A stipulation in writing; a written understanding. |
| 內載 or 開 | It is stated therein; in which it is stated. |
| 俾得 | So that; so that I may; so as to. |
| 並未 | Not by any means. |
| 稟帖 | A petition; a statement. |
| 不一 | Not the same. A concluding phrase in letters, merely shewing that the letter is finished. |
| 部堂 | Official designation of the President of a Board (as such the title of a Governor-General.) |
| 申詳 | To report to a superior. |
| 陞啟 | To be delivered into the hands of .... |
| 示知 | To inform by proclamation, to make known. |
| 示仰 | To issue a proclamation with a view to ... |
| 示覆 | To give instructions in reply to an application. |
| 事宜 | Affairs; matters; business. |
| 署理 | To act for another; officiating, acting. |
| 所有 | Often is the equivalent of "the." |

| | |
|---|---|
| 溯 查 | Considering the origin of a matter, I find that . . . |
| 臺 電 | "Your Honour's superior intellect"—used in petitions. |
| 當 經 | I have thereupon, or with reference thereto. |
| 等 因 | Such arguments; "etc.," after the enumeration of a number of arguments—used in closing a quotation. |
| 在 案 | "It is on record;" "As records shew;" a concluding phrase showing that the facts stated are on official record. |
| 奏 明 | To state in a petition to the Throne. |
| 奏 摺 | or 本 A memorial to the Throne. |
| 遵 照 | In obedience to; in compliance with. |
| 遵 行 | To comply with orders. |
| 存 查 | To keep on record. |
| 同 一 | In conformity with; just the same. |
| 通 知 | To notify; to inform through another. |
| 通 商 | To traffic; foreign trade. |
| 咨 行 | To address in a despatch; to address equals. |
| 茲 者 | Now. |
| 此 佈 | "This is a public notice;" "I beg to inform you of this." |
| 此 致 | "This is what I wished to address you with"—a concluding phrase in letters. |
| 所 以 | Thereby; by which means it is intended to. |
| 自 應 | Must; bound to . . . . |
| 爲…事 | In the matter of . . . . |
| 文 件 | Despatches; documents. |
| 文 書 | An official letter. |
| 仰 求 | To respectfully ask. |
| 諭 知 | To inform by proclamation. |
| 援 引 | To quote. |
| 云 云 | "Etc.; etc."—used where the tenor of a document is partially or wholly omitted. |
| 未 滿 期 | Term agreed upon, before the completion of the. |
| 親 筆 寫 | Written with one's own hand. |
| 敬 啟 者 | I respectfully inform you. |
| 敬 覆 者 | I beg to reply. |
| 復 啟 者 | I beg to inform you—in reply to a letter received. |
| 各 等 因 | See *teng in.* 等 因. |
| 歸 畫 一 | To make uniform; to obtain uniformity. |
| 同 前 因 | or 由 "To the same effect as the former." |
| 自 … 之 後 | From . . . . after. |
| 四 至 分 明 | Boundaries clearly defined. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 銀不起利 | Interest not to be payable on deposit money. |
| 不得生端 | Difficulties not to be made. |
| 憑中說合 | Agreed to in the presence of middlemen. |
| 買三賣二 | Purchaser pays 3 per cent., seller 2 per cent., to the middlemen. |
| 典不押賣 | Purchaser to have precedence of mortgagee. |
| 租不押典 | Tenant not to have precedence of mortgagee. |
| 並無去留 | Nothing taken away or kept back. |
| 如有老約 | If there should be any old deed . . . . |
| 查照辦理 | To act accordingly. |
| 重究不貸 | To be severely dealt with. |
| 希卽轉移 | I shall be obliged by your communicating the contents of my letter to . . . |
| 泐此奉覆 | I write this in reply. |
| 凜之遵(愼)之 | Tremble and obey; be careful to obey these injunctions. |
| 督撫司道 | The provincial authorities—Viceroy, Governor, Treasurer, Judge, Salt Commissioner and Grain Collector. |
| 通商各口 | The Treaty Ports. |
| 通商大臣 | A Minister Superintendent of Trade. |
| 此頌升祺 | "With best wishes;" "With kind regards." |
| 爲此照會 | This despatch is written or addressed to . . . . |
| 毋違特示 | A special order not to be offended against. |
| 諭飭遵辦 | To give orders for the guidance—of those concerned. |
| 御筆批准 | To be sanctioned by the Emperor. |
| 援照成案 | According to precedent. |
| 援以爲例 | To quote (a fact) as a precedent so as to constitute a rule |
| 到某處爲界 | Boundary to so and so. |
| 照原價贖取 | Redeemable at original price. |
| 須至照會者 | "A necessary despatch." |
| 文武地方官 | The local, civil and military officials. |
| 便宜行事大臣 | A Minister Plenipotentiary. |
| 仰卽遵照辦理 | You will be guided by these instructions. |
| 並無勒逼討哄情形 | Without any circumstances of compulsion or roguery. |
| 殊於華商生計窒碍 | To materially interfere with the business interests of Chinese merchants. |

# THE PERSON. 身體

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abdomen, | *hsiao$^3$ tu$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 小肚子 |
| Adam's apple, | *heo$^2$-chieh$^2$* | 喉節 |
| Ankles, | *kioh$^3$-ien$^3$* | 脚眼 |
| Arm, | *keh$^2$-poh$^4$ ; pang$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 胳膊, 膀子 |
| ,, upper part of, | *keh$^2$-pang$^3$ ; pang$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 胳膀, 膀子 |
| Armpit, | *keh$^2$-chï$^1$-o$^1$* | 胳肢窩 |
| Bare-footed, | *ch'ih$^4$-kioh$^3$* | 赤脚 |
| Back-bone, | *chih$^2$-liang$^2$-kuh$^2$* | 脊粱骨 |
| Belly, | *tu$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 肚子 |
| Blood-vessels, | *hsüeh$^3$-kuan$^3$* | 血管 |
| Body, | *shen$^1$-t'i$^3$ ; shen$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 身體, 身子 |
| Body, members of, | *sï$^4$-chï$^1$-peh$^2$-t'i$^3$* | 四肢百體 |
| Bone, a, | *ih$^1$-ken$^1$ kuh$^2$-t'eo$^2$* | 一根骨頭 |
| Brains, | *t'eo$^2$-nao$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 頭腦子 |
| Calf, | *t'ui$^3$-tu$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 腿肚子 |
| Cheeks, | *liang$^3$-sai$^1$* | 兩腮 |
| Cheek-bones, | *liang$^3$-ch'üen$^2$-kuh$^2$* | 兩顴骨 |
| Chin ; jaw bone, | *hsia$^4$-pa$^1$-kuh$^2$* | 下巴骨 |
| Ear, | *rï$^3$-to$^3$* | 耳朶 |
| ,, lobe of, | *rï$^3$-chui$^4$* | 耳墜 |
| ,, root of, | *rï$^3$-ken$^1$* | 耳根 |
| Elbow, | *cheo$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 肘子 |
| Eyes, | *ien$^3$-ching$^1$* | 眼睛 |
| Eye, inner corner of, | *ta$^4$ ien$^3$-kioh$^3$* | 大眼角 |
| ,, outer | *hsiao$^3$ ien$^3$-kioh$^3$* | 小眼角 |
| ,, ball, | *ien$^3$-chu$^1$* | 眼珠 |
| ,, brows, | *mei$^2$-mao$^2$* | 眉毛 |
| ,, lid, upper, | *shang$^4$ ien$^3$-p'i$^2$* | 上眼皮 |
| ,, lid, under, | *hsia$^4$ ien$^3$-p'i$^2$* | 下眼皮 |
| ,, pupil of, | *t'ong$^2$-ren$^2$* | 瞳人 |

---

一體不安, 渾身不安 *If one member is uncomfortable, the whole body is uncomfortable.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Face, | *lien$^3$* | 臉 |
| Fingers, | *sheo$^3$-chï$^3$-t‘eo$^2$* | 手指頭 |
| Finger-joints, | *sheo$^3$-chï$^3$-chieh$^2$* | 手指節 |
| „ nails, | *sheo$^3$-chï$^3$-chiah$^3$* | 手指甲 |
| Foot, | *kioh$^3$* | 脚 |
| Forearm, | *sheo$^3$keh$^2$-poh$^4$; hsiao$^3$ keh$^2$-poh$^4$* | 手胳膊, 小胳膊 |
| Forefinger, | *shïh$^2$-chï$^3$; rï$^4$ mu$^3$ chï$^3$* | 食指, 二拇指 |
| Forehead, | *eh$^2$-t‘eo$^2$; t‘ien$^1$-ling$^2$-kai$^4$* | 額頭, 天靈盖 |
| „ top of, | *eh$^2$-kioh$^3$* | 額角 |
| „ lower part of, | *t‘ien$^1$-t‘ing$^2$* | 天庭 |
| Foot, sole of, | *kioh$^3$-ti$^3$-pan$^3$; kioh$^3$-hsin$^1$* | 脚底板, 脚心 |
| Gall, | *tan$^3$* | 膽 |
| Gums, | *ia$^2$-ken$^1$* | 牙根 |
| Gum-boil, | *ia$^2$-kan$^1$* | 牙疳 |
| Hair of head, | *t‘eo$^2$-fah$^3$* | 頭髮 |
| „ on body, | *hao$^2$-mao$^2$* | 毫毛 |
| Hand, | *sheo$^3$* | 手 |
| „ back of, | *sheo$^3$-pei$^4$* | 手背 |
| „ front of, | *sheo$^3$-mien$^4$* | 手面 |
| „ palm of, | *sheo$^3$-hsin$^1$; sheo$^3$-chang$^3$* | 手心, 手掌 |
| Head; skull, | *nao$^3$-tai$^4$; nao$^3$-k‘oh$^1$* | 腦袋, 腦殼 |
| Heart, | *hsin$^1$* | 心 |
| Heel, | *kioh$^3$-heo$^4$-ken$^1$* | 脚後跟 |
| „ under the, | *kioh$^3$-pei$^4$* | 脚背 |
| Instep, | *kioh$^3$-ching$^3$-tsï$^3$* | 脚頸子 |
| Intestine, large, | *ta$^4$ ch‘ang$^2$* | 大腸 |
| „ small, | *hsiao$^3$-ch‘ang$^2$* | 小腸 |
| Kidneys, | *iao$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 腰子 |
| Knee-pan, | *keh$^2$-hsih$^2$-kai$^4$; po$^1$-lo$^2$-kai$^4$* | 胳膝蓋, 波羅盖 |
| Larynx, | *ien$^4$-heo$^2$* | 咽喉 |
| Liver, | *kan$^1$* | 肝 |
| Lip, lower, | *hsia$^4$tsui$^3$-shuen$^2$(ch‘uen$^2$)* | 下嘴唇 |
| „ upper, | *shang$^4$ tsui$^3$-shuen$^2$ (ch‘uen$^2$)* | 上嘴唇 |
| Lungs, | *fei$^2$* | 肺 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Membrane, | *moh*$^4$ | 膜 |
| Moustaches, | *hu*$^2$*-tsï*$^1$ : *hu*$^2$*-hsü*$^1$ | 鬍髭鬍鬚 |
| Naked to the waist, | *ch‘ïh*$^4$*-poh*$^1$ ; *kuang*$^1$ *chih*$^2$ *liang*$^2$ | 赤剝，光脊梁 |
| Navel, | *tu*$^3$*-ch‘i*$^2$ | 肚臍 |
| Neck, | *ching*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ ; *ching*$^3$*-hsiang*$^3$ ; *poh*$^2$*-tsï*$^3$ | 頸子，頸項，脖子 |
| Nose, | *pi*$^4$*-tsï*$^3$ | 鼻子 |
| „ tip of, | *pi*$^4$*-chien*$^1$ | 鼻尖 |
| „ bridge of, | *pi*$^4$*-liang*$^2$ | 鼻梁 |
| Shoulder, | *chien*$^1$*-pang*$^3$ ; *chien*$^1$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 肩膀，肩頭 |
| Skin, | *p‘i*$^2$*-fu*$^1$ | 皮膚 |
| „ between the toes, | *kioh*$^3$*-ia*$^1$*-tsï*$^3$ | 脚丫子 |
| Spleen, | *p‘i*$^2$ | 脾 |
| Stomach, | *uei*$^4$ | 胃 |
| Teat, | *nai*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ | 奶子 |
| Teeth, | *ia*$^2$*-ch‘ï*$^3$ | 牙齒 |
| Temples, | *liang*$^3$ *t‘ai*$^4$*-iang*$^2$ | 兩太陽 |
| Tendon ; muscle, a, | *ih*$^1$*-ken*$^1$*-chin*$^1$ | 一根筋 |
| Thigh, | *ta*$^4$*-t‘ui*$^3$ | 大腿 |
| „ -bone, | *k‘ua*$^1$*-kuh*$^2$ | 跨骨 |
| Throat, | *sang*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ ; *heo*$^2$*-long*$^2$ | 嗓子，喉嚨 |
| Thumb ; great toe, | *ta*$^4$*-mu*$^3$*-chï*$^3$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 大拇指頭 |
| Toe, | *kioh*$^3$*-chï*$^3$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 脚指頭 |
| „ -nails, | *kioh*$^3$*-chï*$^3$*-kiah*$^3$ | 脚指甲 |
| Tongue, | *sheh*$^2$*-t‘eo*$^2$ | 舌頭 |
| „ root of, | *sheh*$^2$*-ken*$^1$ | 舌根 |
| Wrist, | *sheo*$^3$*-ching*$^3$*-tsï*$^3$ ; *sheo*$^3$ *uan*$^4$*-tsï*$^3$ | 手頸子，手腕子 |
| „ -joint, | *sheo*$^3$*-kuh*$^2$*-kuai*$^4$ | 手骨拐 |

# MATERIA MEDICA. 材 藥

*The following list comprises the most common and reliable medicinal substances obtainable in Chinese drug stores:—*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Acetum (vinegar), | *ts‘u*$^{4}$ | 醋 |
| Aconite root, | *ts‘ao*$^{3}$ *u*$^{1}$*-t‘eo*$^{2}$; *ch‘uan*$^{1}$ *u*$^{1}$*-t‘eo*$^{2}$ | 草烏頭, 川烏頭 |
| Alcohol (corn spirit), | *ho*$^{3}$ *chiu*$^{3}$; *shao*$^{1}$ *chiu*$^{3}$; *kao*$^{1}$*-liang*$^{2}$ *chiu*$^{3}$ | 火酒, 燒酒, 高粱酒 |
| Almonds, | *hsing*$^{4}$*-ren*$^{2}$ | 杏仁 |
| Aloes, | *lu*$^{2}$*-huei*$^{4}$ | 蘆薈 |
| Alum, | *ming*$^{2}$*-fan*$^{2}$; *peh*$^{2}$*-fan*$^{2}$ | 明礬, 白礬 |
| Amber, | *hu*$^{2}$*-p‘eh*$^{4}$ | 琥珀 |
| Ammonia hydrochlorate,* | *lu*$^{3}$ | 磠 |
| Amylum | *hsiao*$^{3}$*-fen*$^{3}$ ; *fen*$^{3}$*-t‘uan*$^{2}$ | 小粉, 粉團 |
| Aniseed, | *ta*$^{4}$ *huei*$^{2}$*-hsiang*$^{1}$ | 大茴香 |
| Areca nut, | *pin*$^{1}$*-lang*$^{2}$ | 檳榔 |
| Arsenic, | *hsin*$^{4}$*-shïh*$^{2}$; *p‘i*$^{2}$*-shuang*$^{1}$ | 信石, 砒霜 |
| Asafœtida, | *e*$^{1}$*-uei*$^{4}$ | 阿魏 |
| Barberry, | *keo*$^{3}$*-ch‘i*$^{3}$, *keo*$^{3}$*-chih*$^{4}$ | 枸杞, 枸棘 |
| Belladonna,* | *tien*$^{1}$*-ch‘ie*$^{1}$ | 顚茄 |
| Benzoin, | *an*$^{1}$*-hsih*$^{2}$ *hsiang*$^{1}$ | 安息香 |
| Borax, | *p‘eng*$^{2}$*-sha*$^{1}$ | 硼砂 |
| Calomel, | *ch‘ing*$^{1}$*-fen*$^{3}$ | 輕粉 |
| Camphor, | *chang*$^{1}$*-nao*$^{3}$ | 樟腦 |
| Cantharides, | *pan*$^{1}$*-mao*$^{2}$ | 班茅 |
| Capsicum, | *lah*$^{4}$*-chiao*$^{1}$ | 辣椒 |
| Cardamom, | *teo*$^{4}$*-k‘eo*$^{4}$ | 豆蔻 |
| Cassia bark, | *kuei*$^{4}$*-p‘i*$^{2}$ | 桂皮 |
| Castor oil, | *ta*$^{4}$ *ma*$^{2}$ *iu*$^{2}$ | 大蔴油 |
| Catechu, | *rï*$^{2}$*-ch‘a*$^{2}$ | 兒茶 |
| Centaury, | *long*$^{2}$*-tan*$^{1}$ | 龍膽 |

Those marked* are of uncertain identity.

說的是眞方, 賣的是假藥 *He gave a good prescription, but sold bad medicine.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Chamomile, | *k‘u$^{3}$-chüh$^{2}$ hua$^{1}$* | 苦 菊 花 |
| Charcoal, | *t‘an$^{4}$* | 炭 |
| China root, | *fuh$^{2}$-ling$^{2}$* | 茯 苓 |
| Citron, | *keo$^{3}$-üen$^{2}$; fuh$^{2}$-sheo$^{3}$-kan$^{1}$* | 枸 櫞, 佛 手 柑 |
| Cinnabar, | *chu$^{1}$-sha$^{1}$* | 朱 砂 |
| Cinnamon, | *ruh$^{4}$-kuei$^{4}$* | 肉 桂 |
| Cloves, | *ting$^{1}$-hsiang$^{1}$* | 丁 香 |
| Coriander, | *hsiao$^{3}$-huei$^{2}$ hsiang$^{1}$* | 小 茴 香 |
| Coltsfoot, | *k‘uan$^{3}$-tong$^{1}$ hua$^{1}$* | 欵 冬 花 |
| Copperas, | *ch‘ing$^{2}$-fan$^{2}$* | 青 礬 |
| Corrosive sublimate, | *peh$^{2}$-chiang$^{4}$-tan$^{1}$* | 白 降 丹 |
| Croton oil, | *pa$^{1}$-teo$^{4}$ iu$^{2}$* | 巴 荳 油 |
| Cubebs, | *pih$^{2}$-ch‘en$^{2}$ ch‘ie$^{1}$* | 畢 澄 茄 |
| Dandelion, | *p‘u$^{2}$-kong$^{1}$-ing$^{1}$* | 蒲 公 英 |
| Fennel seeds, | *huai$^{2}$-hsiang$^{1}$ ko$^{3}$* | 蘹 香 果 |
| Galangal root, | *kao$^{1}$-liang$^{2}$-chiang$^{1}$* | 高 良 薑 |
| Galls, | *u$^{3}$-pei$^{4}$-tsï$^{3}$* | 五 倍 子 |
| Gamboge, | *t‘eng$^{2}$-huang$^{2}$* | 籐 黃 |
| Garlic, | *ta$^{4}$-suan$^{4}$* | 大 蒜 |
| Gentian, | *long$^{2}$-tan$^{1}$ ts‘ao$^{3}$* | 龍 膽 草 |
| Ginger, | *seng$^{1}$-chiang$^{1}$* | 生 薑 |
| Ginseng, | *ren$^{2}$-sen$^{1}$* | 人 參 |
| Hellebore, | *li$^{2}$-lu$^{2}$* | 藜 蘆 |
| Honey, | *feng$^{1}$-mih$^{4}$* | 蜂 蜜 |
| Hyoscyamus, | *nao$^{4}$-iang$^{2}$ hua$^{1}$* | 鬧 羊 花 |
| Lead carbonate, | *ch‘ien$^{2}$-fen$^{3}$* | 鉛 粉 |
| Lead oxide (red), | *ch‘ien$^{2}$-tan$^{1}$* | 鉛 丹 |
| Leeches, | *ch‘i$^{2}$-ma$^{3}$-huang$^{2}$* | 蜞 馬 黃 |
| Lemon peel, | *ning$^{2}$-meng$^{2}$ p‘i$^{2}$* | 檸 檬 皮 |
| Linseed, | *hu$^{2}$-ma$^{2}$ tsï$^{3}$* | 胡 蔴 子 |
| Liquorice, | *kan$^{1}$-ts‘ao$^{3}$* | 甘 草 |
| Litharge, | *mih$^{2}$-t‘o$^{2}$-seng$^{1}$* | 蜜 佗 僧 |
| Lobelia, | *shan$^{1}$-keng$^{3}$ ts‘ai$^{4}$* | 山 梗 菜 |
| Logwood, | *su$^{1}$ muh$^{4}$* | 蘇 木 |
| Lycopodium, | *uan$^{4}$-nien$^{2}$ song$^{1}$* | 萬 年 松 |
| Mercury, | *shui$^{3}$-in$^{2}$ hong$^{3}$* | 水 銀 汞 |
| Musk, | *shœ$^{4}$-hsiang$^{1}$* | 麝 香 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Mustard, | *kiai$^4$ ; kiai$^4$-moh$^2$* | 芥, 芥末 |
| Myrrh, | *muh$^2$ ioh$^4$* | 沒藥 |
| Nitre (saltpetre), | *p‘oh$^4$ hsiao$^1$* | 朴硝 |
| Nutmeg, | *ruh$^4$-teo$^4$-k‘eo$^4$* | 肉豆蔻 |
| Nux vomica, | *ma$^3$-ch‘ien$^2$-tsï$^3$* | 馬前子 |
| Oak bark, | *hsiang$^4$-shu$^4$ p‘i$^2$* | 橡樹皮 |
| Oil of anise, | *ta$^4$-huei$^2$-hsiang$^1$ iu$^2$* | 大茴香油 |
| „ beans, | *teo$^4$ iu$^2$* | 豆油 |
| „ camellia seeds, | *ch‘a$^2$ iu$^2$* | 茶油 |
| „ cloves, | *ting$^1$-hsiang$^1$ iu$^2$* | 丁香油 |
| „ cinnamon, | *kuei$^4$-p‘i$^2$ iu$^2$* | 桂皮油 |
| „ peppermint, | *poh$^4$-ho$^2$ iu$^2$* | 薄荷油 |
| „ pine wood, | *song$^1$ iu$^2$ ; peh$^2$ iu$^2$* | 松油, 柏油 |
| „ sandal wood, | *t‘an$^2$-hsiang$^1$ iu$^2$* | 檀香油 |
| Olibanum, | *ru$^3$-hsiang$^1$* | 乳香 |
| Opium, | *ia$^1$-p‘ien$^4$ ; iang$^2$-ien$^1$* | 鴉片, 洋烟 |
| Pepper, | *hu$^2$-chiao$^1$* | 胡椒 |
| Peppermint, | *poh$^4$-ho$^2$* | 薄荷 |
| Pomegranate peel, | *shïh$^2$-liu$^2$ p‘i$^2$* | 石榴皮 |
| Poppy heads, | *ing$^1$-su$^4$-k‘oh$^1$* | 罌粟殼 |
| Potash, | *huei$^1$-hsien$^2$* | 灰鹹 |
| Powder of cinnamon, compound, | *kuei$^4$-p‘i$^2$ san$^3$* | 桂皮散 |
| “Purging powder,” | *shui$^3$-ku$^3$ san$^3$* | 水鼓散 |
| Resin, | *song$^1$-hsiang$^1$; huang$^2$-hsiang$^1$* | 松香, 黃香 |
| Rhubarb, | *ta$^4$ (tai$^4$) huang$^2$* | 大黃 |
| Saffron, | *fan$^1$-hong$^2$ hua$^1$* | 番紅花 |
| Slippery elm, | *ü$^2$-shu$^4$ p‘i$^2$* | 榆樹皮 |
| Smilax, | *t‘u$^3$-fuh$^2$-ling$^2$* | 土茯苓 |
| Soda, | *chien$^3$* | 鹼 |
| Stramonium, | *tsui$^4$-hsien$^1$-t‘ao$^2$; fuh$^2$-ch‘ie$^1$-rï$^2$* | 醉仙桃, 佛茄兒 |
| Sulphur, | *liu$^2$-huang$^2$* | 硫磺 |
| “Tonic powder,” | *pu$^3$-uei$^4$ san$^3$* | 補胃散 |
| Turmeric, | *chiang$^1$-huang$^2$* | 薑黃 |
| Wax, | *huang$^2$-lah$^4$* | 黃蠟 |
| Wormseed, | *shï$^4$-chüin$^1$-tsï$^3$* | 使君子 |
| Wormwood, | *ai$^4$-ts‘ao$^3$* | 艾草 |

## GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES. 輿 地

---

### Boundaries and Divisions of China Proper.

North :—Mongolia.
East :— Gulf of Pehchihli, the Yellow Sea and the Pacific Ocean.
South :—The China Sea, Gulf of Tonquin, Tonquin and Siam.
West :— Upper Burmah, Thibet and Kokonor.

Wells Williams divides China Proper by its physical features into Three Portions ; viz., the Mountainous, the Hilly, and the Level Country.

1. The Mountainous portion is more than half of the whole, and lies W. of a line passing N and S. through Wu-ch'ang, in Hupeh.
2. The Hilly portion lies E. of this meridian and S. of the Yang-tsï.
3. The Great Plain is the remaining North Eastern portion, and is said by him to be the richest part of the Empire.

---

### Boundaries of the Eighteen Provinces.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **CHIHLI.*** CHI. | N. InnerMongolia,Liaotung. | E. Gulf of Pehchihli. |
| | S. Shantung, Honan ... | ... W. Shansi. |
| **SHANSI.** SHA. | N. Mongolia ... | .. E. Chihli. |
| | S. Honan,Yellow River ... | W. Shensi, Yellow River. |
| **SHANTUNG.** | N. Gulf of Pehchihli | ... E. Yellow Sea. |
| SUNG. | S. Kiangsu ... | ... W. Honan, Chihli. |
| **HONAN.** HO. | N. Shansi,Chihli,Shantung. | E. Kiangsu, Anhwei. |
| | S. Hupeh ... | ... W. Shensi. |
| **KIANGSU.** KU. | N. Shantung ... | ... E. Yellow Sea. |
| | S. Chehkiang ... | ... W. Anhwei. |
| **ANHWEI.** AN. | N. Honan ... | ... E. Kiangsu, Chehkiang |
| | S. Kiangsi ... | ... W. Hupeh, Honan. |
| **KIANGSI.** KI. | N. Hupeh, Anhwei | ... E. Fuhkien. |
| | S. Kwangtung ... | ... W. Hunan. |

* The abbreviations that follow the name of each province are those adopted by the Government Post Office.

---

海無邊, 江無底 *The sea is without bounds, the river without bottom.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Chekiang. | N. Kiangsu ... | ... E. China Sea. |
| Che. | S. Fuhkien ... | ... W. Anhwei. |
| Fuhkien. Fu. | N. Chehkiang ... | ... E. China Sea. |
| | S. Kwangtung ... | ... W. Kiangsi. |
| Hupeh. Hup. | N. Shensi, Honan | ... E. Anhwei. |
| | S. Kiangsi, Hunan | ... W. Szechwan. |
| Hunan. Hun. | N. Hupeh ... | ... E. Kiangsi. |
| | S. Kwangtung, Kwangsi. | W. Kweichow, Szechwan. |
| Shensi. She. | N. Mongolia ... | ... E. Shansi, Honan. |
| | S. Hupeh, Szechwan | ... W. Kansuh. |
| Kansu. Kan. | N. Gobi, Mongolia | ... E. Shensi. |
| | S. Szechwan ... | ... W. Thibet, Kokonor. |
| Szechwan. | N. Kansuh, Shensi | ... E. Hupeh, Hunan. |
| Sze. | S. Kweichow, Yunnan | ... W. Thibet. |
| Kwangtung. | N. Hunan, Kiangsi | ... E. Fuhkien. |
| Tung. | S. China Sea ... | ... W. Kwangsi. |
| Kwangsi. Si. | N. Kweichow, Hunan | ... E. Kwangtung. |
| | S. Tonquin ... | ... W. Yunnan. |
| Kweichow. | N. Szechwan ... | ... E. Hunan. |
| Kwei. | S. Kwangsi ... | ... W. Yunnan. |
| Yunnan. | N. Szechwan ... | ... E. Kweichow, Kwangsi |
| | S. Tonquin, Siam | ... W. Burmah. |

# Chief Cities of China. 中國城邑

The provincial Capitals (*Seng* 省) head the lists. Nominally, all cities are now called 縣; practically the old names are in common use, and so are retained in these lists.

---

## 直隸

### CHĬHLI.

Containing 11 Fu, 6 Chĭh-li Cheo, 17 Cheo and 123 Hsien cities. Total 157.

| | |
|---|---|
| **順天府** | *Shuent‘ien* ***Fu*** (or *Pehching, the Metropolis*). |
| **保定府** | *Paoting* ***Fu.*** |
| 廣平府 | *Kuangp‘ing* ***Fu.*** |
| 永平 ,, | *Iongp‘ing* ,, |
| 正定 ,, | *Chengting* ,, |
| 順德 ,, | *Shuenteh* ,, |
| 天津 ,, | *T‘ientsin* ,, |
| 承德 ,, | *Ch‘engteh* ,, |
| 宣化 ,, | *Hsüenhua* ,, |
| 河間 ,, | *Hochien* ,, |
| 大名 ,, | *Taming* ,, |
| 遵化州 | *Tsuenhua* ***Cheo.*** |
| 深 ,, | *Shen* ,, |
| 趙 ,, | *Chao* ,, |
| 定 ,, | *Ting* ,, |
| 冀 ,, | *Chi* ,, |
| 易 ,, | *I* ,, |

## 山西

### SHANSI.

Containing 9 Fu, 10 Chĭh-li Cheo, 7 T‘ing, 6 Cheo and 85 Hsien cities. Total 117.

| | |
|---|---|
| **太原府** | *T‘aiüen* ***Fu.*** |
| 平陽府 | *P‘ingiang* ***Fu.*** |
| 澤州 ,, | *Tsehcheo* ,, |
| 朔平 ,, | *Sup‘ing* ,, |
| 汾州 ,, | *Fencheo* ,, |
| 大同府 | *Tat‘ong* ***Fu.*** |
| 蒲州 ,, | *P‘ucheo* ,, |
| 潞安 ,, | *Luhan* ,, |
| 甯武 ,, | *Ningu* ,, |
| 平定州 | *P‘ingting* ***Cheo.*** |
| 保德 ,, | *Paoteh* ,, |
| 絳 ,, | *Chiang* ,, |
| 沁 ,, | *Ch‘in* ,, |
| 遼 ,, | *Liao* ,, |
| 解 ,, | *Kiai* ,, |
| 忻 ,, | *Hsin* ,, |
| 霍 ,, | *Hoh* ,, |
| 隰 ,, | *Hsih* ,, |
| 代 ,, | *Tai* ,, |

## 山東

### SHANTONG.

Containing 10 Fu, 2 Chĭh-li Cheo, 8 Cheo and 96 Hsien cities. Total 116.

| | |
|---|---|
| **濟南府** | *Chinan* ***Fu.*** |
| 東昌府 | *Tongch‘ang* ***Fu.*** |
| 青州 ,, | *Ch‘ingcheo* ,, |
| 曹州 ,, | *Ts‘aocheo* ,, |
| 登州 ,, | *Tengcheo* ,, |
| 萊州 ,, | *Laicheo* ,, |
| 兗州 ,, | *Iencheo* ,, |
| 泰安 ,, | *T‘aian* ,, |
| 武定 ,, | *Uting* ,, |
| 沂州 ,, | *Icheo* ,, |
| 濟甯州 | *Chining* ***Cheo.*** |
| 臨清 ,, | *Linch‘ing* ,, |
| 膠州 | *Chiao* ,, |

## 河南

### HONAN.

Containing 9 Fu, 5 Chĭh-li Cheo, 5 Cheo, 1 T‘ing and 79 Hsien cities. Total 116.

| | |
|---|---|
| 開封府 | K‘aifeng Fu. |
| 懷慶府 | Huaich‘ing Fu. |
| 陳州 „ | Ch‘encheo „ |
| 歸德 „ | Kueiteh „ |
| 彰德 „ | Changteh „ |
| 南陽 „ | Naniang „ |
| 衛輝 „ | Ueihuei „ |
| 汝寧 „ | Runing „ |
| 河南 „ | Honan „ |
| 許州 | Hsü Cheo. |
| 陝 „ | Shan „ |
| 光 „ | Kuang „ |
| 汝 „ | Ru „ |

## 江蘇

### KIANGSU.

Containing 8 Fu, 3 T‘ing, 3 Chĭh-li Cheo, 3 Cheo and 62 Hsien cities. Total 79.

| | |
|---|---|
| 江寧府 | Chiangning Fu (or Nanching 南京.) |
| 鎮江府 | Chenchiang Fu. |
| 常州 „ | Ch‘angcheo „ |
| 松江 „ | Songchiang „ |
| 揚州 „ | Iangcheo „ |
| 淮安 „ | Huaian „ |
| 蘇州 „ | Sucheo „ |
| 徐州 „ | Hsücheo „ |
| 太倉州 | T‘aits‘ang Cheo. |
| 通 „ | T‘ong „ |
| 海 „ | Hai „ |
| 海門廳 | Haimen T‘ing. |

## 安徽

### ANHUEI.

Containing 8 Fu, 5 Chĭh-li Cheo, 4 Cheo and 51 Hsien cities. Total 68.

| | |
|---|---|
| 安慶府 | Anch‘ing Fu. |
| 徽州府 | Hueicheo Fu. |
| 寧國 „ | Ningkueh „ |
| 鳳陽 „ | Fengiang „ |
| 池州 „ | Ch‘icheo „ |
| 太平 „ | T‘aip‘ing „ |
| 頴州 „ | Ingcheo „ |
| 廬州 „ | Lücheo „ |
| 廣德州 | Kuangteh Cheo. |
| 六安 „ | Luhan „ |
| 滁 „ | Ch‘u „ |
| 和 „ | Ho „ |
| 泗 „ | Sï „ |

## 江西

### KIANGSI.

Containing 13 Fu, 1 Chĭh-li Cheo, 2 T‘ing, 1 Cheo and 75 Hsien cities. Total 92.

| | |
|---|---|
| 南昌府 | Nanch‘ang Fu. |
| 建昌府 | Chiench‘ang Fu. |
| 南康 „ | Nank‘ang „ |
| 廣信 „ | Kuanghsin „ |
| 九江 „ | Chiuchiang „ |
| 臨江 „ | Linchiang „ |
| 瑞州 „ | Shuicheo „ |
| 贛州 „ | Kancheo „ |
| 饒州 „ | Raocheo „ |
| 袁州 „ | Üencheo „ |
| 撫州 „ | Fucheo „ |
| 南安 „ | Nanan „ |
| 吉安 „ | Chihan „ |
| 甯都州 | Ningtu Cheo. |

## 浙 江

### CHEHKIANG.

Containing 11 Fu, 1 Chĭh-li T‘ing, 2 T‘ing, 1 Cheo and 75 Hsien cities. Total 90.

| | |
|---|---|
| 杭州府 | *Hangcheo Fu.* |
| 紹興府 | *Shaohsing Fu.* |
| 嘉興 ,, | *Chiahsing* ,, |
| 台州 ,, | *T‘aicheo* ,, |
| 處州 ,, | *Ch‘ucheo* ,, |
| 衢州 ,, | *Ch‘ücheo* ,, |
| 温州 ,, | *Uencheo* ,, |
| 湖州 ,, | *Hucheo* ,, |
| 甯波 ,, | *Ningpo* ,, |
| 金華 ,, | *Chinhua* ,, |
| 嚴州 ,, | *Iencheo* ,, |
| 定海廳 | *Tinghai T‘ing.* |

## 福 建

### FUHKIEN.

Containing 9 Fu, 2 Chĭh-li Cheo, 4 T‘ing and 58 Hsien cities. Total 73.

| | |
|---|---|
| 福州府 | *Fuhcheo Fu.* |
| 泉州府 | *Ch‘üencheo Fu.* |
| 漳州 ,, | *Changcheo* ,, |
| 興化 ,, | *Hsinghua* ,, |
| 建甯 ,, | *Chienning* ,, |
| 延平 ,, | *Ienp‘ing* ,, |
| 汀州 ,, | *Tingcheo* ,, |
| 福甯 ,, | *Fuhning* ,, |
| 邵武 ,, | *Shaou* ,, |
| 永春州 | *Iongch‘uen Cheo.* |
| 龍巖 ,, | *Longien* ,, |

## 臺 灣

### FORMOSA. (T‘AIUAN).*

Containing 3 Fu, 3 T‘ing, 1 Cheo, 11 Hsien. Total 18.

| | |
|---|---|
| 臺灣府 | *T‘aiuan Fu.* |
| 臺北府 | *T‘aipeh Fu.* |
| 臺南 ,, | *T‘ainan* ,, |
| 東州 | *Tong Cheo.* |

## 湖 北

### HUPEH.

Containing 10 Fu, 1 Chĭh-li Cheo, 7 Cheo and 60 Hsien cities. Total 78.

| | |
|---|---|
| 武昌府 | *Uch‘ang Fu.* |
| 黃州府 | *Huangcheo Fu.* |
| 襄陽 ,, | *Hsiangiang* ,, |
| 漢陽 ,, | *Haniang* ,, |
| 鄖陽 ,, | *Üeniang* ,, |
| 荊州 ,, | *Chincheo* ,, |
| 宜昌 ,, | *Ich‘ang* ,, |
| 施南 ,, | *Shïnan* ,, |
| 安陸 ,, | *Anluh* ,, |
| 德安 ,, | *Tehan* ,, |
| 荊門州 | *Chinmen Cheo.* |

## 湖 南

### HUNAN.

Containing 9 Fu, 3 Chĭh-li T‘ing, 4 Chĭh-li Cheo, 3 Cheo and 64 Hsien cities. Total 83.

| | |
|---|---|
| 長沙府 | *Ch‘angsha Fu.* |
| 常德府 | *Ch‘angteh Fu.* |
| 岳州 ,, | *Iohcheo* ,, |
| 永順 ,, | *Iongshuen* ,, |
| 衡州 ,, | *Hengcheo* ,, |
| 寶慶 ,, | *Paoch‘ing* ,, |
| 辰州 ,, | *Shencheo* ,, |
| 永州 ,, | *Iongcheo* ,, |
| 沅州 ,, | *Üencheo* ,, |
| 桂陽州 | *Kueiiang Cheo.* |
| 澧 ,, | *Li* ,, |
| 靖 ,, | *Ching* ,, |
| 郴 ,, | *Ch‘en* ,, |
| 鳳凰廳 | *Fenghuang T‘ing.* |
| 乾州 ,, | *Ch‘iencheo* ,, |
| 永綏 ,, | *Iongsui* ,, |

---

* Now ceded to the Japanese.

# 陝西

## SHANSI (SHENSI.)

Containing 7 Fu, 5 Chĭh-li Cheo, 8 T'ing, 5 Cheo and 73 Hsien cities. Total 98.

### 西安府 *Hsian Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 同州府 | *T'ongcheo Fu.* |
| 鳳翔 ,, | *Fenghsiang ,,* |
| 漢中 ,, | *Hanchong ,,* |
| 興安 ,, | *Hsingan ,,* |
| 延安 ,, | *Ienan ,,* |
| 楡林 ,, | *Ülin ,,* |
| 綏德州 | *Suiteh Cheo.* |
| 商 ,, | *Shang ,,* |
| 乾 ,, | *Ch'ien ,,* |
| 邠 ,, | *Pin ,,* |
| 鄜 ,, | *Li ,,* |

---

# 甘肅

## KANSUH.

Containing 8 Fu, 5 Chĭh-li Cheo, 9 T'ing, 7 Cheo and 51 Hsien cities. Total 80.

### 蘭州府 *Lancheo Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 鞏昌府 | *Kongch'ang Fu.* |
| 平涼 ,, | *P'ingliang ,,* |
| 慶陽 ,, | *Ch'ingiang ,,* |
| 涼州 ,, | *Liangcheo ,,* |
| 寗夏 ,, | *Ninghsia ,,* |
| 甘州 ,, | *Kancheo ,,* |
| 西寗 ,, | *Hsining ,,* |
| 安西州 | *Anhsi Cheo.* |
| 涇 ,, | *Ching ,,* |
| 階 ,, | *Kiai ,,* |
| 秦 ,, | *Ch'in ,,* |
| 肅 ,, | *Suh ,,* |
| 鎮西廳 | *Chenhsi T'ing.* |

Under Kansuh is included Hsinchiang 新疆 or the New Dominion, also known as outer Kansuh or Turkestan. It is under an Administrator, who is also Governor of Kansuh and who resides at Tihhua 迪化. It contains three Prefectures; viz., I-li 伊犂府; Sui-ching 綏靖府 and Tihhua 迪化府. It has also the following:—4 Chĭh-li Cheo, 4 Chĭh-li T'ing, 4 Cheo, 1 T'ing and 9 Hsien cities. Total 25.

---

# 四川

## SÏCH'UAN.

Containing 12 Fu, 8 Chĭh-li Cheo, 3 Chĭh-li T'ing, 6 T'ing, 11 Cheo and 112 Hsien cities. Total 152.

### 成都府 *Ch'engtu Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 潼川府 | *T'ongch'uan Fu.* |
| 重慶 ,, | *Ch'ongch'ing ,,* |
| 順慶 ,, | *Shuench'ing ,,* |
| 夔州 ,, | *K'ueicheo ,,* |
| 甯遠 ,, | *Ningüen ,,* |
| 保寗 ,, | *Paoning ,,* |
| 綏定 ,, | *Suiting ,,* |
| 龍安 ,, | *Longan ,,* |
| 嘉定 ,, | *Chiating ,,* |
| 敘州 ,, | *Hsücheo ,,* |
| 雅州 ,, | *Iacheo ,,* |
| 酉陽州 | *Iuiang Cheo.* |
| 邛 ,, | *Ch'iong ,,* |
| 忠 ,, | *Chong ,,* |
| 綿 ,, | *Mien ,,* |
| 眉 ,, | *Mei ,,* |
| 瀘 ,, | *Lü ,,* |
| 資 ,, | *Tsï ,,* |
| 茂 ,, | *Meo ,,* |
| 敘永廳 | *Hsüiong T'ing.* |
| 石柱 ,, | *Shïhchu ,,* |
| 松潘 ,, | *Songp'an ,,* |

## 廣 東

### KUANGTONG.

Containing 9 Fu, 2 Chĭh-li T‘ing, 4 Chĭh-li Cheo, 2 T‘ing, 7 Cheo and 78 Hsien cities. Total 102

### 廣州府 *Kuangcheo Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 瓊州府 | *Ch‘iongcheo Fu.* |
| 肇慶 ,, | *Chaoch‘ing ,,* |
| 潮州 ,, | *Ch‘aocheo ,,* |
| 韶州 ,, | *Shaocheo ,,* |
| 惠州 ,, | *Hueicheo ,,* |
| 廉州 ,, | *Liencheo ,,* |
| 高州 ,, | *Kaocheo ,,* |
| 雷州 ,, | *Luicheo ,,* |
| 羅定州 | *Loting Cheo.* |
| 南雄 ,, | *Nanhsiong ,,* |
| 嘉應 ,, | *Chiaing ,,* |
| 連 ,, | *Lien ,,* |
| 佛岡廳 | *Fuhkang T‘ing.* |
| 理猺 ,, | *Liiao ,,* |

## 廣 西

### KUANGHSI.

Containing 11 Fu, 1 Chĭh-li Cheo, 5 T‘ing, 16 Cheo and 47 Hsien cities. Total 80.

### 桂林府 *Kueilin Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 平樂府 | *P‘ingloh Fu.* |
| 太平 ,, | *T‘aip‘ing ,,* |
| 慶遠 ,, | *Ch‘ingüen ,,* |
| 南甯 ,, | *Nanning ,,* |
| 潯州 ,, | *Hsüincheo ,,* |
| 柳州 ,, | *Liucheo ,,* |
| 梧州 ,, | *Ucheo ,,* |
| 思恩 ,, | *Sïen ,,* |
| 鎮安 ,, | *Chenan ,,* |
| 泗城 ,, | *Sïch‘eng ,,* |
| 鬱林州 | *Iuhlin Cheo.* |

## 貴 州

### KUEICHEO.

Containing 12 Fu, 3 Chĭh-li T‘ing, 1 Chĭh-li Cheo, 11 T‘ing, 13 Cheo and 33 Hsien cities. Total 73.

### 貴陽府 *Kueiiang Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 石阡府 | *Shïhch‘ien Fu.* |
| 安順 ,, | *Anshuen ,,* |
| 銅仁 ,, | *T‘ongren ,,* |
| 鎮遠 ,, | *Chenüen ,,* |
| 黎平 ,, | *Lip‘ing ,,* |
| 大定 ,, | *Tating ,,* |
| 思州 ,, | *Sïcheo ,,* |
| 興義 ,, | *Hsingi ,,* |
| 思南 ,, | *Sïnan ,,* |
| 都匀 ,, | *Tuüin ,,* |
| 遵義 ,, | *Tsueni ,,* |
| 平越州 | *P‘ingüeh Cheo.* |
| 八寨廳 | *Pahchai T‘ing.* |
| 松桃 ,, | *Songt‘ao ,,* |
| 仁懷 ,, | *Renhuai ,,* |

## 雲 南

### ÜINNAN.

Containing 14 Fu, 4 Chĭh-li T‘ing, 3 Chĭh-li Cheo, 9 T‘ing, 27 Cheo and 39 Hsien cities. Total 96.

### 雲南府 *Üinnan Fu.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 澂江府 | *Ch‘enchiang Fu.* |
| 東川 ,, | *Tongch‘uan ,,* |
| 順甯 ,, | *Shuenning ,,* |
| 楚雄 ,, | *Ts‘uhsiong ,,* |
| 永昌 ,, | *Iongch‘ang ,,* |
| 廣南 ,, | *Kuangnan ,,* |
| 曲靖 ,, | *K‘ühching ,,* |
| 昭通 ,, | *Chaot‘ong ,,* |
| 開化 ,, | *K‘aihua ,,* |
| 麗江 ,, | *Lichiang ,,* |
| 臨安 ,, | *Linan ,,* |
| 普洱 ,, | *P‘urï ,,* |
| 大理 ,, | *Tali ,,* |
| 廣西州 | *Kuanghsi Cheo.* |
| 元江 ,, | *Üenchiang ,,* |
| 武定 ,, | *Uting ,,* |
| 蒙化廳 | *Menghua T‘ing* |
| 永北 ,, | *Iongpeh ,* |
| 鎮沅 ,, | *Chenüen ,,* |
| 景東 ,, | *Chingtong ,,* |

## The Manchurian Provinces. 省三東

### 盛京 (奉天)

**SHENGCHING** (Shingking.)

Also called Liao-tong 遼東 or Kuan-tong 關東. Containing 3 Fu, 5 T'ing, 5 Cheo, 14 Hsien. Total 27.

奉天府 *Fengt'ien Fu.* (Moukden.)
昌圖府 *Ch'angt'u Fu.*
錦州 „ *Chingcheo* „

### 吉林

**CHIHLIN** (Kirin.)

Containing 1 Fu, 5 T'ing, 1 Cheo, and 1 Hsien city. Total 8.

吉林 *Chihlin* (*Kirin-ula*).

### 黑龍江

**HEHLONGCHIANG.**

Also called Tsi-tsi-ha-rï (齊齊哈爾).

齊齊哈爾 *Tsi-tsi-ha-rï.*

Still under military government.

According to Giles, the cities of China number 1,884. They are divided as follows:—Fu 185, T'ing 134, Cheo 248, Hsien 1,317. To this must be added the Manchurian Provinces, which according to the same authority contain 4 Fu, 10 T'ing, 6 Cheo and 15 Hsien. Total 35. This gives a total of 1,919 in all.

## Chief Rivers of China. 河江國中

China has four principal rivers, viz., the Yellow River in the North, the Yangtze in the Centre, the West River in the South and the Han River running from the N. W. to the centre. There are also three smaller rivers, viz., the Pei Ho in the North, the Huai Ho north of the Yangtze, and the river Min, which flows through the province of Fuhkien.

YELLOW RIVER.—Huang Ho 黃河. Rising in Kokonor, about Lat. 35° N. and Long. 93° E., it enters Kansuh and passes Lanchow, 800 miles from its source. It is then flanked by the great wall for 430 miles, and passes out into Mongolia. It re-enters China between Shansi and Shensi, forming their boundary, then strikes eastward through Honan and Shantung, and passing the walls of K'aifeng and Tsinan in its course, falls into the Yellow Sea about Lat. 37° N. and Long. 118° E. Formerly, after leaving K'aifeng the river flowed eastward into Kiangsu, falling into the Yellow Sea about 100 miles north of Chinkiang. Its direct length

上有天堂, 下有蘇杭 *Heaven above, Hangchow and Suchow below.*

is 1,290 miles, but as the course winds, it is nearly 2,500. The area of its basin is 475,000 square miles. It is comparatively shallow, and of little use for purposes of navigation.

YANGTZE RIVER.—Iang-tsï Chiang 揚子江, also called "Ta Chiang" 大江 and "Ch'ang Chiang" 長江. Rises in Thibet. After flowing for more than 1,000 miles in thinly populated country it passes into China Proper near Batang in Szechwan. Here it is known as the Chin-sha 金沙, or Golden Sand River. Then flowing southward and eastward, it for some distance forms the boundary between Szechwan and Yunnan.

Passing northward and eastward through Szechwan, and under the walls of Ch'ungking, where it receives a large tributary, the Kialing Chiang, from the North, it enters Hupeh, and rushes through the gorges to Ich'ang. At Yohchow, it receives the waters of the Tongt'ing Lake, and passes Wuch'ang, with Hanyang and Hankow opposite to it, at the junction of the Han river. Skirting the northern extremity of Kiangsi, at Kiukiang near the mouth of the P'oyang Lake, it strikes N. E. through Anhwei, and passing Ank'ing and Wuhu, enters Kiangsu near Nanking.

After intersecting the Grand Canal at Chinkiang, it falls into the Pacific by two magnificent mouths about Lat. 32° N., Shanghai being on the Hwangpu river 黃浦江, which joins the southern mouth at Woosung. Its length, as the bird flies, is 1,850 miles; as the course winds, about 3,000. It drains an area of 548,000 square miles.

THE WEST RIVER 西江, rises in Yunnan, and flowing in a south-westerly direction separates Kweichow from Kwangsi for a distance of 160 miles. It then flows S. E. through the centre of Kwangsi and Kwangtung, emptying itself through the Delta into the South China Sea by a number of mouths in latitude 23° N., Longitude 113° E. In its course it receives several tributaries, the principal of which are the Red River 紅水江, the Kwei River 桂江, which joins it at the Treaty Port of Wuchow 梧州, and the North River 北江, which enters it at Samshui 三水. Its total length is about 1,250 miles.

THE PEI RIVER 北河 rises in Mongolia among the In Mountains 陰山, and after running parallel to the Great Wall, enters the Plain of Chihli to the north of Peking 北京, and flowing in a south-easterly direction passes the cities of T'ongchow 通州 and Tientsin 天津 and empties itself into the Gulf of Pehchili at Taku 大沽 twenty-eight miles from Tientsin. It is navigable from Tongchow to the sea only.

THE HAN RIVER 漢河 (or 江) rises in Shensi close to the borders of Szechwan. Flowing W. by S. W. it passes the cities of Hanchong 漢中 (900 miles from Hankow) and Hsingan 興安 in Shensi, entering Hupeh to the west of Yuenyang 隕陽. From this point it pursues a south-westerly course and empties itself into the Yangtze at Hankow 漢口, the mouth of the Han. On its way through Hupeh it passes Laohokow 老河口, a busy mart 350 miles from Hankow; Siangyangfu 襄陽府, and the important business centre of Fancheng 樊城, 300 miles from its mouth; the city of Anlu 安陸, and Shayang 沙羊, an important market place on the right bank of the river. From Hankow to Laohokow the Han is shallow and full of sand banks; above that full of rapids, which make navigation difficult and dangerous.

THE HWAI RIVER 淮河 rises in the south of Honan and flows east past Sinyangchow 信陽州; entering Anhwei to the South-west of Yingchowfu 潁州府, it flows in a north-easterly direction, emptying itself into the Hungtze Lake 洪澤湖. It is navigable from Sinyangchow.

THE MIN, OR SNAKE RIVER 閩江, is formed by three principal tributaries which unite near to Yenpingfu 延平府. From this point it flows S. E. past Shuikow 水口 and Foochow 福州 (35 miles from the mouth of the river), emptying itself into the China Sea by two mouths. It is about 350 miles in length.

## THE GRAND CANAL.

This canal was made in separate sections, between the 7th and 14th centuries, both Chinese and Mongols being engaged in its construction. It commences in the province of Chihli, near the treaty port of Tʻientsin 天津府; and entering the province of Shantung, near Tehcheo 德州, flows in a south-westerly direction until it reaches Linchʻing Hsien 臨清縣. From this point it flows south-east for a considerable distance. To the south of the Yellow River, near Tongpʻing Che 東平州, it passes through a low-lying country, where its flow is regulated by locks, and its banks in many places are faced with stone. These locks give it the local name of "Chah Ho," from the Chinese character *chah* 閘, "a water gate." In other parts of its course its usual name is the "Yuin Ho" 運河 or Transit River. Flowing on, it enters the province of Kiangsu, close to Pʻei Cheo 邳州; and passing successively by Tsʻingkiang Pʻu 清江浦, Huaian Fu 淮安府, Paoing Hsien 寶應縣, the Kaoyu Lake 高郵湖 and Yangchow 揚州府, at length empties itself into the river Yangtze at Kuacheo 瓜州, having traversed about ninety miles from the Yellow River to this point.

Its course, south of the Yangtze, begins at Chinkiang 鎮 江 府, one of the Treaty Ports, where it has two separate entrances. Its flows on through a fertile, populous country past Tanyang Hsien 丹 陽 縣 in an easterly direction to Ch'angchow 常 州, then on to Wusih 無 錫 and Suchow Fu 蘇 州 府, the commercial capital of the province. Thence it proceeds almost due south into the province of Chehkiang, which it enters close to Kiahsing Fu 嘉 興 府; and finally completes its course at the provincial capital Hangchow 杭 州 府. The total length is about 650 miles.

---

## The Lakes of China. 湖 名 國 中

The principal lakes of China are found in the central provinces. In addition there are a number of small ones, the chief of these being in the provinces of Hupeh and Kiangsu. There are a few in Yunnan, the principal of which are the T'ien Lake 滇 湖 to the south of Yunnanfu, and the Erh Hai 洱 海 to the east of Talifu. The former lies at an elevation of 6,300 feet, the latter about 6,500 feet above sea level.

THE GREAT LAKE 太 湖, lies to the west of Soochow 蘇 州 in Kiangsu. It is about the same size as the Poyang Lake.

THE HONGTSEH LAKE 洪 澤 湖 lies partly in Kiangsu and partly in Anhwei. The Hwai River runs into it on the W. and channels on the N. E. connect it with the Grand Canal. To the south of it lies the Kaoyu Lake 高 郵 湖.

THE CH'AO LAKE 巢 湖 lies to the S. of Lüchowfu 廬 州 府 in Anhwei to the N. of the Yangtze. It is fed by a number of small rivers, and empties itself into the Yangtze not far from Wuhu. It is about 125 miles in circumference.

TONGT'ING LAKE 洞 庭 湖. This lake is the largest in China, being about 66 miles long and 30 broad. It lies in the north-east of the province of Hunan 湖 南 on the south-western border of Hupeh 湖 北. It receives the waters of the Yuen Kiang 沅 江 on the south-west, and of the Siang Kiang 湘 江 on the south, and pours them into the river Yangtze at Yohchow Fu 岳 州 府.

P'OYANG LAKE 鄱 陽 湖. This beautiful lake is situated in the north of the province of Kiangsi. It is nearly 90 miles long and 20 broad. Several rivers flow into it from the south and south-west; the largest being the Kan River 灨 江; and its waters are discharged into the Yangtze a few miles below the city of Kiukiang 九 江 府, one of the Treaty Ports. Its trades and fisheries are more important than those of the Tongt'ing lake, which is comparatively shallow.

---

百 里 不 同 風 *Customs vary in every place.*

## Names of Some of the Principal Places in China and the East.

## 埠名亞東

(The orthography used is that of the Chinese Imperial Postal Service.)

| | |
|---|---|
| Amoy | 廈門 |
| Antung | 安東縣 |
| Amur River | 黑龍江 |
| Arabia | 阿喇伯 |
| Batang | 巴塘 |
| Bombay | 孟買 |
| Borneo | 婆羅州 or 般島 |
| Bhamo | 巴摩 or 新街 |
| Burmah | 緬甸 |
| Canton | 廣州省城 (廣州府) |
| Changsha | 長沙府 |
| Chefoo | 烟台 |
| Chinkiang | 鎮江府 |
| Chinwangtao | 秦皇島 |
| Chungking | 重慶府 |
| Corea or Chosen | 朝鮮國 |
| Ceylon | 錫蘭 |
| Chusan | 舟山 |
| Changchun | 長春 |
| Chemulpo | 仁川 |
| Cochin China | 下安南 |
| Dalny or Dairen | 大立內 or 青泥窪 |
| Foochow | 福州府 |
| Fusan | 釜山 |
| Fujiyama | 富士山 |
| Ganges | 恒河 |
| Great Wall | 萬里長城 |
| Gobi | 砂漠 |
| Hangchow | 杭州 |
| Hangchow Settlement | 杭州通商場 |
| Hankow | 漢口 |
| Hoihow | 海口 (瓊州) |
| Hanoi | 河內 |
| Haiphong | 海防 |
| Hakodate | 函館 |
| Hiroshima | 廣島 |
| Hainan | 海南 |
| Hwangpu River | 黃浦江 |
| Hwangpao | 黃埔 |
| Harbin | 哈爾賓 |
| Hongkong | 香港 |
| Ili | 伊犂 |
| Inner Mongolia | 內蒙古 |
| Indus | 印度河 |
| Indo China | 安南 |
| Ichang | 宜昌府 |
| Kiaochow | 膠州 |
| Kiukiang | 九江府 |
| Kwangchengtze (Changchun) | 寬城子 (長春府) |
| Kelung | 基隆 |
| Kalgan | 張家口 |
| Kokonor | 青海 |
| Kowloon | 九龍 |
| Kiachta | 恰克圖 |
| Kioto | 西京 |
| Kobe | 神戶 |
| Lassa | 拉薩 |
| Mengtsz | 蒙自縣 |
| Moukden or Shengching | 奉天府 or 盛京 |
| Meikong or Cambodia River | 瀾滄江 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Manchuria | 東三省 |
| Mongolia | 蒙古 |
| Nagasaki | 長崎 |
| Nanking | 南京 |
| Niuchwang | 牛莊 |
| Ningpo | 甯波府 |
| Osaka | 大坂 |
| Outer Mongolia | 外蒙古 |
| Pehtaiho | 北戴河 |
| Peking | 北京(順天府) |
| Pakhoi | 北海 |
| Port Arthur | 旅順口 |
| Pei Ho | 北河 |
| Philippine Islands | 小呂宋羣島 |
| Pearl River | 朱江 |
| Penang | 檳榔嶼 |
| Port Lazaref | 元山 |
| Pescadores | 澎湖羣島 |
| Rangoon | 蘭貢 |
| Santuao | 三都澳 |
| Shanghai | 上海 |
| Shasi | 沙市 |
| Shihkiachwang | 石家莊 |
| Suchow | 蘇州府 |
| Swatow | 汕頭 |
| Szemao | 思茅廳 |
| Siam | 暹羅 |
| Shanhaikwan | 山海關 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Shameen | 沙面 |
| Salween River | 潞江 |
| Songari River | 松花江 |
| Singapore | 新嘉坡 |
| Saigon | 西貢 |
| Taku | 大沽 |
| Tatung | 大通 |
| Tengyueh | 騰越廳 |
| Tientsin | 天津府 |
| Tsinan | 濟南府 |
| Tongking | 東京 or 北圻 |
| Turkey | 土耳其國 |
| Thibet | 西藏 |
| Tsingtao | 青島 |
| Tatsienlu | 打箭爐 |
| Tokyo | 東京 |
| Talienwan | 大連灣 |
| Vladivostock | 海參崴 |
| Wanhsien | 萬縣 |
| Weihaiwei | 威海衛 |
| Wenchow | 温州府 |
| Wuhu | 蕪湖縣 |
| Wusüeh | 武穴 |
| Wusung | 吳淞口 |
| Yochow | 岳州府 |
| Yellow River | 黃河 |
| Yangtze River | 揚子江 |
| Yalu River | 鴨綠江 |

# ANALYSIS OF LESSONS.

Adverbs, position of, 15.
Adjectives, position and use, 19.
Adverbs and Prepositions, 21.
Adjectives, Comparison of, 49.
All, expressed by *tu* 都 and *long-tsong* 攏 總, 64.
Assent, how emphasized, 232.
Adverbs, compound, 114.
Abstract Nouns of Quality, 115.
Alternatives expressed by *hueh* 或, 246.
Adversative Conjunction *tao* 倒, 147.
Approximation, 155.
Additional words for exercise in composition, 274.

Beginning and end of an action, how indicated, 99.
Beginning or Origin, 245.

*Ch'u* 除 and its Uses, 176.
*Chin* 盡 various uses of, 201.
*Chiang* 將 and its uses, 202.
*Chien* 間 as applied to Time, 35.
*Chiu* 就 joined to other words to indicate Promptitude, 209.
*Chih* 給 as Sign of Indirect Object, 42.
Copper Currency, 58.
*Chie* 借 and its Uses, 59.
*Chiu shï* 就 是 Defining power of, 59.
*Ch'i-lai* 起 來 as an Auxiliary Verb, 65.
Comparison, degree of, 81.
Comparison denoted by *chœ-mo* 這 麼 and *na-mo* 那 麼, 83
Comparative, Double, how formed, 83.
*Choh* 着 its use and force, 84.
Capacity to contain, how expressed, 93.
*Ch'u* 處 as indicating Place and Circumstances, 108.
*Chiang* 匠 in Combination, 116.
Concurrence, how expressed, 136.
*Chi-ran* 既 然 and *sui-ran* 雖 然, 147.
Compulsion expressed by *pih* 必, 148.
Completion, as expressed by *uan* 完 *ch'eng* 成 and *ting* 定, 153.

Certainty and Uncertainty, 154.
*Ch'i* 其 in combination, 161.
*Ch'i* 豈, its use and force, 161
*Ch'ü* 去 as a principal and an auxiliary Verb, 21.
Compound Adverbs, 114.

Direction, how indicated, 90.
Distance, terms relating to, 91.

'Each,' 'every,' as applied to time, 28.
'Each,' 'every,' how expressed, 64.
Electricity, expressions relating thereto, 100.
Either . . . or ; Neither . . . nor, 146.

*Fei* 非 and its uses, 175.
*Fan* 凡 its Position and Use, 224.
*Fah* 發 its Force and Usage, 107.
*Fah* 法 as a Suffix indicating Manner, 115.
*Fei* 費, how used, 139.
Four Seasons, 35.
Final Particles, 233.

*Hsie* 些 *as* Sign of Plural, 2.
*Hao-liac* 好 了, indicating completion, 22.
*Ho* 何 various uses of, 223.
*Huan* 還 *ie* 也 and 再 *tsai* marking something additional, 43.
*Huei-lai* 回 來 and *huei-ch'ü* 回 去 as Auxiliary Verbs, 51.

Infinitive Mood formed by Verb and Noun,13.
*Ih* 一 indicating Totality and Uniformity, 193.
*Iang* 樣 as indicating Manner, 66.
*I-ching* 已 經, its Use and Force, 129.
*I* 以 in Combination, 155.
Inference, phrases used to express, 253.
*Iu* 有 in Interrogative statements, 14.
Imperative, modified by use of *k'o-i* 可 以, 28.
*Iong* 用 uses of, 51.

*K'o* 可 as an Interrogative and a Suffix, 193.
*Kan* 趕 as indicating Time, 92.
*Ken* 跟 Idiomatic use of, 139.
*Keh* 隔 how used, 161.

*Liao* 了 as a Principal Verb, 184.
*Liao* 了 as sign of Past Tense, 15.
*Luen* 論 as indicating Quantity or Measure, 100.
*Lao* 老 and *chiu* 舊, distinction between, 108.
*Lai* 來 as a principal and an auxiliary verb, 21.

*Mo* 麽 as Interrogative, 2.
*Men* 們 as Sign of Plural, 3.
Months, names of, 36.
Monetary System, 56.
*Mo* 麽 and *ni* 呢 uses of, 66.
Measurement and weight, 99.
Money and Exchange, 235.

Name and age, 44.
Negative forms of Sentences, 106.
Numerals used as Adverbs, 107.
*Nei* 內 and *uai* 外 130.
*Ning-k'o* 寧可 and its Correlatives, [illegible].
Numeral Adjectives, 20.
Numerary Adjuncts, 6.
Numeration, 8; 12.
**NOTES** :—
  *Chæ-chang chi* 這張紙, 5.
  *Chong-loh* 中了 how used, [illegible]
  *Ch'ing* 請, 28.
  *Chiao* 呌, 28.
  *Chi* 隻, 33.
  *Chi* 季, 37.
  *Chien* 間, 38.
  *Chiu-shi* 就是 at end of sentence, [illegible].
  *Chan* 站 takes no N. A., 67
  *Ch'in* 親 omitted, 72.
  *Ch'i* 起 taking the place of *kuah* 跨, [illegible]
  *Chiang-shu t'ang* 講書堂, 109
  *Chang* 長, 123.
  *Ch'eng* 成, 156.
  *Chiao* 教, 162.
  *Chi* 之, 188.
  *Chang* 張, 188.
  *Ch'ao-nao* 吵鬧, 213.
  *Chien* 剪, 228.
  *Chi* 饑 written 飢, 217.
  *Chien-tao* 剪刀, 228.
  *Chiao* 焦, 256.
  *Fuh* 復, 156.
  *Fen* 墳, 156.

*Hsia* 下 replacing *chü* 句, 38.
*Huen-ling* 魂 靈, 124.
*Huang-shang* 皇 上, 124.
*Hsia* 下 as a verb, 124.
*Huan-hsi* 歡 喜 reversed, 148.
*Ho* 貨, 156.

*Ie* 也 joined to 可 以 *k'o-i*, 45.
*In üen* 銀 圓 used in the West, 50.
*Iu-p'iao* 郵 票, 101.

*Kong-fu* 工 夫, 52.
*Ko* 果, 188.
*Kong-tao* 公 道, 213

*Lai* 來 read *la* and used for 幾, 16.
*Lien* 臉; *puh iao lien* 不 要 臉, 33.
*Li-pai t'ang* 禮 拜 堂, 109.
*Lien* . . . . *tai* 連 . . . . 帶, 148.
*Li* 李, 188.

*Muh* 沒 used alone, 15.

*Ni* 你 excessive use of, [illegible]

*Puh shi* 不 是, 3.
*Pien* 邊 replacing *t'eo* 頭, [illegible].
*P'u-tsi* 舖 子, 33.
*Puh-tong* 不 動, 37.
*Puh hao* 不 好 before a verb, 59.
*P'ien-i* 便 宜, 213.
*Pang* 帮 with *mang*, 忙 *pu* 補 *tsu* 助, 213.
*Peh-hsing* 百 姓, 213.

*Ren-lih-ch'æ* 人 力 車, 196.

*Sha* or *sha-tsi*, 3.
*Sha-shï-heo*, 38.
*Shen-tsi* 身 子 compared with *shen-t'i* 身 體, 67.
*Seng* 生, 123.
*So* 所, 140.
*Sheng-hsia* 賸 下, 188.
*Shïh* and *shïh-fen* 十, 十 分, 240.

'This' or 'that' following a Possessive Pronoun, [illegible]
*Tsai* 在 omitted from 在 那 裏, 16.
*Teh-loh* 得 了 used of, 16.
*Tsao-shang* 早 上, 28.
*T'iao* 挑, 28.
*Tsï* 子 omitted after 鞋, 33.
*Tien* 店, 33.
*Tih* 的 omitted with double possessive, 37.
*Tsï* 子 added to 日 *rïh*, 38.
*To* 多 replacing 過 *ko*, 45.
*Tan* 但 used alone, 52.
*Tsen-mo* 怎 麼 used before verbs, 67.
*Tso chen hsien* 做 針 綫, 72.

*Tsi* 字 omitted, 124.
*Tsi* 子 changed to *ri* 兒, 124.
*Tsi* 子 added to 瞎, 聾, 癱, 179.
*Tong-iang* 東 洋, 196.
*Tong-iang ch'a* 東 洋 車, 196.
*Tiu* 丟, 217.

*Uh* 屋 and *fang* 房, 85.
*Uei-tsi* 葦 子, 256.

Order of time, 26.
Origin, phrases of, 99.

Personal Pronouns, 1.
*Puh* 不 as Interrogative, 2.
Prepositional Verbs, 9.
Potential Mood indicated by *teh* 得, 22.
Potential Mood formed by *huei* 會, 51.
Paper Currency, 58.
*Pien* 邊 idiomatic use of, 66.
Place; how to ask the way to, 91.
Particles, final, 283
*Pen* 本 its Use and Force, 116.
Passive Voice, how expressed, 128.
*Pa* 把 position and use, 20.
Phrases of Origin, 99.
*Pa* 罷 How and where used, 129.
Probability, 154.

Review, Lessons, I.-V. 33: VI.-X. 75: XI.-XV. 121: XVI.-XX. 170: XXI.-XXV. 221: XXVI.-XXX. 272.
*Ren* 人 as a Suffix, 107.
Result of Actions, how indicated, 137.
Relation and lack of Relation, 137.
Reflexive Pronoun *tsï-chi* 自 己, 145.
Repetition of Verbs, 162.
*Ri* 兒 added to nouns, 15.
READING LESSONS:—

Sundry Sentences, 4.
Odds and Ends, 10.
Desultory Talk, 17.
Speech in the Making, 23.
A visit from a Friend, 29.
Small Talk, 39.
A Confidence Trick, 46.

A Visit to the city, 53.
More Money than Sense, 60.
Seeing the Sights, 68.
Current Chat, 72.
Ancient and Modern, 86.
Some Travelling Experiences, 94.
Newspaper and Telegraphs, 102.
The Land we live in, 110.
Pure Romance, 117.
An Awakening and a Journey, 124
London, 132.
The Unwary Youth I, 141.
,, ,, ,, II, 149.
,, ,, ,, III, 157.
A City Ramble I, 163.
,, ,, ,, II, 167.
,, ,, ,, III, 180.
,, ,, IV, 189.
The Astute Miss Feng I, 197.
,, ,, ,, ,, II, 206.
A Bookselling Trip, 214.
The Horrors of Famine, 218.
The Development of Japan, 229.
The Younger Brother I, 241.
,, ,, ,, II, 249.
,, ,, ,, III, 257.
,, ,, ,, IV, 265.
,, ,, ,, V, 269.

*Shen-mo* 甚 麽 as an Interrogative, 2.
*Shï* 是 where omitted, 15.
*Shang* 上 as an auxiliary, 22.
Seasons, the four, 35.
Silver Currency, 57.
Superlative Degree, forms used for, 83.
*Shang* 上 *hsia* 下 and *ko* 過 used as Auxiliaries, 115.
*Shï* 使 How used, 130.
*So* 所 as a Relative Pronoun, 138.
Supposition, how expressed, 146.
Sequence, as expressed by *shen-chï* 甚 至 and *chï-ü* 至 於, 262
Sixty Years Cycle 花 甲 子, 226.
*Sui-ran* 雖 然, 147.
Successive Action, 176.

*Tih* 的 as a Possessive and Descriptive Particle, 2.
*T'eo* 頭 as a Suffix, and as the Equivalent of *ti* 第, 183.
*Tsï* 子, 兒 added to Nouns, 15.
*Tiao* 掉 as a Principal and Auxiliary Verb, 192.

Time, 26.
Time, order of, 26.
Time, past and future, 27.
Time, as indicated by watches and clocks, 36.
*Tao-ti* 到 底 and other phrases indicating Conclusion, 210.
*T'eh* 特 and other words indicating Purpose, 224.
*Tih* 的 forming Defining Clauses, 37.
*To-shao* 多 少 contrasted with *chi* 幾, 43.
*T'ai* 太 as indicating Excess, 50.
*Ts'o-liao* 錯 了 added to verbs, 51.
*Tih* 的 indicating an Agent, 65.
Travel by rail and steamer, 92.
*Tih* 的 as indicating material, 98.
*Tang* 當, some uses of, 138.
*Tao* 到 as an auxiliary, 22.
*Teh* 得 joined to verbs to form the Passive Participle, 56.
Ten Heavenly Stems, 226.
Twelve Earthly Branches, 226.

*Uan-liao* 完 了 indicating completion, 22.

Vocabulary I, 32.
„ II, 71.
„ III, 123.
„ IV, 166.
„ V, 217.
„ VI, 268.

Week, days of the, 36.

A

阿 232

AI

矮 222
愛 63
挨 255
哎呀 153
礙事 277
矮小 111

AN

暗 98
俺 177
暗處 255
安排 260; 261
安慰 275
安家 94
安息日 278

AO

懊悔 278
奧斯達利亞 112

CHAH

炸 274

CH'A

茶 6
查 106
差 90; 262
岔 278
茶葉 279
茶几 279
父子 276
差一點 263
差不多 145; 155; 263
差得多 263
差得遠 97; 263
差不離 263
差也差不多 263

CHAE

這 1; 177
這邊 66
這麼 66
這樣 66
這些 2
這會兒 203
這張紙 5
這還是 144
這一回 132
這樣看來 253
這樣說來 182; 253
這一番話 258
這事在你 206
這算小事 61
這是甚麼話 267
這地方是我們的生意 206

CH'AE

車 72
扯 185
車站 92

CH'AI

差 90
柴火 276
差人 250

CHAN

盞 281
站 63
斬 251
站口 95
占卦 275
暫時 279
站岡的 232

CH'AN

攙扶 207
諂媚 276

CHANG

掌 232
賬 56
章 19
張 4; 281
丈 98
長 111
仗 166
丈人 276
長病 123
丈夫 166
長價 219; 235
章程 268
掌櫃的 268
長大了 87
仗...有錢 198

CH'ANG

嘗 183
唱 71
長 32
常 106
塲 217; 254
長處 108
長江 94
長褂 241
長蟲 134
唱神戲 220

CHAO

找 56
照 245
照應 277
招牌 268
照...行 251

CH'AO

吵 209
吵鬧 209
朝廷 245
朝鞋 252

CHEH

折 235
浙江省 74

CHEN

陣 254
針 71
眞 49
枕 222
斟 250
珍珠 134
枕頭 228
眞正 152
眞苦死了 158
眞金不怕火煉 260

**CH'EN**

陳 217
臣子 123
趁着 259

**CHENG**

正 34; 211
政 98
正西 211
正中 211
正經 211
正直 280
正是 135
正妻 208
正遇 242
正面上 164
正天家 211
正餅半點不響 142

**CH'ENG**

城 35
成 153
乘 282
稱 185
成功 276
成色 235
誠實 223; 276
成全 259
城根 132
成了 154
乘涼 133
稱呼 279
成了荒塲 220
城門樓子 96
成了人身 189
成人不自在, 自在不成人 114

**CHEO**

州 106
洲 112
州官 109

**CH'EO**

仇 245
臭 279
丑 226
綢子 128
臭蟲 274
抽屜 276
瞅看 257

**CHI**

擠 104; 251
既 145
幾 6; 186
季 34
己 145; 226
雞 71; 226
基 160
寄 268
計 183
記 32; 190
機 248
饑 217
飢 217
記性 192
既然 145
基督 160
機會 245
幾多 43
記號 279
幾時 211
記得 33
機器 102
基督敎 162
濟南府 53

**CHIH**

積 253
給 25; 130
及 81
極 234
急 201
卽 209
極其 234
極處 255
積收 258
極力 220
及到 219
急躁 277
給他起名 46
給老板做活 163
給小的點薄面子 270

**CH'I**

齊 193
砌 247
豈 160
其 160
氣 98
騎 71
器 248
起 63
期 210
妻子 166
欺負 275
起風 93
起來 48
奇事 160
其實 161
其中 161
其間 161
其餘 161
起頭 246
起初 203
起名 241
起會 220
旗人 274
齊整 278
起早 95
其中 161
起先 203
豈敢 161
起了壞意 250
起早睡晚 254
豈有此理 161

**CH'IH**

七 6
漆匠 278
七大八小 185; 254
七手八脚 185

**CHÏ**

止 98
枝 281
紙 1
只 234
治 123
支 225
至 81
之 183
指 245
隻 281
枝子 245
指頭 245
知府 109
知州 109
知縣 109
蜘蛛 279
之內 200
只能 234
指示 258

至於 261
只得 234
指望 253
知道 19
只因 260
只管 256
智識 268
只怕 274
志氣 275
指點 278
知心的 151
知過必改 209

CHĬH

直 90
値 235
織 280
汁漿 251
直晒 220

CH‘I

匙子 279

CH‘ĬH

吃 14; 186
尺 98
吃頭 184
吃飯 12
吃苦 128
尺寸 98
吃虧 279
吃飯堂 275
吃不盡的苦, 學不盡的怪 136
吃飯穿衣量家道 359

CHIA

架 175
假 49
家 49; 226; 233
加 136
家人 200; 245
價錢 56
傢伙 192
家兄 226
假若 262
家鄉 97
家務 197
家當 276
家私 276
家雀 279
家裏 280
假作 . . . 的樣子 230

CHIAH

甲 225; 226
甲子 227

CH‘IA

掐 216

CH‘IAH

恰對 252

CHIANG

匠 114
將 201; 202
江 90
講 32
降 183
降生 189
將來 201
將近 206; 263
將就 277
講書 278
糨子 278
講理 73; 215
講解 257
將要 258
將將的 253
講書堂 109
講大話 68
講書台 168
江蘇省 88
講定了價 95
將相本無種, 男兒當自强 106

CH‘IANG

搶 201
槍 222
鎗 228
牆 123
强 49
强盜 268
詳細 112; 261
强娶 198

CHIAO

攪 212
焦 253; 256
敎 106
呌 25; 130
澆 278
交 183
鉸子 228
驕傲 261
敎堂 106
轎子 72
交付 275
敎化 118
呌門 164
敎養 181
轎夫 200
交戰 230
敎門 165
焦乾 256
焦濕 256
繞腸痧 275

CH‘IAO

橋 128
巧 125

CHIE

借 56
姐姐 209

CHIEH

結 183
接 201
節 25
截 103; 185
界 114
稭 279
結 183
接待 268
結實 268
節氣 203
結交 197
借用 189
揭短 276
結交須勝己, 似己不如無 357

CH‘IEH

切 179
妾 208
切切的 192

CHIEN

賤 209
箭 222
剪 222
肩 201
監 232
見 19; 194
件 281

間 85; 281
煎 87
揀 183
監牢 232
堅固 276
見識 88
肩頭 216
見天 249
艱難 260
剪子 228
見證 261

CH‘IEN

欠 235
前 25
錢 1
千 12; 179
淺 114
千萬 179; 251
前後 263
前年 26
錢店 56
前天 25
鉗子 278
錢糧 279
千里鏡 73
錢串子 275
千苦萬難 219
千辛萬苦 244
錢財如糞土, 仁義值千金 285

CHIN

筋 210
盡 201
儘 234
進 106
近 90
緊 30
禁 194
斤 106
盡行 202
今日 202
盡是 102
今天 26
盡頭 202
今生 203
今年 26
今天 26
金子 56
金杖 134
禁卒 250
近報 208
金山 112
盡本分 252
今日過 202
盡人事 202
盡力盡意 202
近朱者赤, 近墨者黑 135
盡美盡善 202

CH‘IN

親 71
欽差 135
親愛 189
親戚 261
勤謹 275
親眼 126
親自 132
親母親 265

CHING

井 217
淨 72
敬 106
京 123
經 90
警 232
竟 210
净街 132
敬拜 182
敬意 158
境界 271
頸項 259
京報 102
京城 68; 123
驚蟄 204
精中求精 126

CH‘ING

輕 32
淸 192
情 114
晴 217
請 12; 187
情理 278
輕看 212
淸明 204
淸楚 253
情愿 280
輕信 250
淸早 198
淸朝 88
靑草 271
請問 18; 91
淸眞寺 165

CHIOH

角 56; 281
脚 32
脚夫 200
脚價 219
覺得 279
覺無臉 250
脚踢車 125

CH‘IOH

郤 145; 263
雀鳥 183
郤有一樣 265
郤有一件 263

CH‘IONG

窮 71

CHIU

就 19; 195
酒 175
九 6
揪 216
究 210
久 210
救 32
舊 106
就着 195
就是 56; 59
久仰 225
久違 225
究竟 210
救主 49
就如 118
舊金山 112

CH‘IU

求 135
球 268
秋 34
秋分 204
求問 151
囚犯 250
秋成之時 199

CHOH

着 81; 84
棹子 6
實着 234
着急 201
着了急 207

**CHONG**

終 210
種 175
乘 247
重 32; 212
鐘 35
腫 209
中 12
忠 276
忠心 276
終久 210
中古 203
重看 212
中國 12
中人 160
中上 278
中飯 39
重價 134
中華 125
中外是一理 158

**CH‘ONG**

充 217
冲 275
充饑 219

**CHU**

煮 106
主 42
住 81; 247
猪 71; 226
猪肉 278
主筆 248
珠子 232
住處 108
住下 231
主顧 275
主意 280
住久了 135
著書的 124

**CHUH**

囑咐 270

**CH‘U**

處 106; 255
除 175
厨房 277
除非 176
處暑 204
處心 224
除 . . . 外 176
除了. . .以外 176

**CH‘UH**

出 42
出汗 278
出門 136
出氣 6
出閣 136
出來 65
出去 65
出力 276
出殯 276
出了死地 252

**CHUAN**

專 234
磚 48
轉 253
賺 235
專門 234
專心 249
轉禍爲福 259

**CH‘UAN**

傳 114
穿 19
船 90
船塢 134
傳名 270
船行 95
傳敎 73
船桅 118
船老板 95
穿的是 177
船糧很難往下運 218

**CHUANG**

壯 210
莊 175
裝 90
樁 282
莊稼 104; 175
壯實 253
裝呆 230
莊戶 199
裝滿了載 142

**CH‘UANG**

牀 19
瘡 279
床 282
窗戶 166

**CHUEN**

准 153

**CH‘UEN**

春 34
春分 204
蠢笨 279

**CHUI**

追 261
追上 267
追趕 267
追究 277

**CH‘UI**

吹 253; 274
炊爨 274

**CHÜ**

聚 261
拘 256
據 245
矩 183
句 12; 281
駒 204
鋸子 279
聚會 261
聚處 255
據我的愚見 258

**CHÜH**

局 98
橘子 278

**CH‘Ü**

去 12; 187
娶 166
去年 26
娶親 280

**CH‘ÜEH**

瘸 175
瘸子 179

**CHÜEN**

捐 217
捲 278
卷 271

**CH‘ÜEN**

全 160
犬 225; 226
勸 114
勸開 120
勸世文 114
全無此理 164

**CHÜIN**

軍裝 231
君子 277
均匀 276

**EN**

恩惠 98
恩主 191
恩同再造 300

**EO**

藕粉 274
歐羅巴 112

**FAH**

發 106; 254
法 115
罰 201
法碼 56
發燒 255
發財 254
法子 123
發板 255
發威 255
發亮 167; 254
發花 254
發壞 254
發悶 254
發軟 254
發硬 255
發現 255
發酸 255
法國 123
法文 124
發抖 270
發長 181
發錢 198
發晴 218
發明 189
發生 218
發糊塗 255
發慈悲 255
發驕傲 255

**FAN**

番 254
反 211
販 232
飯 14
凡 222
犯 145
反倒 262
犯罪 279
飯碗 278
繙話 266
返悔 278
翻騰 278
煩數 279
反不了 142
販賣人口 243
凡 . . . 的 224

**FANG**

訪 248
方 114
放 32
妨 223
方子 123
彷彿 278
房子 81
放學 30
放肆 280
訪問 124
放羊 241
放高聲 68
訪事人 248
放了心 62
放縱情慾 250
房虛昴星 104

**FEI**

非 175
肥 253
飛 183
廢 141
費 136
費用 140
飛跑 205
費事 139
肥皂 279
斐洲 112
肥美 258
飛行器 125
非富家就糴不起 219
非針不引線 363

**FEN**

墳 153
分 35
吩附 201
分兩 98
墳墓 156
分别 275
分家 277
分手 279
分局 98
分爲 113
分輕重 212
分內之事 214

**FENG**

鳳 90
逢 247
封 258; 281
縫 72
奉 251
鋒 205
風快 204
鋒快 205
風俗 183
風水 103
瘋子 277
奉旨 103
豐年 259
風箱 274
風聲 278
風雨表 274

**FU**

夫 123
府 106
副 281
甫 225
富 72
付 95
婦人 217
府官 109
夫人 250
富貴 280
婦女 280
富貴 280
父母 72
斧子 274
父親 72
婦道家 233

**FUH**

福 98
復 153
服 253
佛 160
復活 156
復生 156
福音 153
福氣 98
佛敎 162; 274
服事 253
佛爺 220
福音書 70
服水土 274
復活起來 125

**HA**

蛤蟆 276

**HAI**

還 42; 224
害 123
海 63
嗐 103
亥 226
孩子 49
害怕 73
海島 112
海外的奇談 118
海無邊,江無底 382

**HAN**

喊 175
還 42
汗 215
旱 217
寒露 204
旱路 95
漢口 95
喊叫 206
漢人 275
含糊 277
旱碼頭 244

**HANG**

行 90
行市 56
杭州府 74

**HAO**

號 225
毫 236
好 19; 195
好了 22
好比 81
好像 81
好處 108
好意 31
好看 53
好聽 61
好佛 169
好事 276
好好的 47
好心好意 254
毫不懂事 127

**HEH**

黑 42
嚇 232
黑夜 244
嚇過不了 266
嚇掉了魂 270
嚇一大跳 125

**HEN**

很 49
恨 217
很有理 89

**HENG**

橫 275

**HEO**

厚 114; 279
猴 226
後來 35
候補 102
後日 202
後天 202
猴子 134
後年 202
厚禮 270
厚雲 218
喉嚨 279
後是 219
厚皮 96

**HO**

火 90
和 81
河 72
禍 114
何 222
夥 183
貨 153
何苦 223
火腿 277
何必 223
何干 223
何等 223
何如 223
何況 223
何以 223
何妨 223
和尚 209
火車 92
夥計 183; 274
和氣 74
禍福 220
火車 92
和好 191
火油 277
火輪車 92
火車頭 93
火輪船 93

**HOH**

活 153
合 166
喝 63
合式 166
盒子 49
喝頭 184
喝道 206
喝醉 276
活字板 102; 248
霍亂病 275

**HONG**

紅 19
哄 135
橫 275
哄騙 275
紅海 244

**HU**

戶 166
壺 32
湖 175
虎 226
蝴蝶 274
糊塗 223
胡椒 278
湖北 94
虎口邊 214
糊裏糊塗 254

**HUH**

惑 201
忽 236
忽然 201
囫圇 280

**HUA**

畫 209
話 13
化 217
花 135
花子 274
花錢 97
化學 141
畫圖 117
話說 206
化佛 220
花甲子 227
話長紙短 135
話說到這裏 62

**HUAI**

壞 106
壞處 108
懷恨 277

**HUAN**

還 42
換 56
歡喜 145
還價 69
還口 274
換回來 61
還罷了 260
還了得 224
還有一件 127
還趕甚麼 206
還不知道 143
還他的價 69

**HUANG**

黃 42
謊 192
皇 123
荒 202
皇帝 123
皇上 124
黃瓜 275
謊言 250
皇宮 250
蝗蟲 277

**HUEH**

或 245
或是 246
或者 246

**HUEI**

匯 238
會 49
回 12; 187
灰 209
悔改 234
回去 49
回來 49
灰麵 276
回信 98
滙水 238
回答 261
回報 270
毀謗 275
灰心 275
回回教 162
回不來 61
回心轉意 278

**HUEN**

魂 123
橫 216
橫 275
渾身 270
魂靈 124
昏過去了 216

**HSI**

洗 33
細 42
西 90
喜 145
稀 217
戲 217
喜歡 148
喜鵲 277
西鄉 60
西學 141
西關 215
洗澡 252
戲法 277
洗禮 223
稀少 218
希罕 125
戲臺 220
希奇 125
喜笑 118
洗盤碗 159
西安府 94
洗臉盆 280
洗澡盆 274

**HSIH**

惜 153
蓆子 268
媳婦 217
習慣成自然 63

**HSIA**

下 25; 204
夏 34
夏至 204
下岡 240
下工 204
下手 204
下馬 199; 204
下學 204
下筆 204
下蛋 204
下駒 204
下監 250
下課 55
下拜 242
下霜 110
下去 115
下棋 275
下月 28
下年 202
下車 93
下船 93
下來 115
下雪 124
下雨 124
下鄉 130
下處 255
下半天 28
下半年 28
下議院 132
下水雷 230

**HSIAH**

瞎 175
瞎子 179

**HSIAI**

鞋子 33

**HSIANG**

享 98
香 175
鄉 128
向 261
想 128
像 81; 181
相 135
鑲 135
象 134
相干 136
箱子 19
香客 214
鄉親 158
相好 143
相似 229
想家 96; 244
想必 154
想頭 184
相貌 223
享福 127
向來 203
香料 243
響聲 103
鄉下人 130
想起來 151
想了法子 102
相隔不遠 164

**HSIAO**

孝 106
曉 14
小 19

笑 114
小米 179
小寒 204
小滿 204
小暑 204
小器 278
孝道 159
小的 269
笑話 124
小車 95
小工 159
小雪 204
小心 192
小姐 277
小麥 179
笑頭 184
小平 238
小處 255
曉得 12
笑談 207
孝順父母 277

HSIE

些 1
邪 201; 211
卸 266; 268
寫 6
謝謝 81
寫字 14

HSIEH

歇 201
蠍子 279

HSIEN

縣 106
嫌 232
閒 175
顯 222
綫 71
先 3
杴 279
先生 1
先前 203
暹羅 118
閒人 199
掀開 207
先是 219
先知 278
現報 278
現今 203
現錢 56; 278
現在 26
獻祭 278
縣官 109
縣分 271
閒談 39
顯爲 142
顯微鏡 118

HSIN

信 63
心 63
新 106
辛 226
辛苦 95; 261
信票 98
新聞 248
信箱 98
信息 103
新鮮 87
心計 207
新金山 112
心裏想 61
心花都開 150
心下明白 199
心想眼望 218
心正不怕雷打 208

HSING

星 192
姓 42
醒 114
性 192
刑 201
興 103; 245
行 90
性命 277
行孝 158
行禮 271
星期 104
行李 90
刑罰 201
行不行 164
行不開 95
興衰不一 250

HSIOH

學 128
學堂 128
學生 128
學房 130
學界 255
學問 141; 277
學會了 230
學到好處 141
學到老, 學不了 324

HSIONG

熊 134
胸 117
胸口 274
兄弟 32
兇猛 276
兇手 277

HSIU

修 114; 247
修補 134
袖子 279
修了鐵路 96

HSÜ

須 262
許 153
許多 153
許願 280
敘談 119

HSÜH

戌 226

HSÜEH

血 175
雪 123
血脈 274
血氣 278
血淚下流 220

HSÜIN

巡 232
巡捕 240
巡撫 276
巡警局 232

I

以 145
議 128
醫 123
以後 156
疑惑 245
已經 124; 128
醫生 123
意思 6
衣裳 6
椅子 6
醫院 123
以來 141
以前 156
以爲 156

意外 271
以上 156; 194
以下 156; 194
以外 156
意見 278
胰子 279
倚靠 279
以爲念 197
以惡報善 267
以義爲利 56
以他的話爲眞 61

IH

一 6
乙 226
益 106
一樣 66
一共 193
一來 136
一不 136
一點 87
一定 86; 155
一切 94;125;160
一期 266
一聲 110
一回 102
一邊 136
一面 136
一層 136
一帮 243
一刻 200
一到 24
一心 193
一意 193
一種 193
一概 193
一同 193
一連 193
一路 193
一家 193
一齊 193
一體 193
益處 108
一張也 62
一身的 47
一頓飯 243
一盤棋 271
一圍麻 271
一輩子 110
一一的 149
一下子 160
一塊兒 193
一點鐘 73
一味的 234
一道牆 123
一劑藥 123
一朶雲 192
一句話 12
一座城 35
一封信 35
一隻手 32
一條街 33
一盞燈 49
一吊錢 56
一座山 72
一輛車 72
一棵樹 106
一塊地 42
一片薄雲 218
一肚子的 141
一來一去 254
一心一意 193
一尊菩薩 128
一百八十 185
一反一正 211
一來一往 254
一件衣裳 6
一口箱子 19
一隻鞋子 33
一位上帝 42
一塊石頭 49
一頂帽子 49
一副天平 56
一匹驢子 72
一乘轎子 72
一張棹子 6
一把椅子 6
一年半載 141
一把抓住 215
一點不偏 252
一條活路 252
一片誠心 260
一套官衣 259
一路平安 90
一身的罪 189
一牀帳子 275
一定的道理 89
一臉的福氣 168
一面…一面 74
一天好似一天 252
一連多少回數 198
一回生二回熟 19
一方水土一方人 111
一體不安渾身不安 376
一樣的米麵, 各人的手段 349

IA

衙門 135; 245
牙齒 279
啞吧 175
丫頭 198; 201
牙刷子 279
亞細亞 112

IAH

押 235
鴨子 276

IAI

挨 255
埃及 244

IANG

養 123
羊 71; 226
樣 63
洋 56
陽 166
仰 225
洋火 209
洋錢 56
養病 133
樣式 117
養生 218
揚州府 88
羊羔雖美, 衆口難調 104

IAO

要 1
咬 268
要緊 25
謠言 253
要命 144; 280
要是 146
要不得 217
要飯的 217

IE

野 232
夜 34

也 42; 224
爺 217
也許 154
也不 262
野獸 244
耶穌 160
耶穌敎 162
也未可定 155
也未可知 155

IEH

葉子 117

IEN

鼴 71
淹 253
驗 253
釅 268
焉 263
顏 232
嚴 225
鹽 279
顏色 232
眼鏡 279
眼睛 33
厭煩 268
言語 253
眼前 278
眼巴巴的 254

IN

因 145
音 153
印 209
寅 226
引 245
印度 209
因此 241; 268
銀子 56
因爲 145
引誘 245
銀匠 116
印工 71
陰間 269
飲水思源 245
因羞成仇 250
印書機器 248

ING

硬 253
贏 280
英 123
應 160
英文 124
應驗 253
應許 192
鷹洋 235
英國 103
迎接 271
塋地 275
營生 278
迎上前來 206
應酬佳話 331

IOK

約 160
藥 123
約有 218; 263
約瑟 241
藥草 181
藥材 243

IONG

永 192
用 49; 51
容 166
用處 108
容易 166
榮耀 245
永遠 192
用度 249
用費 140
永生 277
用工夫 142
永遠擔罪 269

IU

有 6; 12; 186
油 185
又 106
酉 226
憂 232
猶 183
右 187
有心 224
猶太 183
有限 88
有意 224
憂悶 232
有味 70
有事 194
遊逛 124
又 又 136
郵政局 98
有一回 250
有了事 208
有何妨呢 251
有名無實 142
又哭又笑 271
由淺入深 12
幼不學, 老何爲 26
有福同享, 有苦同當 151

IUH

欲爲人上人, 先受苦中苦 128

KAI

概 153
蓋 81
該 135; 261
改 141
界 114
楷 279
改日 203
蓋子 275
該死 119
改日再見 75

K'AI

開 35; 159; 211
開船 214
開講 180
開恩 269
開恩 276
開飯 277
開方子 124
開頭兒 203
開了錢 55
開卷有益 299
開一條出路 259
開你幾個茶水錢 159

KAN

干 136
趕 81
乾 32; 210
感 145
敢 160
甘 201
甘心 208
敢自 232
柑子 278
甘心 201
趕集 268
趕快 205
趕緊 205
乾淨 72

感動 145
乾荒 260
敢保 126
趕場 268
趕不上 81
趕集的日子 53

K‘AN

砍 166
看 22; 195
看見 19
看頭 184
看重 141
看守 280
看不得 22
看飽了 220
看不起 230
看看熱鬧 68
看不出‥來 152
看這個樣子 253

KANG

岡 232
扛子 117

K‘ANG

扛 275

KAO

稿 212
高 32
告訴 63
告示 183
告白 248
高麗 201
高壽 226
高興 46
高大 111
高處 255

K‘AO

考 268
靠 63
烤 274
靠頭 184
考究 279
靠....吃飯 150
靠得住的 249

KEH

隔 160
虼蚤 276
革職 102
格物 141
胳膊 274
疙瘩 277

K‘EH

客 90
刻 35
客氣 278
咳嗽 275
客堂 276
刻薄 279

KEN

根 72; 281
跟 135; 230
根基 276
跟從 136
跟隨 136; 276
更改 271

K‘EN

肯 49; 233
懇求 277

KENG

耕 175
更 49
庚 226
耕種 198
更不用說 141
耕讀爲本 49
更不好看的 69
更有一件奇事 241

K‘ENG

坑 253

KEO

狗 71
彀 98
搆 278

K‘EO

口 32; 281
扣 235
扣頭 235
口袋 215; 274
扣水 238
口音 153
口才 276
口味 87
口舌 279
口供 279
口是心非 254
口甜心苦 61

KIAI

界 114; 255
街 33
解 245
誡 261
戒指 253
街道 96

KO

個 281
過 25; 203
果 183
過犯 261
過後 203
哥哥 32
過去 115
過來 115
過年 192
過錯 276
果然 251; 253
過節 203
過於 233
過逾 233
過分 233
過生日 203
過日子 163; 277
過年過節 30
過路的人 70

KOH

割 136
各 63
閣 225
閣下 220
各自 247
各處 25
各到各處 108

K‘O

課 175
顆 282
可 193
科 183; 282
棵 282
可以 25; 28
可憐 175
可惜 118; 153
可見 193
可知 193
可愛 193
可行 193
可敬 193

可惡 193
可怕 193
可殺 193
可喜 168
可不是 232
可以問我 151

K'OH

渴 201
磕頭 265; 268

KONG

公 166
工 114
共 193
功 209
弓 222
宮 245
公事 245
工夫 49
恭敬 261
功勞 209
公道 213
工錢 159
公平 276
公館 278
公估局 237

K'ONG

空 71
恐 153
恐怕 153

KU

故 224
僱 90
姑 166
鼓 209
估 276
故意 224
姑娘 166
古今 203
古時候 35

KUH

穀雨 204
骨頭 217
骨肉 243

K'U

苦 128
苦處 255
褲子 223
苦情 149
苦口 214
苦待 266
苦盡甜來 231
苦得無法可說了 219
苦海無邊, 回頭是岸 290

K'UH

哭 114
窟窿 117
哭了一場 199

KUA

掛 71; 282
寡 234
掛號 106
褂子 223
掛心 249

KUAH

颳 90
颳風 93

KUAI

怪 134; 160
怪物 125
怪難看 134
怪不得 280

K'UAI

塊 281
快 25
快活 160
筷子 275
快車 96

KUAN

館 248
關 19; 96; 215
慣 192
管 135; 282
官 71
灌 210; 278
官話 72
官家 233
官界 255
管家 233
關係 252; 261
管賬 197
冠冕 134
管保 251
管理 259
關東 46
觀看 104
灌水 210
棺材 268
關了門 40
官場中 102
管怎麼樣 215

K'UAN

寬 32
寬容 277
寬宏 276

KUANG

光 63
光景 199; 263
光緒 29
光學 141
光明 208

K'UANG

筐 245
狂風 279

KUEH

國 12
國家 233
國正天心順, 官清民自安 336

KUEI

規 153
貴 42; 225
鬼 103; 209
歸 210
癸 226
跪 192
櫃子 268; 275
歸期 210
歸根 210
規矩 183
櫃台 48
貴重 189
貴甲子 226
歸爲一 258
歸他們管 231
歸在我身上 266

K'UEI

虧負人 73

KUEN

棍 216

K'UEN

捆 232
捆成捆 241

LA

拉 217
喇 233
拉倒 253
拉飢荒 275

LAH

喇 144
臘 34
蠟 280
蠟燭 274

LAI

來 12; 187
賴 245
來頭 184
來生 203
來年 202
來往 73
來歷 103
來罷 242

LAN

藍 192
爛 217
籃子 114
欄杆 274
懶惰 277

LANG

狼 123
浪 142

LAO

勞 209
老 42
牢 232
老大 212
老鴉 275
老天 144
老邁 241
老爺 276
老虎 123
老板 72
老二 212
老三 212
老實 209
老鼠 207
老人家 233
老夫子 164

LEH

勒索 276

LEI

屢次 278
累了 124

LENG

冷 32
冷茶 69
冷淡 277
冷熱表 279

LEO

樓 [illegible]
漏 277

LI

禮 34
李 90
利 235
釐 236
理 81
里 90
離 90
哩 233
犁 175
離了 247
利害 279
離開 277
禮拜 35
犁子 278
李子 278
里路 91
離城 53
禮物 266
禮拜堂 109
禮拜寺 165
禮輕人意重 46
禮多人不怪 225

LIH

立 209; 247
粒 282
立時 209
立春 204
立夏 204
力氣 86; 279
立秋 204
立冬 204
力量 183; 279
立刻 209
立和約 230

LIANG

亮 166
兩 6; 185
輛 282
涼 275
量 98
糧 186
仰 225
涼帽 68
兩下 231
兩樣 275
良心 261
兩節書 168
良心發現 265
兩人養馬瘦,
兩家養船漏 365

LIAO

料 166
了 12; 184
了結 184
了不得 166

LIEN

連 145
臉 32
練 217
憐 175
簾子 201
連成 22
鍊子 259
臉面 68
連…帶 148
連人帶東西 95

LIN

臨 268
鄰居 26

LING

靈 123
零 1
另 128
領 30; 128;
277; 28
嶺 217
令 225
靈魂 123
零碎 278
令愛 225
令堂 225
令尊 225
另外 128
領命 200
領路 233
領教 150
鈴鐺 274
零碎東西 69

**LIOH**

略 153
略略的 126; 153

**LIU**

流 192
留 253
柳樹 280
留意 274
流淚 280
留聲器 125

**LO**

鑼 192
蘿蔔 279
騾子 95

**LOH**

駱駝 217

**LONG**

聾 175
弄 128
籠 207
龍 226
聾子 179
攏總 63
龍王 220

**LU**

路 63
蘆葦 253
路程 271
路北 167
魯莽 127
露水 275
爐子 279

**LUH**

六 6
鹿 134

**LUAN**

亂 125
亂搖亂響 142
亂七八蹧 275

**LUEN**

論 98; 248
輪 90
論說 248
論到 195

**LUI or LEI**

雷 123
淚 222
累了 124

**LÜ**

驢子 72

**LÜH**

律法 277

**MA**

馬 71; 226
嗎 178
罵 114
螞蟻 274
馬上 209
麻雀 279
碼頭 145
馬太 70

**MAH**

抹 201
抹布 276

**MAI**

買 6
賣 49
埋 153
埋怨 277
買貴了 54
賣皮的 54
買不起 69
買得起 39
賣書的 70
買賣中一團
和氣 340

**MAN**

慢 32
滿 71
瞞 232
饅頭 63
滿口 54
滿街 75
滿處 75
埋怨 277
慢慢的 41
滿臉發光 168
滿口答應 251

**MANG**

忙 209
芒種 204
忙人無智 81

**MAO**

猫 207; 275
毛 56
卯 226
毛蟲 275
毛病 87
帽子 49
冒煙 104
毛色 238
猫哭老鼠,
假慈悲 303

**MEH**

墨 98
麥子 166
墨斗子 277

**MEI**

美 123
每 247
眉毛 276
妹妹 209
每逢 247
美國 112
每到 119

**MEN**

們 1
門 19
悶 232
門徒 63
門生 130
悶悶不樂 250

**MENG**

夢 166
蒙 128

**MEO**

畝 53
茂盛 253
謀事在人, 成
事在天 232; 270

**MI**

米 166
迷 201
迷惑 201

**MIH**

蜜蜂子 274

**MIAO**

廟 128

**MIEH**

篾匠 274

**MIEN**

免 160
面 135; 256; 282
麵 166
綿花 275
勉强 275
綿羊 279
免罪 190
面子 256
面生 160
免得 260
面貌 275
麵糊 278
面皮厚 256
面面相覷 266
免不了罪 169

**MIN**

民之父母 216

**MING**

命 160
明 166
明日 202
明處 255
明年 26
明白 166
明天 26
名聲 276
名字 123
明珠 241
明見 267
名叫 102
明顯 111
明日過 202
明人不用細講 169
名正言順百事成 369

**MO**

墓 153
磨 142
魔鬼 223
麽會兒 211
摸不着 125
摸不着東西南北 125

**MOH**

莫 178
末 210
抹 201
末後 210
末末 210
末了 210
抹布 276
莫大的恩典 271

**MU**

母 71
畝 53
墓 153
母親 72
母雞 163

**MUH**

沒有 12
牧師 102; 253
木頭 72
木匠 116
木箱 97
木板 102
沒奈何 142
沒領教 225
沒有法子 134
沒有甚麼 178
沒有這個理 86
沒有念過麼 24
沒有不貴的 75

**NA**

那 1; 177; 178
拿 21
哪 233
那個 179
那邊 66
那裏 181; 187
拿去 19
拿來 19
那麼 66
那些 2
拿着 168
那知 220
那一個 1
那還問 232
拿出來 31
那 ‥的 181
那裏是 103
那來的話 232
那是一定的 232
拿 不當人 111
拿當耳旁風 214
拿事當事辦 249
那是不用說的 233
那是不用講的 233
拿這事做個笑談 207

**NAH**

納 177

**NAI**

奶 103; 277
乃 262
奶奶 280
乃是 262
奶媽 280

**NAN**

男 42
難 106
南 90
難爲 215
難道 263
難處 108
難得 152
難看 151
難免 197
難怪 118
南方 111
難受 220
男子漢 277
南門關了 220
男女老少 68

**NAO**

鬧 209

**NEI**

內 128
內行 130
內地 130

**NENG**

能 90
能幹 274
能用人 197

**NI**

你 1
呢 63; 218
你們 2; 177
泥巴 277
你的 2
你們的 2

**NIH**

溺愛不明 241

NIANG

娘 166
娘家 233

NIAO

鳥獸 110

NIEH

揑造 250

NIEN

念 1
年 25; 202
撚 279
年紀 42
念頭 184
年成 183
念經 169
念道 180
年頭 184

NING

寧可 261

NIU

牛 71; 226
扭去 207
牛痘 280

NONG

儂 177
濃 279

NUAN

煖和 280

NUI or NEI

內 128
內地 130
內行 130
內科 183

NÜ

女 42
女兒 175
女子 259
女人國 72

O

我 1
餓 217
蛾子 277
我的 2
我們 2
餓死 75
俄羅斯 217
我…你 231
我們的 2
我這一說 182
我的娘阿 144
我的甚麼事 151

OH

惡 160

PA

把 20; 185; 281
罷 128
把守 276
巴不得 217
罷了罷了 150
把手一翻 216
把心用盡了 208
把大事看小了，
小事看了了 152

PAH

八 6
八個字 227
八月節 30

P'A

怕 98
爬 275

PAI

敗 183
拜 106
擺 81
擺弄 268
擺陣 230
拜望 274
擺字的 248
擺棹子 159
擺渡船 134
拜你爲大 242

P'AI

派 245
排 261
排八字 227
派兵護送 104

PAN

半 25
辦 63
板 71
搬 268
板櫈 49
辦理 94; 251
搬家 277
辦貨 119
搬運 231
半夜 277
半餠醋 142
辦文案的 135
半途而廢 223
半點不由人 271

P'AN

盤子 49
盤古 110
盤纏 279
盤費 279

PANG

帮 209
帮忙 213
帮助 213
帮補 213
膀子 274
榜樣 276

P'ANG

旁 145
旁的 148
旁人 103

PAO

飽 209
寶 225
報 98
包 192
保 232
抱 270
包袱 192
報仇 270
保護 245
報應 160
寶貝 278
鉋子 278
飽滿 258
報信 214
寶器 134
胞兄 269
豹子 134
報主 160
寶座 134
報館 102; 248
保人 279

P'AO

砲 222
泡 81
跑 136
砲子 230
跑信的 277

PEH

百 12
白 42
北 90
白露 204
伯伯 276
百姓 209
北邊 53
白日 244
北京 96
百十個錢 185
白生生的 254
百事頭難 1
百里不同風 393
白日莫閒過，
青春不再來 319

PEI

碑 153
悲 160
備 217; 260
倍 81
被 128
背 222
彼 135
悲傷 160
被窩 275
杯子 275
背後 274
悲悲慘慘的 269
悲悲傷傷的 269
被饑荒所逼 269

P'EI

賠 268
陪 274
配 261
賠禮 274
賠不是 274

PEN

本 6;116;149;281
本分 209
本洋 235
本家 276
本來 192
本事 128
本地 116
本國 116
本月 116
本街 116
本當 159
本地人 116

P'EN

盆 49

P'ENG

碰 128
棚 279
朋友 6
碰見 47

PI

彼 135
敝 42; 225
比 81
閉 124
比方 81
鼻子 268
鼻孔 278
彼此 136
比較 275
比不得 81
比不上 81
鼻酸淚下 271
比…出來 125
彼此相觀 207

PIH

筆 1; 282
必 145
必要 148
逼迫 261
壁子 278
必得 148
必定 155
必然 155
必須 262
必是 62

P'I

皮 49
皮匠 277
脾寒 274
脾氣 275

P'IH

匹 281
疋 282

PIAO

表 35
表明 190; 277

P'IAO

票 56
漂 142
漂流 280

PIEH

別 178
別字眼 275
別有天地了 124

P'IEH

撇下 269

PIEN

便 136
變 245
遍 153
徧 187; 254
邊 63
匾 216
便當 136
辮子 145
辯論 257

P'IEN

篇 281
偏 224
偏偏 224
便宜 213

P'IN

貧窮 278
品行 275

PING

並 175; 179
病 123
丙 226
兵 166
餅子 49
兵法 230
兵船 223
並且 268
兵餉 231
冰鞋 119
病倒了 143
並不知疼癢 220

P'ING

憑 2[illegible]
瓶 166
平 128
憑據 245
平安 245
平地 95
憑空 118
蘋果 274
憑頁心 260

PO
玻璃 134; 276

POH
剝 217
薄 114
脖子 259

P'O
破 192

PU
補 56; 189
步 70
布 81

PUH
不 1
不是 3
不要 5
不敢 73
不肯 262
不過 63; 246
不料 266; 268
不拘 256
不管 256
不成 263
不可 176; 262
不如 112; 247
不同 112
不係 265
不然 219
不行 176
不在內 130
不一定 155
不得不 187
不能不 187
不彀本 70
不值錢 198
不見得 155
不費事 61
不見其 155
不在意 214
不講理 120
不在了 30
不理他 97
不好去 72
不認賬 185
不敢當 256
不三不四 254
不如‥好 242
不要良心 267
不管怎樣 198
不說旁的 152
不要見怪 142
不怎麼樣 69
不是·還 169
不必多說 169
不知不覺 280
不像個樣子 231
不管他死活 243
不好多說話 207
不以爲有功 214
不是…就是 152
不必分彼此 150
不是爲旁的 71
不忘記·好處 270
不愁吃不愁穿 86
不怕慢只怕站 35
不知道從那裏說起 159
不上高山不顯平地 98
不經一事不長一智 160

P'U
鋪 90
鋪家 233
菩薩 128
鋪子 32
鋪蓋 90
葡萄 232
鋪行李 159

P'UH
僕人 267

RAE
惹 114
惹禍 181

RAN
然 145
染 232
然後 203
染匠 276

RANG
讓 103; 269

RAO
饒 153
饒恕 153

REH
熱 32
熱鬧 209
熱學 141

REN
人 6; 184; 255
壬 226
任 256
忍 217
認 6; 185
認賬 185
任憑 256
仁義 277
人家 233
認識 6
忍耐 268
認眞 132
人人 53
忍不住 144
人力車 196
人煙稠密 244
人地兩生 158
人地兩苦 258
忍饑受餓 219
人面獸心 250
人心正不怕雷打 208
人不說不知,木不鑽不透 305

RENG
仍舊 192

REO
揉了揉 124

RÏ
二 6
而 192
二等 92
二來 136
耳朶 166
兒子 12
而已 219
兒女 87
二不 136

RÏH
日 35
日報 104
日後 135
日本 142; 192
日久見人心 73
日月星三光 110

ROH

若 145
若是 145; 277
若不是 260

RU

如 81
如同 277
如今 203
如何 223
如此 261
如意 87
如此看來 254
如數交淸 62

RUH

肉 63
入敎 276
褥子 277
辱罵 278

RUAN

輭 253
輭弱 280

RUEN

閏月 277

SA

洒 279

SAH

撒 192
撒謊 192
撒了 216

SAI

塞 279

SAN

三 6; 185
散 222
傘 209
三等 92
三五 151
三國 70
三五個 185

SANG

喪事 274

SAO

掃 106
掃帚 274

SEH

色 232
瑟 232
塞 279
色氣 240
虱子 277

SENG

省 106
生 1; 123; 178
省城 123
生氣 114
生薑 276
生意 192
生日 251
牲口 217
生人 133
生病 86
省事 150
生米 73
生一計 243

SEO

瘦 253
搜 267; 268

SI

寺 160
絲 236
事 19; 194
師 183
四 6
死 71
巳 226
似 81
撕 232
私 245
師母 183
事情 30
獅子 123
四方 54
撕碎 244
師娘 183
思想 275
私下 278
四不像 152
四圍一看 124
四下一看 165
四鄉八境 244
死而復活 252
死也不放手 215
死這個念頭 208
私憑文約官憑印 371
死也不肯叫他去 269
四海之內皆兄弟 201
事業要好,只在志氣 43
事大事小,見面就了 183
師傅領上門,巧妙在各人 153

SO

所 135; 138; 282
鎖 201
所以 145
所有 138
所有的 138
所行所爲 190

SONG

送 19
鬆 277
松樹 276
送命 214
宋朝 88
送子 165

SU

數 42
梳 160
蔬菜 280
素來 203; 277
數目 278

SUH

俗 183
俗話 223

SUAN

算 56
酸 201
算命 276
算盤 56
算學 141

SUEN

損 261

SUI

隨 136
歲 42
碎 232

雖 145
隨便 136
雖然 145
隨卽 209
穗子 253
隨着 165
隨後 124
歲次 227
隨時 209
隨行 198
隨從 250
隨…隨 136
隨心意 197
碎石頭 207
隨心寫出 118
隨我們罷 216
雖然…卻 207
雖…卻…還…但是 219

SHA

紗 259; 279

SHAH

殺 34
殺個總兒 235

SHAE

赦 160
賒 235
蛇 134; 226
捨 160
舍 225; 226
舍弟 226
設若 262
賒賬 235
赦免 160
捨命 160
捨本 235
捨茶 69
捨不得 223

SHAI

晒 217

SHAN

山 72
善 160
扇 281
扇子 166
山羊 276
山芋 278
山東 53
山嶺 218
陝西 94
善有善報 252
善有善報, 惡有惡報 189

SHANG

上 19; 194
傷 160
尙 209; 219
賞 175
上帝 42
上當 139
上下 155
商議 128
晌午 35
上車 93
上船 93
上來 115
上去 115
上回 132
上門 164
商妥 269
商量 128
上年 202
上岡 240
傷風 275
上千 185
上萬 185
上年 202
商家 233
商界 255
上古 203
上月 28
上中下 82
上等的 159
上議院 132
上半天 27
上半年 28
商議定了 157
上梁不正, 下梁歪 361
上有天堂, 下有蘇杭 390

SHAO

少 35
燒 135
稍 261
稍微 232; 279
燒紙 169

SHEH

舌頭 216; 268
舌尖殺人不見血 301

SHEN

甚 234
伸 268
深 32
神 49
申 226
甚至 258; 261
甚麼 1; 125; 167; 178; 243
身子 67
身體 63
神父 167
身量 111
神能 189
甚是用心 249

SHENG

升 175
聖 42
勝 183
賸 183
賸下 88
聲音 12
聖靈 145
聖書 45
聖餐 277
升官 102
聖人 278

SHEO

收 90
守 222
手 32
首 114; 282
受 128
壽 225
獸 232
手段 279
手巾 42
收條 98
受罪 128; 182
收拾 90
手藝 268; 277
收割 181
首飾 120
守規矩 252

SHÏ

是 1; 177
試 222
示 183

使 49
世 114
始 210
市 253
始終 210; 250
是非 176
時辰 278
時時 176
時刻 176
世界 114
使得 279
時候 26
是誰 164
世事 86
世代 86
試煉 259
是我 164
是的 177
使喚 276
虱子 277
始終如一 253
使他們更笑他 152

SHÏH

拾 90
濕 32
十 6
實 114
識 6
什 178
失 166
式 166
失落 277
失和 230
十分 234
實在 114
石匠 116
失敬 225
失火 26
什麼 8
石頭 49
識字 9
十字架 72
十天干 226
十條誡 261; 279
十分放心 197
十二地支 226

SHOH

說 13
說話 12
說頭 184
說明 103
說到 195
說好了 231
說和了 120
說書的 70
說的是 89
說來說去 243
說的是眞方，賣的是假藥 379

SHU

恕 153
書 1
樹 106
鼠 226
竪 103
書房 277
舒伸 124
舒服 275
書架子 274
書中有黃金 346

SHUH

熟 166; 178
贖 135
屬 225
叔叔 276
贖價 190
熟飯 73
贖罪 88
屬國 231
熟人 168
屬甚麼的 226
述說一遍 126
熟能生巧 175

SHUAH

刷 159
刷子 274
刷印 102
刷箒 274

SHUAI

衰 245
衰敗 275

SHUAN

閂 274

SHUANG

雙 33; 282
霜降 204
爽快 275
雙分 266
雙親 271

SHUEN

順 90

SHUI

水 32
誰 1; 178
水溝 276
睡覺 114
水牛 274
誰的 3
水綫 101
水土 111; 275
誰知 218
水錢 62
水雷 223
水龍 278
誰也不 215
水碼頭 244

TA

大 19; 203
打 33; 186; 212
大半 155
打仗 166
大衆 247
打發 42
大寒 204
大概 111; 153
打架 212
打攪 212
大麥 179
大暑 204
大雪 204
打水 212
打算 212
打聽 212
打坐 212
打米 179
打雷 124
打勝 212
打敗 212
打點 212
打量 212
打傘 212
大家 243; 247
大處 255
大官 132
打票 97
大江 94
打扮 117

打魚 212
打約 263
打盹 276
大烟 278
打呵欠 124; 212
打官司 276
打辮子 212
打濕了 212
打草稿 212
大後天 203
大後年 203
打洋火 212
大前天 203
大前年 203
打勝仗 212
打敗仗 212
打鋪蓋 94
打起來 230
打穀了 230
打電報 101
大師傅 275
大上禮拜 203
大下禮拜 203
打了一頓 206
大不相同 229
打了敗仗 230
大城小店 244
大街小巷 158
打開一看 158
大不合理 181
大模大樣 274
大拇指頭 279
打一仗勝一仗 212
打一仗敗一仗 212
大人不見小人過 152

TAH

答 192
搭 235
答應 192
搭界的兩省 219

T'A

他 1; 177
他的 2
他們 2
他們的 2
他的一個朋友 24

TAI

戴 71
待 201; 242
帶 32; 211
袋 268
大夫 123
代數 141
帶領 206
戴的是 54
戴德生 74

T'AI

台 225
太 49; 233
抬 35
臺 166
太陽 166
太平 268; 278
太初 203
太古 203
台甫 225
太太 277
抬頭 278
太那個 179
抬轎的 200
太不用心 159

TAN

單 234
擔 222
淡 268
但 39; 52
但是 49
耽擱 275
淡薄 258

T'AN

貪 166
談 153
嘆息 118
攤子 70
談到 195

TANG

當 185; 256
當天 158
當口 139
當朝 125
當當 139
當面 182
當兵 168
當鋪子 139
當差的 135
當不起 189; 256
當殺豬的 150
當衆人面前 256

T'ANG

堂 106
躺 106
湯 279
淌 276
糖 279
倘 262
倘若 262
躺下 124

TAO

道 81; 282
到 19; 195
倒 145; 262
島 222
刀 12
道教 162
倒反 262
到處 255
到家 234
禱告 123
道理 81
到底 209
刀子 16
道士 209
倒出 199
道光 39
倒運 280

T'AO

討 268
逃 217
套 270
桃子 278
逃難 220
討厭 275
逃走 278

TEH

得 14; 50; 231
德 123
德國 123
得荒 234
得勝 278
得罪 183
得過 218
德行 259
得以 191
得很 49; 82
得救 32

T'EH
特 222
忒 233
特意 224
特爲 224

TENG
登 248
燈 49
等 42
燈籠 277
戥子 235
等到 40
等報 248
燈台 277
等不多時 47
等不得下去 152

T'ENG
疼 175
謄清 275

TEO
斗 175

T'EO
頭 32; 184; 282
偷 261
透 253
頭頂 277
頭髮 183
頭裏 203
頭前 203
頭等 92
頭緒 271
頭半天 27
頭半年 28
頭前走 198

TI
低 151; 261
鏑 19
地 42
遞 277
地方 35
地獄 253
地蛋 278
地板 276
底子 56
邸報 102
地理誌 112
地不靈 218
地方官 103
地中海 244

TIH
糴 185
的 1; 37; 65; 150; 177
的確 275
的樣子 230

T'I
替 98; 204
剃 46; 192
提 245
體面 261
梯子 277
提拔 249
題目 279
提一提 251

TIAO
吊 281
掉 192
刁 278

T'IAO
條 281
挑 25
跳 217
糶 218
挑夫 123
調羹 279
調和 277
調治 279

TIEH
跌 222
跌價 235
碟子 279

T'IEH
貼 98; 248
鐵 71
鐵匠 116
貼錢 248
貼水 248
貼身 248
貼心 248
鐵路 92
鐵網籠 134

TIEN
店 32
點 35
電 98
點火 277
電氣 100
電報 100
電綫 101
電車 101
點心 232
點頭 200
電報局 100
電氣燈 101
電綫桿子 101
點點銀子 157
點燈的時候 167

T'IEN
田 175
天 25
甜 201
添 70; 46
填 276
天下 114
天平 56
天堂 160
天文 183
天河 268; 141
天氣 86
天陰 214
天井 275
天亮 275
天花 279
天喜 279
天主敎 162
天一亮 266
天淵之別 259
天下是一理 103
天上掉下來的 27.

TING
釘 247
頂 49; 234; 281
丁 226
定 153; 181
定規 153
定做 154
釘子 63
錠子 56
定然 155
定準 155; 258
定錢 268
頂着 251
頂可惜的是 118

T'ING
聽 22
停 201

停當 201
聽見 19
停住 133

TIU

丟 217
丟臉 276

TO

多 42; 100
朵 282
馱 217
多半 154
躲避 276
多少 42; 186; 224
多偺 35
多會兒 211

T'O

馱 217
妥當 94
馱轎 277

TOH

奪 279

T'OH

托 183
脫 160
脫離 189

TONG

懂 1
冬 34
動 35
東 90
凍 217
洞 218
動手 206
東洋 196
動情 199
動心 270
動身 214
冬至 204
東西 1; 178
動氣 250
動打 120
東關 96
動不動 176
動物園 134
洞庭湖 144
東洋車 196
東不成西不就 208

T'ONG

統 247; 282
通 136
同 81
銅 56
桶 274
通事 266; 268
通身 216; 247
銅匠 116; 274
通行 136
通統 247
同治 117
銅行 163
通城 214
通國 258
同船的人 144
同是一樣 127

TU

都 63; 64; 247
賭 276
肚子 268
度日 269
都便當 150

TUH

督 160
獨 234
毒 134
毒氣 134
獨有大哥不肯 242
讀好書說好話 6

T'U

吐 166
土 175
兎 226
兎子 118
土話 278
徒弟 274
土產 112

TUAN

短 106
斷 279
短處 108

TUEN

頓 192
鈍 142

T'UEN

吞 253

TUI

對 12; 187
堆 278
對門 165
對勁 279

T'UI

腿 175
退 268
推 166

TSA

咱 177

TSAH

雜 209
雜事 244
雜貨舖 46

TS'AH

擦 55

TSAI

在 19; 194
再 42
災 175
宰 245
在內 130
在外 130
再說 75; 111
再會 187
宰相 245
再三 151
在這邊 66
在中間 187
在後頭 187
在下邊 19
在右邊 187
在裏頭 19
在面前 136
在空中 125
在手下 231
在我看 88
在那裏 12
在那邊 66
在那塊 187
在旁邊 145
在上邊 19
在當中 187
在底下 133; 136

在前頭 187
在鄉下 130
在高頭 187
在這塊 187
在此地 187
在左邊 187
在外頭 19 ; 22
在這裏 12
在身上 158
再看一徧 199
在他那裏 61
在家千日好,
出門時時難 145

TS‘AI

彩 23
纔 63 ; 246
財 166
才 209
菜 63
材 166
猜 261
材料 166
纔敢 219
菜根 149
彩色 241
財主 191
纔是 246
纔好 246
彩貌雙全 244

TSAN

讚美詩 81

TS‘AN

餐 282
殘忍 275

TSANG

髒 71

TS‘ANG

倉 217
蒼蠅 276

TSAO

遭 128 ; 254
造 42 ; 247
早 25 ; 203
灶 277
造反 39 ; 278
早已 35
遭遇 142
遭罪 265
早飯 39
蹧蹋 274
早晨 25
早年 203
早晚 203
早先 203
早上 28
造謠言 73
早起三光,晚
起三慌 355

TS‘AO

草 106
操演 276
草紙 278
操心 274
草稿 276
草木 110
草房 199
草字 225

TSEH

窄 32
賊 261
摘 259
責備 274

TS‘EH

拆 217

TSEN

怎敢 206
怎麼樣 63
怎得了 158
怎見得呢 190

TSENG

爭 268
睜開 124
爭鬧 270
爭鬥 276

TS‘ENG

層 123 ; 282

TSEO

走 32
走走 30
走迷了 242

TSÏ

自 145 ; 252
字 1
子 226
自然 232
自己 145
字典 98
字號 5
自是 142
自殺 159
滋味 87
自從 141
仔細 275
自來火 192
自行車 125
自 直到 218
自從 以後 141

TS‘Ï

次 254
此 136
賜 175
伺候 268
辭行 279
此刻 203
慈悲 166
辭別 260

TSO

坐 12
座 281
做 1
左 187
做主 245
做保 266
坐坐 24
做夢 241
坐板 200
做買賣 72
坐火車 93
坐火輪船 93
做 樣子 159
坐井觀天 118

TSOH

作 32
昨天 26
鑿子 275
作聲 276
作難 279
昨兒個 202

TS‘O

錯 49 ; 234
錯過 234
錯處 190

TSONG

總 248; 263
總要 263
總得 263
總說 87
總督 276
總主筆 248
總而言之 254

TS'ONG

從 90
從來 203
聰明 166
從前 26
從根 246
從…到 39
從今以後 203
從此看來 254
從此以後 251
從古以來 102
從來好事必
經多磨 261

TSU

助 209
租 222
阻擋 277
祖宗 223

TSUH

足錢 56

TS'U

初 25
粗 42
醋 185
初次 269

TSUEN

尊 282

TS'UEN

寸 98
村 128
存 250; 278
村莊 104

TSUI

嘴 81
罪 81
最 234
醉 268

TS'UI

催 280

U

武 192
務 263
五 6
無 114
戊 226
午 226
無論 136
務要 263
蜈蚣 275
務必 263
無用 62
無奈 250
五穀 218
無價之寶 135
無所不在 182
無所不知 182
無所不能 182
無災無病 271
五分之一 258

UH

屋 81

UA

瓦 279
瓦匠 274

UAH

挖 185
挖眼 73

UAI

外 1
歪 151
外國 12
外省 130
外行 130
外科 183
外路人 130

UAN

萬 12; 179
晚 25
碗 6
完 19
晚上 25
晚飯 39
完全 275
完了 22
萬國九州 274

UANG

往 90
望 201; 243
往日 203
往往 176
忘記 33
往年 203
往下 203
往下落 133
往細處說 86
忘恩負義 261
往前進步 249

UEI

威 255
尾 282
爲 98
位 42; 281
未 153; 226
圍 222
違 225
味 234
爲難 144
圍子 200
爲人 197
圍住 215
惟有 218
危險 275
爲何 223
威武 261
葦子 256
尾巴 145
未必 155
爲止 98
爲甚麼 12

UEN

聞 248
問 12
文 114; 124; 282
文理 161
蚊子 277
文書 223
問道 112
穩當 142
聞一聞 70
問他要 17

Ü

於 233
逾 233
雨 123

與 135
魚 63
愚 225
餘 161
豫備 217
雨水 204
遇見 142; 253
遇着 118
雨雷船 230
玉不琢不成器 192

ÜEH

月 25
越 81
月亮 166

ÜEN

院 123
願 201
園 192
圓 114
遠 90
原 245
源 245
元 202
緣故 253
元寶 56
願意 53; 201
元年 202
原先 246
原來 246
遠方 94
元朝 88
原銀 265
冤家 276

ÜIN

雲 192
運 217
暈船 143
運氣 275

第一課 1 書、紙、筆、是錢先生的、錢是那些先生的。 這些東西是他的不是、不是、那些東西是錢先生的。 錢先生你懂不懂、我懂。 那不是他的紙、是我的。 他要錢不要、不要、他要錢先生的筆、你的紙。 他要那些東西麼、他要。 他們不懂、我懂。 我不要念這些書、你要念甚麼書。 他們要甚麼、他們不是要錢麼。 這是不是你的、不是。 他不錯、我錯。 他要念書麼。 他不懂麼。 第二課 2 你認識張先生麼、不認識、我認識錢先生。 那是誰的椅子、是你的麼、不是我的。 這兩件衣裳、那張棹子、不是他們的。 這個幾字、出氣不出氣、不出氣。 我要寫字、你要寫那一個字。 這個人有七十幾個錢、我有十七八個。 他們買兩個碗、兩碗茶。 我認識買字、不認識甚麼兩個字。 那二十四枝筆是我的、那些錢是你們的。 他有七十八九張紙、你要買幾張、我要買九張。 你要買不要買、不要買。 六七個錢買一碗茶。 那三枝筆是你的、這三枝是我的。 第三課 3 四百五六。 四百二十三四。 四萬五。 八萬零八百九 八萬九千六。 四千九。 四萬零三百六。 九萬六千零五十。 六萬零八百九。 四萬五千零六十一。 七千零四個。 五十萬。 一千六。 二千八。 六十萬零八千七百零四。 三萬五千零二十。 一千零一十二。 四百七十五萬。 三十五萬零六十五。 七十六萬零八百一十

九。 四五千。 一千三四。 九百萬。 一千萬。 八百四十萬。 一二百萬。 一百萬幾。 中國話你說得來說不來、我說不來、外國話我說得來。 這個飯吃得吃不得、吃不得。 這三個字你寫得來寫不來、寫不來。 他寫中國字、我寫外國字。 他爲甚麼不說那句話、我不曉得。 這是甚麼聲音、我不曉得、問錢先生。 他有幾個兒子在這裏、他有三個在這裏、兩個在那裏 你有兒子沒有、沒有、張先生有四個。 有五件中國衣裳在這裏、有三件外國衣裳在那裏。 外國人吃外國飯、中國人吃中國飯。 中國飯你吃得來吃不來、吃得來。 他吃了三碗茶、他吃甚麼、他吃一碗中國茶。

第四課 4

我聽見他那個小兒子說中國話、你在那裏聽見他、我在門外聽見。 這件衣裳小我穿不上、你穿上穿不上、穿不上。 把這兩個外國碗拿去、把那本書拿來、那一本、那本大的。 他拿甚麼東西去、我沒有看見。 他送我到門外。 那個東西在上邊、不在下邊。 小的在那口大箱子裏頭、你去看看。 我聽不見你說甚麼話、我說話你聽得見聽不見、聽得見。 我要念第一章、請聽、你要念那一章。 那個東西買好了、他就拿來。 把這個東西拿到外頭去、我不要。 不送。 誰在下邊、張先生的大兒子。

第五課 5

早三年我在外國、我現在中國、過一年我不知道上那裏去。 他昨天說、今天把那口大紅箱子挑來、他沒有挑來、這是爲甚麼、他現在在門外、叫他挑來。 那個時候我給他五百零六個錢、現在我給他二萬錢、

這可以不可以、可以。　他去不去不要緊。　他明天早晨去可以。　他天天晚上到我這裏來坐坐、他現在在下邊、你可以請他上來。　早五年零四個月零三天、他送我這件好衣裳。　你可以去問他要那個大茶碗。　現在他不在那裏。　明天早上去可以不可以。　過三年半我要去看他的大兒子、他現在在外國麽、不是、他在中國。　第六課　6　我昨天對你說的那句中國話、你記得不記得、不記得。、在城外有一條長街、把這封外國信送到那裏、後來叫兩個人來、把這口大箱子抬了去、兩個人抬不動、叫四個人抬可以不可以、可以。　這是他給我的錢。　他小兒子帶來的那雙鞋、我放在棹子上。　那個地方是濕的、坐不得、這個地方是乾的、可以坐在這裏。　今天晚上九點鐘少一刻、拿一壺熱水來、我要洗脚。　打他的那個人是誰、不是禮拜一來的那個人麽。　古時候的人沒有鐘表、我們現在有鐘有表。　這個水深、過不得、那個水不深這不是他上禮拜刻的字麽。　現在幾點鐘、三點半過五分。　他夜裏不走。　過了晌午、快兩點鐘。　第七課　7　誰打發那個姓張的來、不是邊先生的哥哥麽。　我給他買的那些碗不貴、那個粗的買四十個錢、細的買八十個錢一個、我也給他買一把白茶壺、一口黑箱子。　那個姓方的有四十多歲、我問他那條長手巾你送給我麽、他說、那一條、我說、你兄弟早兩天買的那條。　我有兩個黑的、我還要三個白的、你有沒有。　請你把這方字的意思講給我聽、你講完了、我

就講給你聽、這可以不可以。 女的不到三十歲、男的有四十幾歲、女孩子有十二歲。 他給我洗一百多件衣裳、現在在這裏有多少件數、沒有多少件數、這幾件不是他洗的麼。 他在這裏三個多禮拜、四個禮拜少一天、他說、明年正月初一他還要來。 這是張先生的字、這封中國信不是他寫的麼、我請他給我寫、他寫的時候、我對他說、你寫完了、我就給你四百錢、這是多偺的事、這是上月初十的事。 第八課 8 叫他明天早晨十點鐘少一刻回來。 我現在沒有工夫去、我下禮拜三下半天去。 他早兩天買的筆好、我昨天買的筆好些、但是張先生用的筆頂好。 這盞燈小、那個姓邊的用的燈更小。 這是你的錯。 他寫了好些錯字。 那四個人抬來的黑箱子作的好、但我這口箱子作的更好。 他作事太慢、他早兩天去見方先生還沒回來。 那個盒子他做好了沒有、還沒有、他說、做好了就拿來。 買那頂小帽子、用不了幾個錢。 這件衣裳好、那件大的太貴。 那個女人會不會做衣裳、不會。 中國人用熱水洗臉、外國人用冷水洗臉。 寫信給先生你要用一張好紙。 你少給他兩個錢好。 他走不回去。 假的多眞的少。 女孩子吃完了餅子、他就回去。 這個盤子太小、沒有個大些的麼。 第九課 9 一百零兩塊洋錢。 三十塊零二角六分洋錢。 七百零六塊零八分洋錢。 一角洋錢。 一角五分洋錢。 八角四分洋錢。 一千零六十塊零七分洋錢。 二萬零四百零六塊零九分洋錢。 二三百

塊洋錢。　一塊幾角洋錢。　二角五分洋錢。　七角五分洋錢。　兩塊七角五分洋錢。　八十六兩銀子。　六十五兩銀子。　一百零四兩零六分銀子。　一錢銀子。　二錢九分銀子。　四錢銀子。　一百兩零一分銀子。　一百五十萬銀子。　七錢五分銀子。　二錢五分銀子。　一兩零二錢五分銀子。　二兩零七錢五分銀子。　他爲甚麼不還那二百零六兩零二錢四分銀子。　上月他問我借三塊錢給他、我說你要多借還我、他說下月初三、我就借三塊錢給他。　今天洋錢換一吊二百六、早三天銀子換一吊八。　我還找給他二錢銀子。　算好了賬、他就上街去買東西。　他爲甚麼來找我、誰知道。　你找誰、我來找一個姓萬的、要借他的幾百錢、我說、你白找他。　多一吊少一吊不要緊。　大街上的錢舖今天開門。　你有錢票沒有、我有兩張。　第十課

10 他不過對你說假話、你不可信他、他早幾天給我買的那十個釘子、都不好、個個都不好用。　請他出來、對他說、我有一件小事要告訴他。　方先生有兩個男孩子、兩個女孩子、個個都好。　他爲甚麼不喝那碗茶呢。　我手裏沒有現錢、不過有一張兩吊錢的票子。　作饅頭的說、各人走各人的路。　那個小孩子起不來。　去年夏天來的那些人、個個都會說中國話、但他們說的不很好。　賣魚的穿的那件黑衣裳、是賣肉的給他的、那個賣菜的也有六件紅衣裳、件件都看不得。　他早一點鐘回來、纔出去、他上那裏去呢、他告訴我要上邊先生那邊去、問他借兩塊

錢。 我這樣問他、那樣問他、但他還不懂我的意思。 路、喝、心、三個字、不是這樣寫的 他在這裏兩個禮拜、他爲甚麼不去呢。 他信靠救主。 你怎麼樣呢、我也一心信靠他信靠主的人、都得救。

第十一課 11 封先生住的那個房子、沒有張先生住的房子好、張先生的房子好得三倍、是誰蓋的、是個姓馬的蓋的。 泡三碗茶、把饅頭餅子擺在棹子上、擺好了就可以點燈、上住城外的那個女人那裏去、叫他明天早晨來做針綫。 把這件衣裳掛起來、放在這裏就髒了。 那麼大的孩子不會寫字、他不及六歲的女孩子。 喝開水不如喝茶好。 比方有兩個人、一個富、一個窮、富的有錢、窮的沒有錢、人人說窮的趕不上富的。 這個布比那個布好得三倍、他昨天買的布、比你買的布更寬、是和這個一樣。 這口空箱子有你做的箱子大、一箱子錢、比這個箱子重。 他現在戴的帽子、是誰給他的、買多少錢、沒有你戴的帽子貴。 買一口大猪、至少要兩錠多銀子、我至多給他十幾吊錢。 他講的理我不信。 你要幾乘轎子、我要三乘、叫抬轎的就抬來、不要等半天。我（和同）你去。 他講甚麼道理、他說人人都有罪、但救主死在十字架上了。 他也說上帝給我們開了天上的門、現在請外國人中國人都進去、上帝的心就是愛。

第十二課 12 把行李裝在車上、 昨天颳了大東北風、今天沒有風。 兩個外國客坐轎子來、抬轎的不知道路、把他們抬到北邊去、但現在把他們抬回來。 他們說行李要慢慢的來。 他說、

過江往東南走、沒有多遠有個車站。　一個火車早晨六點半鐘開、一個走快些的晌午開。　上江口的頭等車票買多少錢。　火輪船沒有火車快。　客人少帶東西。　他從上海經過、坐半天的火車、兩天的火輪船。各行有各行的買賣。　這裏到城門有多遠、沒有多遠、至多有三四里地、趕點燈的時候你就到了。　僱四個人把這些東西抬去。　這個燈他沒有收拾的好。　現在坐火輪船的客多、坐火車的客更多。　東西南北的人、都是上帝造的。　第十三課　13　這個東西要做多大、要做一尺三寸高、三尺長、二尺六寸寬、有我那口紅箱子大。　僱人有論月的、有論天的、論天二百錢一天、論月五塊錢一月。　他打電報到他父親家裏去。　去買一塊錢的三分信票、一塊錢的一角信票、兩塊錢的五分信票、不要買錯了。　那副天平是甚麼東西做的、是銅做的。　郵政局在太平街、離這裏有二里多地、這太遠、把這兩封信送到分局、拿收條回來。　那個小女孩子從那裏來的、他從家裏纔來的。　我們從第二章念起、到第四章爲止。　從第二節唱起。　外國船是甚麼東西做的、有的是木頭做的、有的是鐵做的。　那些銀子的好、這些木頭的趕不上。　你帶了尺來沒有、有沒有忘記帶來、一丈零一寸、彀長不彀長、不彀長。　把這兩張中國紙貼起來。　上帝的恩惠、比海深、比天高。　信靠救主的人、要上天去享大福氣。　第十四課　14　這些信沒有不掛號的。　那位老先生戴一頂舊帽子、穿一雙舊鞋。　中國有二十幾

省。　早幾年光有十八省、各省有府、州、縣、太平府有八縣、知縣是去年來的、姓黃。　肉是論斤買的、布是論尺買的、你去買二斤三兩猪肉、一丈零一寸中國布。　在城外有樹有草、眞好看。　你上那裏有幾回、我去年去一回、今年夏天去兩回。　叫他進來、不要站在外頭、外頭冷。　他是個壞人、和他辦事、沒有益處。　請你在字典上給我查這個僻字、我查不出來。　我上月來一輌、他不在家、我又來了、他還是不在家、這氣人不氣人呢。　光說人的短處不好。　他頭一回從這裏量起、這一回他從北門直量到教堂門口。　來教堂聽道理的人不少、他們天天下半天來一回。　新蓋的教堂比舊堂大兩倍、坐滿了三四百個人坐得下、多麼好呢。　第十五課　15　長短怎麼樣、不太長、不太短、正好。　他們空空的來、滿滿的回去。　這件事我們怎麼辦呢、這個不難、是這樣辦。　那個孩子哭甚麼、他說、他父母不在了、他們是本省的人麼、是本省的人、住在本街上。　叫他快快的上來、不要等在大門外頭。　他常常的罵人、一開口就罵起來、他不是個好人、人人說他不好。　把那張圓棹子抬過來、把這張方的抬過去。　木匠要錢、他們在下邊等着、叫他們再等一等、我不要他們現在上樓來。　可以算四個工。　他勸過他們四回、但勸不動、他們還是罵人。　這樣行就是惹人生氣。　救主上天的時候、就告訴他的門徒、往天下去傳教。　後來他的門徒往各國去傳道、信的人多。　他到世界上來作窮人、作木匠。　後來他出去在本國

傳道、勸人信靠上帝。唱第一百零一首讚美詩。第十六課 16 他被獅子吃了。他病了兩個月、沒有法醫治、我怕他好不了。他養兩口猪、三條狗、又養二十個雞。臘月初三下大雪、初四下大雨。冬天不打雷、夏天打雷。那個學生有大本事、他的先生說、他要做（大夫醫生）。李（大夫醫生）在城外開了醫院、他天天看病人、城裏和鄉下的人、都來見他。他開方子說、一天吃兩劑藥。有不肯吃外國藥的、上本地藥鋪去買本地藥。他發的藥很靈。你出城一直走、離城四里地、有張家村、東頭有座廟、西頭有個學堂、一過橋就到了。我想他已經走了。茶碗綢子在內、藥在外。各國的京城、比外省的省城更大。我想不出法子來、你想得出來麼、我也想不出來。那個醫院有三層高、本城沒有那麼高的房子。他買錯了藥、就受了害。菩薩是人手造的、人把他們放在廟裏。有木頭造的、有石頭、金子、銀子、造的。他們不能走路、也不能說話、也不能救人、禱告他們沒有用處。救主能救我們的靈魂、我們都可以領他的救恩得救。第十七課 17 你跟誰學官話。隨他的便、他來也好、他不來也好。學英文費事、書又難念、字又難寫、但不管怎麼樣、我要學會。不論是獅子、是老虎、他都不怕。先生打學生一下、把他的一隻眼打壞了。他所說的、和他所行的、不對。那個挑夫挑我的箱子、把他挑壞了。他一來說話無理、二來開口就罵人、不要理他。他跟張先生學算盤。不管他做甚麼事、我都跟不上他。

跟我來。　我的脚跟受了害。　我拿他當（大夫醫生）、但我看錯了人。　那個姓李的很窮、上月初六上當鋪當了一件衣裳、現在天冷、他要贖、贖不出來、他也想不出法子來、你替他想個法子罷。　這與我無干、我管不着他的事。　我上了他的兩回當。　你跟我去好不好。　他該你二兩七錢五分銀子、你爲甚麼不跟他要、我昨天跟他要、他說現在還不便當、他慢慢的可以再說。　我們求上帝、他肯聽我們的禱告。　早一千八百多年前、救主替我們死在十字架上、好贖我們的罪、這樣的恩惠比天高、人想不出來。

### 第十八課　18

在樹旁邊是甚麼東西、不是個碗麼。　雖然他自己肯去、他的哥哥卻不肯去。　連書帶紙買五百錢、筆在外。　你必要叫他明天來見我。　泡一壺熱茶來、也倒一碗冷水拿來。　牆倒了。　他若哄你、你來告訴我、他光哄人。　若是先生知道、他就要打你。　他若不還你、我就還你。　雖然他有錢、他卻是個壞人。　他既然肯、你爲甚麼不肯。　你既然沒有看見、你怎麼知道、我知道、因爲我聽見李先生說。　雖然你管不着他的事、你還該對他說幾句話。　他既然說、我就信。　雖然這事與我無干、我必要去看。　他出門的時候、遠遠的看見一個獅子、就怕了、跑回店裏去。　雖然這是費力的事、我還要去做。　現在春天花都開了。　不是你做的、就是你哥哥做的。　因爲一個禮拜打一回辮子費事、所以他把他割了。　若不是上帝打發救主來替我們死、我們就無法得救了。　聖靈從天上下來、好感動人

心、呌他們信靠救主、救主既然來了、我們不可信他麼。 第十九課 19 呌做鞋的來、我要他給我定做一雙外國鞋。 有許多人在街上、想必他們要看新來的知府下船。 吃這兩劑藥、未必呌你的病好了。 他明天也許來、也許不來、沒有定准。 碑上刻德成靈三個大字。 大發字號的貨、又貴又不好、一定賣不出去。 大概他今天不來、因爲他怕下雨。 他的口音不很好。 他走遍天下、差不多到過各國。 那個學生今天來晚了、所以他不能早回去。 想必這是韋未成惹的禍。 那開醫院的事、我略略的講給你聽。 那個木匠來了好幾遍、我已經告訴他、這麼厚薄的板子沒有用處、許他不懂你的意思罷。 他拿錯了收條、這是收錢的收條、不是發信掛號的收條、他一定沒有到過郵政局。 救主先釘在十字架上、後來埋在墳墓裏、第三天復活。 現在他的墳墓是空的、因爲他已經上了天。 後來到了時候、他必要回到世界上來、呌攏總信他的人、都享大福氣。 這就是福音大概的意思。 第二十課 20 我們隔一道高墻。 他們住家隔一條街。 我和他商量、他說、你豈不知道我們要請中人麼。 早晨起來、要穿穿衣裳、洗洗臉、梳梳頭、掃掃地。 他一切用的東西、都不是自己的、都是旁人借給他的。 人人說那個姓李的前天死、是個報應、他眞是個惡人。 皇上已經赦免那些犯人。 雖然他的朋友勸他不要哭、他還是哭、因爲他傷心。 把其餘的飯給窮人。 在本城有信耶穌教的、有信佛教的、有信道

教的、有信天主教的、有信回回教的。 佛教差不多早兩千年前、到中國來。 張先生常說他家裏富、其實全家沒有甚麼錢。 古人以爲地是平的、其實是圓的。 那樣的好人、豈肯做那樣的惡事呢。 你的官話說的很好、豈敢、我的話很少。 天堂是個好地方、在那裏的人、都是歡喜快活。 善有善報、惡有惡報。 基督捨命、因爲他愛人、若是不愛他們、豈肯爲他們死呢。 拜佛的人、想他能赦免他們的罪、其實他不能、光有上帝能赦免人的罪。 第二十一課 21 那個人很可憐、給他幾個錢不好麼。 那個啞吧的女兒是個瞎子、看不見梳頭。 這一課學會了沒有、已經學會了。 他定規過湖家去、說非去看我的父親不行。 耕地非用犁不行。 人作事不合那孩子的式、那孩子就時時的生氣、非打他不可。 除了莊先生以外、別人辦不了那事。 若不種地、我們要從那裏得飯吃呢。 封姑娘現在十八歲、從四歲起就是啞吧、不能說一句話、他的父親送他到啞吧學堂、不到六年他就懂人的意思、這不是大奇事麼。 這一定不是許先生惹的禍。 北方人非吃麵不行、南方人非吃大米不行。 兵用刀砍他兩下。 日裏太陽出來、夜裏月亮出來、 我昨天作了夢、夢見一個黑皮人、這是甚麼意思、沒有甚麼意思。 上帝有聰明、有慈悲。 若不是他想個法子、誰也不能得救。 除了他打發來的救主以外、沒有別的可以贖我們的罪。 我們若要進天堂、非靠他不行。 第二十二課 22 他送我的那個雀鳥、時時的叫、

可惜纔飛了。　今年的年成沒有去年的好。　那棵大樹一年結一回果子。　他上北京去學天文、在這裏沒有會教他的。　⊗昨天賸的飯在那裏。　若兩國打仗、不定那一國勝、那一國敗。　我昨天給你的那三吊錢、還賸下多少、不但沒有賸下、還不彀呢。　大街上鞋鋪的老板、多請了一個夥計。　那個挑夫有大力量、那個大石碑他一個人拿得起來。　你們的頭髮都被數過了。　我今莊師娘常說人的是非、惹人生氣。　得罪得罪。　這本新約交給你、萬不可把他弄髒了。　我今天要上街挖幾升米、可以割二斤猪肉、稱一斤魚回來。　福音書上說、耶穌降生在西邊的猶太國。　他在父親家裏長大、三十年作木匠。　到三十歲他就離了父親的家、走遍猶太國、從南到北、從東到西。　他又傳道、又醫病。　他見了瞎子就叫他能看見、碰見啞吧就叫他能說話、他行了各樣的奇事。

**第二十三課　23**

那個小餅掉在地下、快拾起來。　雖然他有錢、他仍舊住在那個破房子。　古時候的人用油燈、但現在各國大概都用自來火、與電氣燈。　開醫院的那一天、文官武官都在那裏、一共有二十幾個。　黃河一直往東流、通到北海。　那條河很靠不住、說長就長、一夜長一丈多、眞可怕。　你看那一樣好、是穿藍的好、是穿紅的好、這要看人、小孩子穿紅的好、大人穿藍的好。　萬不可撒謊、撒謊的人又害自己、又害人。　我若對你說實話、不要見怪。　那個學生的記性很不好、我教他一個字、他就忘了。　最可憐的就是那個孩子被他

母親慣壞了。 到了過年、他的錢不彀用、他的賬都算不清。 他在樓上看報。 你去年撒的種子、還沒有發長。 我上教堂的時候、看見他們都跪下來。 禱告完了、有一個中年人、上講書台子說、請唱讚美詩第一百零二首。 合堂的人就打開讚美詩唱起來、一共唱五節、他們就都坐下、聽他講道理、說上帝的應許、都是靠得住的。 第二十四課 24 那個人本來有邪心、行邪道、父母勸他好幾回、他仍舊不聽、然後他犯國法、送官、官先打他一百板子、罰他五十兩銀子、又說、若再送來、必聽重重的刑罰他。 大概他受壞人的迷惑。 一連三個禮拜不下雨、所以本地人着了急、把菩薩抬出來、放在路旁、現在他們望雨、等到如今還沒下。 醋是酸的、饅頭是甜的。說兩個人吃醋、是比方的話。 木匠十二點鐘停工、兩點鐘動工。 天氣熱、道路不好走、歇歇罷。 他拿我當孩子待。 章師娘叫丫頭放下簾子、鎖大門。 你渴不渴、這裏有水、要多少喝多少。 鐘停住了。 抹棹子、後來把大椅子的腿抹抹灰。 我的錢都用盡了、把一兩塊錢借給我。 太初上帝造天地。 人人都知道犯法怕受刑罰、但他們犯上帝的法、以爲不要緊、這是爲甚麼、大半是因爲他們現在不受刑罰、又想將來受刑罰不受刑罰、也不一定、他們這樣受迷惑、很可惜、人種甚麼就收甚麼、這是一定的道理。 第二十五課 25 印度國是個頂大的國、差不多有中國十八省大。 不要忙、他立刻就回來。 鎖、傘、藍布、洋火、酒、香、米、都可以在雜貨舖裏買。

洋火是那裏出的、是東洋出的。 先前是西邊來的、但後來東洋人做的多、賣的賤、外國人就再不能做那行生意。 蓋房子非用灰不行。 他請我吃飯那一天、大米飯、菜、都不殼、呌我吃不半飽。 打更的天天晚上打鼓。 我的書太多、棹子上擺不開、我要呌木匠來給我做個書架子。 雖然他的病重、醫生又給他開方子、他到底不肯吃藥。 那個賣籃子的老實、又說實話。 各人要盡各人的本分。 救主在世上的時候、把五個饅頭、幾條小魚、分給五千人、女人孩子在外。 他們都吃飽了、要多少有多少。 和尚道士、都願意給人家念經、但非錢不行、所以人人都說、有錢得生、無錢得死。 第二十六課 26 這與你何干。 枕外國枕頭有何妨呢。 我特意來見你。 古時候的兵用弓箭、如今的兵用槍砲。 呌他備馬。 有四十個人都帶槍把他圍住了、雖然他騎好馬也逃不了。 我餓了還沒有吃飯。 這幾天下大雨、但今天天晴了。 餓的餓死了、凍的凍死了、要飯的都餓死了。 他雖然窮還捐上三塊錢、又願意多捐。 兵有練出來的本事。 他跌壞了一根腿。 這個東西曬兩天、還沒有曬乾。 俄羅斯人的相貌、和日本人的相貌大不同、一個身量高、一個身量矮。 德文他懂不懂、多少懂一點。 凡信基督的都可以受洗。 守禮拜是頂要緊的。 人拜祖宗拜錯了、該拜的就是上帝。 救主揀十二個門徒、呌他們和他在一塊兒、預備他們到處去講道理。 第二十七課 27 綑好了鋪蓋、可以呌挑夫來送到碼

頭去。　在街上有四個站岡的、兩個在東頭、兩個在西頭、還有一個站在巡警局的門口。　你憂悶甚麼、我纔聽說我的母親不在了。　他故意把壺打碎了、這是我親眼看見的。　他看他的兒子如掌上的珠子。　他瞞着父親上北京去。　你光給他五百錢、他自然不肯來、他嫌工錢太少。　大哥還可以、但老二、老三、都好色、好酒、好財。　把這塊紙撕碎了。　兩個人打起架來、把衣裳撕碎了。　他有人面獸心。　獅子是獸中的王。　要甚麼顏色、有甚麼顏色、紅的、黃的、白的、都有。　救主哭猶太國的京城、因爲城裏的人的罪大、他的心也憂悶、因爲他知道他們將來要受苦。　猶大賣基督的時候、以爲是瞞着他、其實瞞不住他、豈能瞞得過無所不知的上帝麼、自然不能。　早晚人的罪、都要顯出來、這是人人所知道的。　第二十八課　28　葡萄樹上的枝子、光能結果子、沒有旁的用處。　他們照他的吩咐去解驢。　在山東省有許多葡萄園。　衙門是辦公事的地方。　我自己的私事、沒有甚麼要緊。　這大概是私仇。　在朝廷有宰相臣子、都辦國家的事。　他提着籃子上街去買東西。　不要疑惑他、他說實話、他的話並不是沒有憑據。　我昨天夜裏作了一夢、解不開其中的意思。　那個姓章的先引誘他行邪道、後來把他的錢都賴了去、眞能叫鐵人流淚。　他昨天寫了一篇論、今天發給主筆、請他登報。　訪事人走徧城裏、打聽各樣的事、後來上報館寫起來。　上帝所賜的平安比海深、人免了罪以後、纔有這平安。　主

吩咐他的門徒上村子裏去解開驢駒、拉到他那裏去。 魔鬼引誘人去犯罪。

第二十九課

29 有的蘆葦長在河旁、有的長在湖邊。 牲口冬天肥、夏天瘦。 今年莊稼很茂盛。 東邊纔發亮。 人在暗處作惡、在明處受報。 這塊饅頭太硬吞不下去。 他到外國去以先是個窮人、他現在發財囘來。 關上驗了貨、纔準上船。 他早兩天說的話、果然應驗。 留他吃一頓飯。 不管他有多大本事、我不要他在這裏服事我。 他忽然生氣、轉身走了。 雖然他有七十多歲、他還壯實。 風吹草動。 他們一連三囘去、到底沒有遇見差人。 基督的門徒、無論是窮的是富的、他們心中都有天堂的指望、早晚都必要到家。 人下地獄、永遠不得出來、雖然他的朋友、請天下的和尚道士來、爲他念經、也是無用。 人不用花錢得天堂的指望、上帝白白的賜給人。

第三十課

30 我爲他費了許多錢許多事、究竟他還說我的壞話、這豈不是忘恩負義嗎。 請你把這封信捎到我家裏去。 他是個體面人、他長的也體面。 昨天晚上來了一個賊、把一條褲子、一件褂子偷了去、我起來追他、卻沒有追上。 人若憑良心行事、就免不了受逼迫。 說話不要聲音太低、我聽不到你說甚麼話。 兩個人來作見證、他們的見證卻不對。 人發驕傲、人人都嫌他、中國外國是一理。 那個孩子囘答他的父親太沒有禮。 這是關係你的一件事。 這件事是他的一個親戚安排的。 早晚救主要囘來、衆人都要在他面前聚會。 他捨不

得一個人不得救、所以他勸人悔改信靠他。 一個人多會悔改相信、就多會得救。 我們豈不都該悔改信靠他麼。 上帝愛世人、甚至將他的獨生子賜給他們、叫凡信他的、不至滅亡、必得永生。

# SUPPLEMENT.

The Notes below are intended to supplement the information given in the body of the book. They are the outcome of changes that have occurred since the last edition was published, and embody suggestions made by teachers of the Lessons. The numbers refer to pages.

**Page.**

3. The following sentences illustrate the use of 不要:—
Before a verb:
Do not do it; 不要做
Do not read; 不要念書
So in Lesson II:
Do not buy it; 不要買
Do not write; 不要寫字, and so on with the other verbs in the Lessons.

7. Emphasis counts for a good deal in Mandarin. As most beginners put emphasis in the wrong place, it will be as well to point out where it is not required.

(1) Not on the N.A; *e.g.*, 一個錢, not 一個錢, and so with other N.A.

(2) Not on 子 when it forms part of the noun; *e.g.*, 椅子 not 椅子.

(3) Not on 的 when it forms part of such words as Coarse 粗的; Fine 細的, page 42: the emphasis is on the *first* word in these and similar combinations. It may be generally stated that the emphasis is usually on the first word; *e.g.*, 朋友, not 朋友; 意思, not 意思.

14. 得 in the North is often joined to 了 (read *la*) and forms an expression denoting satisfaction; *e.g.*, This will do 這就得了.

25. The subjoined examples may help the student to see how 過 is used with 沒有:—
Have you been abroad? 你到過外國沒有;
No, I have not; 我沒有到過.
Have you been here before? 你來過沒有;
No; 沒有來過.
Have you read this book? 這本書你念過沒有;
Yes; 念過了.

27. In addition to the terms given on this page to denote the days of the month, the word 號 *hao* a number, page 225, is

used. It takes neither 第 nor 初 and may be applied to any day of the month; *e.g.*,

The 4th of the 8th month; 八月四號.
The 23rd of the 2nd month; 二月二十三號.

37. One drawback in the expression 一點鐘 is that it may refer either to the order or amount of time, and this is true of all similar expressions.

To avoid this, the combination 鐘頭 is used to indicate the amount of time without reference to order; *e.g.*, One hour, 一個鐘頭; Three hours, 三個鐘頭; and so on.

46. The Revolution of 1911 spelt the removal of the queue—a badge of servitude to the Manchus. At present it is still worn by many in the North, but its entire departure is certain. In its place are cropped heads, varying in appearance from a turnip to a cocoanut. This shearing of the locks is known as 剪髮 *chien*$^{3}$-*fah*$^{4}$ clip hair; and the old name of 剃頭舖 *t'i*$^{4}$ *t'eo*$^{2}$ *p'u*$^{4}$ is changed to 剪髮所 *chien*$^{3}$ *fah*$^{4}$ *so*$^{3}$, (or 舘 *kuan*$^{3}$; or 處 *ch'u*$^{4}$.)

57. The fact that a dollar is heavier than its natural equivalent of ten 10 cent pieces, or five 20 cent pieces has given rise to the use of the expressions *ta iang* 大洋, and *hsiao iang* 小洋, in stating prices involving any fraction of a dollar. According to the local rate of exchange, *eleven* 10 cent pieces plus a few copper coins should be given in change for a dollar.

In purchasing an article stated to cost $1.10, *ta iang* 大洋, a dollar and one 10 cent piece plus the copper cents needed to make up the full tenth of a dollar should be paid. If the price is $1.10, *hsiao iang* 小洋, only $1 and one 10 cent piece (毛 or 角) need be paid. The same rule applies to any fraction of a dollar. This is spoken of as 按大洋算 or 按小洋算.

58. It will be found that in ordinary conversation there is a tendency to shorten the names of many things in common use. This is in line with the foreign method of abbreviation as seen in 'bike' for 'bicycle'; 'bus' for 'omnibus,' etc. Hence it is quite common to hear 字兒 for 銅字兒; 火車 for 火輪車, page 92; and so on. In the Yangtse Valley copper coins are often called 銅板, page 71.

106. Since the Revolution, many schemes have been mooted for changing the names of the Provinces and Cities of China. It is difficult to say what will be decided ultimately, but the latest scheme has been to call all cities 縣, and the name of the official who rules over them 知事; *e.g.*, The Shanghai Magistrate, 上海知事.

The old names have been retained in this Lesson for convenience of reference.

Page.

153. In Peking, 成 is used to denote satisfaction, and is the equivalent of, "Well and good;" "That will do;" etc.

156. It is not easy in the early stages of study to distinguish the difference in use between 後來 and 以後 since both mean 'afterward.' While perhaps it is difficult to lay down a rule that will always apply, we may say that, speaking generally, 後來 comes before the verb, and 以後 after it; *e.g.*,

After he went; 他去了以後.
He went afterwards; 他後來去了.

After 這事 and 那事, as well as after a definite-time, 以後 is used; *e.g.*,

After this; 這事以後.
After ten days; 十天以後.

187. Used idiomatically 來 is the equivalent of 'from' in certain connections; *e.g.*,

He has come from the street; 他街上來.
I have come from making purchases; 我買東西來.

## Additional Notes on Reading Lessons IV to XXa.

Words in every language take on different shades of meaning according to their context. This is emphatically so in Chinese. Hence in translating, it is important to give the *idiomatic equivalent* as far as possible, rather than a literal translation. To enable the learner to do this is the object of these Notes.

The small figures idicate the number of the column.

Page.

24. 4 我可以 I *will*, not 'may.'
6 大門外 outside the main entrance.
坐在對門口 sitting in the opposite doorway.

30. 1 吃他的飯 to board with him.
4 都不錯 'not so bad;' satisfactory.
6 放學 gave over study.
這裏走走那裏看看 to go about and see the sights.
8 家中有事 there was trouble at home.
9 寫字 to do some writing, or copying.
10 要我來我就可以來 if you want me to come I'll come.
13 有意到外國去麽 do you intend to go abroad?

Page.

31. 1 沒有那個意思 no such intention. 我們說到這裏 when we had reached this point in our conversation.

5 我可以去看看 I'll go and see.

13 我現在有事 I have some business to attend to just now.

40. 4 他是鋪子小, it was that his shop was small.

41. 7 要叫五個人來抬 you must call five men to carry them.

8 不早了 time is going on.

9 也不晚 in plenty of time; see page 48. 5.

46. 9 作甚麼要緊的 attended to all sorts of important affairs.

10 去買東西 to go shopping.

47. 5 送萬全過幾條街 accompanied Uanch‘üen through several streets.

6 要給父親買東西 in order to do some shopping for his father.

12 我還有一點粗禮 I have also a trifling present.

48. 10 後來可以再會 I'll see you later on.

11 慢慢的 in the course of time.

53. 2 地方大人也多 covers a large area and is densely populated.

8 叫邊得意 was known as Pien Teh-i.

8 和我一同去好不好 wouldn't you like to go with me?

54. 1 是北邊的話說 it is a northern expression and means that. . . .

2 要買的人 intending purchasers.

6 要叫 ... 來 in order that he might carry back the things bought in the city.

7 慢慢的 in due time.

10 可以給我買上 had better buy it for me.

11 外頭好看 good-looking outside: *cf.* 好聽 To sound well: 不好看 Ugly; unseemly: 不好聽 Doesn't sound well.

55. 3 買得不錯 made a good bargain.

5 晚上可以在店裏再見罷 I'll see you again this evening in the inn.

9 街上碰見的那個姓章的 the man Chang whom they met in the street.

10 叫人愛聽 so that everyone liked to listen.

11 不……思……就知道了 if you don't know what he said and what he meant by it, read the next Lesson and be enlightened.

**Page.**

60. 5 在雙順字號外頭 outside of the establishment having the sign of Double Prosperity.

61. 2 說話好聽 was fair spoken.

4 可以給他換 would change it for him.

8 你我是多年的好朋友 we have been good friends for many years.

12 趕十月初幾要回來 would be back by the beginning of the 10th month.

62. 5 可以說 might say.

6 就是去找作假 even if he went to look for Tsohchia. . . .
就是找到 and supposing that he did find him. . . .

11 人萬不可和他辦事 people should on no account have any dealings with him.

12 有十點多鐘了 it was past 10 o'clock.

13 呌帶來的那個人把東西挑走了 told the man they had brought with them, to carry the things.

63. 9 再 ... 再 ... if he goes to the city again with his father, and hears anything else.

68. 3 好不好 what do you think of that?

7 本城的人 people of the city.

69. 1 用茶碗喝 drank tea out of a basin.

3 用熱水洗脚 washing his feet in hot water.

7 本城出的 local products.

9 不好意思問你多要 I wouldn't have the face to ask you more than the proper price.

10 要你半塊錢 ask you 50 cents for it.

70. 1 就是了 it's a bargain.

3 各 ... 不錯 every man has his own make-up, this gentleman is all right.

5 他說得好，人都愛聽 he told the story well, and every one was glad to listen.

9 我這纔曉得 I knew by this.

12 你們看這本 look at this copy of.

71. 4 有一位 there was one. Here 一位 is the equivalent of a capital letter in English.

7 作他們的救主 to be their Saviour.

10 就買他的書 they bought his books: 就 indicates the result of his persuasion.

72. 3 沒有錢去 had no means wherewith to go.

Page.

73. 7 呌沒有出過門的 so that the untravelled. 就…也 even when missionaries came to preach, and went to a city to rent houses, no one dared to let to them. 也 does not need translating; it is merely correlated to 就.

12 到處就有肯租房子給他們住的 in due course there were those who were willing to rent houses to them. Note idiom 有 there were 的 those who were.

74. 2 人很和氣 he was very genial: 人 idiomatically is often the equivalent of a personal pronoun. 信他的人就不少 many consequently had confidence in him.
5 都說給他們聽 he told them all about it.
8 都不會呌 were all dumb.
9 沒有這話 no such thing.
11 他也說 he further said.
出得也好 were all of good quality.

75. 2 一點也不髒 absolutely clean.
3 戴小帽子 wearing ordinary hats.
帶兩三個人 accompanied by two or three servants.
4 這樣 if this be so there.
5 正說話的時候 just as we were talking: see page 211.
10 沒有工夫聽他們多說 no time to hear what more they had to say. 他們的那些話.........this talk of theirs.

86. 3 也不當說 neither ought we to say.
5 人也是一樣 it is also the case with men.
7 也是一理 the principle is the same.
8 這也不一定 this is by no means certain.
10 一定要說 will certainly say that.

87. 2 不過這麼大 he is only so big.
4 他的身子大 he is a larger build.
8 做些菜 cook some vegetables.
10 很好吃 was good eating.
12 老人家 the old gentleman.

88. 2 再說 further; again.
5 比方說 let us suppose.
6 成了 will have become.
8 還是 after all it was.
11 古今 in all ages.
在外頭 away from home.

89. 5 這話我也不很信 I don't altogether believe this statement
6 我們比他們還好 we are better off than they.

Page.

89. 9 有 … 像, 有 … 不 像 some things almost similar, others quite dissimilar.

11 不 信 我 的 話 if you don't believe what I say.

12 不 說 就 是 了 I'll say no more and there's an end of it.

94. 3 就 是 說 that is to say.

8 得 辦 理 must be attended to: see page 96, column 12.

95. 2 沒 有 … 也 沒 有 had neither……nor…

6 就 錯 不 了 and you can't make a mistake.

7 小 碼 頭 a small mart: see page 145.

8 頂 大 的 順 風 a very strong and favourable wind.

到 了 晚 上 by the evening.

[illegible] 再 過 幾 天 in a few days' time.

12 很 不 好 走 it was very bad going.

眞 是 辛 苦 thoroughly tired out.

96. 7 有 弟 兄 兩 個 there were two brothers.

8 還 家 去 住 幾 天 returned home to stay for a few days.

97. 1 不 曉 得 no one knows.

我 們 可 以 打 鋪 蓋 let us do up our bedding.

3 正 好 just the thing.

6 謝 謝 先 生 的 好 心 thanks for your goodness.

1[illegible] 也 不 … 也 不 … neither… nor…

102. 3 官 場 中 的 事 official news.

5 不 是 … 乃 是 … 也 是 …was not…but was…and was…

9 叫 擺 字 的 先 把 字 擺 好, 後 來 so that compositors might first set up the type, and then 好 simply indicates that the action is completed; see page 104, column 7.

103. 1 天 下 的 事 everything under the sun.

4 眞 不 容 易 anything but easy.

給 外 國 人 做 事 acting for foreigners.

5 若 不 是 had it not been that.

6 出 告 示 issued proclamations.

是 那 裏 來 的, 是 奉 旨 做 的 where they were from and that they were acting by Imperial decree. Under the Republic 奉 命 has replaced 奉 旨 *e.g.*,

奉 總 統 的 命 Acting under orders from the President.

8 就 是 豎 了 桿 子 以 後 even after they had put up the poles: 以 後 is the equivalent of 後 來 but is used differently; see page 104, column 5, and page 156; also Note on page 451.

Page.

103. 9 聽得有響聲 heard a noise; *cp.* similar use of 得 in 懂得 To understand.
10 曉得了 we know all about it.

104. 1 也是一樣 it was just the same.
3 或是 ... 或是 ... whether ... or ...
造謠言 fabricate stories; concoct yarns.
不肯長 wouldn't grow; see page 233.
4 奶就嚇那有了 scared into giving no milk.
7 總得 were under the necessity of.
8 不要學他們的糊塗樣子 let us not imitate their folly.
11 孩子 a lad: 孩子 is applied to boys in their teens as well as to young children.
12 叫過他來 called him to me.

105. 1 看報上說甚麼事 to see what news it gave.
頭一件 the first item.
都長價 had all risen in price.
下邊 farther down.
2 大官心中有意 the high officials had it in mind to.
4 收信 to collect the letters.
信就送到一點不錯 the letter would be taken to its destination without fail.
6 彀三四十丈 fully 300 odd feet.
7 一天得一百幾十個錢 would get between 100 and 200 cash per day. 吃他的飯 all found in the way of food.
3 話是很好 all right as a statement. 算是他們的大福氣 they may reckon themselves very well off.
10 還有論 there were also (newspaper) articles; 那一個有理 who was in the right.

110. 6 天下的人 mankind.
8 不叫你出來 will not let you out.

111. 5 叫 ... 叫 ... so that ... and ...
7 若不是這樣 were it not so.
8 看那邊的人爲野人 would regard people from other places as barbarians.
11 多有吃米的 the most part live on rice.

112. 1 可以分爲 may be divided into.
2 又叫 which is also called.
8 那一省在那一方 where each province is.
9 那一方出那一樣東西 the products of each place.
11 出幾角洋錢 lay out a few cents.

Page.

113. 4 直往西 due West.

6 山地少 not much hill country; 山地多 a good deal of hill country.

7 不好住 unsuitable for residence.

8 有人說 it is said; some say.

9 念書也念得很好 were all very good students.

10 人…得很 very few people have such useful sons born to them.

12 呌父母的心有大難處 cause their parents great grief.

117. 1 有人 someone.

2 所畫的 what was depicted.

7 多野 were boorish to a degree.

8 拿葉子當衣裳 had leaves for clothing.

118. 2 算 … 有 might be regarded as entirely uncivilized.

7 意思就是 which means; 沒有離本鄉 had not left his native place.

9 皇帝 Emperor; the same as 皇上 column 11; see page 123.

119. 3 這樣撒謊 to lie in such a fashion: in many districts 扯謊 takes the place of 撒謊.

9 靠海 along the coast.

120. 1 開口罵起來 started cursing.

3 就不肯 wouldn't allow it.

4 這一句話 this remark.

5 本地針 needles of local manufacture.

124. 1 著上 inserted; worked in,—as in a story.

4 後來 later on.

5 揉了揉眼睛 rubbed his eyes several times: the verb repeated after 了 indicates a succession of acts; see columns 6, 10.

125. 1 雖 … 也 … these are correlated and 也 does not need to be translated.

2 比出 … 來了 these form the verb.

5 看 … 爲 regard … as being.

126. 2 略略的 briefly.

6 甚麼希罕事情 all sorts of wonderful things.

就是要當當 even if it comes to pawning.

8 船 … 飯 food provided on the steamer.

10 就有鐵路 and then you come to the railway.

12 從 … 過 pass through Germany and France.

127. 3 就是 such as.

5 肯買 glad to buy them.

**Page.**

127. [6] 能人 capable people: 有了能人 if there are capable people.

[8] 這樣行 to do so.

[11] 這樣 hence; this being so.

132. [6] 有外路來的東西 there are things from abroad.

[8] 不用多出錢 need not go to any great expense.

133. [8] 人出幾個錢 anyone by the expenditure of a little money (may).

141. [4] 和 together with.

[7] 跑到外國去 take a trip abroad.

142. [2] 說的不錯 well says.

[3] 所以 hence.

[6] 大風大浪 neavy weather.

[8] 請 may I ask.

[11] 百事都通 nothing he did not know; up-to-date.

143. [2] 跟我學 if you study under me: 字 ... 不少 you will also have read a good deal.

滿心滿肯 more than willing to.

[3] 謝謝少理 as an expression of his gratitude to Shaoli.

[4] 本不彀用的 altogether insufficient for practical purposes.

學會法國話了 was a French scholar.

[5] 白費錢 money spent for nothing.

[8] 不想吃飯 had no desire for food; no appetite.

[9] 頭也抬不起來 couldn't lift up his head. 抬 indicates the act of more than one person, but it is applied to a single person lifting up head, hands, or feet.

想到 to think of: 白想 useless.

[11] 誰也沒有 not a single person had.

144. [1] 一兩句 a little of what he said. 心 ... 想 thought it out carefully.

[3] 不相干的話 phrases that are beside the mark.

[5] 就好了 and all will be well.

[6] 又細想 but on further consideration (found that he was).

[9] 再等一等 after a little while.

一面 ... 一面 alternately.

[11] 遭了甚麼罪 what calamities befell him.

149. [2] 本沒有工夫 really have not time to.

[4] 光說有一夜 but simply say that one night.

[7] 就 ... 了 as a result ruined an eye by striking it against a letter box.

Page.

149. 11 發黃 had taken on a yellow tinge.

150. 1 又哭了一回 had another bout of crying.
2 受苦彀受的了 I have had my fill of suffering.
就是 … 了 should anyone give me 10,000 taels I wouldn't come this way again: 也 is in correlation to 就是 and need not be translated.
7 既然 … 就 … since he had got to know him: 就 and 也 in column 9 below; 雖 need not be translated: see above entry.
9 給你說幾句好話 to say a good word for you.
12 要不是 … 了 if you had not been on board, I, all alone, should have been in great straits.

151. 1 不錯 that is so; perfectly true: 有甚麼事 if you are in any difficulty.
3 本是 who were.
5 大聲笑起來 burst into loud laughter.
7 必是說 doubtless are saying.
11 雖然 … 還是 … although … still. …

152. 1 心如火燒 burning with rage.
2 眞看不得 really was not fit to be seen.
4 就是 and then.
7 有一點黑帶黃就是了 nothing more than a trifle travel-stained.
10 呌空發的心歡喜得很 made the heart of K'ongfah very glad.

157. 3 呌心深先下船 that Hsinshen should go ashore first.
6 給他找事 find him some employment; look out for a job for him.

158. 1 說 … 了 used some persuasion and won his confidence.
5 向他發笑 laughed at him; 向 indicates the object of the verb.
7 就知道 and then learned that.
12 就無法行孝 had no means of shewing filial regard.

159. 4 若不是 … 他 if it had not been that those on board persuaded him.
5 發了好心 shewed a friendly feeling toward him.

160. 2 一口的好話 plenty of specious talk.

163. 5 爲人不錯 a very decent fellow.
7 過日子還算可以 made a fairly good living.

164. 2 雖是 … 卻要 … though this is so … still …
3 行 well and good.

Page.

164. 6 跑到 made his way to.
8 連衣裳還沒有穿好 haven't even finished dressing.
10 走來走去 going to and fro.
11 不過 not more than.

165. 4 不靈的 senseless; unresponsive: 你要遭報 something will happen to you.
7 四下 on all sides; as 四圍 124.
8 認識幾個字 could read a little.
9 他呢 he couldn't read at all: 呢 is added for emphasis.
11 一把壺的像 the likeness of a pot.
12 甚麼不吃 the idea of their not eating! see page 167, note 2.

167. 1 快到北門就 had nearly reached the North Gate when they.
7 錯以他爲神 have made a mistake and taken them for gods.
9 本家的人 members of his own family.

168. 3 可以進去聽 let us go in and listen.

169. 3 有話說 it is said.
4 早年間 in years past.
5 一切的禮 the entire ritual.
8 享不到福 should not have realized happiness

## Use and Force of 就.

The word 就, defined in Lesson IV by Then, etc., is a word which takes on various meanings in different connections. As it is impossible to indicate these in a brief definition, an analysis of its use in Reading Lessons IV to VIII inclusive is given below, as a contribution to a better understanding of its force and usage. This will facilitate translation of later Lessons, and help to clear up many difficult points, since the passages quoted give most of its more common meanings.

The large numerals refer to the page, the small ones to the number of the column.

Page.

23. $^{3}$ 他就問 he *accordingly* asked.
$^{11}$ 就回到外頭 *and* (indicating sequence) went outside.

24. $^{1}$ ditto.
$^{3}$ 大的就說 *whereupon* the elder one said.

24. $^{4}$ 你要就拿 untranslatable, = if you want it take it.
$^{5}$ 就到外頭去 went out *at once.*
$^{6}$ 一 ... 就看見 no sooner ... *than.* Here in correlation with 一 it has the force of 'than.'
$^{7}$ 一看見他就說 as soon as they saw him, they *at once* said.
$^{9}$ 他就到他們那裏去 he went to them: here 就 indicates the sequence of events and need not be translated. So in column 13.
$^{11}$ 他就說 *whereupon* he said.

25. $^{5}$ 看好了就 having read *then*, *i.e.*, when we have finished reading.
$^{6}$ 三個人就坐 the three men *then* sat down.
$^{12}$ 我有事就回去 I had an engagement *and* (or *so*) went back.

29. $^{6}$ as 23$^{3}$.

30. $^{2}$ 過 ... 就可以 might return after three or four years: 就 here indicates the natural order or connection; so in columns 3, 6, 10.
$^{10}$ 我就來 I will come *without delay.*
$^{12}$ 我就呌人 I *then* called: 就 indicates sequence: so in column 13.

**Page.**

31.$^{2}$ 就 來 came *just then*. So used 就 indicates the point of time: page 40, column 3.

$^{3}$ 我 就 問 I *thereupon* asked; see column 7.

$^{8}$ 到 了 ... 就 when they had nothing to do in the evening they took their supper. Here 就 is in correlation with 到 了; see 41.$^{6, 10}$

39.$^{2}$ 他 就 不 曉 得 he *naturally* would not know: so column 7.

40.$^{10}$ 就 說 *upon which* he said.

**41.**$^{1}$ 就 和 他 們 去 he *thereupon* went with them.

$^{2}$ 就 ... 店 門 就 看 見 in both cases 就 merely indicates the order of events: so in column 3.

$^{10}$ 就 可 以 回 來 will return: 就 here is idiomatic and need not be translated.

**46.**$^{6}$ 就 成 了 the *result* was that ...

**47.**$^{6}$ 就 有 三 點 鐘 it was *then* 3 o'clock. Here as in previous examples 就 occurs in connection with a point of time.

$^{8}$ 一 見 就 on seeing him he *immediately* ...

**48.**$^{1}$ 就 一 面 *proceeded to* ...: see column 8.

$^{2}$ 就 拿 *and* produced a handkerchief; column 5.

就 把 銀 子 包 起 來 *upon which* he wrapped up the silver.

$^{9}$ 就 沒 有 看 見 *and so* did not see it.

$^{10}$ 就 走 and went—having gained his point: 就 often indicates the 'turn' of a sentence—one thing done and something else happening in consequence: see 54.$^{8}$

**53.**$^{8}$ 我 就 帶 你 去 I'll take you.

# CHINA INLAND MISSION PUBLICATIONS.

## CHINESE-ENGLISH :—

| | |
|---|---|
| Western Mandarin, Grainger ... ... ... ... | $ 3.00 |

## CHINESE :—

| | |
|---|---|
| China Inland Mission Hymn Book, paper 頌主聖歌. | 0.16 &<br>0.24 |
| ” ” ” ” ” cloth ... ... | 0.32 |
| ” ” ” ” ” half calf ... | 0.75 |
| ” ” ” ” ” music for ... | 1.50 |

## ENGLISH :—

| | |
|---|---|
| Vision of No Man's Land ... ... ... ... | 0.50 |
| Selling all to buy the field ... ... ... ... | 0.20 |
| Life of Hudson Taylor vol. 1 ... ... ... | 3.50 |
| ” ” ” ” 2 ... ... ... | 4.00 |
| One of China's Scholars, paper covers ... ... | 0.60 |
| Pastor Hsi, paper covers ... ... ... ... | 0.60 |
| ” ” songs translated ... ... ... ... | 0.50 |
| Life of Pastor Hsi, 2 vols. in one ... ... ... | 1.50 |
| Annual Report of China Inland Mission ... ... | 0.80 |
| A Retrospect, by Rev. J. H. Taylor ... ... ... | 0.50 |
| Pioneer Work in Hunan, Dorward ... ... ... | 0.75 |
| Marches of the Mangtze, Edgar ... ... ... | 0.65 |
| Map of China, folding... ... ... ... ... | 9.00 |
| ” ” small ... ... ... ... ... | 1.50 |
| Atlas of China, one page to a province ... ... | 13.00 |
| C. I. M. Telegraph Code and Supplement ... ... | 6.50 |
| Though War Should Rise ... ... ... ... | 0.30 |
| Fulfilment of a Dream ... ... ... ... | 2.00 |
| Life of J. W. Stevenson ... ... ... ... | 0.65 |
| Heirs together ... ... ... ... ... ... | 1.00 |
| Light on the old paths ... ... ... ... ... | 1.15 |

# ALSO BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

## *CHINESE-ENGLISH:—*

| | |
|---|---|
| Analytical Chinese-English Dictionary, 637 pages. | $8.00 |
| Analytical Vocabulary of the New Testament, 418 pages | 2.50 |
| Sacred Edict with notes, 216 pages | 2.00 |
| The Fortunate Union, with copious notes | 0.50 |
| Notes on St. Matthew's Gospel, Chapters II to VII | 0.25 |
| Book of Radicals | 0.15 |
| Wenli Lessons | 2.00 |
| An Idiom a Lesson | 1.00 |

## *CHINESE:—*

| | |
|---|---|
| Life of Rev. J. Hudson Taylor, 戴公行述 | 0.15 |
| Life of Rev. C. H. Spurgeon, 司布眞記 | 0.15 |
| Enlightenment for Preachers, 傳道啓悟集 | 0.25 |
| Life of Pastor Hsi, 席勝魔記 | 0.25 |
| Metrical Version of the Psalms, 詩篇精意 | 0.12 |

*To be had direct from the BUSINESS DEPARTMENT,*
*CHINA INLAND MISSION, Shanghai*
*and all Booksellers.*

12071